

IBM TotalStorage
Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494)



Operator Guide

IBM TotalStorage
Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494)



Operator Guide

Note!

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Safety and Environmental Notices" on page xiii and "Notices" on page 405.

Second Edition (September 2002)

This edition applies to the IBM TotalStorage[™] Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2002. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Figures	vii
----------------	------------

Tables	xi
---------------	-----------

Safety and Environmental Notices	xiii
---	-------------

Laser Safety and Compliance	xiii
Operator Safety	xiii
Safety Characteristics	xiii
End of Life (EOL) Plan	xiv

Preface	xv
----------------	-----------

About This Book	xv
Organization of This Book	xv
Who Should Read This Book	xvi
Terminology Used in This Book	xvi
Related Information	xvi
IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494)	xvi
IBM 3490E Tape Subsystem	xvi
IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590	xvii
AIX®	xvii
IBM AS/400 and IBM @server iSeries™	xvii
IBM RS/6000® and IBM @server pSeries™	xvii
MVS™, OS/390®, and z/OS™	xvii
VM/ESA® and z/VM™	xviii
VSE/ESA	xviii
Additional Information	xviii
How to Send Your Comments	xviii

Chapter 1. Introduction	1
--------------------------------	----------

IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494)	2
Functional Components	4
Cartridge I/O Facilities	18
High-Capacity Output Facility	18
High-Capacity I/O Facility	18
Single-Cell Output Facility	18
Convenience I/O Station Feature	19
Cartridge Tape	19
Tape Cartridge Requirements	21
Cartridge File Protection	22
Cartridge System Tape Labels	22
Unlabeled Tape Facility	23
Cartridge Volser Labeling	24
Cartridge Media-Type Labeling	25
Cartridge Storage Cells	26
Reserved Cartridge Storage Cells	27
Cartridge Storage Capacity	28
Library Manager	29
User Interface	29
Password Protection	29
Database	30
Advanced Policy Management	30
HA1 Frames	31

Database Information Available to a Host	31
IBM TotalStorage 3494 Tape Library Specialist	32
Operational Modes and States	32
3590 Model A60 Controller Adjacent Frame Support	34
Call Home Support	34

Chapter 2. Controls and Indicators	35
---	-----------

L1x Operator Panel	36
Power Controls and Power Status LEDs	36
Motion Control Switches and Status LEDs	37
Convenience I/O Station Status LEDs	38
Library Manager	39
B16 VTS Controls	39
B18, B10, B20 VTS Operator Panel	40
B18, B10, B20 VTS Controls	40
CX0 Operator Panel	41
3590 Model B1A, E1A, and H1A Tape Subsystem Controls	42
3490E Model C1A, C2A Tape Subsystem Controls	43
3490E Model F1A Tape Subsystem Controls	44

Chapter 3. Operational Characteristics	45
---	-----------

3490E and 3590 Tape Subsystem Operation	45
Virtual Tape Server	45
Emulation of 3490E-Type Tape Drives	45
Tape Volume Cache	46
Storage Management of the Tape Volume Cache	46
VTS Export and Import Overview	46
Advanced Policy Management	47
Maintaining Data Fragments from Copied Volumes	50
Fast Response for Nonspecific Mount Requests	51
Deletion of Virtual Tape Server Logical Volumes	51
Deletion of Expired Virtual Tape Server Logical Volume Data	51
Scratch Stacked Volumes	53
Integration with the 3494	53
ESCON Host Attachment	54
FICON Host Attachment	54
SCSI Host Attachment	55
Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server	55
Local and Remote Power Control	56
Operator Involvement	56
System Administrator Involvement	57
Error Detection and Reporting	57
Inventory Update	57
Volume Categories	58
Physical Volume States	62
Logical Volume States	63
Physical Volser Validity Checking	63
Logical Volser Validity Checking	64
Command Priorities in the Queue	64
Priority Levels	65
Operations	66
Host-Initiated Operations	66

Stand-Alone Operations	68
Initial Cartridge Installation	69
Cartridge Placement	70
Initial Volume Inventory Upload	70
Host Operation Control	70
Actions to Avoid when Operating a 3494	71
Things You Should Never Do	71
Things You Should Avoid Doing	72

Chapter 4. Operational Modes and States and Informational States 73

Operational Modes	73
Auto Mode	73
Pause Mode	73
Manual Mode	73
Additional Operational Modes in the Model HA1 Environment	74
Home-Cell Mode	75
Operational States	75
Library Manager Initialization	75
Initialization Complete	75
Online State	75
Offline State	75
Shutdown Pending	75
Library Manager Switchover in Progress.	76
Accessor Switchover in Progress	76
Dual Active Accessor Status	76
Informational States	76
Relationship between Operational Modes and States	77
Operational Mode Transitions	77
Pause Mode to Auto Mode	78
Auto Mode to Pause Mode (No Error)	78
Pause Mode to Manual Mode	79
Manual Mode to Pause Mode	79
Auto Mode to Manual Mode	79
Manual Mode to Auto Mode	80
Initialization State to Auto, Pause, or Manual Mode	80
Auto Mode to Pause Mode (Forced)	80
Operational State Transitions	80
Shutdown Pending State to Shutdown State	81
Shutdown State to Library Manager Initialization State.	81
Library Manager Initialization State to Initialization Complete State.	81
Offline State to Online State	81
Online State to Offline State	81
Initialization Complete State to Online or Offline State.	82
Offline State to Shutdown Pending State.	82
Informational State Transitions	82

Chapter 5. Basic Operating Procedures 83

Powering On the 3494.	83
Powering Off the 3494.	84
Changing to Pause Mode.	84
Changing to Auto Mode	84
Changing from Local to Remote Power	84
Changing from Remote to Local Power	85
Inserting Cartridges	85

Using Empty Cartridge Cells to Insert Cartridges	85
Using the Convenience I/O Station to Insert Cartridges.	86
Using the High-Capacity I/O Facility to Insert Cartridges.	89
Removing Ejected Cartridges	90
Removing an Ejected Cartridge from the Single-Cell Output Facility	90
Removing Ejected Cartridges from the High-Capacity Output Facility	90
Removing Ejected Cartridges from the High-Capacity I/O Facility	91
Removing Ejected Cartridges from the Convenience I/O Station	91

Chapter 6. Advanced Operating Procedures 93

Quick Reference to Library Manager Advanced Operating Procedures	93
Using the Library Manager	97
Making Library Manager Selections	100
Selecting with the Keyboard	100
Selecting with the Pointing Device	101
Using the Help Window.	103
Help Search	105
Help Action Bar	105
Library Manager Function Keys	106
Using the Operator Menu	107
Using the Mode Window	108
Using the Status Window	119
Operational Status.	121
Component Availability Status.	124
Using the VTS Status Window.	127
Performance Statistics	129
Accessor Mounts Per Hour.	131
VTS Active Data	132
VTS Data Flow	134
VTS Mount Hit Data	135
VTS Physical Device Mount History.	137
VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour.	138
VTS Active Data Distribution	139
Using the System Summary Window	141
LAN Host Status	147
Dual Accessor Zones	148
Using the Queues Window.	149
Using the Database Window	151
Search Database for Volsers, Categories, Devices	152
Search Criteria	152
Search Results	155
Displaying Search Results	156
Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools	156
Search Criteria	157
Search Results	161
Displaying Search Results	162
List Database Volumes	162
Find A Logical Volume's Home	168
Stacked Volume Map.	170
Rebuild Database Statistics	171
Using the Commands Window	173
Cleaning	178
Schedule Cleaning.	178

Eject a Cleaner Cartridge	181
Set Cleaner Masks	182
Send Message to Host Consoles	183
Add Message to Transaction Log	183
Promote a Command in the Queue	185
System Management	186
Volser Ranges for Media Types	186
Delete Logical Volumes	189
Eject A Stacked Volume	190
Set VTS Category Attributes	191
VTS Management Policies	193
Manage Unassigned Volumes	196
Manage Import Volumes	198
Manage Insert Volumes	199
Manage Export-Hold Volumes	200
Cancel VTS Export/Import	201
Manage Constructs and Pools	201
Manage Storage Groups	202
Manage Management Classes	203
Manage Storage Classes	205
Manage Data Classes	206
Stacked Volume Pool Properties	207
Move/Eject Stacked Volumes	208
Move/Eject Stacked Volumes (Status)	212
Manage Logical Volumes	214
Transfer LM Administrative Data	217
Inventory	219
Inventory New Storage or Re-inventory	
Complete System	219
Disable Inventory Update	228
Enable Inventory Update	229
Perform Inventory Update (Full)	229
Perform Inventory Update (Partial)	230
Stand-Alone Device	231
Setup Stand-Alone Device	231
Reset Stand-Alone Device	234
Stand-Alone Device Status	235
Insert Unlabeled Cartridges	235
LAN Options	237
Add LAN Host to Library	237
Delete LAN Host from Library	243
Update LAN Host Information	244
Change LAN Host Information	245
Library LAN Information	250
Operator Intervention	251
Change System Administrator Password	253
Service Access	254
Monitoring Library Manager Events	254
Using SNMP Features	255
Trouble Shooting SNMP Problems	259
Receiving SNMPD Traps on the Monitor Station	259
Programming Tools	261
OPINT Library Manager SNMP Traps	261
UNSOL Library Manager SNMP Traps	268
CHCK1 Library Manager SNMP Traps	272
TESTM Library Manager SNMP Traps	273
Call Home	273
Specialist (Web Server)	274
Establishing Userids	276
Using the Specialist	277
Using the Options Window	279

Using Manual Mode	279
Starting Manual Mode	280
Operating in Manual Mode	282
Mounting Cartridges	283
Demounting Cartridges	284
Inserting Cartridges	284
Ejecting Cartridges	286
Reviewing Unknown Volume Locations	287
Error Processing	288
Locating and Identifying Home-Cell Locations	289
Ending Manual Mode	290
3494 Web Interfaces	290
Specialist Features and Functions	291
Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Features and	
Functions	295
Cartridge Removal from the Gripper	299
Using the Keyboard Template	300

Chapter 7. Remote Library Manager

Console Feature	301
Installing and Configuring	302
Starting DCAF on the Remote Library Manager	
Console	302
Controlling a 3494 from Remote Library Manager	
Console	306
Using Keystrokes during a Remote Library	
Manager Console Session	306
Using Hot Key Combinations	308
Sending the Alt+Esc Command to the Library	
Manager	308
Sending the Alt+Tab Command to the Library	
Manager	308
Sending the Ctrl+Esc Command to the Library	
Manager	308
Changing the Session State from Remote Library	
Manager Console	309
Using the Pointing Device during a Session	310
Moving among Multiple Sessions	312
Transferring Files	312
Library Manager Operations with Remote Library	
Manager Console	312
Changing the Session State of the Library	
Manager	312
Changing the Password from the Library	
Manager	314
Remote Library Manager Console Problem	
Analysis	316

Chapter 8. Problem Determination

Procedures	317
Quick Reference to Problem Determination	
Procedures	317
Failure and Exception Condition Reporting	318
Library Manager Failure Recovery Procedures	319
Library Manager Failure in DFSMS/MVS	
(z/OS)	319
Start Library Manager and Host Recovery	
Procedure (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)	321
Library Manager Failure in MVS/BTLS	323

Start Library Manager and Host Recovery Procedure (MVS/BTLS)	324
DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape Messages	326
DFSMS Library Failure Messages or Exception Conditions	326
Information Provided at the Library Manager Console	337
Problem Determination Using System Summary	337
Problem Determination Using Component Availability Status	340
Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes	340
Problem Determination Using Whole Queue	342
Intervention-Required Conditions and Actions	343
Quick Reference to Intervention-Required Conditions	344
Intervention Conditions of 3494 Tape Drives	345
Intervention Conditions of Other 3494 Components.	346
Intervention Conditions of I/O Stations or Facilities	350
Intervention Conditions of External Cartridge Labels	353
Intervention Conditions of Data Cartridges	358
Intervention Conditions of Cleaner Cartridges	360
Intervention Conditions of a VTS.	361
VTS Recovery Actions	371

Appendix A. Keyboard Template 373

Appendix B. VTS Export and Import Advanced Function 375

Export and Import List Volumes Format	375
---	-----

Export List Volume	375
Import List Volume	381
Status Codes in Status File	384
Export and Import Messages from Library	395
Export Status Messages	395
Import Status Messages	398
Export/Import List Volumes Failure-Reason Text	400
Category Recovery	403
Reuse of Exported Stacked Volumes.	404

Notices 405

Trademarks	406
IBM Agreement for Licensed Internal Code	407
Actions You May Not Take	407
Communications Statements	408
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Class A Statement	408
Industry Canada Class A Emission Compliance Statement	408
Avis de conformité à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada	408
European Union (EU) Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive	408
Germany Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive	409
Japan VCCI Class A ITE Electronic Emission Statement	409
Taiwan Class A Electronic Emission Statement	409

Glossary 411

Index 419

Figures

1. Class II Laser Safety Caution Label	xiii
2. 3494 Configurations	3
3. L1x Frame Functional Components, 3490E (Front View)	5
4. L1x Frame Functional Components, 3590 (Front View)	5
5. L1x Functional Components (Rear View)	6
6. S10 Frame Functional Components (Front View)	7
7. D1x Frame Functional Components (Front View)	8
8. D1x Frame Functional Components (Rear View)	9
9. B16 VTS Functional Components (Front View)	10
10. B16 VTS Functional Components (Rear View)	11
11. B18, B10, and B20 VTS (Front View)	12
12. B18, B10, and B20 VTS Functional Components (Rear View)	13
13. CX0 (Front View)	14
14. CX0 Functional Components (Rear View)	15
15. HA1 Frames, Left Service Bay Functional Components (Right-Front View).	16
16. HA1 Frames, Right Service Bay Functional Components (Left-Front View)	17
17. L1x Frame Cartridge Storage Cells	19
18. Cartridge System Tape Identification	21
19. Tape Cartridge Requirements	21
20. Cartridge System Tape Labels	23
21. Cartridge Volser Label Position	25
22. Cartridge Storage Cell Names	26
23. Cartridge Storage Cell Labeling	27
24. L1x Frame - Front Door	35
25. L1x Frame - Operator Panel without Convenience I/O Station Feature	37
26. L1x Frame - Operator Panel with Convenience I/O Station Feature	38
27. Library Manager	39
28. B18, B10, or B20 VTS - Operator Panel	40
29. CX0 Auxiliary Frame - Operator Panel	41
30. 3590 Model B1A, E1A, and H1A - Operator Panel.	42
31. 3490E Model C1A, C2A - Controls and Indicators	43
32. 3490E Model F1A - Controls and Indicators	44
33. Active Library Manager Window	74
34. Standby Library Manager Window.	74
35. Dual Active Accessor Status - Enabling	76
36. Dual Active Accessor Status - Disabling	76
37. Auto Pending Window.	78
38. Inserting Cartridges in the Convenience I/O Station	87
39. Optional 30 Cartridge Convenience I/O Station	89
40. Operator Menu Controls	97
41. System Menu	98
42. Trackball Pointing Device	102
43. Track Pointer Keyboard	102
44. Help Window	103
45. Help Index Window	104
46. Operator Menu	107
47. System Summary Window	107
48. Mode Window	108
49. Initial Mode/State Selection Window	111
50. Fast-Ready Category Check Window	112
51. Offline Request Window	113
52. Mode/State Change Request Window	113
53. Service Mode Notice	114
54. System Administrator Password Window	114
55. Library Switchover Confirmation Window	115
56. Switching Window.	115
57. Accessor Switchover Confirmation Window	115
58. Switch Active Accessor to Standby Window	116
59. Dual Active Accessor Status Window - Enabling	116
60. Mark Accessor Active Window.	117
61. Dual Active Accessor Status Window - Disabling	117
62. System Administrator Password Window	118
63. 3494 Tape Library Dataserver Shutdown Window	118
64. Status Window	119
65. (Part 1 of 4) Operational Status Window	121
66. (Part 2 of 4) Operational Status Window	122
67. (Part 3 of 4) Operational Status Window	123
68. (Part 4 of 4) Operational Status Window	124
69. Component Availability Status Window	125
70. VTS Status Window	127
71. (Part 1 of 2) Performance Statistics Window	130
72. (Part 2 of 2) Performance Statistics Window	130
73. Accessor Mounts Per Hour Window	131
74. VTS Active Data Window	132
75. VTS Data Flow Window	134
76. VTS Mount Hit Data Window	136
77. VTS Physical Device Mount History Window	137
78. VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour Window	138
79. VTS Active Data Distribution (All Pools)	139
80. VTS Active Data Distribution (Specific Pool)	140
81. System Summary Window	141
82. LAN Host Status Window	147
83. Dual Accessor Zones Window	148
84. Queues Window Menu	149
85. Mount Queue Window	150
86. Database Window	151
87. Search Database for Volsers, Categories, Devices Window	152
88. Status Flags	156
89. Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools Window	157
90. List Database Volumes Window	162
91. Find A Logical Volume's Home Window	168
92. Stacked Volume Map Initial Message Popup	170
93. Stacked Volume Map Window	170
94. Database Maintenance Utilities Window - Initiated	172

95. Database Maintenance Utilities Window - Completed	172	147. Add LAN Host to Library Window (TCP/IP Selected)	242
96. Commands Window	173	148. Delete LAN Host from Library Window	243
97. Clean Schedule Window	180	149. Update LAN Host Information Window	244
98. Eject a Cleaner Cartridge Window	181	150. Change LAN Host Information Window (APPC)	245
99. Cleaner Masks Window	182	151. Change LAN Host Information Window (APPC/VTAM)	247
100. Host Message Window	183	152. Change LAN Host Information Window (TCP/IP)	249
101. Add Message to Transaction Log Window	183	153. 3494 LAN Information Window	250
102. Promote Command Window	185	154. Operator Intervention Window	252
103. Volser Ranges Window	188	155. System Administrator Password Window	253
104. Delete Logical Volumes Window	190	156. SNMP Basic Block Diagram	254
105. Eject A Stacked Volume Window	191	157. Select SNMP Trap Types Window	256
106. Set VTS Category Attributes Window	192	158. Change SNMP Trap Destinations Window (OS/2 2.11)	257
107. VTS Management Policies Window	193	159. SNMP Configuration Window	258
108. VTS Management Policies Window (by Pools)	195	160. TESTM SNMP Trap Message Window	259
109. Manage Unassigned Volumes Window	197	161. Call Home Window	274
110. Manage Import Volumes Window	198	162. 3494 Specialist Settings	275
111. Manage Insert Volumes Window	199	163. Options Window	279
112. Manage Export-Hold Volumes Window	200	164. Mode Window	280
113. Cancel VTS Export/Import Window	201	165. Mode/State Change Request Window	281
114. Manage Constructs and Pools	202	166. Manual Pending Window	281
115. Manage Storage Groups Window	202	167. Help Screen for Action List	281
116. Manage Management Classes Window	204	168. Manual Mode Terminal Window with Action List	282
117. Manage Storage Classes Window	205	169. Manual Mode Insert Cartridges Window	285
118. Manage Data Classes Window	206	170. Manual Mode Insert Cartridges Window	286
119. Stacked Volume Pool Properties Window	207	171. Manual Mode Review List Window	288
120. Move Stacked Volumes Window	209	172. Manual Mode Error Processing Window	289
121. Eject Stacked Volumes Window	209	173. Manual Mode Locate Cartridge Home Window	290
122. Move/Eject Stacked Volume (Status)	213	174. Specialist Connection	294
123. Manage Logical Volumes Window	215	175. Cartridge Removal from the Gripper	299
124. Transfer LM Administrative Data Window — Backup to Diskette	217	176. LAN Attachments	301
125. Transfer LM Administrative Data Window — Restore from Diskette	217	177. Icon for Distributed Console Access Facility	302
126. Display VTS Export/Import Volumes Window	220	178. Distributed Console Access Facility - Icon View Window	302
127. Save Logical Volumes Window	221	179. DCAF Controlling Main Window	303
128. Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information Window	222	180. DCAF - Directory Window	303
129. Inventory - Volser Ranges Window	223	181. DCAF - Target Password Window	304
130. Inventory - Cleaner Masks Window	224	182. Initiating the Remote Library Manager Console	304
131. Inventory Status Window	225	183. Establishing Communication with the Library Manager	305
132. Inventory Status Window (Dual Active Accessor Libraries)	225	184. Remote Library Manager Console Main Window	305
133. Service Window	227	185. Remote Library Manager Console Window with Keystrokes Menu	307
134. VTS Online/Offline Window	228	186. Remote Library Manager Console Session Window with Session Menu	309
135. Disable Inventory Update Window	229	187. Remote Library Manager Console Session Window	311
136. Enable Inventory Update Window	229	188. Window List	313
137. Perform Inventory Update Window	229	189. Active Session	314
138. Inventory Update Status Window	230	190. Changing Sessions	314
139. Inventory Update Status Window (Dual Active Accessor Libraries)	230	191. Options Menu	315
140. Perform Inventory Update (Partial) Window	231	192. DCAF Password	315
141. Setup Stand-Alone Device Window	232	193. Library Manager Switching Window	322
142. Reset Stand-Alone Device Window	234		
143. Stand-Alone Device Status Window	235		
144. Insert Unlabeled Cartridges Window	236		
145. Add LAN Host to Library Window (APPC Selected)	238		
146. Add LAN Host to Library Window (APPC/VTAM Selected)	240		

194. Library Manager Switching Window	325	195. Status Flags	340
---------------------------------------	-----	-----------------------------	-----

Tables

1. Cartridge Tape Labeling (Media-Type Default Set to Cartridge System Tape)	23	23. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to External Cartridge Labels	353
2. 3494 Cartridge Capacity	28	24. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Data Cartridges	358
3. Accessing Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Web Information	55	25. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Cleaner Cartridges	360
4. Volume Categories	59	26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494	361
5. Command Queue Priorities	65	27. Export List Volume	376
6. Quick Reference to Basic Operating Procedures	83	28. VOL1	376
7. Quick Reference to Library Manager Advanced Operating Procedures	93	29. Export List File	376
8. Free Storage Threshold	196	30. Export List File Identifier	377
9. LAN Host Communication Protocols	237	31. Export List File Record	377
10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type)	262	32. Reserved File	377
11. Quick Reference to Specialist Advanced Operating Procedures	291	33. Export Status File	378
12. Shortcut Keys for the Library Manager	307	34. Export Status File Identifier	378
13. Session States	310	35. Export and Import Status File Record	378
14. Fault Symptoms	316	36. HDR1	379
15. Quick Reference to Problem Determination Procedures	317	37. HDR2	380
16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions	326	38. EOF1	380
17. Problem Determination Using System Summary Window	337	39. EOF2	381
18. Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes Window	341	40. Import List Volume	381
19. Quick Reference to Intervention-Required Conditions	344	41. Import List File	382
20. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Tape Drives in the 3494	345	42. Import List File Identifier	382
21. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Other 3494 Components	346	43. Import List File Record	382
22. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to I/O Stations or Facilities	350	44. Import Status File	383
		45. Import Status File Identifier	384
		46. Status Codes and Status Text	384
		47. Export Status Messages	395
		48. Import Status Messages	398
		49. Export-Import List Volumes Failure Reason Text	400
		50. Category Recovery Error Scenarios	403

Safety and Environmental Notices

The following safety and environmental notices apply to the IBM[™] TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494).

Laser Safety and Compliance

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) is a Class II laser product. It is important for the operator to be aware of the laser caution label. See Figure 1 for an example of the label.

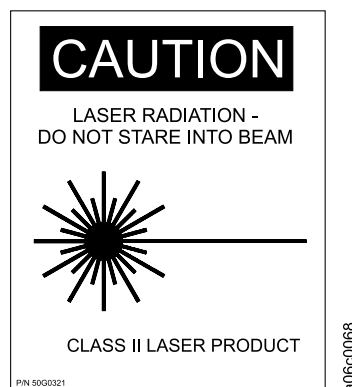


Figure 1. Class II Laser Safety Caution Label

This product complies with the performance standards set by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for a Class II laser product. Class II laser products require taking precautions to avoid prolonged viewing of the laser beam. Under normal working conditions, you must not come in direct contact with the laser beam. This product has protective housings and scanning safeguards that ensure that laser radiation is inaccessible during operation or is within Class II limits. These products have been reviewed by external safety agencies and have obtained approvals to the latest standards as they apply to this product type.

Operator Safety

The operator should remember the importance of safe operation when performing any of the tasks in this book. The operator should know the location and how to use the switches and controls on the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) (see Chapter 2, "Controls and Indicators" on page 35).

Safety Characteristics

The front doors on the library should not be opened during normal operation because of the moving components within the library. The doors have key locks to prevent the doors from being opened inadvertently. The 3494 includes integral safety control circuits that detect whether the doors are open or closed.

When a door is detected to be open, the power is removed from the cartridge accessor and the picker slowly descends. All host systems attached to the tape subsystems or through the RS-232 interfaces associated with the library are notified

of the condition. This gives the operator a warning of a safety exposure and a warning of potential unauthorized access to the cartridges stored in the library.

End of Life (EOL) Plan

This product is a purchased unit. Therefore, it is the sole responsibility of the purchaser to dispose of it in accordance with local laws and regulations at the time of disposal.

Preface

About This Book

This publication provides information for the new operator and for the experienced operator to use the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494). If you are a **new operator**, give special attention to the organization of this book (see “Organization of This Book”) and read the sections indicated for **new operators**.

Organization of This Book

The information in this publication is presented as follows:

- Chapter 1, “Introduction” on page 1 contains an introduction and a description of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494). This section is required reading if you are a **new operator**.
- Chapter 2, “Controls and Indicators” on page 35 contains a description of the location and function of the controls and indicators found on the 3494. This section is required reading if you are a **new operator**.
- Chapter 3, “Operational Characteristics” on page 45 contains a description of the operational characteristics of the 3494. This section includes information for the experienced operator or system administrator.
- Chapter 4, “Operational Modes and States and Informational States” on page 73 provides a description of the different modes and states of the 3494. This section includes information for the experienced operator or system administrator.
- Chapter 5, “Basic Operating Procedures” on page 83 provides a description of the tasks performed by using the operator panel on the 3494. This section is required reading if you are a **new operator**.

A quick reference table for basic operating procedures is included at the start of this section.

- Chapter 6, “Advanced Operating Procedures” on page 93 provides detailed information about using the Library Manager and the tasks that may be performed with the Library Manager. This section includes information for the experienced operator or system administrator.

Quick reference tables for Library Manager advanced operating procedures and for accessing IBM TotalStorage Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server Specialist Web information are included at the start of this section.

- Chapter 7, “Remote Library Manager Console Feature” on page 301 provides information on the remote Library Manager.
- Chapter 8, “Problem Determination Procedures” on page 317 provides information on error reporting and recovery. This section includes information for the experienced operator or system administrator.

A quick reference table for problem determination procedures is included in this section.

- Appendix A, “Keyboard Template” on page 373 identifies the uses of the Library Manager function keys.
- Appendix B, “VTS Export and Import Advanced Function” on page 375 provides information on the Export and Import functions of the 3494.
- “Glossary” on page 411 includes descriptions or terms used in this publication.

- “Index” on page 419 includes keywords and terms to help retrieve information in this publication.

Who Should Read This Book

This book is intended for operators of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494). Users of this information should be familiar with the IBM 3490E and 3590 magnetic tape subsystems. IBM recommends that you also read the *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*.

Terminology Used in This Book

See “Glossary” on page 411 for definitions of terms, abbreviations, and acronyms in this publication.

Related Information

The following sections contain lists of information sources that you may need in order to operate the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494).

IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494)

The following publications relate to the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) environment:

- *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*, GA32-0448
- *IBM Magstar® 3494 Tape Library Operator Safety Translations*, GA32-0299
- *IBM Magstar 3494 Tape Library User's Guide: Media Library Device Driver for AS/400®*, GC35-0153
- *IBM Magstar 3494 Tape Library User's Guide: Library Control Device Driver for VSE/ESA™*, GC35-0176
- *IBM Magstar 3494 Tape Library Operator Training Video Tape*, GV38-0293 (NTSC format) or GV38-0294 (PAL format)
- *IBM Magstar 3494 Tape Library Operator's Quick Guide*, GX35-5051
- *IBM Magstar 3494 Tape Library Maintenance Information*, SA37-0407
- *IBM Magstar Tape Library: Planning, Implementing, and Monitoring*, SG24-2229
- *Guide to Sharing and Partitioning IBM Tape Library Dataservers*, SG24-4409
- *IBM Magstar Tape Products Family: A Practical Guide*, SG24-4632
- *IBM Magstar 3494 Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server Planning and Implementation Guide*, SG24-6115
- *IBM Online Library Omnibus Edition Hardware Collection*, SK2T-5843

IBM 3490E Tape Subsystem

The following publications relate to the IBM 3490E tape subsystem environment:

- *Care and Handling of the IBM Magnetic Tape Cartridge*, GA32-0047
- *Tape and Cartridge Requirements for the IBM Magnetic Tape Cartridge Drives*, GA32-0048
- *Tape and Cartridge Requirements for the IBM Enhanced Capability Magnetic Tape Cartridge Drives*, GA32-0216
- *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Enhanced Capability Models C10, C11, C1A, C22, and C2A Introduction*, GA32-0217

- *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Enhanced Capability Models C10, C11, C1A, C22, and C2A Operator's Guide*, GA32-0218
- *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Enhanced Capability Models C10, C11, C1A, C22, and C2A Hardware Reference*, GA32-0219
- *IBM 3490E Tape Subsystem Models F01, F1A, F11, and FC0 Installation, Planning, and Operator's Guide*, GA32-0378
- *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Enhanced Capability Models C10, C11, C1A, C22, and C2A Planning and Migration Guide*, GC35-0219

IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590

The following publications relate to the IBM Magstar 3590 tape subsystem environment:

- *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GA32-0329
- *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Tape Subsystem Operator Guide*, GA32-0330
- *IBM Magstar 3590 Tape Subsystem Hardware Reference*, GA32-0331
- *IBM 3590 Tape Subsystem Operator's Quick Reference*, GA32-0354
- *IBM 3590 High Performance Tape Subsystem (Operator Training on Video Tape)*, GV38-0290 (NTSC format) or GV38-0291 (PAL format)
- *Magstar and IBM 3590 High Performance Tape Subsystem: Multiplatform Implementation*, SG24-2594

AIX®

The following publications relate to the AIX systems and software environment:

- *AIX Parallel and ESCON® Channel Tape Attachment/6000 Installation and User's Guide*, GA32-0311
- *AIX General Concepts and Procedures for RISC System/6000®*, GC23-2202
- *IBM SCSI Tape Drive, Medium Changer, and Library Device Drivers: Installation and User's Guide*, GC35-0154

IBM AS/400 and IBM @server iSeries™

The following publications relate to the AS/400 and iSeries software environment:

- *IBM Application System/400® Control Language Reference*, SC41-0030
- *AS/400 Automated Tape Library Planning and Management*, SC41-3309

IBM RS/6000® and IBM @server pSeries™

The following publication relates to the RS/6000 and pSeries software environment:

- *RISC System/6000 Getting Started: Managing RISC System/6000*, GC23-2378

MVS™, OS/390®, and z/OS™

The following publications relate to the MVS, OS/390, and z/OS systems and software environment:

- *DFSMS/MVS® General Information*, GC26-4900
- *MVS/ESA™ Planning: Installation and Migration for MVS/ESA System Product Version 4*, GC28-1077
- *MVS/ESA Library Guide*, GC28-1601
- *MVS/ESA Conversion Notebook*, GC28-1608

- *MVS/ESA System Management Facilities (SMF)*, GC28-1628
- *JES3 Command Reference*, SC23-0063
- *DFSMS/MVS Object Access Method Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Tape Libraries*, SC26-3051
- *DFSMS/MVS Object Access Method Application Programmer's Reference*, SC26-4917
- *DFSMS/MVS Planning for Installation*, SC26-4919
- *Basic Tape Library Support User's Guide and Reference*, SC26-7016
- *DFSMS/MVS DFSMSHsm™ Implementation and Customization Guide*, SH21-1078

VM/ESA® and z/VM™

The following publications relate to the VM/ESA and z/VM systems and software environment:

- *VM/ESA General Information*, GC24-5745
- *VM/ESA TCP/IP Planning and Customization*, SC24-5847
- *VM/ESA TCP/IP User's Guide*, SC24-5848
- *VM/ESA TCP/IP Programmer's Reference*, SC24-5849

VSE/ESA

The following publications relate to the VSE/ESA systems and software environment:

- *IBM 3494 Tape Library Dataserver User's Guide: Library Control Device Driver for VSE/ESA*, GC35-0176
- *VSE/ESA System Control Statements*, SC33-6613

Additional Information

The following publications contain additional information that relates to the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494):

- *IBM General Information Manual: Installation Manual—Physical Planning*, GC22-7072
- *Resource Access Control Facility General Information*, GC28-0722
- *Environmental Record Editing and Printing (EREP) Program User's Guide and Reference*, GC28-1378
- *POWERstation and POWERserver® System/390® Enterprise Systems Connection Channel Emulator User's Guide and Service Information*, SA23-2722
- *VTAM® Resource Definition Reference*, SC31-6498
- *Distributed Console Access Facility: Installation and Configuration Guide*, SH19-4068
- *Distributed Console Access Facility: User's Guide*, SH19-4069
- *Distributed Console Access Facility: Target User's Guide*, SH19-6839

How to Send Your Comments

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and high-quality information. If you have comments or suggestions for improving this publication, you can send us comments electronically by using these addresses:

- Internet: STARPUBS@us.ibm.com (or STARPUBS at us.ibm.com)
- IBMLink™ from U.S.A.: STARPUBS at SJEVM5
- IBMLink from Canada: STARPUBS at TORIBM
- IBM Mail Exchange: USIB3VVD at IBMMAIL
- Fax from U.S.A., Canada, and other countries/regions: 520-799-2906

Chapter 1. Introduction

This chapter contains an introduction and a description of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494).

The 3494 automates the retrieval, storage, and control of the following tape cartridge types:

- Cartridge System Tape
- Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
- High Performance Cartridge Tape
- Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape

Note: The *IBM 3494 Tape Library Operator Training Video Tape* and the *IBM 3494 Tape Library Operator's Quick Guide* are supplied with accessories.

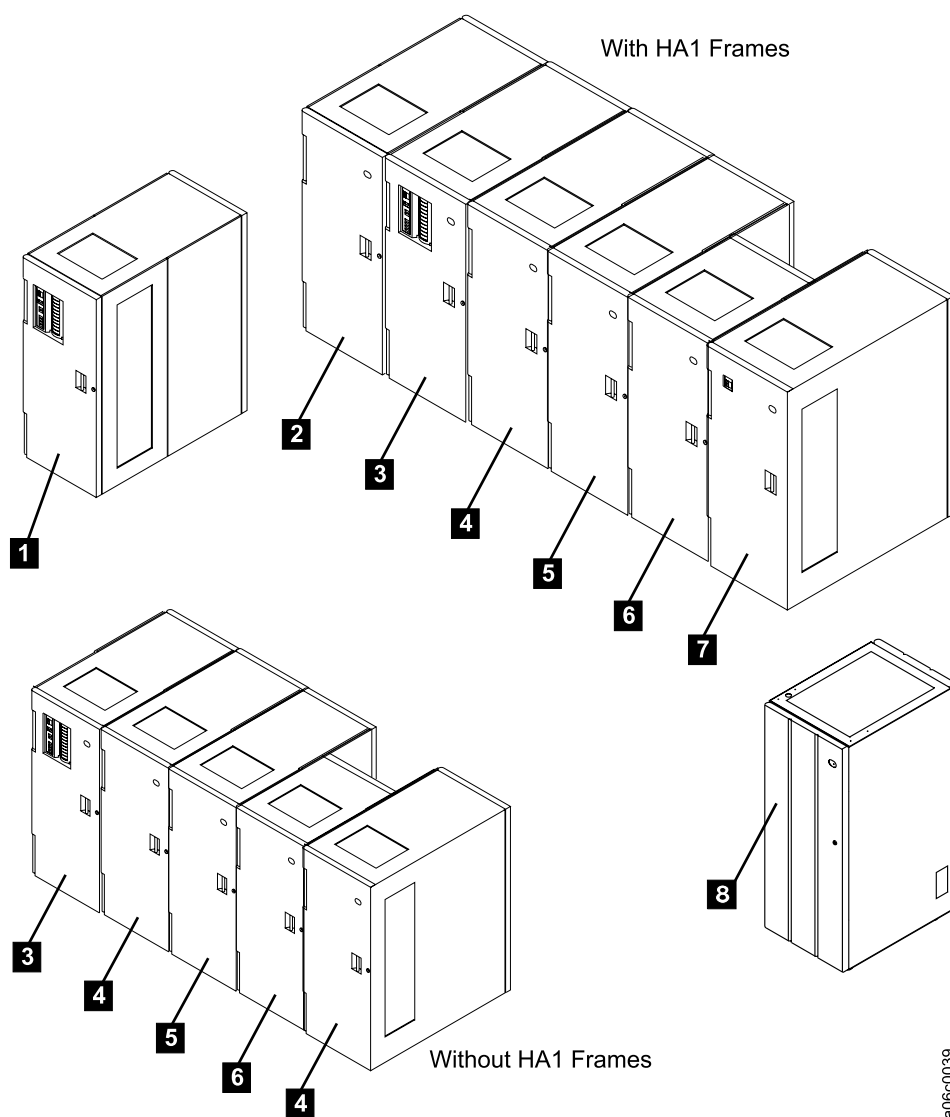
IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494)

Figure 2 on page 3 shows three possible configurations of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494). The 3494 is available in multiple configurations. You can use one IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Library Base Frame (L10, L12, or L14) or (Model L10, L12, or L14) and up to 15 optional frames. The following frame types are available in the tape library:

- The L1x Frame **1** or **3**, includes the following:
 - Operator panel
 - Tape subsystem
 - 3490E Model CxA or F1A with drives
 - 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A tape drives
 - 3590 Model A00, or A50 Controller with drives
 - Library Manager
 - Cartridge storage cells
 - Cartridge accessor
 - Convenience I/O station (if ordered)

Every library configuration requires one L1x.

- The optional IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Drive Expansion Frame (D10, D12, D14 Frame) or (Model D10, D12, D14) **4** contain additional cartridge storage and may contain the following tape subsystems:
 - A 3490E Model CxA or F1A tape subsystem
 - 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A tape drives
 - A 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller with drives
- The optional IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Server (VTS) B16 **5** contains additional cartridge storage, the VTS controller, and associated disk storage. A D12 Frame **4** must be located to the left of the B16 VTS. The B16 VTS manages the 3590 Model B1A tape drives in the D12 Frame.
- The optional stand alone IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Server (B18, B10, B20 VTS) **8** contains the VTS controller and its associated disk storage. A D12 Frame **4** may be located at any position in the 3494 (except frame 1). However, it must be within a distance of 14 m (46 ft) from the B18, B10, or B20 VTS. The B18, B10, and B20 VTSs manage the 3590 tape drives in the D12 Frame.
- The optional stand alone IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Frame (CX0) (not shown) contains two or four of the IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Controllers (AX0s). The AX0 is used in conjunction with the VTSs in an IBM TotalStorage Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server (PtP VTS) (see “Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server” on page 55). The AX0 provides interconnection of two Model B18, B10, or B20 VTSs in a PtP VTS and host system Enterprise Systems Connection (ESCON[™]) attachments.
- The optional IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Storage Frame (S10 Frame) or (Model S10) **6** contains additional cartridge storage only.
- The optional IBM TotalStorage Enterprise High Availability Tape Frames (HA1 Frames) service bays (left **2** and right **7**) contain service areas for the cartridge accessors.



a06c0039

Figure 2. 3494 Configurations

Note: For additional 3494 configurations, see the *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*.

The L1x Frame provides full library function without the other optional frames. Adding the optional frames to the L1x Frame provides tape drive capabilities and additional storage. See Table 2 on page 28 for the cartridge capacity of each frame.

Functional Components

Figure 3 and Figure 4 on page 5 show the front of the L1x, with the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front door and on the back wall of the L1x Frame (see Figure 3 or Figure 4 on page 5).

2 Magnetic tape subsystem

The 3494 uses the following tape subsystems:

- 3490E Model C1A, C2A, or F1A (see Figure 3 on page 5)
- 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A with or without a 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller (see Figure 4 on page 5)

3 Rail system

The rail system carries the cartridge accessor through the 3494. The rail system consists of two horizontal rails, one at the top and one at the bottom of the L1x Frame.

4 Convenience I/O Station

An optional convenience I/O station feature permits inserting or ejecting cartridges without interrupting normal automated operations.

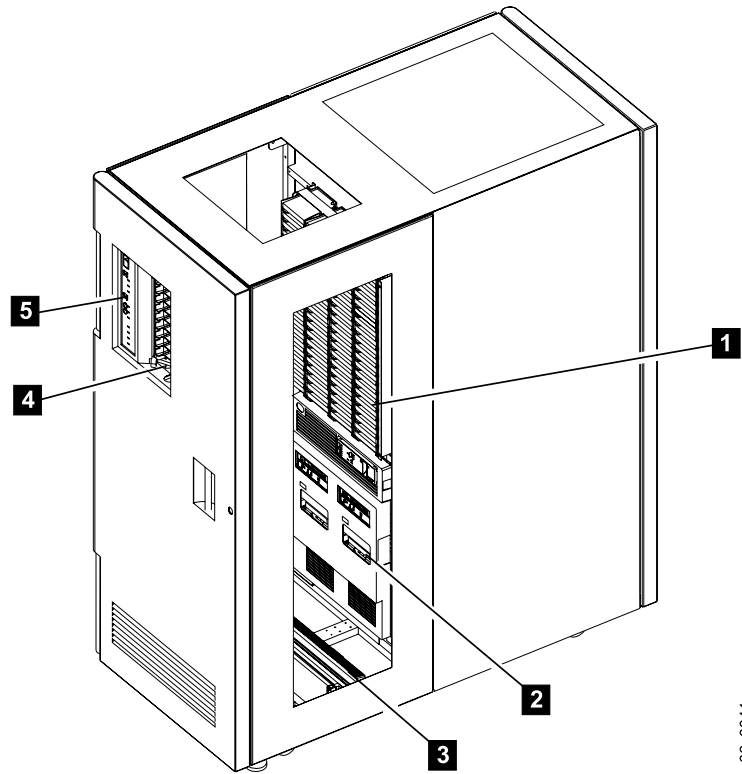
Two convenience I/O station features are available:

- A 10-cartridge convenience I/O station (see Figure 3 or Figure 4 on page 5)
- A 30-cartridge convenience I/O station (not shown)

Note: Export and Import operations in the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs with the Advanced Function feature require a convenience I/O station.

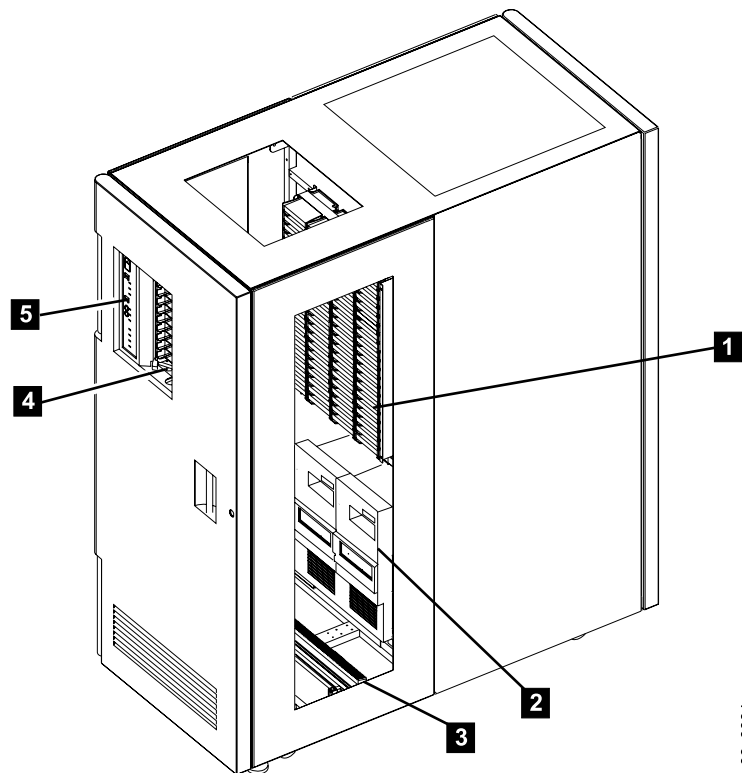
5 Operator panel

The operator performs basic operating procedures from the operator panel.



a06c0041

Figure 3. L1x Frame Functional Components, 3490E (Front View)



a06c0004

Figure 4. L1x Frame Functional Components, 3590 (Front View)

Figure 5 shows the rear of the L1x Frame, with the following functional components:

1 Library Manager

The Library Manager controls all operations in the 3494. Its hardware consists of a controller, display, pointing device, and keyboard. An optional Remote Library Manager Console feature is available for remote installation in a local area network (LAN) environment. During normal operations, the operator panel controls operate the 3494. The Library Manager controls error recovery, operations status, and service.

2 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front door and on the back wall of the L1x Frame.

3 Cartridge accessor

The cartridge accessor moves on horizontal and vertical axes, moving cartridges between the storage cells, devices, and I/O facilities. The vision system (bar code reader) on the cartridge accessor identifies cartridges.

4 Picker

The picker is the part of the cartridge accessor that actually picks cartridges. The standard picker has one gripper. If the cartridge accessor has the optional Dual Gripper feature, the picker has two grippers.

5 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller

The 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller consists of a RISC processor and associated adapter cards.

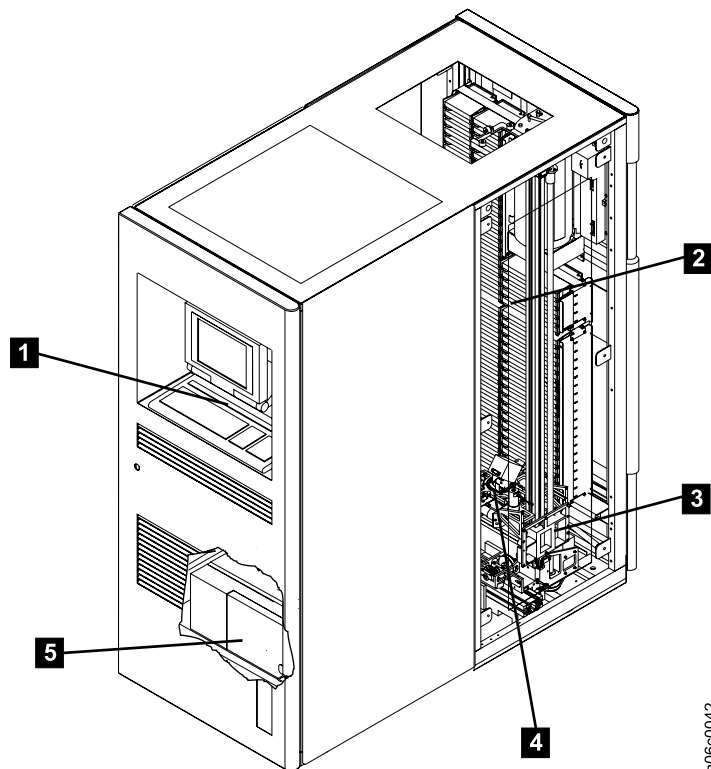


Figure 5. L1x Functional Components (Rear View)

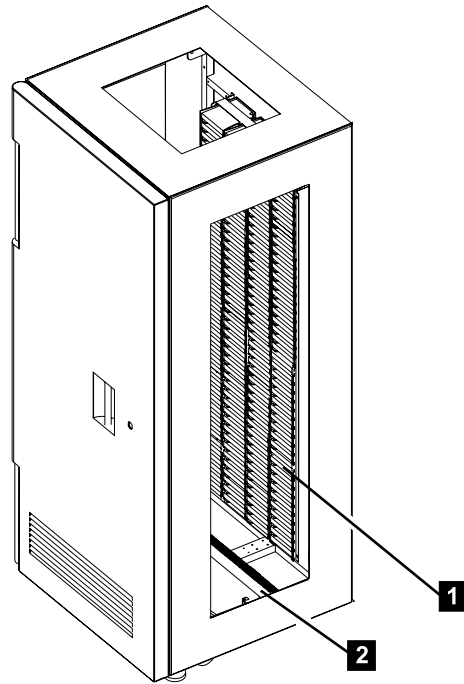
Figure 6 shows the front of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Storage Frame (S10 Frame) or (Model S10), with the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front door and on the back wall of the S10 Frame.

2 Rail system

The rail system carries the cartridge accessor through the 3494. The rail system consists of two horizontal rails, one at the top and one at the bottom of the S10 Frame.



a06c0187

Figure 6. S10 Frame Functional Components (Front View)

Figure 7 shows the front of the D1x Frame. This example shows four 3590 tape subsystems, a 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller, and the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front door and on the back wall of the D1x Frame.

2 Tape subsystems

A D1x Frame can contain one of the following tape subsystems:

- 3490E Model C1A, C2A (not shown), or F1A (one or two per frame)
- 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A with or without a 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller

3 Rail system

The rail system carries the cartridge accessor through the 3494. The rail system consists of two horizontal rails, one at the top and one at the bottom of the D1x Frame.

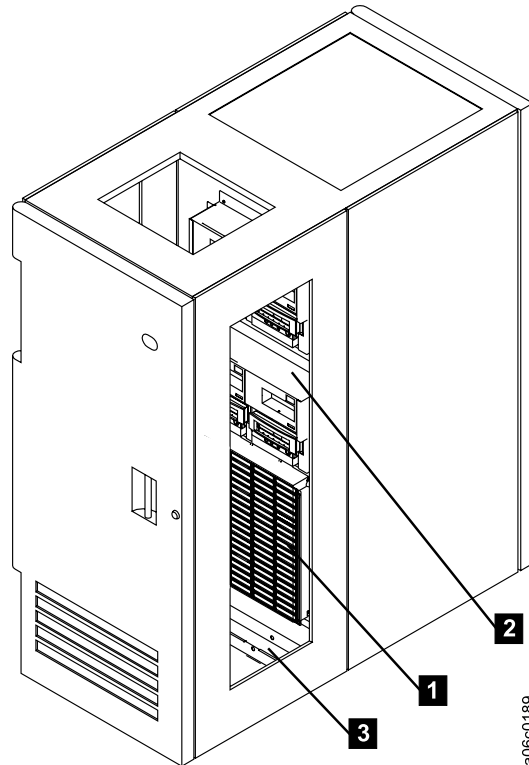


Figure 7. D1x Frame Functional Components (Front View)

Figure 8 shows the rear (without the rear door) of the D1x Frame. This example shows four 3590 tape subsystems, a 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller, and the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front door and on the back wall of the D1x Frame.

2 Rail system

The rail system carries the cartridge accessor through the 3494. The rail system consists of two horizontal rails, one at the top and one at the bottom of the D1x Frame.

3 Primary control compartment

The primary control compartment distributes power to all components in the frame.

4 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller

The 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller consists of a RISC processor and associated adapter cards.

5 3590 tape subsystems

The D1x Frame can contain from one to four 3590 tape subsystems with a 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller. The frame can contain from one to six 3590 tape subsystems without a Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller.

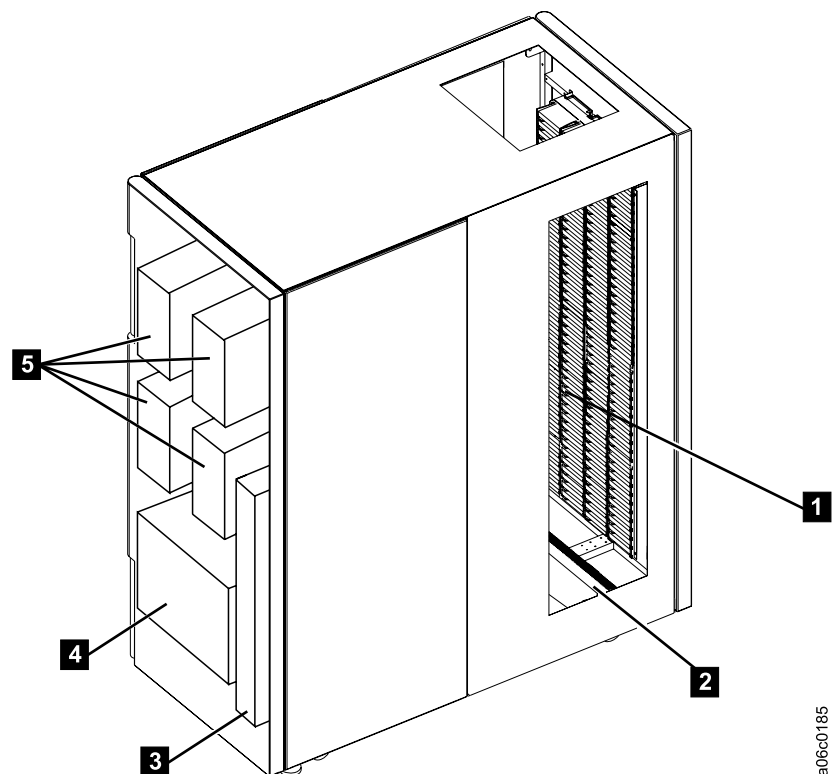


Figure 8. D1x Frame Functional Components (Rear View)

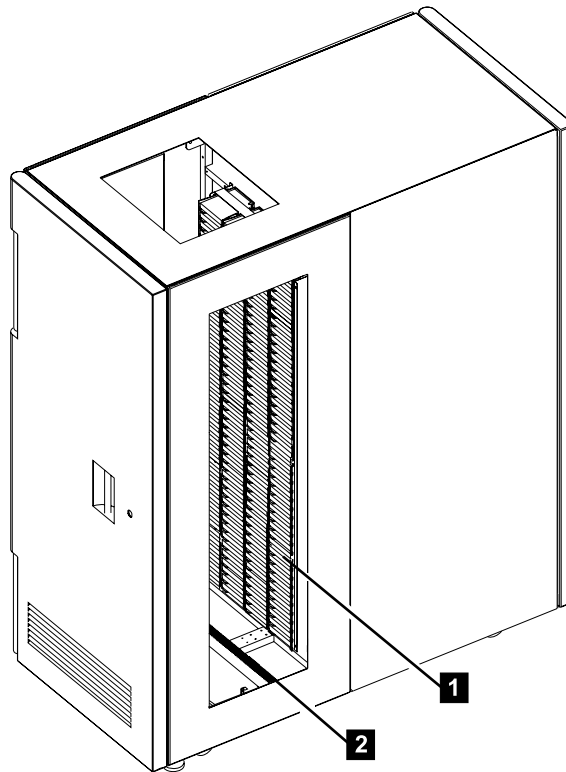
Figure 9 shows the front of the B16 VTS, with the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front door and on the back wall of the B16 VTS.

2 Rail system

The rail system carries the cartridge accessor through the 3494. The rail system consists of two horizontal rails, one at the top and one at the bottom of the B16 VTS.



a06c0188

Figure 9. B16 VTS Functional Components (Front View)

Figure 10 shows the rear (without the rear door) of the B16 VTS, with the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front door and on the back wall of the B16 VTS.

2 Rail system

The rail system carries the cartridge accessor through the 3494. The rail system consists of two horizontal rails, one at the top and one at the bottom of the B16 VTS.

3 Primary control compartment

The primary control compartment distributes power to all components in the B16 VTS.

4 VTS controller

The VTS controller consists of a RISC processor and associated adapter cards.

5 Disk storage

Disk storage holds the contents of the tape volume cache. The VTS controller manages the disk storage. The VTS frame contains two or four disk storage drawers.

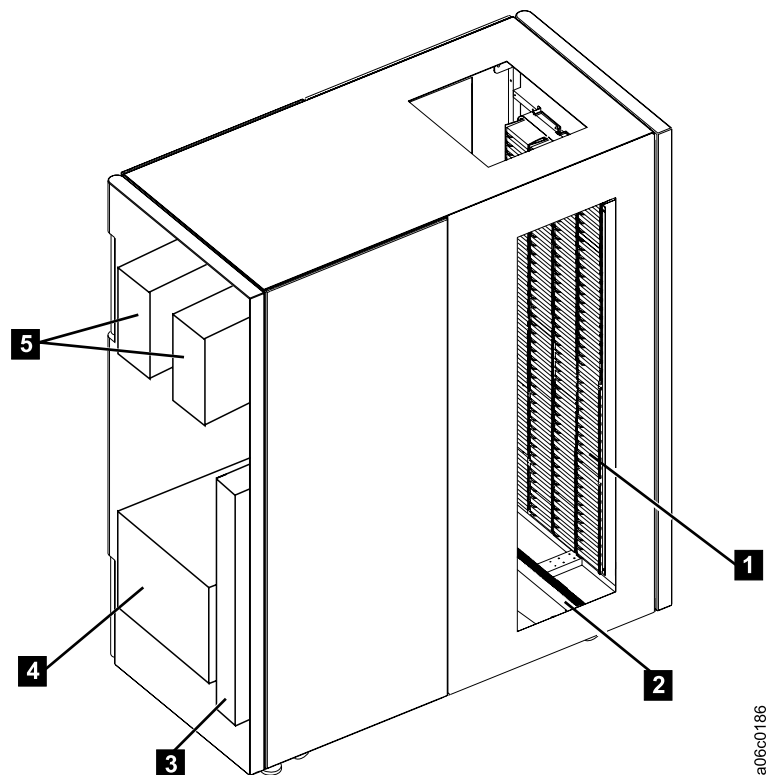


Figure 10. B16 VTS Functional Components (Rear View)

Figure 11 shows the front of the B18, B10, and B20 VTS.

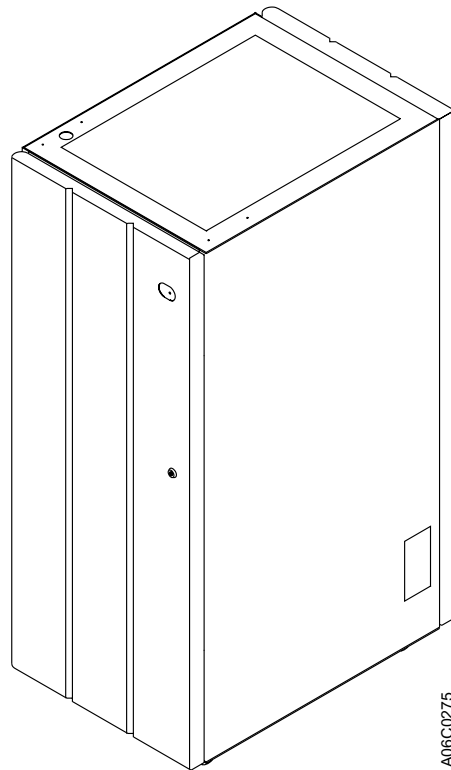


Figure 11. B18, B10, and B20 VTS (Front View)

Figure 12 shows the rear (without the rear door) of the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs, with the following functional components:

1 Disk storage

Disk storage holds the contents of the tape volume cache. The VTS controller manages the disk storage. A VTS may contain from one to four disk storage drawers, depending on the model.

2 VTS controller

The VTS controller consists of a RISC processor and associated adapter cards.

3 Primary control compartments

The primary control compartments distribute power to all components in the frame. Early B18 VTSs have only one primary control compartment.

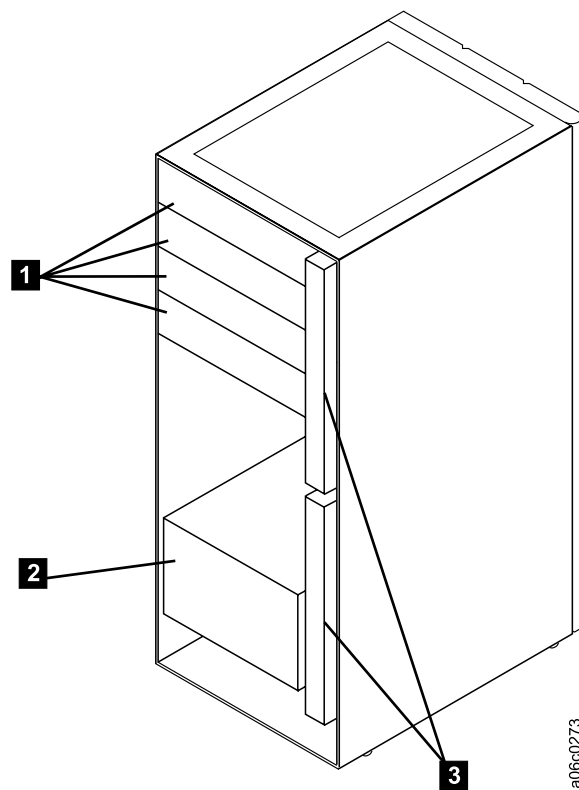


Figure 12. B18, B10, and B20 VTS Functional Components (Rear View)

Figure 13 shows the front of the CX0.

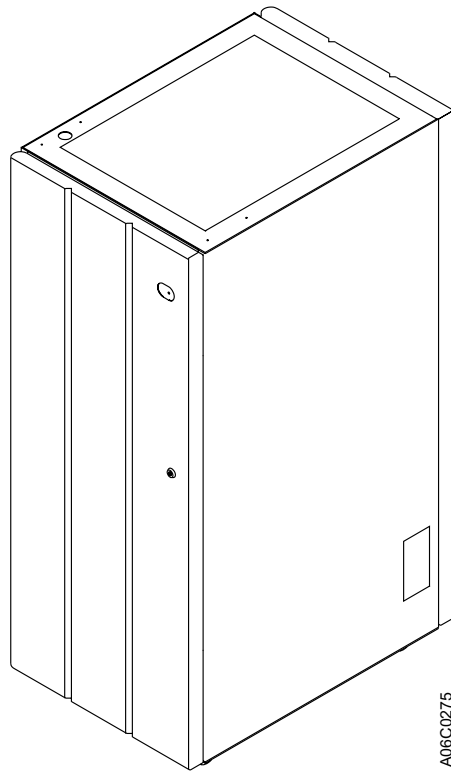


Figure 13. CX0 (Front View)

Figure 14 shows the rear (without the rear door) of the CX0, with the following functional components:

1 AX0s

Two or four AX0s may be installed in the CX0. The AX0s provide interconnection between the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs and host system ESCON attachments.

The position numbers for the AX0s are 0, 1, 2, and 3. Position 0 is the lowermost position; position 3 is the uppermost position. When the CX0 contains only two AX0s, they are in positions 0 and 1.

2 Primary control compartments

The primary control compartments distribute power to the AX0s in the CX0. The lower primary control compartment powers the AX0s in positions 0 and 2. The upper primary control compartment powers the AX0s in positions 1 and 3.

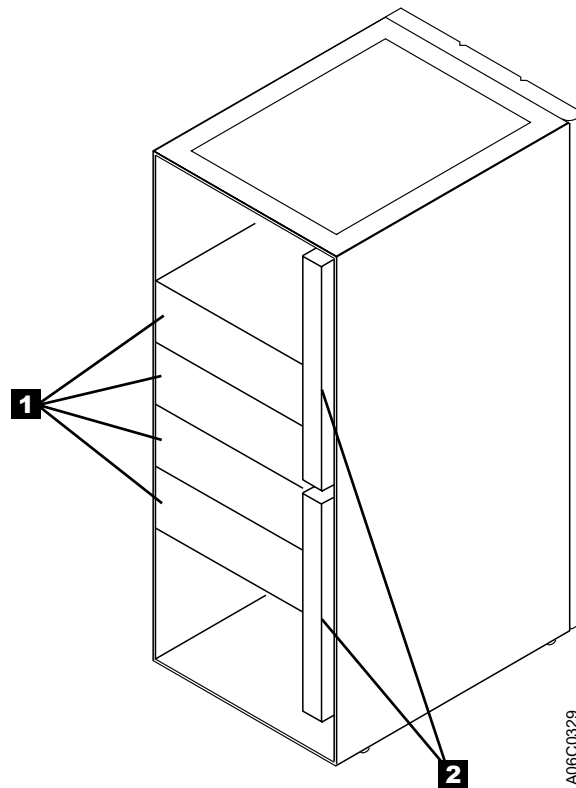


Figure 14. CX0 Functional Components (Rear View)

Figure 15 shows the right-front of the HA1 Frames, left service bay, with the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front doors and on the back walls of the HA1 Frames. They are for service use only.

2 Barrier door

Service personnel use the barrier door to separate the service bay from the main aisle of the 3494. This allows concurrent service of the accessor and its associated hardware.

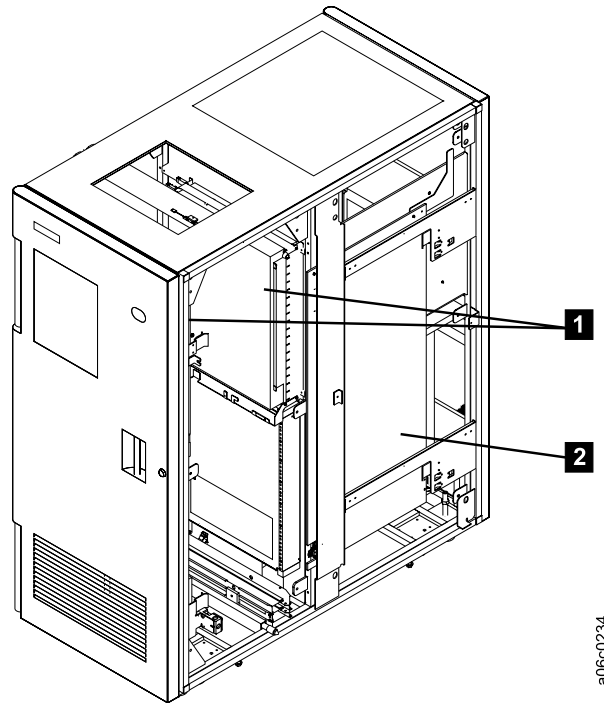


Figure 15. HA1 Frames, Left Service Bay Functional Components (Right-Front View)

Figure 16 shows the left-front of the HA1 Frame right service bay frame, with the following functional components:

1 Cartridge storage cells

The cells are located on the inside of the front doors and on the back walls of the HA1 Frames. They are for service use only.

2 Barrier door

Service personnel use the barrier door to separate the service bay from the main aisle of the 3494. This allows concurrent service of the accessor and its associated hardware.

3 Hot standby Library Manager

The hot standby Library Manager can take control of all operations in the 3494. Its hardware consists of a controller, display, pointing device, and keyboard. An optional Remote Library Manager Console feature is available for remote installation in a Local Area Network (LAN) environment.

Hot standby accessor or second active accessor (not shown)

This accessor moves on horizontal and vertical axes, moving cartridges between the storage cells, devices, and I/O facilities. The vision system (bar code reader) on the cartridge accessor identifies cartridges. Either Library Manager can control this accessor.

Picker (not shown)

The picker is the part of the cartridge accessor that actually picks cartridges. The standard picker has one gripper. If the cartridge accessor has the optional Dual Gripper feature, the picker has two grippers.

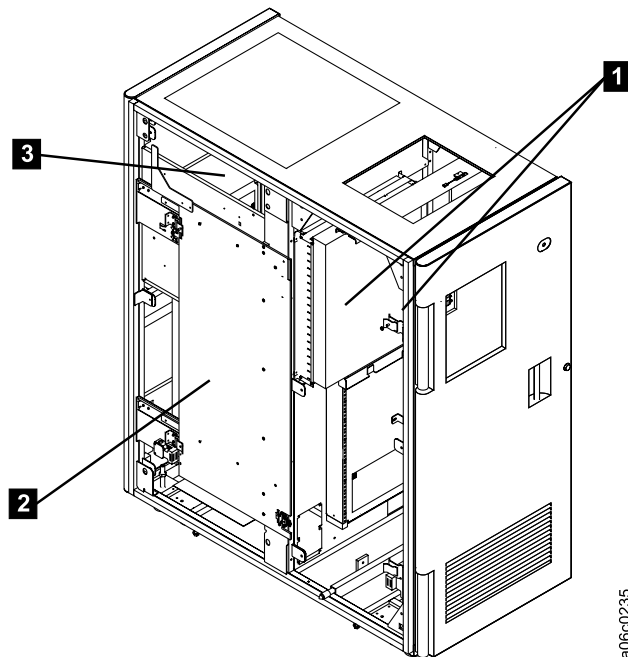


Figure 16. HA1 Frames, Right Service Bay Functional Components (Left-Front View)

Cartridge I/O Facilities

The following types of input and output facilities are available in the 3494:

- High-Capacity Output facility
- High-Capacity I/O facility
- Single-Cell Output facility
- Convenience I/O Station feature

High-Capacity Output Facility

The high-capacity output facility, if defined during installation, reserves a section of the cartridge storage area for high-capacity output of cartridges.

Library Type	Cartridge Capacity
Single Gripper	10, 20, 40, 80, or a full door
Dual Gripper	10, 20, 36, 72, or a full door

The cartridge storage cells are located inside the L1x Frame on wall 2, column A, starting with cell 1. This is expressed as location 2 A 1 **2** (see Figure 17 on page 19). See “Removing Ejected Cartridges from the High-Capacity Output Facility” on page 90 for operating instructions.

High-Capacity I/O Facility

A high-capacity I/O facility may be defined for the inside wall (drive side walls) so that the 3494 can perform inserts (Input) and ejects (Output). S10 Frame, B16 VTS, or odd-numbered D1x Frame (DU) walls 3 through 31 can be configured as high-capacity I/O. An S10 Frame or B16 VTS, configured as high-capacity I/O, can contain 100 (upper half) or 200 (whole wall) cells. A D1x Frame configured as high-capacity I/O contains from 50 (six 3590 drives) to 135 (two 3590 drives) cells. It uses all available cells in the wall. Only a single wall can be configured at any time (single high-capacity I/O facility).

Single-Cell Output Facility

If a convenience I/O station is not installed and a high-capacity output facility or high-capacity I/O facility is not defined, a single cell in the door of the L1x Frame is provided for output. The location of the single cell **1** as shown in Figure 17 on page 19 is defined as 2 A 1. If the cartridge accessor has the optional Dual Gripper feature, the single cell location is 2 A 3. Any empty and unassigned cell can be used for input operations. See “Removing an Ejected Cartridge from the Single-Cell Output Facility” on page 90 for operating instructions.

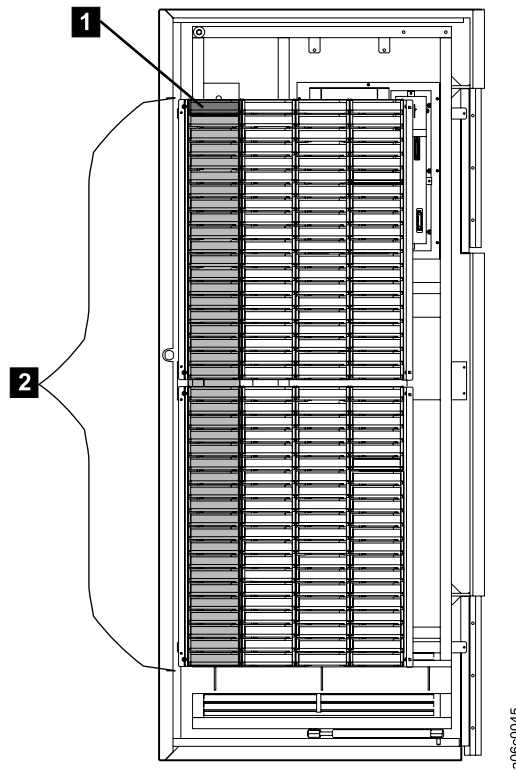


Figure 17. L1x Frame Cartridge Storage Cells

Convenience I/O Station Feature

If the 3494 has a convenience I/O station feature, you can add or remove up to ten or up to 30 cartridges without interrupting the normal operations of the 3494. See “Using the Convenience I/O Station to Insert Cartridges” on page 86 and “Removing Ejected Cartridges from the Convenience I/O Station” on page 91 for the operating instructions for this feature.

There are two modes of operation for the convenience I/O station while in Input mode: **Insert** and **Import**. If one or more VTs are capable of Export and Import operations, then the convenience I/O station is in **Import** mode.

Cartridge Tape

The design of the 3494 automates the storage and movement of the following tape cartridge types:

- Cartridge System Tape
- Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
- High Performance Cartridge Tape
- Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape

Note: You can use the High Performance Cartridge Tape and the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape only on 3590 tape subsystems. You can use the Cartridge System Tape and the Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape only on 3490E tape subsystems.

The 3494 supports an intermix of the following cartridge tapes, depending on the model of tape drive:

- Cartridge System Tape (3490E only) has a gray case.
- Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape (3490E only) has a gray and white case.
- High Performance Cartridge Tape (3590 only) has a black case, blue inserts, and a blue leader block.
- Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (3590 only) has a black case, green inserts, and a green leader block.

Figure 18 on page 21 shows the Cartridge System Tape **1**, the Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape **2**, the High Performance Cartridge Tape **3**, and the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape **4**. Note the blue inserts of the High Performance Cartridge Tape and the green inserts of the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape. Note also the placement of the media-type label (either 1, E, J, or K).

During an Inventory or Insert operation, the vision system identifies the type of cartridge by reading a separate, media-type label. This label distinguishes between the following types of cartridges:

- **1** identifies the Cartridge System Tape.
- **E** identifies the Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.
- **J** identifies the High Performance Cartridge Tape.
- **K** identifies the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape.

See “Unlabeled Tape Facility” on page 23 for more information.

Notes:

1. If the 3494 has both 3490E and 3590 drives, all cartridges should have a label in the seventh character position (see Figure 18 on page 21).
2. Use the following rules to determine the volume serial (volser) media type:
 - The media type returned by the vision system is the first choice unless **J** is present.
 - If the media type is **J** or **K** and there are multiple partitions, the volser ranges are checked to determine whether to assign the volser to a VTS or to a non-VTS partition.
 - The volser ranges are used to determine a volser media type if the vision system can not determine it. If the volser being inserted is within one of the ranges, the range’s associated media type is used. The search of the ranges is an inclusive search.
 - The system uses the default media type defined during the teach process to determine the media type if the volser does not fall into one of the ranges.
 - If there is no default media type, the volser is ejected, and an operator intervention is set.

The vision system also identifies the cartridge volser during an inventory or insert operation by reading the external labels on the cartridge. The media type and volser information are then stored in the Library Manager database.

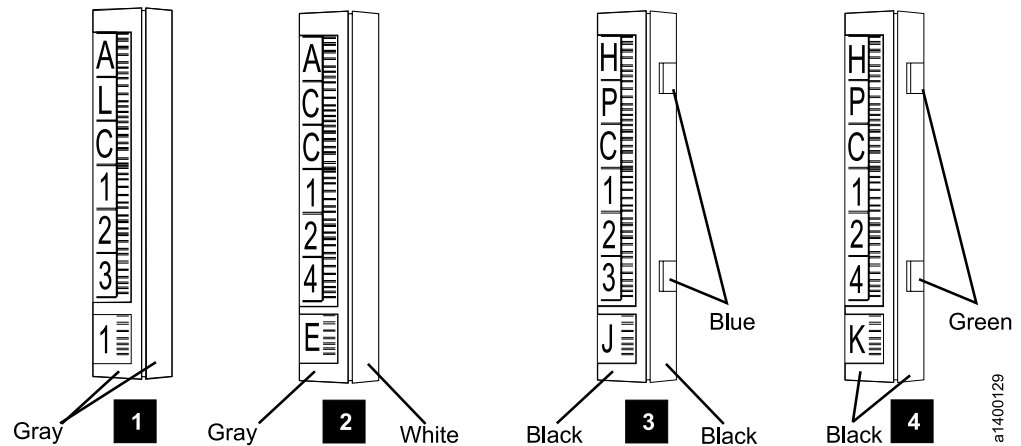


Figure 18. Cartridge System Tape Identification

Tape Cartridge Requirements

Figure 19 shows the following tape cartridge requirements:

- The tape cartridge **1** must have an external volser label **2** applied.
- The file-protect selector **3** must be set to the correct position for the cartridge's intended purpose (see "Cartridge File Protection" on page 22).
- The leader block **4** on the tape cartridge must be seated before inserting the cartridge into the 3494.
- The tape cartridge must be inserted into the 3494 cartridge storage cells in the direction **5** shown so that the external label is readable when stored.

Note: When inserting the tape cartridges into the convenience I/O station, insert the external label side first in the direction **6**.

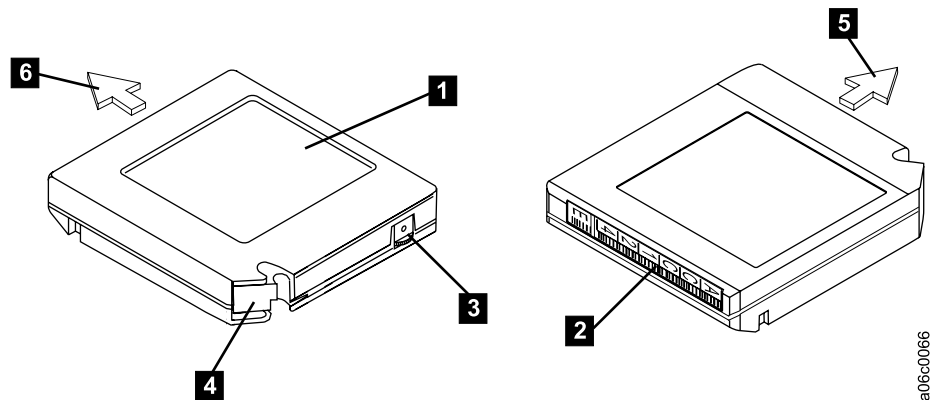


Figure 19. Tape Cartridge Requirements

Cartridge File Protection

Each tape cartridge includes a file-protect selector (**3** in Figure 19 on page 21) that, when set to the file-protect position, prevents writing data on the tape or erasing data from the tape.

Normally, cartridges used in the 3494 should not be file-protected manually. If required, software can be used to file-protect the cartridges. This allows the host, when appropriate, to identify a cartridge that no longer contains current data and can be a scratch cartridge. Do not file-protect scratch cartridges because new data cannot be written to file-protected cartridges. For additional information, see *Care and Handling of the IBM Magnetic Tape Cartridge*.

Cartridge System Tape Labels

Each tape cartridge in the 3494 must have external labels that are operator- and device-readable. The labels identify the volser and the media type of the cartridge. Currently supported labels are Tri-Code, available from Wright Line Corporation, Tri-Optic, available from Engineered Data Products, and labels available from Information Data Storage.

Note: The **only exception** for the label requirement is when using the Unlabeled Tape Operations function. See “Unlabeled Tape Facility” on page 23 for more information.

The volser label contains up to six characters, and the separate media-type label provides a seventh character for media type identification. A volser can contain one to six characters, with blanks that are padded on the right for a volser with fewer than six characters. Characters can be uppercase A–Z and numerics 0–9. Each tape cartridge typically has a separate single-character media-type label that identifies the cartridge type as follows:

- **1** identifies the Cartridge System Tape.
- **E** identifies the Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.
- **J** identifies the High Performance Cartridge Tape.
- **K** identifies the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape.

Note: See “Cartridge Tape” on page 19 for the process used to determine the cartridge media type.

The external labels on the cartridges identify the cartridges to the 3494. Host control software in some operating environments requires that internally written labels on volumes correspond to external volsers. IBM recommends that correspondence of external and internal cartridge labels be verified by library control software as part of mount processing. Cleaner cartridges must also have operator- and device-readable external labels to identify each cartridge.

High Performance Cartridge Tapes (HPCT) and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tapes (EHPCT) that are managed by the VTS are checked automatically for the correct internal volume label. They are relabeled if necessary.

Figure 20 on page 23 shows the possible labeling configurations of the tape cartridges. Table 1 on page 23 shows how the 3494 handles the different types of labeling configurations.

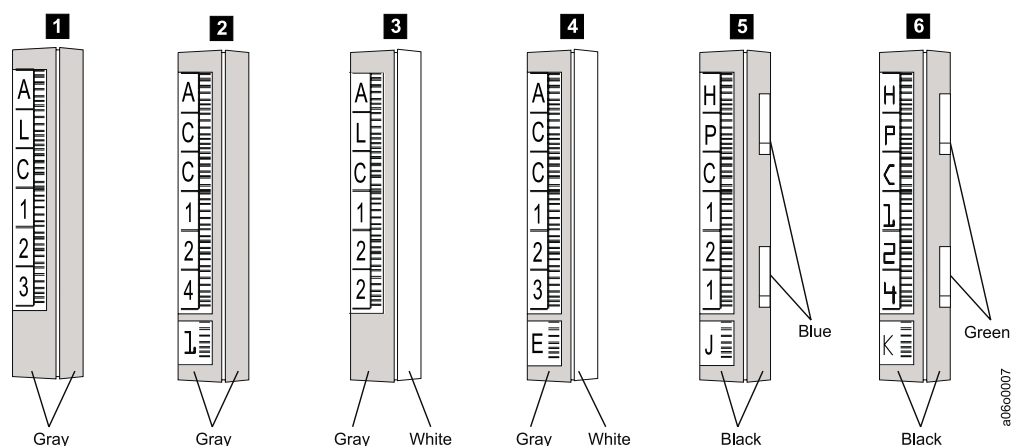


Figure 20. Cartridge System Tape Labels

Table 1. Cartridge Tape Labeling (Media-Type Default Set to Cartridge System Tape)

Cartridge Type	Color	Media-Type Label	Handled as:
1 Cartridge System Tape	Gray	Not present	Cartridge System Tape (default, see note)
2 Cartridge System Tape	Gray	Present (1)	Cartridge System Tape
3 Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape	Gray and white	Not present	Cartridge System Tape (default, see note)
4 Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape	Gray and white	Present (E)	Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
5 High Performance Cartridge Tape	Black with blue leader block and identification notches	Present (J)	High Performance Cartridge Tape
6 Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape	Black with green leader block and identification notches	Present (K)	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape
Note: The default could be Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, High Performance Cartridge Tape, or Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape instead of Cartridge System Tape (see “Operational Status” on page 121).			

Unlabeled Tape Facility

Note: Do not use this function with cartridges that have device-readable labels.

The design of unlabeled tape operations allows you to insert volumes occasionally into the 3494 that do not have external device-readable volser and media-type labels. When inserted through the unlabeled tape facility, the volumes may be used in the same manner that regular, properly labeled volumes are used, with the exception of any operations that require the external device-readable label to be read.

It is not recommended that volumes to be managed by the VTS be inserted using this facility. However, if the external label on a stacked volume becomes damaged, this facility can be used to reinsert the volume until its external label can be replaced.

To use the unlabeled tape facility, select the **Insert Unlabeled Cartridges...** option on the Commands window on the Library Manager. Then provide the volser and media-type information requested. The unlabeled tapes are then placed into the convenience I/O station. The 3494 then moves the cartridges from the convenience I/O station to their designated cells. The Library Manager database is updated to indicate the location of the cartridges using the volser and media-type information provided. All hosts are notified that the cartridges have been added to the insert category just as regular, properly labeled volumes are handled.

Inventory update operations verify only that all unlabeled cartridges are in cells that previously contained unlabeled cartridges.

Note: Do not use this facility for a large number of cartridges or for cartridges that are stored in the 3494 for a long time. See "Insert Unlabeled Cartridges" on page 235 for additional information.

Cartridge Volser Labeling

To apply an external cartridge volser label, perform the following:

1. Examine the label before you apply it to the cartridge. Do not use the label if it has voids or smears in the printed characters or bar codes.
2. Remove the label from the label sheet carefully; do not stretch the label or cause the edges to curl.
3. Line up either end of the label with the lip of the label indentation. Be sure to position the bar code side of the label toward the inside edge of the indentation. Do not allow the label to roll up or over this lip; the label must be flat within the cartridge indentation surface. Apply the label either from the top or from the bottom. Carefully position the label within the indentation on the end of the cartridge away from the leader block. The device-readable bar code must face to the right.
4. Apply the label parallel to the long edge of the indentation. Do not pull the label excessively because it will stretch.
5. Smooth out the label so that no wrinkles or bubbles exist on the label. Use light finger pressure to smooth the label and secure it to the cartridge.
6. Verify that the label is smooth and parallel and has no roll-up or roll-over.
The label must be flat to within 0.5 mm (0.2 in.) over the length of the label and have no folds, missing pieces, or smudges. Figure 21 on page 25 shows the correct position of the label on the cartridge case.

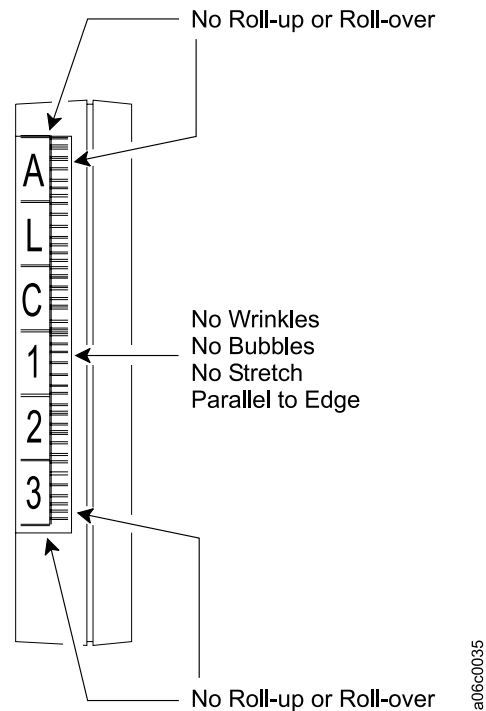


Figure 21. Cartridge Volser Label Position

Do not place a new label over an existing label. Remove an old label by pulling it slowly at a right angle to the cartridge case. Do not reuse a label.

No other labels can be placed on the same surface as the external volser cartridge label. Labels on other surfaces of the cartridge must not interfere with the cartridge accessor's gripper or the tape drives, and they should **not** be device-readable. If they are, they may interfere with the ability of the vision system to read the volser and the media-type label.

Cartridge Media-Type Labeling

Apply the media-type label in one of the following areas:

- If the cartridge has no separate area below the volser label (for example, an indented area), place the media-type label in line with and just below the volser label.
- If the cartridge has a separate area (for example, an indented area) approximately 2 mm (0.08 in.) below the volser label, place the media-type label in the separate area.

See examples **2**, **4**, **5**, and **6** in Figure 20 on page 23.

The label must be flat to within 0.5 mm (0.02 in.) over the length of the label and have no folds, missing pieces, or smudges. The label must not be rotated more than 3° from being parallel with the edges of the cartridge.

Cartridge Storage Cells

The names of the cartridge cell locations allow you to find the cartridges during Manual mode operation. The cell name consists of three values: a wall number, a column letter, and a row number. For example, Figure 22 shows cell location 2 A 1.

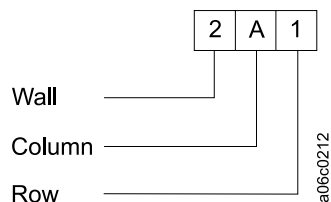


Figure 22. Cartridge Storage Cell Names

Figure 23 on page 27 shows the labeling of the cartridge storage cell.

Wall number

The even-numbered wall numbers **3** represent the walls on the front doors of the 3494. The odd-numbered wall numbers represent the walls on the rear of the 3494.

Column letters

The column letters **1** range from A to E. The letters start with A at the left of the frame and end with E at the right.

Note: The L1x Frame has only four columns; therefore, the letter range is from A to D.

Row numbers

The row numbers **2** range from 1 to 20 or from 1 to 40, depending on the frame and the wall. The numbers start with 1 at the top of the frame and end at 40 for the lowest row.

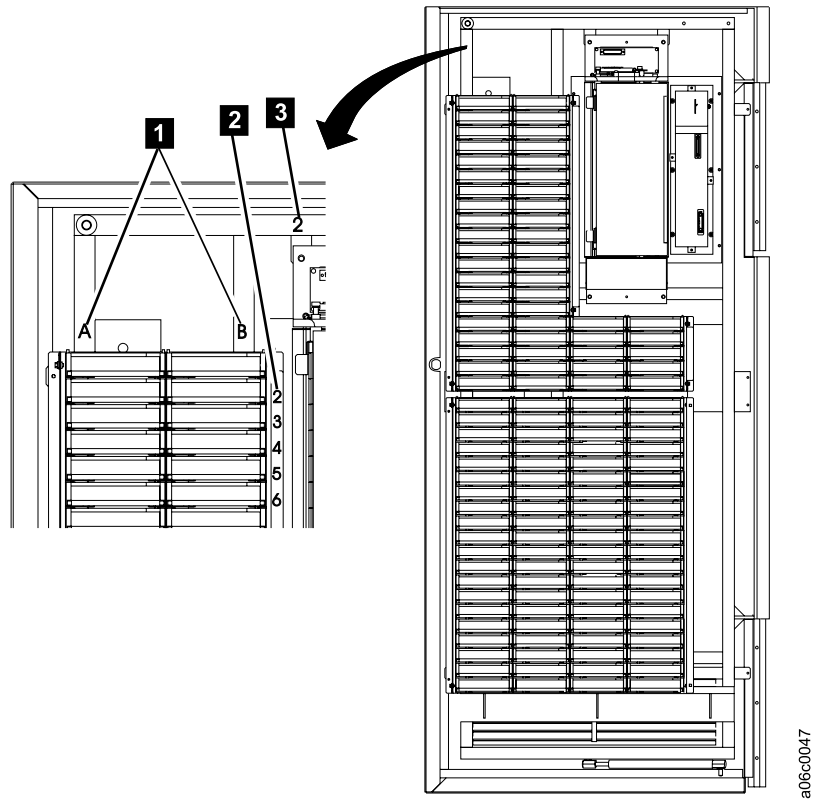


Figure 23. Cartridge Storage Cell Labeling

Reserved Cartridge Storage Cells

The 3494 reserves certain cells within the 3494 for functions that you do not control actively.

In other than the HA1 Frames, these locations are Error Recovery Cells 1 A 1 (if the optional Dual Gripper feature is installed, 1 A 3 instead of 1 A 1) and CE cartridge cell 1 A 20. If both 3490E and 3590 tape subsystems are present, CE cartridge cell 1 A 19 is also reserved. These are used as error recovery cells and for service cartridges.

In the HA1 Frames, these locations are Error Recovery Cells 1 A 1 and 1 A 2, or, if the Dual Gripper feature is installed, 1 A 3 and 1 A 4. CE cartridge cells are stored in the service bays.

Cartridge Storage Capacity

Table 2 shows the cartridge capacity of each frame.

Table 2. 3494 Cartridge Capacity

Model or Frame	Without Dual Gripper	With Dual Gripper
L10, L12, L14 Frame	240 (see notes 1, 4, 5, and 6)	216 (see notes 2, 4, 5, and 6)
S10 Frame, FC 5400	400	360
D10 Frame (without 3490E Model CxA or F1A)	400	360
D10 Frame, FC 5300 (with 3490E Model CxA or F1A)	300	270
D12 Frame, FC 5500	400	360
D12 Frame, FC 5302 (without 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A)	400	360
D12 Frame, FC 5302 (with one or two 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A)	335	305
D12 Frame, FC 5302 (with RPQ), FC 5502 or 5503 (with three or four 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A)	290	260
D12 Frame, FC 5302 (with RPQs), FC 5502 or 5503 (with RPQ and five or six 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A)	250	230
D14 Frame, FC 5304 (without 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A)	400	360
D14 Frame, FC 5304 or 5504 (with one or two 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A)	345	305
D14 Frame, FC 5304 or 5504 (with RPQ and three or four 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A)	305	275
VTB B16	400	360
B18, B10, B20 VTS, CX0	0	0
HA1 Frames (service bays)	0	0
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Optional convenience I/O station features reduce the cartridge capacity by 30 cartridges (FC 5210) or 80 cartridges (FC 5230). With FC 5215 (Dual Gripper) installed, the convenience I/O station features reduce the cartridge capacity by 26 cartridges (FC 5210) or 72 cartridges (FC 5230). Selecting the high-capacity I/O facility reduces the cartridge capacity, depending on the options chosen (see “High-Capacity I/O Facility” on page 18). One cell is reserved for ejecting cartridges if a convenience I/O station feature is not installed and the high-capacity output facility is not defined. A maximum of two cells is reserved for certain service representative functions. With the HA1 Frames installed, there are no cells reserved in the L1x for service functions. One cell is reserved for error-recovery operations in configurations without the HA1 Frames. Two cells are reserved for error-recovery operations in configurations with the HA1 Frames. 		

Library Manager

The Library Manager processes all requests and control functions in the 3494.

User Interface

The user interface enables you to obtain information about the operation of the 3494. It also instructs the Library Manager to perform specific tasks through the use of the Library Manager console (display and keyboard with its pointing device).

You can also access the Library Manager from a remote location. For information on how to do this, see Chapter 7, “Remote Library Manager Console Feature” on page 301 or “IBM TotalStorage 3494 Tape Library Specialist” on page 32.

Password Protection

Password protection for the level of authorization is optional. The user interface recognizes the following authorization levels:

General operator

A general operator performs the day-to-day basic interactions with the 3494. This is limited generally to inquiries about the 3494 status or to perform cartridge insert and eject operations. A general operator has a limited level of authorization.

System administrator

A system administrator is an operator with additional training on the management of both the 3494 and the data. The system administrator typically handles the initial installation of volumes into the 3494 and resolves problems with volumes during operation. The system administrator has authorization access to all functions of the 3494, except for those uniquely related to the service and repair of the 3494.

Service representative

The service representative has full authorization access to all functions of the 3494.

If you choose to use password protection, the password can protect the following functions of the Library Manager:

- Service menu
- Inventory new storage
- Reinventory complete system
- Emergency power off (EPO) recovery
- Shutdown
- Keyboard and display lockup
- System administrator to unlock
- Unlock keyboard and display
- Service Access
- Cancel VTS Export and Import

Each time a user enters a part of the application that requires a password, then enters a password, a log entry is made at the Library Manager. Exiting a protected menu also creates a log entry. See “Change System Administrator Password” on page 253 for more information.

Database

The Library Manager creates and maintains a database that contains the following:

- The configuration of the 3494
- Physical location information for all the elements of the 3494 that the cartridge accessor services
- The inventory of the physical cartridge volumes and logical volumes that a VTS manages; also information about their use and current status
- The status of each 3490E or 3590 device and virtual device

As operations progress through the library, the Library Manager updates the database dynamically on the disk drive to reflect the current status of the 3494.

Advanced Policy Management

Advanced Policy Management gives you limited control over the management of the logical volumes that reside in a VTS subsystem. This includes functions such as managing the movement and location of logical volumes and protection of data from loss due to single points of failure. These functions allow you to better utilize the resources of the VTS. For specific details on how to perform these functions, please see Chapter 6. Advanced Operating Procedures.

Volume Grouping

This function allows you to group volumes in a library (physical and logical) for a variety of reasons.

- To ensure that physical volumes, both scratch and private, needed to run applications are available when needed.
- To group together logical volumes with common characteristics such as expiration date, offsite disaster recovery data, or backup copy for more efficient export or data movement.
- To track whether volumes are being used or not in cases where the method of charging for I/T services is based on the number of physical volumes allocated for an application, department, or area of enterprise.
- To ensure sole access to use, in cases where your enterprise has purchased their own physical media.
- To separate volumes as they are used by different companies in cases where the physical media is owned by a contracting company, not the provider of the management services.
- To separate volumes as they are used by different divisions or in cases where company policies and security requirements require it.

Local Tape Volume Duplexing

Critical data is currently copied on physically separate tape volumes either manually or through additional job steps. Local Tape Volume Duplexing allows you to make a selective dual copy so you can cause the secondary copy to be stored on a separate physical tape. This prevents stacking on the same physical tape as the primary copy.

Peer-to-Peer Copy Mode

The Peer-to-Peer Copy Mode function provides DFSMS control of the copy mode for each logical volume. The control for this function is provided through the Management Class construct and policies established outboard through the Library Manager. A Management Class construct can be set to immediate, deferred, or default mode. Constructs set to immediate mode or deferred mode override the customer engineer-set default value for the VTC. These modes also override values

set by a PSF-PMC command. If the construct is set to Default mode, the default value set by the customer engineer or by a PSF-PMC command is followed.

Tape Volume Cache Management

The mount response time performance for specific volume requests in a VTS can vary greatly depending on whether the requested volume resides in the Tape Volume Cache or if it needs to be recalled from a stacked volume. Tape Volume Cache Management allows you to manage the residency of logical volumes in the Tape Volume Cache to maximize the possibility of the needed volume being resident in the cache.

HA1 Frames

If the HA1 Frames is installed, the right service bay contains a second Library Manager. Each Library Manager contains two hard (disk) drives: a primary disk and a secondary disk. Under normal operation, one Library Manager is the active Library Manager, and the other Library Manager is the standby Library Manager. The active Library Manager, on its primary disk, creates and updates the database dynamically to reflect the current status of each 3494. The secondary disk contains a backup of the database, which the Library Manager also updates dynamically to reflect the current status of the 3494.

If the active Library Manager fails, the standby Library Manager becomes the active Library Manager automatically and takes control of operations. A new backup database is then created on the active Library Manager's secondary disk. The new active Library Manager runs in degraded mode until the failing Library Manager is repaired. This allows continued operation of the 3494.

Database Information Available to a Host

The Library Manager maintains information in its database that a host may request. The form of the particular host request is dependent on the host environment. The following information is available through the host:

Category inventory data	Records for 100 volumes in the 3494 for the category specified, starting after the sequence number that the request specifies. If fewer than 100 volumes are in the category, the Library Manager returns all of the remaining records. Each record contains the current status and media type for a volume in the inventory.
Device data	Information about any particular device in the 3494. This information includes the device states, volser, and category of the mounted cartridge.
Expanded volume data	More detailed information about the current status and media type for a specific volume than the volume data information request. It does not provide physical location information for the volume.
Inventory volume count	The number of volumes in the 3494 for either the entire inventory or a specified category.
Inventory data	Records for 100 volumes in the 3494, starting after the volume that the request specifies. If fewer than 100 volumes remain in the 3494, the Library Manager returns all of the remaining records. Each

	record contains the current status and media type for a volume in the inventory.
Library information data	The current operational status of the 3494 and basic 3494 configuration data with information on installed options.
Reserved category data	Information about the categories that have already been reserved in the 3494.
Statistical data	Information about the current work load and performance characteristics of the 3494.
Volume data	Information about the current status and media type of the volume specified.
Category attribute data	Information about the category attributes, for example, the name.

IBM TotalStorage 3494 Tape Library Specialist

The IBM TotalStorage 3494 Tape Library Specialist (Specialist) is a Web-based user interface to the Library Manager. Using the Specialist, you can access information such as current 3494 status and VTS statistics from your Web browser by connecting to the Web server on the Library Manager PC. The Web server serves HTML pages to a remote Web browser over your LAN connection or through the Remote Service Access connection over a modem for Service. For detailed information on the functions and features of the Tape Library Specialist, see “3494 Web Interfaces” on page 290.

The minimum requirements to use the Specialist are as follows:

- 64 MB of RAM
- Functional code of 524 or greater

The Specialist feature is already on your 3494. To enable it, simply go to the **Commands** dropdown in the Library Manager and select **Specialist (Web Server)**. Then, select **Enable/Disable** and enable the Specialist. Please see the Specialist (Web Server) section in Chapter 6. Advanced Operating Procedures for more information.

The Tape Library Specialist is not a replacement for the Remote Library Manager Console (see Chapter 7, “Remote Library Manager Console Feature” on page 301). The Tape Library Specialist allows multiple active server connections at the same time (service and several user connections). It supports English and Japanese.

Operational Modes and States

The 3494 operates in one of the following modes:

- Auto
- Pause
- Manual

The 3494 operates in one of the following operational states:

- Online
- Offline

For a detailed description of these operations, see Chapter 4, “Operational Modes and States and Informational States” on page 73.

3590 Model A60 Controller Adjacent Frame Support

The Adjacent Frame Support feature allows up to ten 3590 tape drives to be attached to the same 3590 Model A60 Controller. Previously, a maximum of four tape drives could be attached to the same 3590 Model A60 Controller. One frame (a D14 Frame) must have four 3590 tape drives installed and attached to the 3590 Model A60 Controller. The second frame can be one of the following:

- L12 or L14 Frame with up to two tape drives
- D12 Frame with up to six tape drives

These tape drives can be attached to the 3590 Model A60 Controller in the adjacent D14 Frame.

This feature allows two frames to be “linked” together. The frames are “linked” during the teach operation, which the service representative performs during installation.

Call Home Support

The Call Home function generates a service alert automatically when a problem occurs with one of the following units:

- B18, B10, or B20 VTS
- AX0
- 3590 Model A50 or A60 Controller
- Library Manager, if attached to a VTS that supports Call Home

Status information is transmitted to the IBM Support Center for problem evaluation; a service representative can be dispatched to the installation. The user may also initiate the Call Home process using the Library Manager operator panel for a problem with one of the listed units. Call Home allows the service alert to be sent to a pager service so that multiple people, including the operator, can be notified. The Call Home function is not active automatically. Your service representative can activate the function at the installation of the listed units. The service representative may also activate or deactivate the function through service menus.

Chapter 2. Controls and Indicators

This chapter describes the controls and indicators for the 3494.

You control the 3494 through the operator panel (**1** in Figure 24) on the front of the L1x Frame. A convenience I/O station feature (**2** if installed) is also on the front of the L1x Frame, next to the operator panel. The handles (**3** for opening the doors on the front of the frames are located next to the door locks (**4**). The Library Manager is in the rear of the L1x Frame (see Figure 27 on page 39). The tape subsystem controls are on the front of the drives, inside the L1x Frame and D1x Frame.

Note: The 3494 shipping group supplies two keys. Operators and service personnel use one key to open the front doors on the 3494. Service personnel use the other key to open the doors on the back of the 3494.

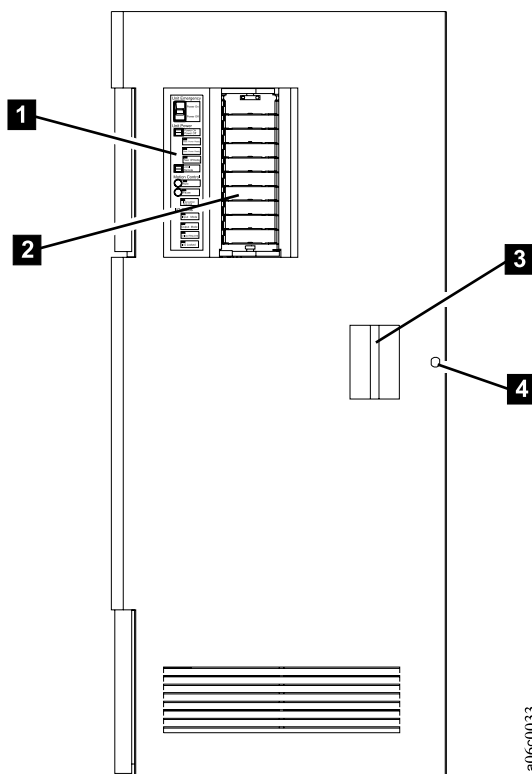


Figure 24. L1x Frame - Front Door

L1x Operator Panel

The front door of the L1x Frame holds the operator panel. You control normal operation of the 3494 with this panel.

Power Controls and Power Status LEDs

See Figure 25 on page 37 for the locations of the power controls and power status LEDs.

1 Unit Emergency switch

Setting the Unit Emergency switch to **O** (OFF) powers off the 3494 immediately. Use this switch only in an emergency. Do not use it to power on or power off the 3494. Sudden removal of power in case of emergency may cause loss of data. The Unit Emergency switch must be in the **I** (ON) position to power on the 3494.

Notes:

1. If the 3494 has more than eight frames or has the optional HA1 Frames, a second Unit Emergency switch is located at the right end of the 3494. You can use either switch to power off the 3494 immediately.
2. Setting the Unit Emergency switches on the 3494 to **O** (OFF) does not power off the B18, B10, or B20 VTS, the CX0, or the AX0s.

2 Unit Power switch

The Unit Power switch turns power on and off to the components inside the 3494. Use the Unit Power switch to power on and off the 3494 under normal conditions. Using the Unit Power switch to power off the 3494 allows the Library Manager, VTSs, controllers, and tape drives to shut down in an orderly manner.

3 Rack Power Ready LED

The Rack Power Ready light emitting diode (LED), when lit, indicates that ac power is on in the L1x Frame.

4 System Power Ready LED

The System Power Ready LED, when lit, indicates that ac power is on to the control units and drive units inside the 3494.

5 Power Off Pending LED

The Power Off Pending LED, when flashing, indicates that power to the 3494 is being turned off.

6 Local Remote switch

If the Local Remote Power feature is installed, the Local Remote switch allows the switches on the operator panel (Local) or an AS/400 or iSeries (Remote) to control the 3494's power. If the Local Remote Power feature is not installed, the Local Remote switch must be in the Local position.

Attention: If the Local Remote Power feature is not installed, pressing the Local Remote switch to the Remote position causes the 3494 to power off.

Motion Control Switches and Status LEDs

See Figure 25 for the locations of the motion control switches and status LEDs.

7 Auto mode switch and status LED

The Auto mode Motion Control switch allows you to place the 3494 into Auto mode. The Auto LED flashes during the mode transition and remains lit when in Auto mode. If the mode transition cannot be completed, the Intervention Required LED lights.

8 Pause mode switch and status LED

The Pause mode Motion Control switch allows you to place the 3494 into Pause mode. The Pause LED flashes during the mode transition and remains lit when in Pause mode. If the mode transition cannot be completed, the Intervention Required LED lights.

9 Intervention Required LED

The Intervention Required LED, when lit, indicates that operator intervention is required. See “Operator Intervention” on page 251 for instructions on performing operator interventions.

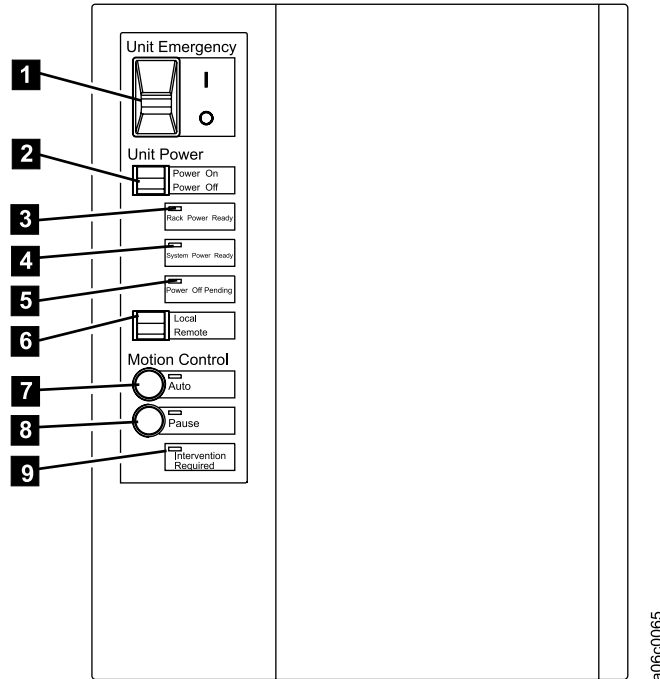


Figure 25. L1x Frame - Operator Panel without Convenience I/O Station Feature

Convenience I/O Station Status LEDs

If a convenience I/O station feature is installed on the 3494, four additional status LEDs are present on the operator panel. See Figure 26 for the locations of these I/O status LEDs.

1 Input Mode status LED

The Input Mode status LED, when lit, indicates that cartridges are in the convenience I/O station and that the station is in Input mode.

2 Output Mode status LED

The Output Mode status LED, when lit, indicates that cartridges are being ejected from the 3494 into the convenience I/O station.

3 Unload Required status LED

The Unload Required status LED, when lit, indicates that the convenience I/O station has ejected cartridges that need to be removed.

4 I/O Locked status LED

The I/O Locked status LED, when lit, indicates that the convenience I/O station is locked and is being used by the cartridge accessor.

5 Convenience I/O Station Operation Tab

The convenience I/O station operation tab is used to open the convenience I/O station door when the door is unlocked (when the I/O Locked status LED is not lit).

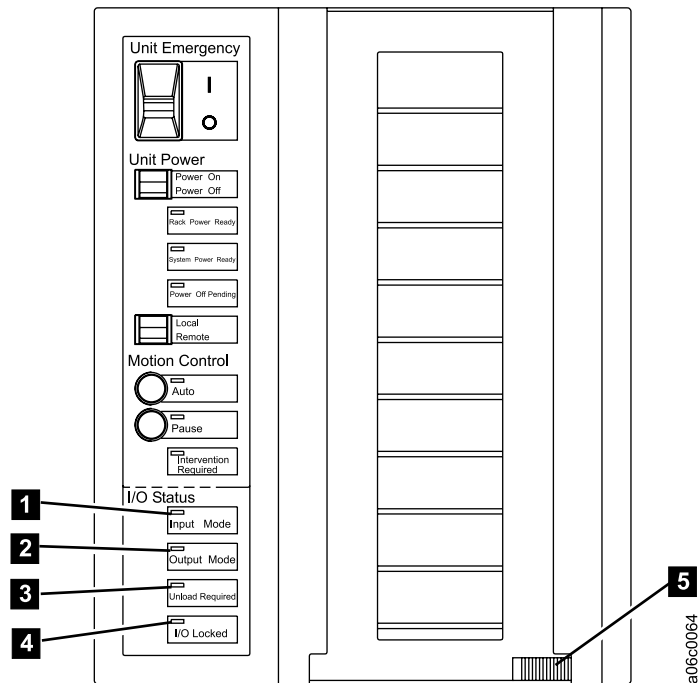


Figure 26. L1x Frame - Operator Panel with Convenience I/O Station Feature

Library Manager

The Library Manager display **1** (see Figure 27) and keyboard (with its pointing device) **2** are located in the rear of the L1x Frame. The Library Manager is used to perform system administrator activities and advanced operator activities. The brightness and contrast controls for the Library Manager display are located on the back of the display. An optional Remote Library Manager Console feature is also available for installing in a remote location in a LAN environment.

The Library Manager display is shut off by the operating system software when there has been no activity by the operator. This “snooze” function is provided to conserve power and increase the reliability of the display hardware. If the 3494 is powered on and the display is off, you can press any key on the keyboard to activate the display.

See “Selecting with the Pointing Device” on page 101 for a detailed description on using the pointing device. The optional HA1 Frames, service bay B, is similar in looks and function.

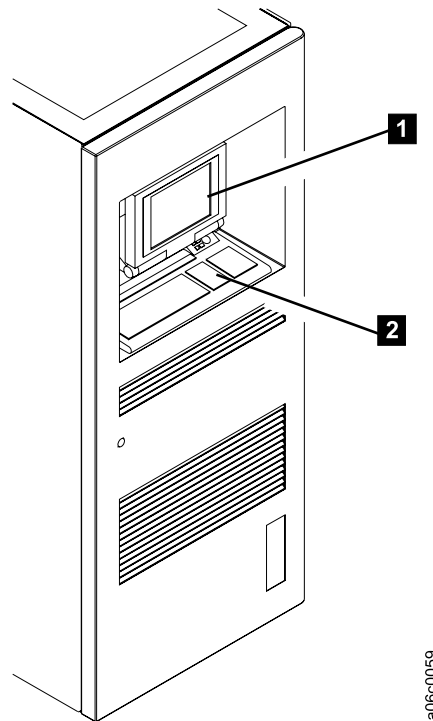


Figure 27. Library Manager

B16 VTS Controls

All control functions for the B16 VTS are integrated into the Library Manager (see Chapter 6, “Advanced Operating Procedures” on page 93).

B18, B10, B20 VTS Operator Panel

The rear door of the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs holds the operator panel.

Figure 28 shows the location of the power control on the operator panel of the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs.

1 Unit Emergency switch

Setting the Unit Emergency switch to the **O** (OFF) position powers off the B18, B10, or B20 VTS immediately. Use this switch only in an emergency. Do not use it to power on or power off the B18, B10, or B20 VTS. Sudden removal of power in case of emergency may cause the loss of data. The Unit Emergency switch must be in the **I** (ON) position to allow remote control of the Model B18, B10, or B20 VTS power by the associated 3494.

Note: Setting the Unit Emergency switch for the B18, B10, or B20 VTS to the **O** (OFF) position does not remove power from the associated 3494.

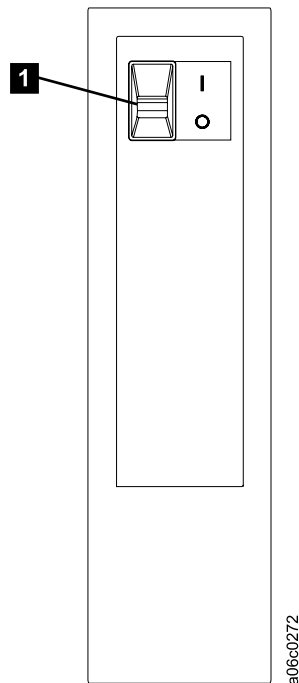


Figure 28. B18, B10, or B20 VTS - Operator Panel

B18, B10, B20 VTS Controls

All control functions for the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs, other than emergency power control, are integrated into the Library Manager. For more information, see Chapter 6, “Advanced Operating Procedures” on page 93. See “B18, B10, B20 VTS Operator Panel” for the Unit Emergency switch function.

CX0 Operator Panel

The rear door of the CX0 holds the operator panel.

Figure 29 shows the location of the power control on the operator panel of the CX0.

1 Unit Emergency switch

Setting the Unit Emergency switch to the **O** (OFF) position powers off the CX0 and all of its internal components immediately. Use this switch only in an emergency. Do not use it to power on or power off the AX0s in the CX0. Sudden removal of power in an emergency may cause the loss of data. The Unit Emergency switch must be in the **I** (ON) position to allow the installed AX0s to be powered on manually by service representatives.

Note: Setting the Unit Emergency switch for the CX0 to the **O** (OFF) position does not remove power from the other components of a PtP VTS configuration.

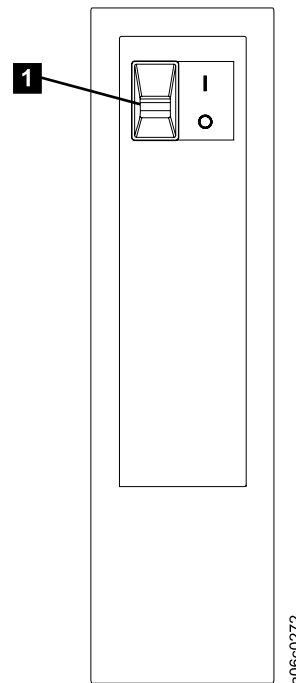


Figure 29. CX0 Auxiliary Frame - Operator Panel

3590 Model B1A, E1A, and H1A Tape Subsystem Controls

The 3590 Model B1A, E1A, or H1A operator panel (**1** in Figure 30) is accessible by opening the front door of the frame that contains the tape subsystem.

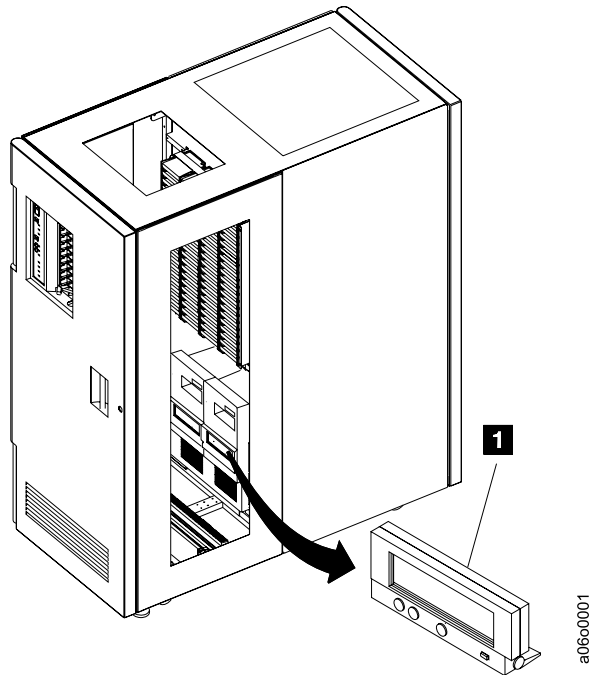


Figure 30. 3590 Model B1A, E1A, and H1A - Operator Panel

When 3590 tape subsystems are attached to the 3494, the following 3590 functions change:

Drive control	The Library Manager controls the loading and the unloading of volumes. The 3590 tape subsystem communicates with the Library Manager to update the database with drive status and cartridge location information.
Message displays	The Library Manager controls the display of messages to prevent the messages from getting out of synchronization with the Library Manager during Manual mode operations.
Attention interrupt	The Library Manager can use the communication path to the 3590 Model A00, A50, or A60 Controller to send information to the host.

For more information on 3590 controls and indicators, see the *IBM Magstar 3590 Tape Subsystem Operator Guide*.

3490E Model C1A, C2A Tape Subsystem Controls

The 3490E Model CxA control unit and drive unit operator panels (**1** and **2** respectively in Figure 31) are accessible by opening the front door of the frame that contains the tape subsystem.

When 3490E subsystems are attached to the 3494, the following 3490E functions change:

Drive control

The Library Manager controls the loading and the unloading of volumes. The 3490E tape subsystem communicates with the Library Manager to update the database with drive status and cartridge location information.

Message displays

The Library Manager controls the display of messages to prevent the messages from getting out of synchronization with the Library Manager during Manual mode operations.

Attention interrupt

The Library Manager can use the communication path to the 3490E subsystems to send information to the host.

For more information on 3490E Model CxA controls and indicators, see the *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Enhanced Capability Models C10, C11, C1A, C22, and C2A Operator's Guide*.

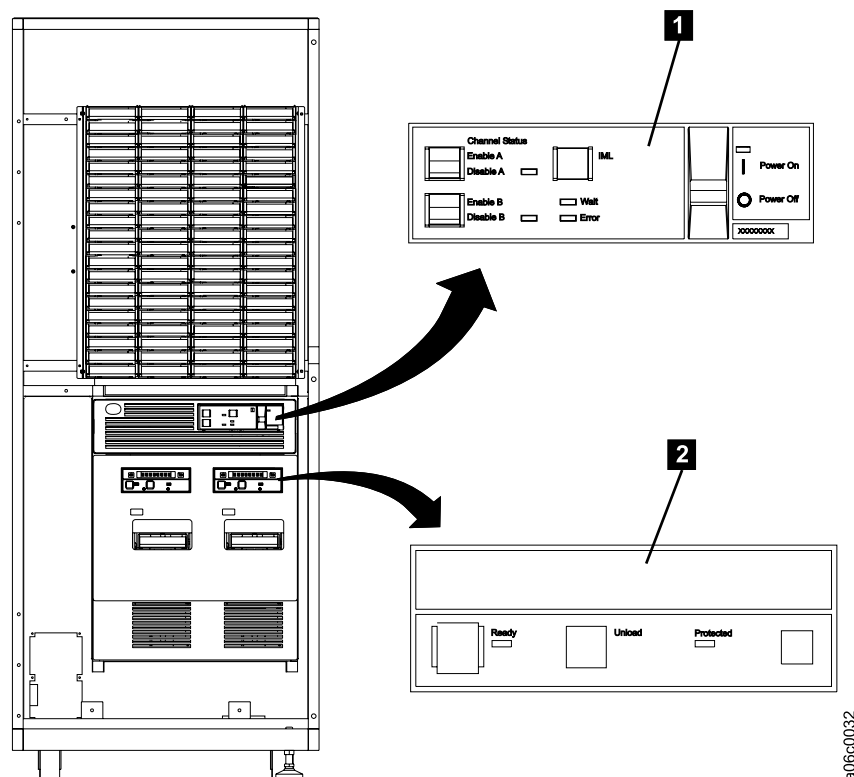


Figure 31. 3490E Model C1A, C2A - Controls and Indicators

3490E Model F1A Tape Subsystem Controls

The 3490E Model F1A operator panel (**1** in Figure 32) is accessible by opening the front door of the frame that contains the tape subsystem.

When 3490E subsystems are attached to the 3494, the following 3490E functions change:

Drive control

The Library Manager controls the loading and the unloading of volumes. The 3490E tape subsystem communicates with the Library Manager to update the database with drive status and cartridge location information.

Message displays

The Library Manager controls the display of messages to prevent the messages from getting out of synchronization with the Library Manager during Manual mode operations.

Attention interrupt

The Library Manager can use the communication path to the 3490E subsystems to send information to the host.

For more information on 3490E Model F1A controls and indicators, see the *IBM 3490E Tape Subsystem Models F01, F1A, F11, and FC0 Installation, Planning, and Operator's Guide*.

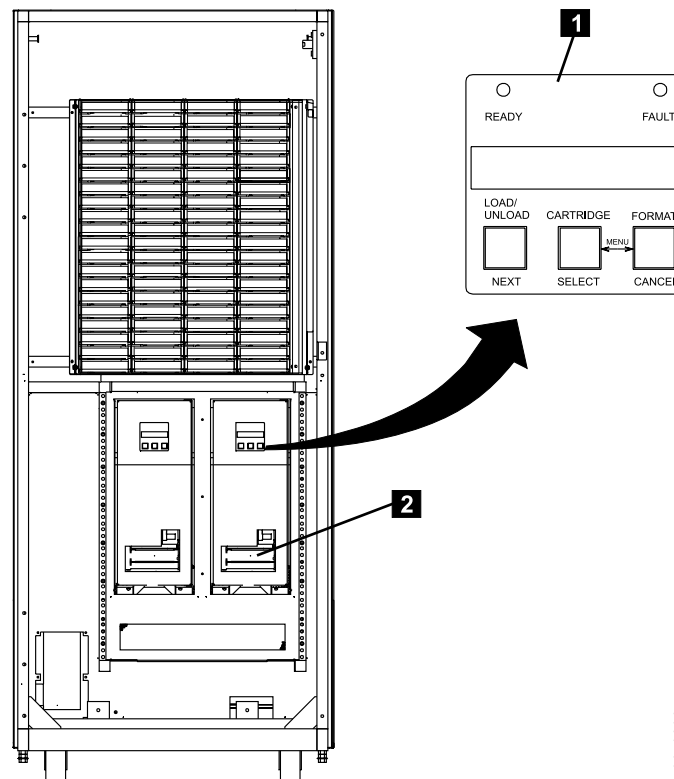


Figure 32. 3490E Model F1A - Controls and Indicators

a06c0236

Chapter 3. Operational Characteristics

This chapter describes the operational characteristics of the 3494.

3490E and 3590 Tape Subsystem Operation

The 3494 controls the loading, unloading, and associated operations of the tape subsystem in the 3494. No operator attendance is required unless the 3494 cannot recover from a subsystem problem.

In addition to existing tape subsystem error recovery, the control unit and the Library Manager execute additional recovery procedures when the tape drive detects a load, unload, or tension loss failure.

Virtual Tape Server

The B16, B18, B10, and B20 VTSs provide higher utilization of 3590 tape technology than current tape controller permits. A VTS improves utilization without impacting the current operating system or independent software vendors. The subsystem combines the random access and high performance characteristics of disk storage with outboard hierarchical storage management and virtual tape drives. This provides significant reductions in the number of physical cartridges, tape drives, and automated libraries that are needed to store the tape data. The following are the key concepts of the subsystem architecture:

- Emulation of 32, 64, 128, or 256 tape drives (3490E-type)
- Tape volume cache
- Advanced Policy Management of the tape volume cache
- Maintaining data fragments from copied volumes
- Fast response for nonspecific mount requests
- Deletion of VTS logical volumes
- Deletion of expired VTS logical volume data
- Scratch stacked volumes
- 3494 integration
- ESCON, FICON, or SCSI host attachment
- Peer-to-Peer VTS (PtP VTS)

Emulation of 3490E-Type Tape Drives

From a host perspective, the VTS subsystem looks like two, four, eight, or sixteen 3490E control units, each with 16 tape drives. Each emulated drive is called a virtual tape drive. The subsystem handles all 3490 tape commands. Emulating a 3490E-type tape drive eliminates the need for host software support of a new type of tape drive in order to utilize the capacity of 3590-type tape drives. There is no direct relationship between a virtual tape drive and a real 3590 tape drive.

Data is written and read as if it is stored on a real Cartridge System Tape or an Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape. However, within the subsystem, data is first stored on disks. All tape read and write commands are translated to read and

write data records from or to disk storage. Tape marks are stored as special records on the disk storage as well. Volumes residing on disk storage are called virtual volumes.

The amount of data that is stored on a virtual volume is variable up to a maximum as determined by the media type selected. Two media types are emulated (standard Cartridge System Tape and Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape). They can hold up to 400 MB or 800 MB of data, respectively, without data compression. With data compression provided by the B10 or B20 VTS or by the ESCON High Performance Option feature or the Extended High Performance Option feature of the B18 VTS, the actual host data stored on a virtual Cartridge System Tape or Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape volume can be up to 1.2 GB or 2.4 GB, respectively (assuming a 3:1 compression).

All host interactions with data in a VTS are through virtual volumes and associated virtual tape drives; there is no direct access to the data on a physical cartridge or drive.

Tape Volume Cache

The size of the disk storage is large enough so more virtual volumes can be retained in it than just the ones currently associated with the virtual drives. After an application closes a virtual volume, if it was modified, a copy of it is made by the storage management software in the subsystem onto a physical tape. The virtual volume remains available on the disk storage until the space it occupies is needed to satisfy another mount request. Leaving the virtual volume in the disk storage allows for fast access to it during a subsequent request for the volume. The disk storage, and management of that space to keep volumes available after they are closed, is called the Tape Volume Cache. The performance for mounting of a volume that is in the tape volume cache is quicker than if a real physical volume is mounted. Disk storage, in effect, caches the tape volumes and provides for fast access.

Storage Management of the Tape Volume Cache

Storage management software in the subsystem manages the contents of the tape volume cache. Virtual tape volumes are copied from the tape volume cache to physical tape when the virtual volume has been closed, and they are recalled from tape to the tape volume cache when they are again requested to be mounted. The storage management software stacks multiple migrated files onto a 3590 tape, thereby utilizing the full physical tape storage capacity. DFSMS policy management provides users with the ability to control tape volume cache preferences for the retention of virtual volumes.

VTS Export and Import Overview

The following sections provide an overview of VTS Export and Import operations.

Export and Import Operations

Note: In a PtP VTS configuration, the Export and Import functions of FC 4000 (Advanced Function) or FC 4001–4004 (Advanced Policy Management) will be disabled.

The Export and Import operations provide a way to move logical volumes out of a VTS to physical cartridges called Exported Stacked Volumes and to return them to the same VTS or move them to another VTS. Lists of volumes for Export or Import operations are provided to a VTS on logical volumes called the Export List Volume

or the Import List Volume, which are resident in the VTS. The Status File on the Export or Import List Volume provides status for each logical volume being processed. See Appendix B, "VTS Export and Import Advanced Function" on page 375 for information about preparing the Export or Import List Volume.

An emergency copy of a logical volume may be made by the VTS Exported Volume Read Utility (provided by DITTO/ESA for MVS) from an Exported Stacked Volume using a native 3590 tape drive in the VTS. The J- or K-type Exported Stacked Volume must not be inserted into a 3494 having a VTS with a volser range that allows the cartridge to become a VTS Stacked Volume and be rewritten. Also, adding VTS Stacked Volumes to your tape management system inventory can help prevent inadvertent use of an Exported Stacked Volume.

Import

The Import operation allows logical volumes that are stored on physical Exported Stacked Volumes to become logical volumes within a VTS. A specific volume or all volumes may be imported from Exported Stacked Volumes that have been entered into a 3494 through the convenience I/O station and have been moved to the Import category by an operator at the Library Manager console. Host console messages provide status on progress and completion of the Import operation.

Export

The Export operation allows data on logical volumes in a VTS to be removed from the VTS onto physical Exported Stacked Volumes. The list of volumes to be exported and a destination for each volume is provided by the host operator or tape management system. Logical volumes with the same destination are grouped on the same Exported Stacked Volume. This physical volume is then moved into a category that allows an operator at the Library Manager console to eject the cartridge through the convenience I/O station for storage outside the 3494 or movement to another 3494 to be imported into a VTS. Host console messages provide status on progress and success of the Export operation.

Note: Exported Stacked Volumes created on 3590 Model B1A tape drives that are associated with a VTS can be imported into VTS configurations that have 3590 Model B1A or E1A tape drives. Exported Stacked Volumes created on 3590 Model E1A tape drives cannot be imported using 3590 Model B1A tape drives.

Advanced Policy Management

Included in the 3494 FC 4001–4004 Advanced Policy Management is a form of volume management called Advanced Policy Management. This gives you more control over how logical and physical volumes are managed within the subsystem so you can better utilize the resources of a VTS. This allows you to do the following:

- **Volume Grouping:** Allows you to control the grouping of virtual volumes together on 3590 media. Grouping can be controlled by DFSMS Automatic Class Selection or by storage administrator-defined defaults.
- **Local Tape Volume Duplexing:** Allows you to control the selective creation of a second tape copy of virtual volumes in a different storage pool than the primary copy. Dual copy is controlled by DFSMS Automatic Class Selection or by storage administrator-defined defaults.
- **Peer-to-Peer Selective Copy Mode:** Allows you to control the copy mode for each logical volume.

- **Tape Volume Cache Management:** Allows you to manage the residency of logical volumes in the Tape Volume Cache to maximize the probability of the needed volumes being resident in the Tape Volume Cache when requested.

The key elements of this feature are storage management constructs and storage pools.

Storage Management Constructs

Storage management constructs are user-defined groupings used to define actions for logical volumes. Each construct type can have a maximum of 256 names including the default name. The default name is 8 blanks and is displayed on the Library Manager and the Specialist as 8 dashes (-).

Each construct type has an 8 character name and a 70 character description. These can be defined through the Library Manager (Manage Constructs and Pools) or the Specialist (Manage Constructs).

How the construct names are assigned to a logical volume or set of volumes can be used to provide creative volume grouping. For instance, two sets of volumes assigned to two separate Storage Groups (primary storage pool) can be assigned to the same Management Class (secondary storage pool). This allows a single storage pool to be used as a secondary pool for volumes which have multiple primary storage pools.

There are four storage construct types:

- Storage Group
- Management Class
- Storage Class
- Data Class

Storage Group

Used to define a primary storage pool for a logical volume. A primary storage pool is where logical volumes assigned to the specific storage group are to be written to. For example, logical volume LOG001 is assigned to storage group "BACKUP." Storage Group "BACKUP" is defined with a Primary Storage Pool of 3. When LOG001 is written to a stacked volume it will be written to a stacked volume that is in pool 3.

Multiple Storage Groups can define the same primary storage pool.

Valid Primary Storage Pools are 1 - 32.

Management Class

Used to define a secondary storage pool and a Peer-to-Peer Copy Mode for a logical volume.

A secondary storage pool of zero (0) indicates a second copy is not made for logical volumes assigned to the management class. If the management class a logical volume is assigned to has a secondary storage pool of 1 - 32, a second copy of the volume is made onto a stacked volume in this pool. For example, logical volume LOG001 is assigned to management class "DUPCOPY." Management Class "DUPCOPY" is defined with a secondary storage pool of 4. The secondary copy of LOG001 is written to a stacked volume that is in pool 4. Multiple Management Classes can define the same secondary pool.

The Peer-to-Peer Copy Mode is used in the Peer-To-Peer VTS (PTP) environment only. For non-PTP environments this element is ignored. It controls when a logical volume is copied to the second Peer-to-Peer library. The options are as follows:

- **Immediate Copy Mode:** In this mode, when a host Rewind/Unload command is received, the copy operation begins. The copy operation is only performed by the Virtual Tape Controller (VTC) that received the Rewind/Unload command. When the copy operation completes, the VTC indicates that the Rewind/Unload is complete. Since the copy operation is executed during the command execution of the Rewind/Unload command, the job times for writing a logical volume is longer when compared to the same job on a non-PTP VTS.
- **Deferred Copy Mode:** In this mode, when a host Rewind/Unload command is received for a logical volume, a copy operation is queued to every VTC in the configuration. Once the operation is on at least one VTC copy queue, the VTC indicates that the Rewind/Unload is complete. The copy is then executed in the background as VTS activity permits by the first VTC that also has available resources for the copy.
- **VTC Defined:** Immediate or deferred as defined at the VTC. In a Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex (GDPS) environment the VTC Defined mode should be selected. This will prevent the the Management Class defined copy mode from overriding the host or VTC defined copy mode. Multiple Management Classes can define the same Peer-to-Peer Copy Mode.

Storage Class

Used to define the Tape Volume Cache (TVC) preference for a logical volume.

The Tape Volume Cache (TVC) preference level has 3 options.

- **Use the TVC preference as defined by the IART value specified by the host to the VTS.** Using this option eases the customer's migration from using the already implemented IART method to using the Storage Class construct to define the TVC preference levels. The Storage Class can be setup to use the IART defined value until the time the customer is ready to use the Storage Class construct.
- **Use TVC Preference Level 0.** Logical volumes associated with this preference level are fragmented (no longer resident) in the cache as soon as they have been copied to a stacked volume (including secondary pool copies). They are not subject to the four minute delay between volume close and being eligible to be copied and have copy priority over volumes with other preferences. This option is useful for logical volumes that probably won't be recalled. Backup datasets are examples of this. The data will only be recalled in the event of a disaster.
- **Use TVC Preference Level 1.** Preference Level 1 will remove a logical volume from TVC if space needs to be freed in the TVC. This option is useful for data that has a high probability of being recalled.

Data Class

In the current implementation, the data class has no actions associated with it. However, all logical volumes are assigned to a data class.

Storage Pools

A storage pool contains VTS physical stacked volumes. Within a pool some of the volumes are scratch and some are private. The private volumes contain logical volumes with active data. Every VTS stacked volume is assigned to a storage pool.

Each VTS within a 3494 library has its own set of pools. There is a Common Scratch Pool (pool 0) which is a reserved pool containing only scratch stacked volumes. There are also 32 general purpose pools (pools 1-32)

How does the library determine which pool to copy a logical volume to for the primary copy? This is accomplished with the Storage Group Construct. Logical volumes are assigned to Storage Groups. A Storage Group points to a primary storage pool. When a logical volume is copied to tape, it is written to a stacked volume that is in the Storage Pool indicated in the Storage Group assigned to the logical volume.

How does the library determine which pool, if any, to copy a logical volume to for the secondary copy? This is accomplished using the Management Class construct. Logical volumes are assigned to a Management Class. A Management Class can point to a secondary storage pool. If the Management Class specifies a secondary storage pool of zero, a secondary copy of the logical volume isn't made. If the secondary pool specified by the Management Class is one of the general purpose pools (1-32) a secondary copy of the logical volume is made to a stacked volume in the specified pool.

If FC 4001–4004, Advanced Policy Management is not installed, the LM and VTS will use pools 0 and 1 under the covers. Pool 0 will be used for scratch stacked volumes and pool 1 will be used for stacked volumes containing active data.

Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00): The Common Scratch Pool (CSP) can be used by the 32 general purpose pools as a reserve from which scratch stacked volumes can be borrowed or taken from when they run out of scratch stacked volumes themselves. Pool properties determine whether a General Use pool can borrow volumes from the CSP. The CSP is pool 0 and contains only scratch stacked volumes. Stacked volumes in the CSP do not contain any active data.

32 General Use Pools (Pools 01 — 32): There are 32 General Use Pools per VTS. They are numbered 1 - 32. General use pools can contain both scratch stacked volumes and private stacked volumes. A general use pool can be set up to borrow or take scratch stacked volumes from the CSP if they run out of scratch stacked volumes. For example, pool 2 is setup to borrow volumes from the CSP. A logical volume needs to be copied to a stacked volume in pool 2 but there are no more scratch stacked volumes in pool 2. A scratch stacked volume is transferred (borrowed) from the CSP by pool 2. The logical volume can now be copied to the newly borrowed stacked volume. The borrowed stacked volume is returned to the CSP when it is reclaimed since pool 2 is set up to return borrowed stacked volumes.

Maintaining Data Fragments from Copied Volumes

When the cache space occupied by a closed virtual tape volume is needed for other active virtual volumes, the data it represents is not removed completely. A fragment of the data is kept on disk storage. The data fragment includes information about the copied virtual volume so that it can be recalled and it also includes the first several records from the last use of the volume. Normally, the first few records on a tape contain a tape volume label, and enough data records are maintained to contain an IBM standard tape label plus any unique user label records.

Fast Response for Nonspecific Mount Requests

When a nonspecific mount is requested, the user application will write data from the beginning of tape, overwriting any existing data on the tape. The host can request a nonspecific mount in a 3494 by specifying a category instead of a specific volser in the mount request. The Library Manager then selects the next available volume assigned to the specified category to satisfy the host request. Within a VTS, the data fragment is used in conjunction with a mount from category request to provide very fast response times for nonspecific mounts. Categories used for nonspecific mounts are defined through the Library Manager as “Fast Ready” categories (see Figure 106 on page 192). When a mount request specifies a category defined as “Fast Ready”, the mount is satisfied by accessing the data fragment in the tape volume cache associated with the virtual volume selected by the Library Manager to satisfy the request. No recall of the data from the previous usage of the volume is performed because the fragment contains the label information needed by the host tape management software to validate the use of the volume for a nonspecific mount request. The subsystem signals the host that the mount is complete when the fragment is accessed. The result is a very short mount response time because no physical movement or mounting of a cartridge is involved.

If a mount request specifies a category that has not been defined as “Fast Ready”, the 3494 has no indication that the application intends to write from the beginning of the volume. It is likely that the selected virtual volume is not resident in the tape volume cache and must be recalled from physical tape.

Deletion of Virtual Tape Server Logical Volumes

Logical volumes in a VTS can be deleted only under the control of the attached hosts. A logical volume can be deleted only if it is in the Insert category or a category with a Fast Ready attribute set (see “Set VTS Category Attributes” on page 191). When a logical volume is deleted, it is removed from the 3494’s inventory, and any data that was associated with the volume is deleted. A logical volume that is in a Fast Ready category is deleted from a VTS by performing the following steps. (A logical volume that is in the Insert category is deleted from a VTS by performing step 2 only).

1. Assigning the logical volume to a category within the 3494 that has the Fast Ready attribute assigned. This is accomplished by the tape management system when the data associated with the volume reaches its expiration date and the volume is returned to the scratch pool.
2. Assigning the logical volume to an eject category. This can be done by asking that the volume be ejected from the 3494, using platform-specific 3494 control interfaces; for example, with MVS/ESA, OS/390, or z/OS, through the tape management interfaces, ISMF panels, or MVS, OS/390, or z/OS operator commands.

Note: When a logical volume has been deleted from the 3494, data on the volume is deleted and cannot be recovered.

Deletion of Expired Virtual Tape Server Logical Volume Data

Logical volumes in a VTS are stored on physical stacked volumes after the host closes the logical volume. After a period of time, data on a logical volume that is not intended for long term archive, is eventually expired through the host tape management system and the logical volume is placed in scratch status. Returning a logical volume to scratch does not change the status of the data associated with the volume from the VTS’s point of view. The data on the physical stacked volume is considered valid from the VTS’s point of view until the logical volume is rewritten

or otherwise modified. This causes the VTS to continue managing the data as if it was still active, even though the user has actually scratched it. The benefit of having the VTS consider the expired data as valid is that if a mistake was made in returning a volume to scratch status, simply returning the volume to private status restores access to the data. This benefit does have a cost. These user expired logical volumes needlessly consume physical stacked volume resources, thus requiring more physical stacked volumes in a VTS. Also, since these volumes are still considered active, the time until a physical volume falls below the reclamation threshold is increased and potentially, expired data will be moved during a reclaim.

To provide for additional customer flexibility in how they want to manage the data in a VTS, an optional parameter can be specified that will cause the data associated with logical volumes that have been returned to scratch status to be deleted after a specific time period. The new parameter, expire time, is specified through the Define Fast Ready Categories window (Figure 106 on page 192). The expire time provides a grace period where expired volumes can still be returned to private status. An expire time of zero (which is the default) can be specified meaning that the data is never to be deleted. A separate expire time can be set for each category defined as Fast Ready. Deletion of the data associated with a logical volume does not remove the volume from the library inventory.

Note: Once the data associated with a logical volume has been deleted, it cannot be recovered.

When the expire time for a logical volume is reached and the data associated with the volume is deleted, this includes the data fragment in the Tape Volume Cache. The next time the volume is used, the VTS creates the image of a re-initialized tape volume. The previous label area is no longer available.

Note: Before using an expire time value that is non-zero, the customer should check that their tape management system software can handle scratch volumes that have been re-initialized.

In using this function with a Peer-to-Peer VTS, there are additional operational considerations that must be included in determining the expire time settings for the function because of the manner in which the AX0s select which VTS will be used in processing the I/O for a scratch mount. The I/O VTS selection criteria that applies here are:

- The AX0 will always select the VTS that has a valid version of a logical volume, independent of if it has been expired by the host (assigned to a scratch category).
- If both VTSs have a valid version, then the preferred VTS is selected, if that mode of operation is specified.
- If a logical volume has been deleted from a VTS, it is no longer valid and that VTS cannot be selected for the I/O VTS.
- But, if the volume has been deleted from both VTSs, then the preferred VTS is selected, if specified, and the AX0 creates the volume as a newly initialized volume.

In setting up a Peer-to-Peer VTS and when using the delete expired volume data function, the following considerations apply depending on the I/O selection mode of operation.

- **For No Preference** Ensure that the non-zero expire time on both library managers is set to the same value. If not, the VTS that expires the data first will not be used for scratch mounts.
- **For Preferred VTS** Ensure that a non-zero expire time is set on both library managers and that the non-preferred VTS/Library is set to delete the data before the preferred VTS/Library.

Setting a non-zero expire time on only the preferred library or setting it to delete data before deletions on the non-preferred one can cause scratch mounts to use the non-preferred VTS for I/O. It is recommended that the data on the non-preferred VTS/Library be set to be expired a minimum of 48 hours ahead of the data on the preferred VTS. An additional amount should be added to account for the amount of time the VTSs are to be disconnected for a disaster recovery test. For example, if the maximum disconnected time for a test is 24 hours, then the setting on the preferred VTS/Library should be 72 hours more than the setting on the non-preferred VTS/Library.

Scratch Stacked Volumes

It is essential that sufficient scratch stacked volumes be available for use by a VTS for copying a virtual volume when the volume is closed. A warning is provided when the Free Storage Threshold cannot be met with the scratch stacked volumes that are available. See the VTS Management Policies window, shown in Figure 107 on page 193.

The Reclaim Threshold Percentage as entered in the VTS Management Policies window becomes important when the supply of scratch stacked volumes is low. The VTS Space Reclamation Algorithm may impact the VTS performance when it is necessary to reclaim expired space on stacked volumes. A high Reclaim Threshold Percentage requires that more active data be moved (using VTS resources) to free the stacked volume for scratch use. As a general rule, you should try not to exceed 30%–40% as a Reclaim Threshold Percentage. It is better to add additional stacked volumes than to increase this value. When there are less than ten scratch stacked volumes, the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule shown in the VTS Management Policies window, Figure 107 on page 193, is not in effect, and the VTS proceeds to reclaim space on stacked volumes until at least 15 scratch stacked volumes are available. For the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule to be in effect with non-invasive reclamation activity by the VTS, more than 50 scratch stacked volumes must be available. Reclamation activity may affect the performance of the host jobs that run on the VTS.

Integration with the 3494

A VTS must be associated with a 3494 library because the physical assets used by the subsystem are managed by the Library Manager in the 3494. The physical assets include the 3590 tape drives and the 3590 cartridges that are used for stacking logical volumes. The Library Manager provides several other key functions involving a VTS:

- Logical library partitioning
- Operator interface
- Logical volume inventory

Logical Library Partitioning

To support the product requirement that a VTS can coexist with current 3490 and native 3590 subsystems in the same 3494, the Library Manager partitions the physical library into logical libraries. This must be done because a VTS presents the image of 3490E-type tape drives and yet cannot read or write a real 3490

cartridge. By placing a VTS in its own logical library, host software is not able to attempt to allocate a VTS drive for a real 3490 mount and vice versa.

A logical library can contain **either** of the following subsystems:

- A single VTS
- Current 3490 or native 3590 subsystems

Each logical library has its own unique library sequence number and looks like a separate physical library to the hosts attached to the subsystems in that partition.

Note: Currently, up to two VTSs (only one of which may be a B16 VTS) are allowed in a physical library.

Operator Interface

The Library Manager console is used to perform the setup, management, and status functions needed to support a VTS.

Logical Volume Inventory

The database in the Library Manager is expanded to handle the large number of logical volumes that a VTS uses. There are also new operator functions that allow the addition of logical volumes by specifying a volume serial number range through the Library Manager console (see Figure 123 on page 215).

ESCON Host Attachment

The ESCON Host Attachment provides attachment for VTS Models B18, B10, and B20.

The VTS Model B18 can be configured with one of the following:

- two standard ESCON host channel attachments
- two or four enhanced ESCON host channel attachments (FC 3302 withdrawn)
- two or four Extended Performance ESCON Channel attachments (FC 3412)
- two enhanced ESCON host channel attachments and two Extended Performance ESCON Channel attachments

When the Performance Accelerator (FC 5236) is installed, the Extended Performance ESCON Channel attachments can be activated for four or eight ESCON channel attachments when the Peer-to-Peer Copy Base (FC 4010) is not installed. This can be done by ordering Activate Additional ESCON Channels (FC 3418). Each ESCON attachment supports 64 logical paths. With four adapters, including FC 3418s, 512 logical paths can be configured to a single B18 VTS.

The VTS Model B10 can be configured with up to four Extended Performance ESCON Channel attachments. Each ESCON attachment supports 64 logical paths. A Model B10, with its four ESCON attachments, supports up to 256 logical paths. All virtual drives are addressable through any attachment interface.

The VTS Model B20 can be configured with up to 16 Extended Performance ESCON Channel attachments. Each ESCON attachment supports 64 logical paths. A Model B20, with its 16 ESCON attachments, supports up to 1024 logical paths. All virtual drives are addressable through any attachment interface.

FICON Host Attachment

The FICON channel attachment features provides attachment for VTS Models B10 and B20. The VTS Model B10 or B20 attaches to native FICON channels in systems

such as the IBM 9672 Enterprise G5 or G6 Servers and the zSeries 800 and 900 servers. Long and short wave attachments are provided and can be attached directly to a server or through a director. FICON attachment is provided by FC 3415 Long Wave FICON Channel and FC 3416 Short Wave FICON Channel. Long and short wave features can be intermixed in any combination to meet your needs on the Models B10 and B20. FICON attachment features provide increased performance for VTS configurations, greater simplicity of configuration, and increased per channel bandwidth.. They also extend the allowable server to VTS attachment distance up to 100 km.

SCSI Host Attachment

The SCSI Host Attachment feature provides attachment to RS/6000, pSeries, Hewlett-Packard, Sun, and Windows® servers. The sharing of a VTS among S/390®, zSeries™, RS/6000, pSeries, Sun, Hewlett-Packard, and Windows servers requires assignment of virtual drive usage similar to stand alone tape drives. Because only one host system at a time can use a drive, the drive has to be dedicated to that host during processing.

For a detailed discussion on tape library sharing between S/390 or zSeries and SCSI hosts, including considerations about drive sharing, volume sharing, and related software implementation steps, see the *Guide to Sharing and Partitioning IBM Tape Library Dataservers*. The SCSI target addresses are discussed in the *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*.

Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server

The PtP VTS is a configuration of multiple B18, B10, or B20 VTSs with their associated tape libraries and multiple AX0s. The AX0s are installed in one, two, three, or four CX0s. The CX0 contains no other equipment.

The B18, B10, and B20 VTSs, the AX0s, and their interconnections provide a single PtP VTS that the host system treats as a single VTS. The PtP VTS configuration provides a dual copy of data in newly created or updated tape volumes automatically. The PtP VTS stores a copy of the tape volume data in the two interconnected VTSs. This dual-volume copy functionality improves data availability and data recovery, while being transparent to user applications and host processor resources.

The PtP VTS provides a Web interface, the IBM TotalStorage Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server Specialist, that allows you to connect to the Web server on the AX0 to access information about the PtP VTS. Table 3 shows the types of information available through the Web interface of the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist. For more information, see “Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Features and Functions” on page 295.

Table 3. Accessing Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Web Information

Information Type	Reference
Home Page	“Home Page” on page 295.
System Status	“System Status” on page 295.
Virtual Tape Controller Status	“Virtual Tape Controller Status” on page 295.
VTS Status	“VTS Status” on page 295.
Library Status	“Library Status” on page 296.
System Configuration	“System Configuration” on page 296.

Table 3. Accessing Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Web Information (continued)

Information Type	Reference
Virtual Tape Controller Configuration	"Virtual Tape Controller Configuration" on page 296.
VTS Configuration	"VTS Configuration" on page 296.
Library Configuration	"Library Configuration" on page 296.
Current Drive Activity	"Current Drive Activity" on page 297.
Logical Volume Status	"Logical Volume Status" on page 297.
Logical Volume Status Results	"Logical Volume Status Results" on page 297.
Current Copy Workload	"Current Copy Workload" on page 298.
Access to Additional Information	"Access to Additional Information" on page 298.

Local and Remote Power Control

You control the local power by using a switch at the operator panel. See "Changing from Local to Remote Power" on page 84 and "Changing from Remote to Local Power" on page 85 for operating instructions.

Remote power control (a 3494 feature for attached AS/400 and iSeries) supports both local and remote power controls. When the 3494 is in local power mode, you can activate the power-on and the power-off sequences.

When the 3494 is in remote power mode, each host, through its AS/400 or iSeries system interface, can request that the power-on or power-off sequence be initiated. Any host requesting a power-on sequence causes the 3494 to power on unless the 3494 is already powered-on. Only the last host requesting the 3494 to power off initiates a power-off sequence.

Operator Involvement

During normal automated operation, no operator attendance is required except to add or to remove cartridges.

Operator assistance is required if an error or exception condition occurs from which the 3494 cannot recover on its own. Depending on the type of error or exception condition experienced, some or all of the 3494 operations are suspended until the problem is corrected. If an error occurs that prevents the movement of cartridges, the Library Manager suspends performing requests that require cartridge accessor movement. You can use the Library Manager or the Remote Library Manager Console (if the optional Remote Library Manager Console feature is installed) to identify the cause of the error. If you can correct the error, the 3494 may be placed in Pause mode, and the front doors may be opened to provide operator access. After you resolve the problem, you may return the 3494 to Auto mode.

If you cannot resolve the problem, you may start Manual mode operations in the 3494. When in Manual mode, the Library Manager instructs you to perform manual mount and demount operations until a service representative resolves the problem. After the problem is resolved, you can return the 3494 to Auto mode.

Note: When the HA1 Frames is installed, control switches over automatically to the hot standby component, and the failed component is marked unavailable. Concurrent maintenance can be performed to repair the failing unit. Operator involvement is needed only when a second failure occurs before the first failure is repaired.

System Administrator Involvement

Normal daily operations of the 3494 do not require any system administrator involvement. System administrator involvement may be required if an error condition occurs that you cannot resolve. A system administrator can obtain operational and performance information from the Library Manager or the Remote Library Manager Console (if the optional Remote Library Manager Console feature is installed) at any time.

The system administrator may also use the Library Manager or Remote Library Manager Console to search for cartridges in the 3494 that have problems with their external labels or cartridges that have been misplaced or have other problems that need to be corrected.

Note: The tasks performed by a system administrator are typically password protected to prevent unauthorized personnel from inadvertently or intentionally damaging the Library Manager database or other operations. Use of password protection is optional.

Error Detection and Reporting

When the 3494 is powered on, the Library Manager, the 3490E and 3590 tape subsystems, and the VTSs perform power-on diagnostic tests. The 3494 performs real-time error detection, fault isolation, error reporting, and error recovery during normal operation.

In the event of a failure, the information is reported to the attached hosts for logging and possible host recovery actions. When appropriate, the 3494 drive support software posts host console messages in the control program to request operator-required actions or to present information for the operator. See Chapter 7, “Remote Library Manager Console Feature” on page 301.

Inventory Update

When Inventory Update is enabled and a door is opened, then closed, an inventory update is performed upon the return to Auto mode. This process checks all of the cartridge storage cells in the frames that had doors opened, and depending on the selection made during the teach process, may also check any frames adjacent to the frames that had doors opened.

Note: The drive feeds are also inventoried.

During an inventory update, processing of Audit and Eject operations are held until the update has been completed. Selected mounts and demounts are processed, depending on where the cartridge resides. No mounts or demounts are performed on cartridges that reside in a rack that must be verified in the Inventory Update operation until the inventory update is complete. The duration of the Inventory Update operation is affected by the number of database updates required and the number of mounts and demounts that are done concurrently with the inventory update.

When the 3494 is powered on, the **Disable Inventory Update** option is available in the Mode Selection window. This option, if selected, disables the inventory update during a cold start of the 3494 and speeds up the process of bringing the 3494 online. Selecting the **Disable Inventory Update** option in the Mode Selection window does not disable inventory update during normal operation.

The **Disable Inventory Update** option is available under the **Inventory** option in the Commands window. This option disables the Inventory Update process on a cold start of the 3494 during normal operations and speeds up the process of changing modes after the doors on the 3494 are opened.

Note: The **Disable Inventory Update** option is not recommended for users who open the 3494 doors to add and to remove cartridges because **no changes in the 3494 inventory are noted until an Inventory Update is performed**. If cartridge inserts and ejects are handled through the convenience I/O station or the high-capacity I/O facility, then running with Inventory Update disabled speeds operation. When the doors have been opened, you can select the **Partial Inventory Update** option under the **Inventory** option in the Commands window; this provides the most flexibility.

The **Enable Inventory Update** option is also available under the **Inventory** option in the Commands window. This option allows you to enable the Inventory Update process. An inventory update would then be done on all doors at initialization and following Manual mode and to all doors opened during the transition from Pause mode to Auto mode.

Inventory update determines if any cartridges have been added, removed, or moved, and the Library Manager updates the cartridge inventory. During an inventory update, one of the three following activities takes place:

- If a cartridge is found in its expected location, no update takes place.
- If a cartridge is found that is not in the inventory, the inventory is updated, with volser added to the Insert category.
- If a cartridge in the inventory is not found, it is placed in the manually ejected category.
- If an unlabeled cartridge is found, the cartridge is ejected from the library unless the unlabeled cartridge was inserted by using the Unlabeled Tape facility and the unlabeled cartridge is found in its home cell.

See “Insert Unlabeled Cartridges” on page 235 for information regarding the use of unlabeled cartridges.

Volume Categories

The host can associate volumes into logical groupings in the 3494. A logical grouping is called a category, which the Library Manager identifies by a hexadecimal number from 0000 to FFFF. Table 4 on page 59 shows the assignment of the categories.

The Library Manager maintains the order in which volumes are added to a category. The volumes chosen from a category are managed by a first-in, first-out (FIFO) rule. However, if during the choosing of a volume from a category, the next volume is in use, inaccessible, or misplaced, the volume is skipped, and the next available volume is chosen.

Note: For logical volumes in a “Fast Ready” category, an odd or even volser selection algorithm is used to maximize VTS performance.

Table 4. Volume Categories

Category (in hex)	Name	Definition
0000	Null	Set when the 3494 command specifies that the category already associated with the volume is to be used, or the command does not specify a category. Using the Null category does not affect the volume's order within the category it is assigned to. When logical volumes are inserted using the operator panel, they are also added to the FF00 category (see "Manage Logical Volumes" on page 214).
0001 to FFFF	General programming use	The host control program assigns volumes to these categories.
Note: Categories FF00 to FFFE are reserved for hardware functions.		
FF00	Insert	Set when a tape volume is added to the inventory. The 3494 reads the external label on the volume, creates an inventory entry for the volume, and assigns the volume to this category. When one or more volumes are assigned to this category, the attached hosts are notified. When logical volumes are inserted using the operator panel, they are also added to this category (see "Manage Logical Volumes" on page 214).
FF01	VTs Insert	Set when a stacked tape volume associated with a VTS is added to the inventory. The 3494 reads the external label on the volume, creates an inventory entry for the volume, uses the volser ranges to associate the volume with a VTS, and assigns the volume to this category. When one or more volumes are assigned to this category, the associated VTS is notified.
FF03	VTs Scratch	The VTS assigns stacked volumes that are scratch in the VTS to this category. This category is not used if licensed internal code is 527 or higher.
FF04	VTs Private	The VTS assigns stacked volumes that are private in the VTS to this category. If licensed internal code is 527 or higher, this category also includes scratch stacked volumes.
FF05, FF06	VTs disaster recovery	The VTS uses these categories during disaster recovery operations.
FF07	—	Reserved
FF08	VTs stacked volume internal label is unreadable	FF08 is reserved for use by the VTS. The VTS places stacked volumes in this category when it cannot read the internal label of the volume.
FF09–FF0F	—	Reserved
FF10	Convenience eject	Set when the Library Manager accepts an eject request. The volume becomes eject pending, and the 3494 queues the volume to be moved to the convenience I/O station. When the cartridge accessor delivers the volume to the convenience I/O station, it is deleted from the inventory. Logical volumes can be ejected if they are in the Insert category or in a category defined as "Fast Ready", and they are not in use. When a logical volume is ejected, it is deleted from the inventory.

Table 4. Volume Categories (continued)

Category (in hex)	Name	Definition
FF11	Bulk eject	<p>Set when a Library Manager accepts an eject request. The volume becomes eject pending, and the 3494 queues the volume to be moved to the high-capacity output facility. When the cartridge accessor delivers the volume to the output rack, it is deleted from the inventory.</p> <p>Logical volumes can be ejected if they are in the Insert category or in a category defined as "Fast Ready", and they are not in use. When a logical volume is ejected, it is deleted from the inventory.</p>
FF12	Export-Pending	At the start of Export operation processing, the VTS assigns the logical volumes to be exported to this category so attached hosts cannot access them. If the Export operation is cancelled or fails, any logical volumes assigned to this category are reassigned to the category they were in before the Export operation. When a logical volume is assigned to this category, the original category information is preserved.
FF13	Exported	When a group of logical volumes to be exported has been placed on a stacked volume and all processing for that stacked volume is completed, the VTS assigns the logical volumes to this category.
FF14	Import	Stacked volumes that contain logical volumes to import into the VTS are assigned to this category. When they are first added to the 3494 through the convenience I/O station, the Library Manager places them in the Unassigned category automatically. Before starting the Import operation, the operator must move these volumes manually into the Import category using the Manage Unassigned Volumes window, shown in Figure 109 on page 197.
FF15	Import-Pending	As part of the Import operation, the VTS assigns the logical volumes being imported to this category. If the Import operation is cancelled or fails, any logical volumes assigned to this category are deleted from the 3494 inventory.
FF16	Unassigned	When the convenience I/O station is in Import mode, the Library Manager assigns J- and K-type cartridges to this category. Volumes remain in this category until the operator assigns them to either the Import category or the Insert category, or selects to eject them. The Library Manager assigns volumes to this category when they are input using the convenience I/O station. They are assigned to this category if the 3494 contains one or more VTSs that are capable of Export and Import operations.
FF17	Export-Hold	The VTS assigns Exported Stacked Volumes to this category. This is a "limbo" category where export volumes are placed when the Export operation is completed. The operator uses the Manage Export-Hold Volumes window, shown in Figure 112 on page 200, to cause volumes in this category to be ejected.

Table 4. Volume Categories (continued)

Category (in hex)	Name	Definition
FF18–FF19	—	Reserved
FF20	Corrupted token	Volume with corrupted tokens (PtP VTS usage only). Set when the PtP VTSs cannot determine from the tokens which volume is the most up-to-date.
FF21–FFF5	—	Reserved
FFF6	Service volume, 3590 only	Set when the Library Manager detects that a volume has a unique service volser. Volsers that fit the mask CE xxx (where xxx represents any valid volser characters) are service volumes. The embedded blank makes these labels unique from user volumes. Normally, service cartridges have volsers with the prefix CE (for example, CE 099). The specific cell location is predefined. The host does not have a record of a volume in the service volume category. The volumes in this category are not reported in inventory data in response to a request from the host.
FFF7	Mount from input station	Volumes to be used in a mount from the input station operation are placed in this category during the operation.
FFF8	—	Reserved
FFF9	Service volume, 3490E only	Set when the Library Manager detects that a volume has a unique service volser. Volsers that fit the mask CE xxx (where xxx represents any valid volser characters) are service volumes. The embedded blank makes these labels unique from user volumes. Normally, service cartridges have volsers with the prefix CE (for example, CE 099). The specific cell location is predefined. The host does not have a record of a volume in the service volume category. The volumes in this category are not reported in inventory data in response to a request from the host.
FFFA	Manually ejected	Assigned to this category if the cartridge that was in the inventory is not found.
FFFB–FFFC	—	Reserved
FFFD	Cleaner volume (3590 use only)	Assigned to this category when the Library Manager identifies the cleaner volumes. The Library Manager recognizes cleaner volumes when their volser matches a mask set up by the operator through the Library Manager console (see “Cleaner Volume Masks” on page 223). The host does not have a record of volumes in this category. Volumes in this category are not reported in inventory data in response to a request from the host. The vision system uses the media-type label to determine that a cleaner cartridge is a 3590 type.

Table 4. Volume Categories (continued)

Category (in hex)	Name	Definition
FFFE	Cleaner volume (3490E use only)	Assigned to this category when the Library Manager identifies the cleaner volumes. The Library Manager recognizes cleaner volumes when their volser matches a mask set up by the operator through the Library Manager console (see “Cleaner Volume Masks” on page 223). The host does not have a record of volumes in this category. Volumes in this category are not reported in inventory data in response to a request from the host. The vision system uses the media-type label to determine that a cleaner cartridge is a 3490 type.
FFFF	Volser specific	The control program assigns volumes to this category. Any tape mount request to this category must be for a specific volser, not based on the category.

Physical Volume States

A volume is in the inventory if an entry (in the inventory) for the volser is in the database. The following states are associated with a physical volume:

- Inaccessible** A volume is in the Library Manager inventory but is currently in a location that the cartridge accessor cannot access.
- Misplaced** A volume is in the inventory, and the Library Manager determines that it is not in the position that the inventory indicates.
- Mounted** A volume is mounted currently on a drive, or a mount was accepted for the volume.
- Unreadable** The vision system read a defective external bar code label on a volume, or the volume does not have an external label. If the vision system is not operational, this state is not modified.
- Manual mode** The volume required movement when the 3494 was in Manual mode. The volume is flagged in the inventory as a Manual mode volume until it is moved successfully or audited in Auto mode or during an inventory update.

Logical Volume States

A volume is in the inventory if an entry (in the inventory) for the volser is in the database. The following state is associated with a logical volume:

Mounted A volume is mounted currently on a drive, or a mount was accepted for the volume.

Physical Volser Validity Checking

As a physical cartridge is added to the 3494 inventory, the Library Manager checks the volser to ensure that it is readable, is not already in the inventory, and is not otherwise invalid.

The convenience I/O station is in either Import mode or Insert mode, depending upon the capabilities of the VTSs in the 3494 and the configuration of the 3494.

The convenience I/O station is in Import mode when the 3494 has at least one VTS that is capable of Export and Import operations and this mode was not de-selected.

The convenience I/O station is in Insert mode when the 3494 does not have a VTS that is capable of Export and Import operations.

The mode of the convenience I/O station is stored so that the Library Manager “remembers” the mode across shutdowns. When the mode is determined, the stored mode is used each time the Library Manager initializes. The mode changes if the configuration changes or if the VTS capabilities change.

When the convenience I/O station is in Import mode, the 3494 adds any **J-** or **K-**type cartridges to the database in the Unassigned category. Using the **Manage Unassigned Volumes** window, shown in Figure 109 on page 197, you can assign the volumes in the Unassigned category to the Import category, assign volumes to the appropriate Insert category and partition based on the volser ranges, or eject a volume.

If any volser character is unreadable or invalid (not A–Z, 0–9, or blank), the volser is not added to the inventory. The cartridge is ejected to an I/O station. A volume notification message is sent to all attached hosts indicating that a volume remains in the I/O station with an unreadable or invalid label. If this happens, you must determine why the volser is unreadable and correct the label before trying to reinsert the cartridge.

If the vision system cannot determine the cartridge media type, the volser does not fit into an established volser range, and a default media type is not defined, the cartridge is ejected to an I/O station.

When a volser that is already in the inventory is inserted into the convenience I/O station (a possible duplicate volser), an audit is performed. If the volser is a duplicate, the cartridge is ejected to the convenience I/O station. If the volser is not a duplicate, the cartridge from the convenience I/O station is left in the new home cell.

If the *misplaced* or *inaccessible* volume indicators are set in the database, they are reset and a notification is sent to all attached hosts that indicates that the volume was found or made accessible again. Also, if the *volume was used during Manual mode* indicator was set, it is reset.

A notification that describes the results of the audit is sent to all attached hosts.

Note: A service volume found in the convenience I/O station causes a validity check because its volser contains an invalid character: an embedded blank. A service volume must, instead, be placed in the cell reserved for it in the L1x Frame. It also may be inserted using a special service volume insert process available in Service mode.

Logical Volser Validity Checking

When logical volumes are inserted into the 3494 (see “Manage Logical Volumes” on page 214), the Library Manager checks the volser range values for validity.

The Insert Logical Volumes function is not performed under any of the following conditions:

- The volser range characters are invalid (not A–Z or 0–9).
- There are fewer than six characters in the volser.
- The two volsers entered are not in the same format.

The corresponding characters in each volser must both be either alphabetic or numeric. For example, AAA998 and AAB114 are in the same format, but AA9998 and AAB114 are not.

Logical volume volsers must be unique within a physical library. If a volser already exists in the database for any logical library (non-VTS or VTS), the logical volume is not inserted. The Library Manager then attempts to insert the next logical volume.

Command Priorities in the Queue

The Library Manager manages the operations queue with a set of priority levels. The Library Manager places operation requests in the queue in priorities from 0–9. A command priority of 0 is the highest priority, and a command priority of 9 is the lowest priority. The priorities are established so that mount requests take precedence over any other operation, except for operations that must be executed on a priority basis. Therefore, priority level 0 is reserved for internally generated operations, while host requests start with priority level 1.

Higher priority operations are taken from the queue first. Within a priority level, operations are taken first-in, first-out (FIFO). The order may be shuffled if commands are requeued because something, such as an I/O station, may be busy.

Priority Levels

Table 5 shows the priority levels, the operations in each level, and the operations that you can promote to priority 2. The highest priority to which you can promote a queued operation is priority 2.

Note: If a priority 3 operation is in the queue for a specified period of time, it is promoted automatically to a priority 2. This prevents higher priority operations from “blocking out” priority 3 mounts.

Table 5. Command Queue Priorities

Priority	Operations	Promotable
0	Inventory update	—
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Mount from category• Mount from input station operations• Mount cleaner cartridge• Export• Import	—
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Promoted by operator• Logical Mount - category or specific	—
3	Mount specific volser	Yes
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move cartridge from input station• Unlabeled tape operations• Eject volser	Yes
5	Audit volser	Yes
6	Reserved	—
7	Demount	Yes
8	Reserved	—
9	Offline command	—

For details on Mount Operations, Demount Operations, and Audit Operations, see “Host-Initiated Operations” on page 66.

Operations

The 3494 performs host-initiated and stand alone operations.

Host-Initiated Operations

The following are host-initiated operations:

- Mount operations
- Demount operations
- Eject operations
- Audit operations
- Export operations
- Import operations

Mount Operations

Host-initiated mount operations result in the 3494 performing either a physical or logical mount. The drive address to which the mount is issued determines whether the host-initiated mount is physical or logical. When the mount is issued to a drive address within a VTS, the 3494 performs a logical mount operation. For all other drive addresses, the 3494 performs a physical mount operation.

The Library Manager directs the cartridge accessor to move a physical volume from its current location to the specified drive. The following are the types of mount operations:

Mount specific	The mount request specifies the specific volser to be mounted.
Mount from category	The volser to be mounted is picked from the specified category in the mount request.

Physical mount operations result in a volume being placed in a drive and the drive loading the volume. The cartridge accessor performs physical mounts.

The VTS performs mounts for logical volumes. They may or may not require a physical mount.

Logical mount operations result in a virtual volume being made available to the host through a virtual tape drive. The following are the types of logical mount operations:

Fast Ready Mount	The host requested a category mount, and the category was designated as a "Fast Ready" category. This type of mount selects a volser from the specified category and logically mounts it on the virtual tape drive. An odd or even volser selection algorithm is used to maximize VTS performance. No recall of the data from the previous use of the volser from physical tape is performed.
Cache Mount	The host requested a specific volser, and the virtual volume for that volser is resident in the tape volume cache. No recall of data from a physical tape is performed.
Physical Mount Required	The host requested a specific volser or specified a category that was not designated as a "Fast Ready"

category. The volser needed to satisfy the mount operation is not resident in the tape volume cache and must be recalled from the physical tape. The Library Manager directs the cartridge accessor to move the required physical volume to a 3590 tape drive that the VTS manages so that the recall operation can be performed.

Demount Operations

The 3494 performs a physical demount operation whenever a volume is unloaded from a physical tape drive. A similar operation occurs for the virtual tape drives within a VTS. When a virtual volume is unloaded from a virtual tape drive, a logical demount operation is performed.

The following are two types of demount operations:

- A demount was requested, and the volume is currently at the tape drive.
For a physical demount, this operation is used to move a volume from a tape drive to a storage cell. When the volume is placed in the storage cell, the demount is considered complete.
For a logical demount, this operation updates the status of the virtual volume in the Library Manager database to indicate that it is no longer mounted. No physical movement of a volume is involved.
- A demount was requested, but the volume has not been mounted.
This operation is used to cancel a mount operation that has not been started. The library recognizes that because a demount request was received for a mount that has not occurred, the host must not want the mount. Therefore, the two requests cancel each other.

Eject Operations

An eject operation results in a physical cartridge being placed in a cell of an output facility in the 3494. The type of output facility may be either the convenience I/O station or the high-capacity output facility. The host specifies the type of facility as part of the eject request. An eject request is considered complete when the specified cartridge is placed in the cell of an output station. On completion, the specified volume is removed from the Library Manager inventory.

Logical volumes that a VTS manages cannot be ejected unless they are assigned to the Insert category or to a category designated as "Fast Ready". Any host request to eject a logical volume not in the Insert category or in a "Fast Ready" category will fail. An ejected logical volume is removed from the Library Manager inventory.

Audit Operations

An audit uses the vision system to ensure that the physical cartridge associated with the volser specified in the request is physically in the 3494 where expected. If the volser specified in the request is a physical volume that is in the Library Manager's inventory, the audit operation checks the external label of the cartridge in the storage cell specified in the Library Manager database. It must match what is in the database. If the volume is mounted on a tape drive, the audit is held until the volume is demounted and returned to its storage cell.

If the volser specified is a logical volume in the Library Manager's inventory, the Library Manager determines the physical volume on which the logical volume resides and performs an audit of that physical volume. The audit operation is

successful if the physical volume is found in the expected storage cell or if it is mounted currently on a physical drive in the VTS.

An audit operation for a volser that has been placed in an output facility fails because the volser is no longer in the Library Manager's inventory.

Audit operations are queued in the Library Manager and have a lower execution priority than mounts. An audit operation is complete when validation of the location of the specified volser has been attempted and the host has been notified of the success or failure of the validation.

Import Operations

The Import operation allows one or more logical volumes from Exported Stacked Volumes to be copied into a VTS. The Exported Stacked Volumes must be inserted into the 3494 by using the convenience I/O station. A list of logical volumes to be imported must be provided as described in Appendix B, "VTS Export and Import Advanced Function" on page 375. When the Import operation completes, Exported Stacked Volumes remain in the Import category. You can use the Manage Import Volumes window for further disposition of the volumes (see Figure 110 on page 198).

Export Operations

The Export operation allows logical volumes within a VTS to be copied to physical Exported Stacked Volumes that can be removed from a 3494. The logical volumes are deleted from the VTS and are no longer accessible in the VTS. A destination for each logical volume may be specified in order to create one or more Exported Stacked Volumes for a destination. Before executing the Export operation, it is necessary to provide a list of logical volumes to be exported as described in Appendix B, "VTS Export and Import Advanced Function" on page 375. Exported Stacked Volumes may be ejected from the Export-Hold category by using the Manage Export-Hold Volumes window (see Figure 112 on page 200).

Stand-Alone Operations

When a host cannot send mount commands to the 3494, the 3494 may perform stand alone operations by using stand alone software. Some examples are as follows:

Stand alone dump

The host must receive an initial program load (IPL) from tape, then dump the host memory contents to a separate tape. The tape may be mounted later under the control of a host.

Stand alone restore

The host must receive an IPL with a function to restore the contents of DASD volumes from data that is stored on the tape volumes. After the DASD volumes are restored, the host system may receive an IPL with restored DASD volumes.

The two types of stand alone operations are:

Using automatic cartridge loader mode

The tape drives in the 3494 do not have automatic cartridge loaders. However, the 3494 allows the automatic mounting of the next cartridge of a predefined sequential set in a specified 3494 tape drive. The 3494 supports the following:

- The assignment of cartridges to a special category
- The assignment of a specified drive for restricted use with the special category
- The ending of the restricted usage of a tape drive

Mounting transient tape cartridges

Note: A convenience I/O station feature must be installed to take advantage of this function.

The 3494 Mount from Input Station function supports special usage of the convenience I/O station for the use of transient cartridges that are not part of the 3494 inventory. In this special-use mode, cartridges in the convenience I/O station are mounted sequentially, used (read or written), demounted, and returned to the convenience I/O station. This function is available as an option in the Setup Stand alone Device window under the **Stand alone device...** option in the Commands window.

See “Stand-Alone Device” on page 231 for more information on stand alone operations.

Initial Cartridge Installation

Physical cartridges may be loaded into the 3494 after the hardware installation is complete. The loading of physical cartridges can occur before the teach and inventory operations. Logical volumes can be inserted after a teach operation. The following types of cartridges may be loaded:

User volumes

User volumes are the initial set of data and scratch volumes to be automated. Cartridges may be added to the 3494 up to the maximum number of available storage cells.

Cleaner volumes

One cleaner volume should be installed for each frame that contains a tape subsystem. The cleaner cartridge type (3490E or 3590) depends on whether the tape subsystem uses 3490E or 3590 media. The cleaner cartridges may be placed in any available cell.

Note: The external volser must match the mask value that is provided, or the inventory operation treats the cleaner cartridge as a normal user volume.

Service volume

The service representative installs one or two service volumes, depending on the 3494 configuration.

Logical volumes

If a VTS is installed, logical volumes are inserted into the 3494 by using the Manage Logical Volumes window (see Figure 123 on page 215).

Stacked volumes

If a VTS is installed, the 3590 cartridges that it uses to store and manage logical volumes cannot be loaded into the 3494 without performing the following first:

- Performing an initial teach of the 3494.
- Setting up one or more volser ranges that identify the stacked volumes that the VTS will manage. See “Volser Ranges for Media Types” on page 186 for a description of how to enter the volser ranges.

Cartridge Placement

When you place cartridges into the 3494, you can improve 3494 performance by following these guidelines:

- During initial loading of cartridges, cluster the cartridges around the tape subsystems in which they will be used.
- For Inventory Update Inserts, place cartridges as near as possible to the tape subsystems on which you intend to issue mounts for those volumes.
- Place 3590 cartridges to be used as stacked volumes for a particular VTS in cells close to those drives associated with the VTS.

Initial Volume Inventory Upload

After the 3494 completes all the initialization operations (including teach and inventory) and enters the Online state for the first time, the host software requests an upload of the volume inventory. The information from the Library Manager database is uploaded to the attached hosts before host applications can use the 3494.

The process to upload the information requires no operator action.

Host Operation Control

The host operation control of the 3494 is operating system-dependent. Because the 3494 operates under a variety of host operating systems, you must be familiar with the operating system for your 3494 and the required protocol.

For more information about the host operating systems, see the *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide* and “Related Information” on page xvi.

Actions to Avoid when Operating a 3494

This section contains two lists of actions to avoid when operating a 3494. The first list (“Things You Should Never Do”) is the most important, because these actions can cause serious problems. The second list (“Things You Should Avoid Doing” on page 72) is also important, but these actions are corrected more readily and cause problems of a less serious nature.

Things You Should Never Do

This section contains a list of actions that you should **never** do when operating a 3494. Failure to follow these recommendations causes serious problems, including severe performance degradation:

- Never remove cartridges from tape drives unless the Library Manager tells you to do so. Moving a cartridge can cause it to be marked as misplaced or inaccessible. The Library Manager clears the drive automatically while in Auto mode. Here are some cases where the Library Manager instructs you to clear the drive:
 - An operator intervention indicates that a drive failure has occurred. You should remove the cartridge from the specified drive.
 - A reinventory of the complete system has been requested. Remove all cartridges from the drives and place them in empty cells. The re-inventory operation scans all cells and recreates the inventory database.
 - If the library is being used in Manual mode and a mount is requested for a drive that has a cartridge in its feed slot, the cartridge should be removed from the drive so the mount can be performed. On returning to Auto mode, cartridges that are already loaded in the drives or in the feed slot should be left in place.
- Never insert more cartridges into empty cells than there are free cells indicated in the Operational Status window. This is because cartridges that are loaded currently on drives must have a cell available when they are unloaded from the drive.
- Never insert cartridges into empty cells or move cartridges around in the 3494 unless the Inventory Update function is enabled. Unless these cells are scanned on returning to Auto mode, the Library Manager cannot determine the cartridges that have been added or moved.
- Never fail to save the logical volumes associated with a VTS during a Reinventory Complete System unless they truly need to be deleted.
- Never leave Manual mode until mounts that were started (cartridges that were physically placed in the feed slot of a drive) have been cleared from the Manual Mode window.
- Never place Exported Stacked Volumes in the high-capacity I/O facility or into free cells. This would cause them to be inserted as scratch volumes, and the data on them would be lost permanently.
- Never load a drive without the Library Manager telling you to do so (which occurs only in Manual mode). If you need to load a cartridge without entering it into the library database, use the Mount From Input Station function.
- Never move an Exported Stacked Volume intended for use by the VTS Exported Volume Read Utility (provided by DITTO/ESA for MVS) with a native 3590 tape drive into the Insert category **without** checking the volser ranges. The cartridge becomes a VTS Stacked Volume if it is in the volser range for a VTS and will be rewritten by VTS use. See “Using the Convenience I/O Station Import Mode” on page 87.

Things You Should Avoid Doing

This section contains a list of actions you should avoid when operating a 3494 but whose consequences are less serious than those in the preceding list. Failure to follow these recommendations may still cause significant performance degradation:

- Avoid leaving the convenience I/O station door open. After several minutes this results in an operator intervention being sent to the host indicating that the convenience I/O station door is open.
- Avoid running with the 3494 completely full. Running with a full 3494 makes it impossible to insert any more cartridges into the 3494. It also causes cartridges to be left in the I/O stations (convenience and high-capacity). It may also hinder recovery of misplaced or inaccessible cartridges, which would have to be recovered through the error recovery cell one at a time.
- Avoid running large database searches (for instance, searching for all volsers in the 3494) from the Database window while the 3494 is busy. This can tie up the database and cause performance degradation.
- Avoid opening the enclosure doors without first pausing the cartridge accessors.

Chapter 4. Operational Modes and States and Informational States

This chapter describes the operational modes, operational states, and informational states of the 3494.

The following mode and states define the current status of the Library Manager:

- Operational mode
- Operational state
- Informational state

The operational mode and state information are available through the Library Manager console. If the optional remote Library Manager console feature is installed, they are also available through the remote Library Manager console. To view this information, do the following:

1. Select the Status option in the Operator window.
2. Select the System summary... option in the Status window.

Note: If the display is blank, press any key on the keyboard to activate the display.

Operational Modes

The 3494 operates in one of the following modes:

Auto Mode

In this mode, the cartridge accessor is operational. The Library Manager manages all commands under host program control or from the Library Manager console. The front doors of the 3494 must be closed to operate in Auto mode.

Pause Mode

In this mode, the processing of Mount, Demount, Eject, and Audit requests are suspended. The 3494 enters this mode automatically when a failure prevents automatic operation or when instructed from the Library Manager console or the operator panel. This mode allows you to open the front doors on the 3494 to correct an intervention condition, to insert cartridges into the 3494, or to remove cartridges from the High-Capacity Output Facility. All host requests for Mount, Demount, Eject, and Audit operations are queued until the 3494 returns to Auto mode.

When you change the mode from Auto to Pause, the Library Manager instructs the cartridge accessor to park. If an error condition occurs, the Library Manager removes power immediately from the cartridge accessor and suspends any operations in progress.

Manual Mode

When you select this mode, the Library Manager parks the cartridge accessor in the home position, if possible. If necessary, you may move the cartridge accessor to gain access to a cartridge or drive. The Library Manager provides you with

instructions to perform tasks that it normally performs automatically. This mode allows you to perform 3494 tasks (for example, mounting and ejecting) until you can return the 3494 to Auto mode.

Additional Operational Modes in the Model HA1 Environment

In a 3494 with the HA1 Frames attached, one Library Manager is active, and the other is standby. Figure 33 shows the window for the active Library Manager. Figure 34 shows the window for the standby Library Manager.

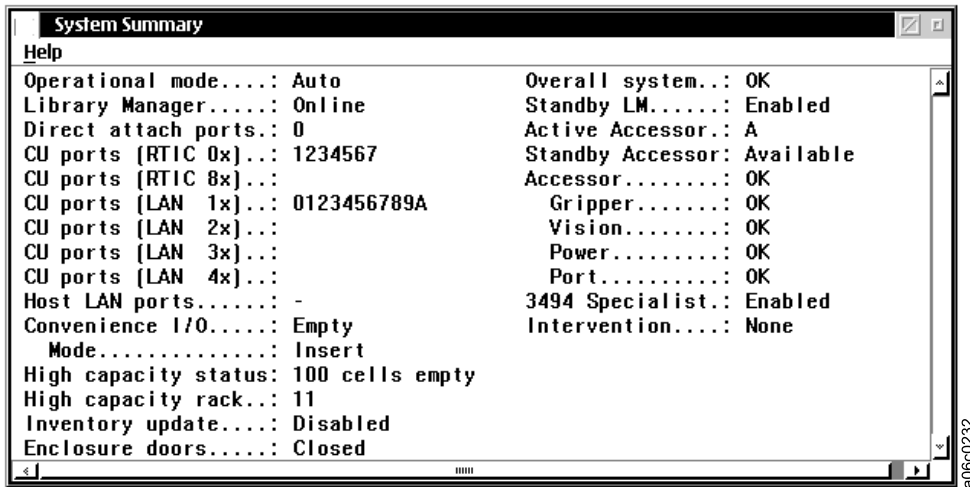


Figure 33. Active Library Manager Window

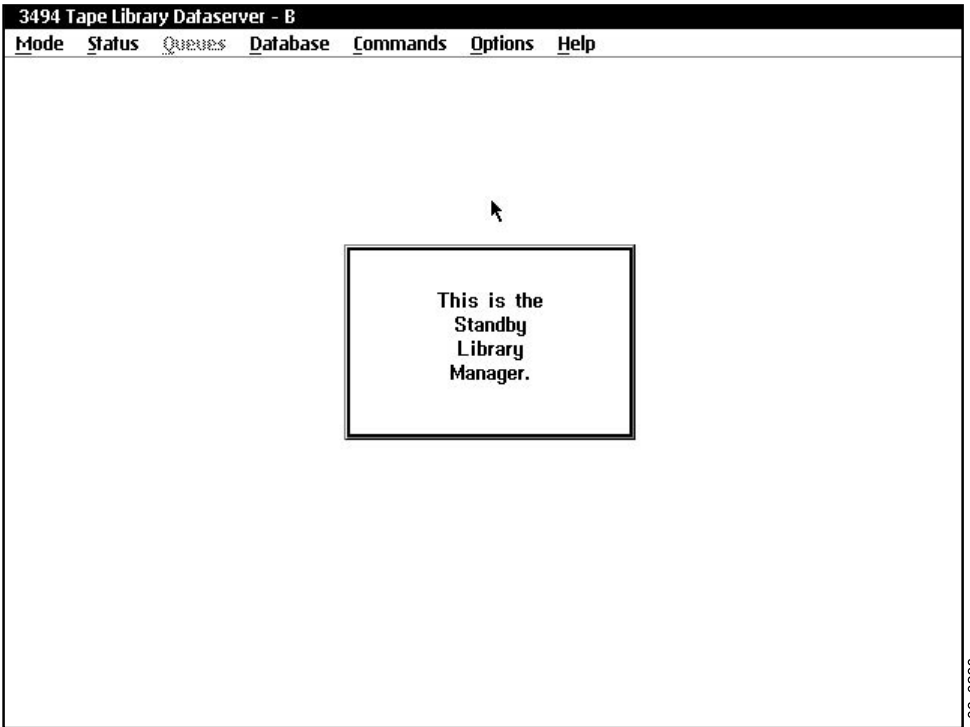


Figure 34. Standby Library Manager Window

Home-Cell Mode

The 3494 operates in either fixed home-cell or floating home-cell mode. The service representative makes the home-cell mode selection during the teach process, as follows:

Fixed home-cell

Fixed home-cell mode assigns each physical cartridge to a fixed storage cell location when it enters the 3494. It is always returned to the same location after it is used.

Floating home-cell

A physical cartridge is put into a cartridge cell location that optimizes performance.

Note: Regardless of the mode specified during installation, the 3494 operates in fixed home-cell mode only when in Manual mode.

Operational States

The 3494 operates in one of the following operational states:

Library Manager Initialization

The 3494 starts the Library Manager application, power-on and interface verification tests, Library Manager database verification, and restarts error recovery (if applicable).

Initialization Complete

The 3494 starts the Library Manager application and determines the operational mode and state. The availability conditions of the components and whether the 3494 is taught and inventoried determine the mode and state. If the 3494 is taught and inventoried, the Library Manager waits for one of the following conditions:

- An operator instruction to proceed to an operational mode and operational state.
- A time-out interval expires. This causes the 3494 to go to the default operational mode and operational state that the availability conditions of the 3494 components set.

Online State

In this state, the Library Manager accepts and processes host commands.

Offline State

In this state, the Library Manager does not accept or process host commands. The Library Manager processes commands that it received before entering the Offline state.

Operations performed while the 3494 is in the Offline state, such as inventory, do not report errors to the host. The Library Manager console displays messages that may occur during offline operations. If the Remote Library Manager Console feature is installed, the Remote Library Manager Console also displays such messages.

Shutdown Pending

The Library Manager closes and exits the Library Manager application.

Library Manager Switchover in Progress

When the HA1 Frames is installed, this condition occurs when the active and standby Library Managers switch roles. This can occur on a failure or by your request. The Library Manager is in this state until the switchover completes.

Note: You must resubmit any tape job that abended (including those that use logical drives of a Virtual Tape Server [VTS]) and reissue failed in-process tape operations. You may have to restart any Library Manager console operations that you were performing, including VTS-related operations.

Accessor Switchover in Progress

When the HA1 Frames is installed, this condition occurs when the active and standby accessors switch roles. This can occur on a failure or by your request. The 3494 is in this state until the switchover completes.

Dual Active Accessor Status

When the Dual Active Accessors feature is installed, it may be enabled or disabled. Figure 35 shows the window for the transition into Dual Active Accessor mode. Figure 36 shows the window for the transition out of Dual Active Accessor mode. Each of these windows is shown until the transition is complete.

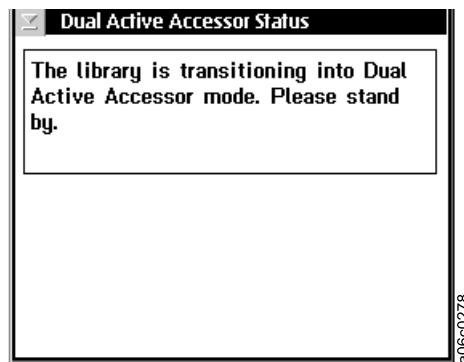


Figure 35. Dual Active Accessor Status – Enabling

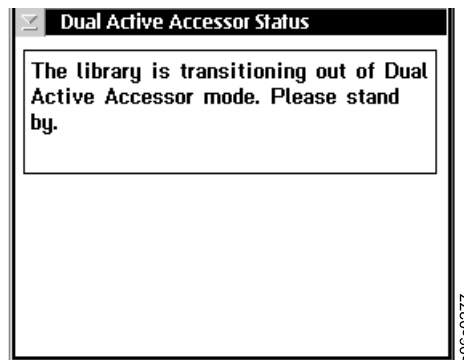


Figure 36. Dual Active Accessor Status – Disabling

Informational States

In addition to the operational states, the following informational states further define the state of the 3494 (one or more of which can occur at the same time):

Degraded operation

Indicates that a component of the 3494 is unavailable (except 3490E, 3590, and VTSs). When the HA1 Frames or the Dual Active Accessors feature is installed, this includes the ability of the standby Library Manager or the standby accessor to take over in the event of a failure.

Safety interlocks open

Indicates that an interlock (front door) on the safety circuit is open.

Vision system non-operational

Indicates that the vision system has failed and cannot read the external volume labels on the cartridges.

Intervention required

Indicates that you must correct a condition in the 3494.

Library Manager check-1 condition

Indicates that the Library Manager has detected an unrecoverable condition that does not allow continued execution of host requests. If the HA1 Frames is installed, the Library Manager will attempt to re-initialize or will switch to the standby Library Manager to correct the problem.

All storage cells full

Indicates that all of the customer storage cells in the 3494 have cartridges assigned to them.

Out of cleaner volumes

Indicates that a clean operation is required; however, there are no usable cleaner volumes of the correct media type in the 3494.

Note: This informational state is entered in a mixed tape drive system (3490E and 3590), if either type of cleaner cartridge is missing.

Dual write disabled

Indicates that the process that keeps the secondary database in synchronization with the primary database is not running. This is normal if the second hard drive feature that provides a secondary database is not installed.

Relationship between Operational Modes and States

When you request an operational mode or state change, the 3494 must perform some steps before it completes the change. During this transition period, the immediate mode or state of the 3494 is *mode pending* or *state pending*. For example, if the 3494 is in the Online state and you make a request to enter the Offline state, the immediate operational state is *Offline Pending*. The System Summary window on the Library Manager console indicates whether the mode or state is pending. Sometimes the change between the modes and the states occurs quickly, and the pending status is displayed briefly.

Operational Mode Transitions

The 3494 is in only one operational mode at any one time.

When the Library Manager requests a change in operational mode, it displays a window that allows you to confirm the mode change request.

Note: If the HA1 Frames is installed, this applies to the active 3494.

Pause Mode to Auto Mode

You can use either the operator panel (see “Changing to Auto Mode” on page 84) or the Library Manager to request a change to Auto mode. Either way you generate the request, the Library Manager checks the status of the 3494.

When you use the Library Manager to request a change from Pause mode to Auto mode, the following actions occur:

1. The Library Manager checks the status of the interface to the cartridge accessor. If it is not available, a window indicates that the cartridge accessor interface is unavailable. You can cancel the request to change to Auto mode.
2. The Library Manager checks the cartridge accessor status. If it is not available because of a previous failure, the Library Manager tests the accessor to determine if it can be made available. If it can be made available, the Library Manager attempts the transition to Auto mode. If the Library Manager detects a hardware problem, the 3494 returns to Pause mode, and a window indicates that the cartridge accessor is unavailable. You can cancel the request to change to Auto mode.
3. The Library Manager checks the power status of the cartridge accessor. If power is not on, a window indicates the fault and prompts you to close all safety interlocks.
4. If the HA1 Frames is installed, the Library Manager determines the accessor that will be the active accessor, based on the previous state. If both are available, the preferred accessor is the local accessor. If both are not available, a window is displayed. You can cancel the request to change to Auto mode.
5. The Pause Mode window closes.
6. The Auto LED on the operator panel flashes until the transition is complete, then stays lit. The Auto Pending window (Figure 37) indicates that the 3494 is changing from Pause mode to Auto mode. **Emergency Motion Off recovery is in progress** will appear in the window for a short time during this transition. When Emergency Motion Off Recovery is complete, the window closes.

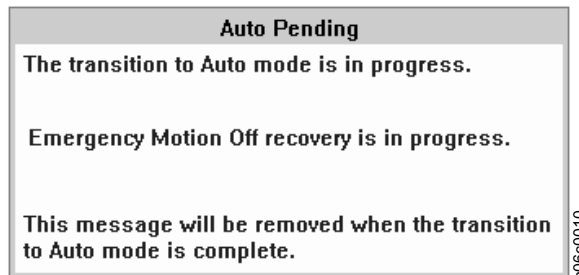


Figure 37. Auto Pending Window

7. The 3494 enters Auto mode.
8. The Library Manager sends an attention message to all attached hosts, indicating that the state of the 3494 has changed.

Auto Mode to Pause Mode (No Error)

You can use either the operator panel (see “Changing to Pause Mode” on page 84) or the Library Manager to request a change to Pause mode. Either way you generate the request, the Library Manager checks the status of the 3494.

When you use the Library Manager to request a change from Auto mode to Pause mode, the following actions occur:

1. The Pause Pending window indicates that the change to Pause mode is in progress and that the cartridge accessor is being parked. The Pause LED on the operator panel flashes until the transition is complete, then stays lit. The border of the Pause Pending window alternates between its highlighted and non-highlighted color. This provides a visual indication that the 3494 is still in Pause Pending mode. The Library Manager also beeps five times.
2. The Library Manager updates the System Summary window to indicate that the operational mode is Pause Pending.
3. The Library Manager instructs the cartridge accessor to move to its park location after completing the operations in progress.
4. The cartridge accessor notifies the Library Manager that it is in its park location.
5. The Library Manager removes power from the cartridge accessor.
6. The Library Manager enters Pause mode and sends an attention message to all attached hosts, indicating that the state of the 3494 has changed.
7. The Pause Pending window is removed, and the System Summary window indicates that the operational mode is Pause and that power is off.
8. The Pause Mode window is displayed, which instructs you to wait while the cartridge accessor is being parked. If the cartridge accessor cannot be parked or if the status of its power is unknown, the window includes this information.

Pause Mode to Manual Mode

You must use the Library Manager to request a change from Pause mode to Manual mode (see “Using Manual Mode” on page 279). The Library Manager performs no specific operations during the change from Pause mode to Manual mode. As the 3494 enters Manual mode, the Library Manager sends an attention message to all attached hosts, indicating that the 3494 is now in Manual mode.

The operational status is changed to Manual. If the cartridge accessor cannot be parked or if the status of its power is unknown, the window includes this information.

Manual Mode to Pause Mode

You must use the Library Manager to request a change from Manual mode to Pause mode. During the change from Manual mode to Pause mode, the following actions occur:

1. Operations that were fetched from the operations queue, but which you have not confirmed as executed, are returned to the operations queue for execution when the 3494 returns to Auto mode.
2. The Library Manager enters Pause mode and sends an attention message to all attached hosts, indicating that the state of the 3494 has changed.

Auto Mode to Manual Mode

When you select Manual mode while the 3494 is in Auto mode, the 3494 performs the operations required to move to Pause mode, then to move to Manual mode. All windows indicate that the 3494 is in Manual Pending, even as it is moving through Pause mode. Also, the Library Manager sends an attention message only when the 3494 enters Manual mode, not for the intermediate Pause mode. During the change from Auto mode to Manual mode, the following actions occur:

1. A Manual Pending window is displayed indicating that the change to Manual mode is in progress and that the cartridge accessor is being parked.
2. The System Summary window is displayed indicating that the operational mode is Manual Pending.
3. The Library Manager and the cartridge accessor perform the operations necessary to park the cartridge accessor and remove its power (see “Auto Mode to Pause Mode (No Error)” on page 78).
4. The 3494 completes the change to Manual mode (see “Pause Mode to Manual Mode” on page 79).
5. The Library Manager sends an attention message to all attached hosts, indicating that the state of the 3494 has changed.

Manual Mode to Auto Mode

You must use the Library Manager to request a change from Manual mode to Auto mode. The 3494 performs the operations to move to Pause mode, then to move to Auto mode. All windows indicate that the 3494 is in Auto Pending as it is moving through Pause mode. Also, the Library Manager sends an attention message only when the 3494 enters Auto mode, not for the intermediate Pause mode. During the change from Manual mode to Auto mode, the following actions occur:

1. The System Summary window indicates that the operational mode is Auto Pending.
2. The 3494 completes the change to Pause mode as described in “Manual Mode to Pause Mode” on page 79.
3. The 3494 completes the change to Auto mode as described in “Pause Mode to Auto Mode” on page 78.
4. The Library Manager sends an attention message to all attached hosts, indicating that the state of the 3494 has changed.

Initialization State to Auto, Pause, or Manual Mode

During the initialization-complete state, the Library Manager determines which operational mode to enter. It examines the database and the state of the cartridge accessor power to make the determination. When the Library Manager has made the determination, the change to the selected mode occurs. The steps that are taken during the transition are the same as an operator request when the 3494 is in Pause mode and Offline state.

Auto Mode to Pause Mode (Forced)

If the Library Manager detects a severe error or condition, and the error or condition is such that it is not possible to continue automated operation, the Library Manager enters Pause mode. It removes power immediately from the cartridge accessor and stops any operations in progress. When the Library Manager enters Pause mode, it sends an attention message to all attached hosts, indicating that the state of the 3494 has changed. The state-change message and an associated unsolicited unit check indicates the error recovery action (ERA).

The Pause Mode window directs you to open the 3494. In most cases, the Library Manager cannot park the cartridge accessor.

Operational State Transitions

The 3494 is in only one operational state at any time.

Shutdown Pending State to Shutdown State

During this change, the Library Manager application is removed from memory.

Shutdown State to Library Manager Initialization State

This change occurs when the Library Manager controller is powered on or when a severe error occurs.

Library Manager Initialization State to Initialization Complete State

After the Library Manager starts the main process of the Library Manager application, the 3494 enters the Initialization Complete state. The 3494 takes no actions during this change.

Offline State to Online State

Either you or the Library Manager can initiate the request to enter the Online state. In either case, the following actions occur during the transition:

1. The Library Manager examines the database to determine if both the teach and the inventory operations have completed. The 3494 cannot enter the Online state unless they have completed.
2. The Library Manager examines the status of the interfaces to the tape subsystems and host systems to determine whether any interfaces are initialized with the Library Manager. If at least one of the tape subsystems interfaces is initialized and the associated control unit is Online to the Library Manager, the 3494 enters the Online state and notifies all attached hosts. If no interfaces are initialized, the 3494 enters the Online state but does not send a notification.
3. If a VTS is installed, the Library Manager checks for defined "Fast Ready" categories. If it finds none, a message stating that "Fast Ready" categories should be defined is displayed for one minute or until you select **OK**. Notify your system administrator if you see this message.

Online State to Offline State

You initiate a request to enter the Offline state. After you request it, the transition must complete before you can request a transition to the Online state. The following actions occur during the change to the Offline state:

1. The Library Manager sends a message to all attached hosts indicating that the 3494 is entering the Offline state. The 3490E and 3590 control units, VTSs, and the Library Manager will fail any later host requests for 3494 functions.
2. The 3494 processes all host requests that the Library Manager accepted and queued before the request to enter the Offline state. The Library Manager provides responses to the requesting host as appropriate.
3. The Library Manager completes all internal commands that were queued before the request to enter the Offline state. If it detects errors, it sends appropriate messages to all attached hosts.
4. After the Library Manager completes all queued commands and sends responses, the 3494 enters the Offline state.

Notes:

1. The change from the Online to the Offline state can take more than ten minutes if a High-Capacity Output operation started before the request to go to the Offline state. The 3494 needs this time to move the cartridges to the High-Capacity Output Facility from the storage cells. If a High-Capacity

operation is in progress, you are prompted to cancel the operation. If you do not cancel the High-Capacity operation, the Library Manager cancels the Offline request.

2. If an Export or Import operation is in progress, you cannot request a change from the Online state to the Offline state. The 3494 will display a pop-up message alerting you to do one of the following:
 - Wait for the operation to complete.
 - Cancel the operation from the host.
 - Cancel the operation by selecting **Cancel VTS Export/Import** from the Commands/System Management pull-down.

Figure 52 on page 113 shows the pop-up message with these three options.

Initialization Complete State to Online or Offline State

During the Initialization Complete state, the Library Manager determines which operational state to enter. It makes the determination by examining the database. The steps taken during the transition are the same as for an operator request as described in “Offline State to Online State” on page 81 or “Online State to Offline State” on page 81.

Offline State to Shutdown Pending State

A request to enter the Shutdown Pending state is made through an operator request. The 3494 takes no actions during this change.

Informational State Transitions

One or more informational states may be active at any time in the 3494. When the 3494 enters or leaves an informational state while in the Online state, the Library Manager notifies all attached hosts. Most of the states are a condition in the 3494, and the 3494 performs no actions during the change into or out of the state.

The following describe any additional actions that occur during the change into or out of a state:

Degraded

When a component of the 3494 becomes available, the Library Manager determines whether any other components are unavailable. If all components are now available, the 3494 leaves the degraded state.

Safety interlock open

When a safety interlock (front door) is open, the Library Manager examines the condition of the 3494 to determine whether the interlock opening was expected or unexpected. If the opening was unexpected, the 3494 is forced into Pause mode.

Intervention required

When you correct a condition requiring intervention, the Library Manager determines whether any other intervention requirements exist. If none exist, the 3494 leaves the Intervention Required state.

Library Manager check-1 condition

The Library Manager detects an unrecoverable condition that does not allow it to continue processing host requests. It attempts to re-initialize to correct the problem.

Chapter 5. Basic Operating Procedures

This chapter describes the basic operating procedures for the 3494.

Table 6 shows the basic operating procedures that you can perform by using the operator panel on the front door of the L1x Frame.

Table 6. Quick Reference to Basic Operating Procedures

Task	Procedure
Powering on the 3494	"Powering On the 3494".
Powering off the 3494	"Powering Off the 3494" on page 84.
Changing to Pause mode	"Changing to Pause Mode" on page 84.
Changing to Auto mode	"Changing to Auto Mode" on page 84.
Changing from local to remote power	"Changing from Local to Remote Power" on page 84.
Changing from remote to local power	"Changing from Remote to Local Power" on page 85.
Inserting cartridges	"Inserting Cartridges" on page 85.
Removing ejected cartridges	"Removing Ejected Cartridges" on page 90.

Powering On the 3494

Perform the following steps to power on 3494:

1. Set the Unit Emergency switch on the operator panel to the I (ON) position (if it is not already in the ON position).

Notes:

- a. The 3494 must be powered off and remain off for 30 seconds before you attempt to power on the 3494 again. The 3494 needs the 30 second wait to allow the 3490E tape subsystem sufficient time to initialize properly.
 - b. If the 3494 has more than eight frames, or if the HA1 Frames is installed, both Unit Emergency switches must be set to the I (ON) position. The second switch is located at the right end of the 3494 (when facing the cartridge access doors).
 - c. If the 3494 has a B18, B10, or B20 VTS, set the Unit Emergency switch on the B18, B10, or B20 to the I (ON) position.
2. Press the Unit Power switch on the operator panel to the Power On position.

Notes:

- a. If the Local Remote Power feature is installed and the Local Remote power switch is in the Remote position, the Unit Power switch cannot power on the 3494.
 - b. When the Rack Power Ready and the System Power Ready LEDs are lit, the power to the 3494 is on.
 - c. If the 3494 is attached to an AS/400 or iSeries, ensure that the Media Library Device Driver (MLDD) is initialized.
3. Ensure that all tape drives are varied online to the appropriate host.

Powering Off the 3494

Perform the following steps to power off the 3494:

1. Ensure that all tape drives are varied offline to the appropriate host.
2. Press the Unit Power switch on the operator panel to the Power Off position.

Note: If the Local Remote power switch is in the Local position, the Unit Power switch can power off the 3494.

3. Observe the Power Off Pending LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is powered off.

If the 3494 has a VTS, the system can take up to 20 minutes to shut down.

When the shutdown completes, the 3494 (including the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs, if installed) is powered-off.

Note: In an emergency, you can power off the 3494 immediately by using the Unit Emergency switch either on the operator panel or at the right end of the 3494. The second switch, at the right end, is provided if the 3494 has more than eight frames or if the HA1 Frames is installed.

Attention: Using the Unit Emergency switch for immediate power off can cause database problems or check disk (CHKDSK) problems with the Library Manager or the VTS controller. The Unit Emergency switch does not power off the B18, B10, or B20 VTSs, but the associated tape drives will have power removed.

Changing to Pause Mode

Perform the following steps to change to Pause mode:

1. Press the Pause button on the operator panel.
2. Observe the Pause LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Pause mode. When the 3494 is in Pause mode, the Pause LED stays lit.

Note: The Auto LED stays lit until the 3494 enters Pause mode.

Changing to Auto Mode

Perform the following steps to change to Auto mode:

1. Press the Auto button on the operator panel.
2. Observe the Auto LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Auto mode. When the 3494 is in Auto mode, the Auto LED stays lit.

Note: The Pause LED stays lit until the 3494 enters Auto mode.

Changing from Local to Remote Power

If the Local Remote Power feature is installed, change to remote power by pressing the Local Remote power switch to the Remote position.

If the Local Remote Power feature is not installed, the Local Remote power switch must be in the Local position.

Attention: If the Local Remote Power feature is not installed, pressing the Local Remote power switch to the Remote position powers off the 3494.

Changing from Remote to Local Power

If the Local Remote Power feature is installed, change to local power by pressing the Local Remote power switch to the Local position.

Attention: If the Unit Power switch is in the Power Off position, pressing the Local Remote power switch to the Local position powers off the 3494.

Inserting Cartridges

See the following sources for ways to insert cartridges into the 3494:

- “Initial Cartridge Installation” on page 69.
- “Using Empty Cartridge Cells to Insert Cartridges”.
- “Using the Convenience I/O Station to Insert Cartridges” on page 86.
- “Using the High-Capacity I/O Facility to Insert Cartridges” on page 89.

Notes:

1. The teach process defined the type of I/O facility available to you.
2. Ensure that there are enough available cells for the cartridges you are inserting. Use the Operational Status window (Figure 65 on page 121) to check the number of empty storage cells in the 3494.

Inserting stacked volumes for a VTS requires that one or more volser ranges have been set up for the VTS before you insert the stacked volumes (see Figure 103 on page 188).

Insert logical volumes for a VTS by using the Manage Logical Volumes window (see Figure 123 on page 215).

Using Empty Cartridge Cells to Insert Cartridges

Attention: Never place Exported Stacked Volumes into free cells. This allows the 3494 to overwrite the data on them.

Perform the following steps to use empty cartridge cells to insert cartridges:

1. Place the library in Pause mode by pressing the Pause mode Motion Control switch on the operator panel.
2. When the Pause mode LED is lit, unlock and open the front door on any frame.
3. Insert the cartridges into any empty cartridge storage cells, except error recovery cell locations 1 A 1 (1 A 3 instead of 1 A 1 if the Dual Gripper feature is installed), 1 A 20, 1 A 19 (if you are using two service volumes) and the high-capacity output facility cells. See “Cartridge Placement” on page 70 for cartridge placement guidelines.

Notes:

- a. The error recovery cell locations for an HA1 Frames single gripper unit are 1 A 1 and 1 A 2. The error recovery cell locations for a HA1 Frames dual gripper unit are 1 A 3 and 1 A 4. On all HA1 Frames, the service bays store the service volumes.
- b. If no convenience I/O station and no high-capacity I/O facility defined, then cell 2 A 1 is reserved for ejects.

- c. You must insert the cartridges into the cartridge storage cells so that the leader block is on the right and the volser label is visible (see Figure 19 on page 21).
4. Close and lock the front door.
5. Press the Auto mode Motion Control switch on the operator panel.

Note: If Inventory Update is not **enabled**, select the **Perform Inventory Update (Full)** option under the **Inventory** option in the Commands window (see “Using the Commands Window” on page 173). This adds the newly inserted cartridges to the Library Manager database and sends messages to the hosts. You may also select the **Perform Inventory Update (Partial)** option. You are shown the doors that have been opened since the last inventory. You may select or deselect frames to re-inventory. The Library Manager holds all other 3494 activity until the inventory update is complete (approximately four minutes per frame being inventoried).

If the HA1 Frames is installed, **do not** insert cartridges into the service bays, because the 3494 **cannot** access them.

Using the Convenience I/O Station to Insert Cartridges

During normal automatic operation, you may insert cartridges into the 3494 by using the optional convenience I/O station and performing the following steps:

Note: Figure 38 on page 87 shows the optional 10-cartridge convenience I/O station. Figure 39 on page 89 shows the optional 30-cartridge convenience I/O station. If the 30-cartridge convenience I/O station is installed, the operation remains the same, but there are two operator doors. The upper operator door **1** provides access to the upper ten cartridge cells. The lower operator door **2** provides access to the lower 20 cartridge cells. (Both doors open together.)

1. Check the status of the convenience I/O station on the operator panel. If the Output Mode status LED and the Unload Required status LED are not lit on the operator panel, continue with step 2.
If the Output Mode status LED or the Unload Required status LED is lit on the operator panel, open the convenience I/O station door and remove all the cartridges in the convenience I/O station.
2. Insert the cartridges (**2** in Figure 38 on page 87) that you want to add to the 3494 into the convenience I/O station **1** with the cutoff corner (and leader block) to the left and the external label facing to the **inside** of the convenience I/O station. Shut the convenience I/O station door.
The Input Mode status LED lights and stays lit until the 3494 has stored all the cartridges that you inserted into the convenience I/O station.
3. Repeat these steps until you have inserted all of the cartridges.

Convenience I/O Mode

The convenience I/O station is in either Import mode or Insert mode, depending upon the capabilities of the VTSs in the 3494 and the configuration of the 3494 (see Figure 47 on page 107). The convenience I/O station is in Import mode when the 3494 has at least one VTS that is capable of Export and Import operations. The convenience I/O station is in Insert mode when the 3494 does not have a VTS that is capable of Export and Import operations.

The mode of the convenience I/O station is stored so that the Library Manager “remembers” the mode across shutdowns. When the mode is determined, the

stored mode is used each time the Library Manager initializes. The mode changes if the configuration changes or the VTS capabilities change. The System Summary window (Figure 47 on page 107) shows the **Convenience I/O Mode** of Import or Insert.

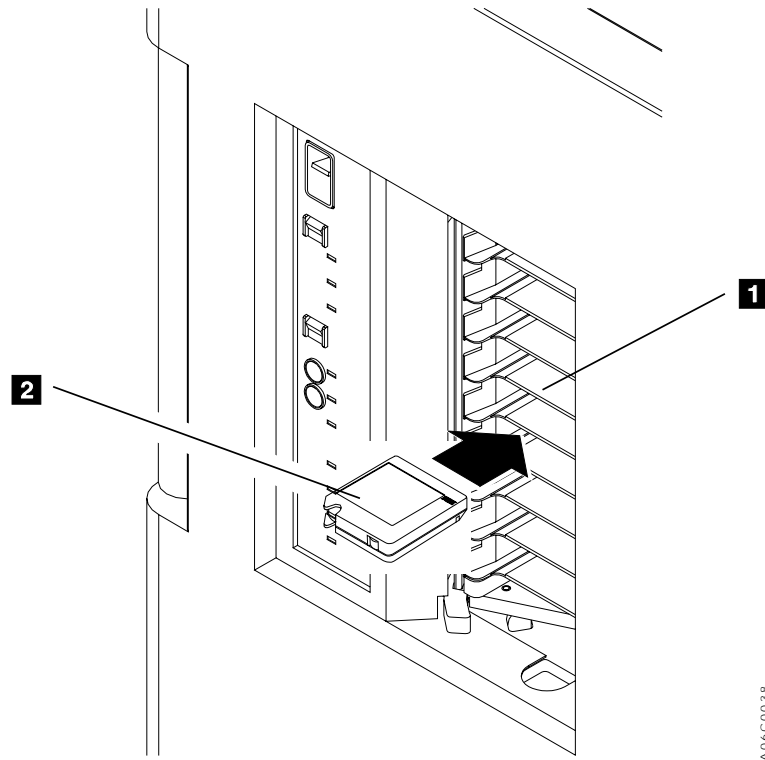


Figure 38. Inserting Cartridges in the Convenience I/O Station

Using the Convenience I/O Station Import Mode

When you insert J- or K-type cartridges into the convenience I/O station while it is in Import mode, the Library Manager adds them to the Unassigned category. Exported Stacked Volumes are J- or K-type cartridges that contain logical volumes that were exported from a VTS. In order to import logical volumes, you must move those cartridges that are Exported Stacked Volumes into the Import category of the 3494 after inputting them into the 3494. To use the convenience I/O station in Import mode, you must perform the following steps:

1. Input cartridges into the 3494 through the convenience I/O station as described previously.
2. If any cartridges are J- or K-type, observe the Manage Unassigned Volumes window (Figure 109 on page 197), which opens automatically. This window shows all J- and K-type cartridges in the Unassigned category. 1- and E-type cartridges have been input in the Insert category of the 3494 and are not shown.
3. Exported Stacked Volumes in the Unassigned category that are used for an Import operation must be moved into the Import category using the Manage Unassigned Volumes window.
4. You must move J- and K-type cartridges that you want to use as stacked volumes in a VTS into the Insert category. The Manage Unassigned Volumes window provides this capability as well as the **Volser ranges** push button for

validating the ranges that have been defined for physical volumes. The Library Manager inserts J- and K-type cartridges that are not in a VTS range of stacked volumes for native 3590 drives to use.

5. You must move J- and K-type cartridges that you intend for use by native 3590 drives into the Insert category. The **Volser ranges** push button allows validation of physical stacked volume ranges to ensure that native 3590 cartridges do not become VTS stacked volumes.

CAUTION:

When inserting a J- or K-type cartridge that is an Exported Stacked Volume intended for use by the VTS Exported Volume Read Utility (provided by DITTO/ESA for MVS, OS/390, and z/OS) with a native 3590 tape drive, you must modify the volser range to prevent the cartridge from becoming a VTS Stacked Volume.

6. "Category Recovery" on page 403 provides instructions for recovery from errors that are made when moving cartridges from the Unassigned category.

Note: You will be using the convenience I/O station for the following volumes:

- Exported Stacked Volumes that you want to import
- VTS stacked volumes
- J- and K-type cartridges for use by native 3590 drives

You can simplify the task of moving volumes from the Unassigned category into the Import or Insert category. Try to schedule insertion of these J- and K-type cartridges that have different usage at different times.

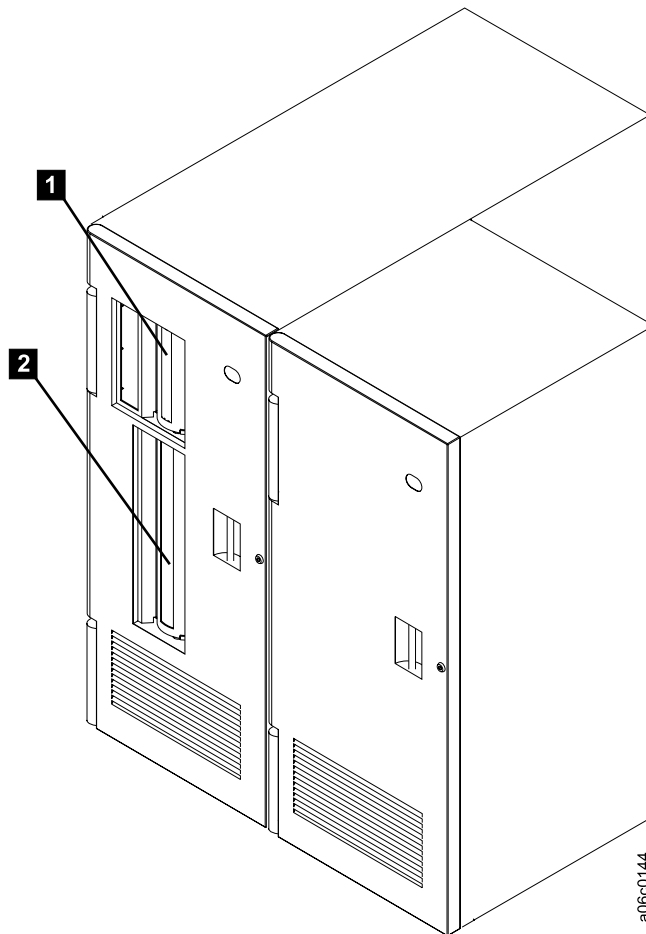


Figure 39. Optional 30 Cartridge Convenience I/O Station

Using the High-Capacity I/O Facility to Insert Cartridges

Attention: Never place Exported Stacked Volumes into the high-capacity I/O facility. This allows the 3494 to overwrite the data on them.

The 3494 scans the defined facility on the first transition to Auto mode. This scan occurs on any transition to Auto mode if the door associated with the frame containing the facility has been opened. The scan is performed in these cases regardless of the state of Inventory Update (enabled or disabled).

Following the scan of the facility, all 3494 activity is restored (mounts, demounts, convenience I/O). Volsers to be inserted are added to the database, and the host is notified. When the category has changed, the volsers may be mounted directly from the high-capacity area.

New volsers found in the facility are inserted, and those already existing in the facility remain ejected. Volsers are inserted from the facility in a top-to-bottom and right-to-left sequence (E 01 to A xx). Volsers are ejected to the facility in a top-to-bottom and left-to-right sequence (A 01 to E xx). The physical movement of the cartridge is scheduled with regular 3494 activity. You may change the priority on a particular insert operation to complete movement faster.

Configuring the high-capacity I/O facility is done during a teach operation under the Teach window in Service mode.

Note: There should be enough free cells in the 3494 to hold the cartridges that must be moved when the high-capacity I/O facility is configured. When the facility is moved to a new location, both the old location rack and the new location rack are scanned.

Removing Ejected Cartridges

You may remove ejected cartridges from the 3494 in the following ways:

- By removing an ejected cartridge from the single-cell output facility
- By removing an ejected cartridge from the high-capacity output facility or high-capacity I/O facility
- By removing an ejected cartridge from the convenience I/O station

Notes:

1. The type of I/O facility available to you was defined during installation of the 3494.
2. Avoid removing cartridges manually from 3494 cells. Have the host eject them to an I/O facility.

Removing an Ejected Cartridge from the Single-Cell Output Facility

Perform the following steps to remove an ejected cartridge from the single-cell output facility:

1. Press the Pause button on the operator panel.
2. Observe the Pause mode status LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Pause mode, then stays lit.
3. Unlock and open the L1x Frame front door and retrieve the ejected cartridge from the single-cell output facility at location 2 A 1 (or location 2 A 3 if the Dual Gripper feature is installed).
4. Shut and lock the L1x Frame door.
5. Press the Auto mode button on the operator panel.
6. Observe the Auto mode status LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Auto mode, then stays lit.

Note: If the HA1 Frames is installed, the output facility still uses cells in the L1x Frame. The cells in the service bays are not available to the 3494.

Removing Ejected Cartridges from the High-Capacity Output Facility

Perform the following steps to remove ejected cartridges from the high-capacity output facility:

1. Press the Pause button on the operator panel.
2. Observe the Pause mode status LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Pause mode, then stays lit.
3. Unlock and open the L1x Frame front door and retrieve the ejected cartridges from the area defined as the high-capacity output facility.
4. Shut and lock the L1x Frame door.
5. Press the Auto mode button on the operator panel.

6. Observe the Auto mode status LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Auto mode, then stays lit.

Note: If the HA1 Frames is installed, the output facility still uses cells in the L1x Frame. The cells in the service bays are not available to the 3494.

Removing Ejected Cartridges from the High-Capacity I/O Facility

Perform the following steps to remove ejected cartridges from the high-capacity I/O facility:

1. Press the Pause button on the operator panel.
2. Observe the Pause mode status LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Pause mode, then stays lit.
3. Unlock and open the frame door that contains the high-capacity I/O facility and retrieve the ejected cartridges from the area defined as the high-capacity I/O facility.
4. Shut and lock the frame door.
5. Press the Auto mode button on the operator panel.
6. Observe the Auto mode status LED on the operator panel. The LED flashes until the 3494 is in Auto mode, then stays lit.

Note: If the HA1 Frames is installed, the output facility still uses cells in the L1x Frame. The cells in the service bays are not available to the 3494.

Removing Ejected Cartridges from the Convenience I/O Station

Perform the following steps to remove ejected cartridges from the convenience I/O station:

1. Observe the Output mode status LED on the operator panel. If the LED is lit, the convenience I/O station contains ejected cartridges.
2. Open the convenience I/O station door and remove all the cartridges.
3. Shut the convenience I/O station door.

Note: The convenience I/O station receives ejected cartridges of all types. You should expect a mixture of CST, ECCST, HPCT, and EHPCT (1-, E-, J-, and K-type) cartridges. No order relation exists. J- and K-type cartridges may be any of the following volumes:

- Newly created Exported Stacked Volumes from the Export-Hold category
- Exported Stacked Volumes that were used in an Import operation from the Import category
- VTS stacked volumes being ejected
- Native 3590 cartridges being ejected by a host

Site operations management of time periods for Export and Import operations can minimize the mix of cartridges in the convenience I/O station.

Chapter 6. Advanced Operating Procedures

This chapter describes the advanced operating procedures for the 3494.

Quick Reference to Library Manager Advanced Operating Procedures

Table 7 shows the advanced operating procedures you can perform by using the Library Manager at the rear of the 3494.

Table 7. Quick Reference to Library Manager Advanced Operating Procedures

Task	Reference
Using the Library Manager	"Using the Library Manager" on page 97.
Selecting options with the Library Manager	"Making Library Manager Selections" on page 100.
Selecting options with a keyboard	"Selecting with the Keyboard" on page 100.
Selecting options with a pointing device	"Selecting with the Pointing Device" on page 101.
Using the Help window	"Using the Help Window" on page 103.
Using the Help search	"Help Search" on page 105.
Using the Help action bar	"Help Action Bar" on page 105.
Using the function keys	"Library Manager Function Keys" on page 106.
Using the Operator menu	"Using the Operator Menu" on page 107.
Using the Mode window	"Using the Mode Window" on page 108.
Selecting Auto mode	"Auto" on page 109.
Selecting Pause mode	"Pause" on page 109.
Selecting Manual mode	"Manual" on page 110.
Selecting the Online state	"Online" on page 110.
Selecting the Offline state	"Offline" on page 112.
Using the Service menu option	"Service Menu" on page 114.
Switching the active Library Manager to standby	"Switch Active Library to Standby" on page 114.
Switching the active accessor to standby	"Switch Active Accessor to Standby" on page 115.
Enabling dual active accessors	"Enable Dual Active Accessors" on page 116.
Disabling dual active accessors	"Disable Dual Active Accessors" on page 116.
Using the Shutdown option	"Shutdown" on page 117.
Using the Status window	"Using the Status Window" on page 119.
Using the Operational Status option	"Operational Status" on page 121.
Using the Component Availability Status option	"Component Availability Status" on page 124.
Using the VTS Status option	"Using the VTS Status Window" on page 127.

Table 7. Quick Reference to Library Manager Advanced Operating Procedures (continued)

Task	Reference
Using the Performance Statistics option	"Performance Statistics" on page 129.
Displaying accessor mounts per hour	"Accessor Mounts Per Hour" on page 131.
Using the VTS Active Data option	"VTS Active Data" on page 132.
Using the VTS Data Flow option	"VTS Data Flow" on page 134.
Using the VTS Mount Hit Data option	"VTS Mount Hit Data" on page 135.
Using the VTS Physical Device Mount History option	"VTS Physical Device Mount History" on page 137.
Using the VTS Logical Mounts per Hour option	"VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour" on page 138.
Using the VTS Active Data Distribution option	"VTS Active Data Distribution" on page 139.
Using the System Summary window	"Using the System Summary Window" on page 141.
Requesting LAN host status	"LAN Host Status" on page 147.
Displaying the dual active accessor boundary	"Dual Accessor Zones" on page 148.
Using the Queues window	"Using the Queues Window" on page 149.
Using the Database window	"Using the Database Window" on page 151.
Searching the database for volsers, categories, devices	"Search Database for Volsers, Categories, Devices" on page 152.
Using the Search Entry Field option	"Search Criteria" on page 152.
Using the Flag option	"Volser Flags" on page 154.
Using the Search Results option	"Search Results" on page 155.
Using the Displaying Search Results option	"Displaying Search Results" on page 156.
Searching the database for volsers, constructs, pools	"Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools" on page 156.
Using the Search Entry Field option.	"Search Criteria" on page 157.
Using the Search Results option.	"Search Results" on page 161.
Using the Displaying Search Results option.	"Displaying Search Results" on page 162.
Using the List Database Volumes option	"List Database Volumes" on page 162.
Finding a logical volume's home	"Find A Logical Volume's Home" on page 168.
Using the Stacked Volume Map option	"Stacked Volume Map" on page 170.
Using the Rebuild Database Statistics option	"Rebuild Database Statistics" on page 171.
Using the Commands window	"Using the Commands Window" on page 173.
Scheduling drive cleaning	"Schedule Cleaning" on page 178.
Ejecting a cleaner cartridge	"Eject a Cleaner Cartridge" on page 181.
Changing cleaner masks	"Set Cleaner Masks" on page 182.
Sending a message to a host console	"Send Message to Host Consoles" on page 183.
Adding a message to the transaction log	"Add Message to Transaction Log" on page 183.

Table 7. Quick Reference to Library Manager Advanced Operating Procedures (continued)

Task	Reference
Promoting a command in the queue	"Promote a Command in the Queue" on page 185.
Setting volser ranges	"Volser Ranges for Media Types" on page 186.
Deleting logical volumes	"Delete Logical Volumes" on page 189.
Ejecting stacked volumes	"Eject A Stacked Volume" on page 190.
Setting VTS category attributes	"Set VTS Category Attributes" on page 191.
Setting VTS management policies	"VTS Management Policies" on page 193.
Managing unassigned volumes	"Manage Unassigned Volumes" on page 196.
Managing import volumes	"Manage Import Volumes" on page 198.
Managing insert volumes	"Manage Insert Volumes" on page 199.
Managing export-hold volumes	"Manage Export-Hold Volumes" on page 200.
Canceling export/import	"Cancel VTS Export/Import" on page 201.
Manage constructs and pools	"Manage Constructs and Pools" on page 201.
Manage storage groups	"Manage Storage Groups" on page 202.
Manage management classes	"Manage Management Classes" on page 203.
Manage storage classes	"Manage Storage Classes" on page 205.
Manage data classes	"Manage Data Classes" on page 206.
Modify stacked volume pool properties	"Stacked Volume Pool Properties" on page 207.
Move/eject stacked volumes	"Move/Eject Stacked Volumes" on page 208.
View move/eject stacked volumes status	"Move/Eject Stacked Volumes (Status)" on page 212.
Insert logical volumes or change existing logical volumes	"Manage Logical Volumes" on page 214.
Inventorying new storage or re-inventorying the complete system	"Inventory New Storage or Re-inventory Complete System" on page 219.
Disabling the inventory update	"Disable Inventory Update" on page 228.
Enabling the inventory update	"Enable Inventory Update" on page 229.
Performing the inventory update (full)	"Perform Inventory Update (Full)" on page 229.
Performing the inventory update (partial)	"Perform Inventory Update (Partial)" on page 230.
Setting up a stand-alone device	"Stand-Alone Device" on page 231.
Resetting a stand-alone device	"Reset Stand-Alone Device" on page 234.
Checking the status of a stand-alone device	"Stand-Alone Device Status" on page 235.
Inserting unlabeled cartridges	"Insert Unlabeled Cartridges" on page 235.
Adding a LAN host	"Add LAN Host to Library" on page 237.
Deleting a LAN host	"Delete LAN Host from Library" on page 243.
Updating LAN host information	"Update LAN Host Information" on page 244.

Table 7. Quick Reference to Library Manager Advanced Operating Procedures (continued)

Task	Reference
Changing LAN host information	"Change LAN Host Information" on page 245.
Requesting LAN host information	"Library LAN Information" on page 250.
Performing operator interventions	"Operator Intervention" on page 251.
Changing the system administrator password	"Change System Administrator Password" on page 253.
Enabling or disabling service access	"Service Access" on page 254.
Monitoring Library Manager events	"Monitoring Library Manager Events" on page 254.
Using the Library Manager's SNMP features	"Using SNMP Features" on page 255.
Selecting SNMP trap types	"Selecting SNMP Trap Types" on page 256.
Changing SNMP trap destinations	"Configuring SNMP Trap Destinations" on page 256.
Starting SNMP	"Starting SNMP" on page 258.
Stopping SNMP	"Stopping SNMP" on page 259.
Sending a TESTM trap	"Sending TESTM Messages" on page 259.
Sending a "Call Home" request to a subsystem	"Call Home" on page 273.
Enabling or disabling the Web Server function	"Specialist (Web Server)" on page 274.
Using the Options window	"Using the Options Window" on page 279.
Using Manual mode	"Using Manual Mode" on page 279.
Starting Manual mode	"Starting Manual Mode" on page 280.
Operating in Manual mode	"Operating in Manual Mode" on page 282.
Mounting cartridges in Manual mode	"Mounting Cartridges" on page 283.
Demounting cartridges in Manual mode	"Demounting Cartridges" on page 284.
Inserting cartridges in Manual mode	"Inserting Cartridges" on page 284.
Ejecting cartridges in Manual mode	"Ejecting Cartridges" on page 286.
Reviewing unknown volume locations in Manual mode	"Reviewing Unknown Volume Locations" on page 287.
Handling error processing in Manual mode	"Error Processing" on page 288.
Locating and identifying home-cell locations in Manual mode	"Locating and Identifying Home-Cell Locations" on page 289.
Ending Manual mode	"Ending Manual Mode" on page 290.
Using the Specialist	"Specialist Features and Functions" on page 291.
Using the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist	"Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Features and Functions" on page 295.
Removing a cartridge from the gripper	"Cartridge Removal from the Gripper" on page 299.
Using the keyboard template	"Using the Keyboard Template" on page 300.
Using the Remote Library Manager Console	Chapter 7, "Remote Library Manager Console Feature" on page 301.

Using the Library Manager

The Library Manager display contains one Operator menu. The Operator menu contains all the functions needed at the operator level. You access additional menus and windows through the Operator menu.

Note: The Service menu... option in the Mode window allows access to functions that service personnel use.

Within the Library Manager application, the primary visual and interactive components are as follows:

- windows
- icons
- free-moving pointing device
- various controls to select windows, size windows, select options, and initiate actions

Not all windows contain all the items described. Figure 40 shows these key components, and the text describes the uses of these components.

Note: The windows shown are examples and may not be exactly the same as the windows on your Library Manager display.

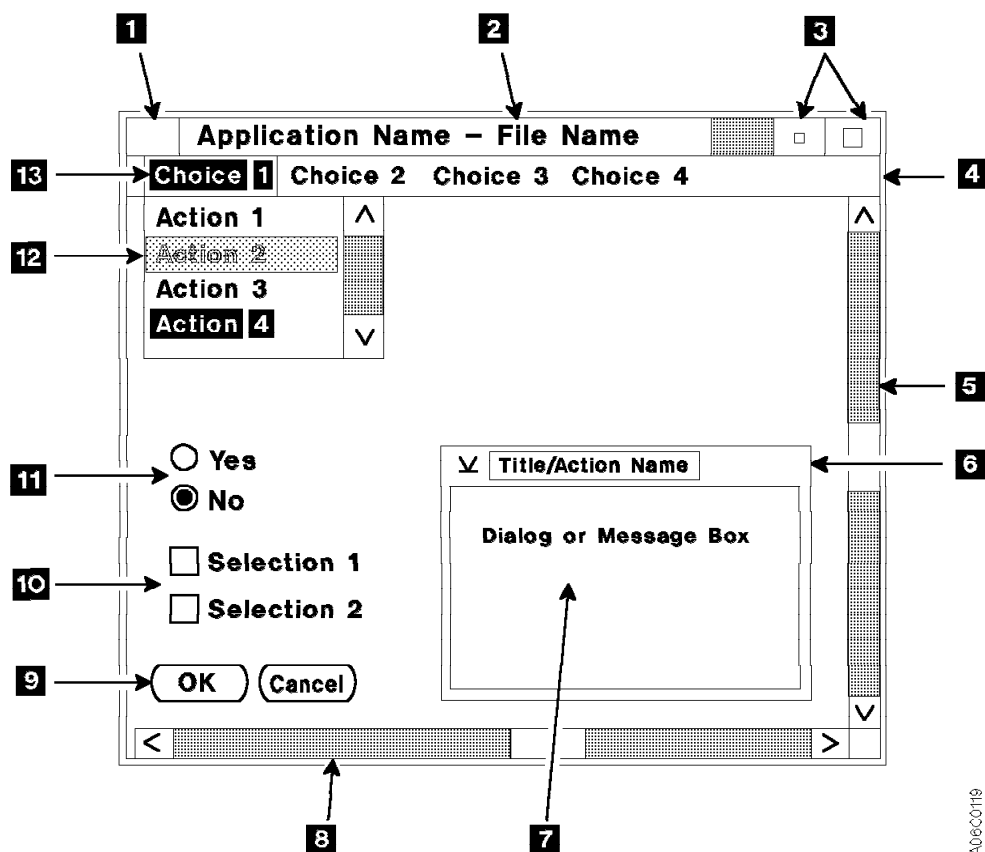


Figure 40. Operator Menu Controls

1 System Menu Icon

When you select this horizontal line with one click of the pointing device, a window with an

expanded list of options opens (see Figure 41). Double-clicking this icon closes the window that contains the System Menu icon. See “Selecting with the Pointing Device” on page 101 for explanations of selecting with a pointing device.

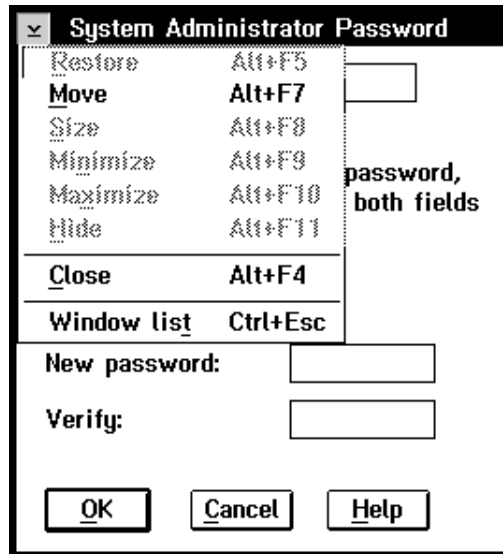


Figure 41. System Menu

2 Title Bar

This area, at the top of each window, contains the window title.

Note: By holding down the pointing device button on the title bar, you can drag (move) the entire window to a different location on the screen. See “Selecting with the Pointing Device” on page 101 for instructions to operate the pointing device.

3 Window-Sizing Icons

You can use the window-sizing icons to change the windows in the following ways:

- Enlarge (maximize) the window to the full size of the screen (large square)
- Restore the window to its original size (small square with brackets)
- Minimize (to an icon) the selected window (small square) and place a predefined icon near the bottom of the screen

To restore the window to the screen, double-click the icon.

Note: The window-sizing icons, for a particular window, may be hidden if one or more additional windows are expanded to cover the desired window. You can close the overlaying windows to gain access to the

desired window, or you can select any part of the desired window.

- 4 Sizeable-Window Border** By using the pointing device, you can move a vertical border in or out to decrease or increase the width of the window. You can move a horizontal border up or down to decrease or increase the height of the window.

- 5 Vertical Scroll Bar** You can use the scroll bars to move additional, unseen information into view on the screen. By selecting the up or down scroll bar arrows, you can move current information vertically off the screen. You can also scroll new information vertically on to the screen.

The bold (dark-colored) portions of the scroll bars show whether, and how much, information is available for display. Typically, these areas are not bold. They are of a lighter color than the slider box. A slider box (the unshaded part of the scroll bar) shows the position and the size of the visible information in relation to the information that is available. As the window is scrolled, bold bars change size to reflect the amount of information available for display in both directions. If no slider box is shown, all available information is visible.

- 6 Non-Sizeable-Window Border** You cannot use a non-sizeable window border to increase or decrease the size of the window.

- 7 Window or Message Box** Windows and message boxes open when the application needs additional information, or when information displays. Windows and message boxes can also include radio buttons, check boxes, and push buttons to allow you to respond to an application.

- 8 Horizontal Scroll Bar** You can use the scroll bars to move additional, unseen information into view on the screen. By selecting the left or the right scroll bar arrows, you can move current information horizontally off the screen. You can also scroll new information horizontally on to the screen. The bold (dark-colored) portions of the scroll bars show whether, and how much, information is available for display. Typically, these areas are not bold. They are of a lighter color than the slider box. As the window is scrolled, bold bars change size to reflect the amount of information available for display in both directions.

- 9 Push Buttons** Push buttons allow you to select a particular action, which occurs immediately. The ellipsis (...) following a menu item indicates that a window will open if you select that item.

- 10 Check Boxes** A check box is a two-part control consisting of a square box and text. Unlike radio buttons, you can

select one or more check boxes. To select a check box, place the pointing device in the box and click. The box is marked with a ✓ to show that you selected it. Click the box again to cancel the selection.

11 Radio Buttons

Radio buttons allow you to select between two or more possible responses or actions. Only one selection is allowed within any set of radio buttons. If you make a second selection, the first selection is canceled. The action that the radio button selects typically occurs after you make all screen selections and select a push button to initiate the actions.

12 Menu

Menus are an expansion of an action bar item. The menu opens when you select the corresponding action bar item. The ellipsis (...) following an option item indicates that a window will open if you select that item. A right-pointing triangle (►) at the right of an option indicates that this option has suboptions. Click on the option to open a window that allows you to select a suboption.

Click the desired action to highlight the item. If a line item is reduced in contrast (dimmer) from the other items (Action 2 in Figure 40 on page 97), you cannot select that item.

13 Action Bar

The action bar is the primary window containing keywords that, when selected, cause another window to open.

Click the desired action to highlight the item. If a line item is not available, then the item is not selectable.

Making Library Manager Selections

You can make selections from the action bar of the Operator menu, with choices from menus, or by active radio buttons, check boxes, and push buttons. Although you can use either the keyboard or the pointing device to make your selections, the pointing device is the preferred method for ease of use.

Selecting with the Keyboard

You can use the keyboard to select options instead of using the pointing device by performing the following steps:

1. Activate the Operator (or main) menu action bar by pressing **Ctrl+F10**.
2. Highlight the item by using one of the following methods:
 - Use the cursor arrow keys to highlight the desired item.
 - Key in the underlined letter of the desired item, which is usually the first letter in the item.
3. Press the **Enter** key.

The window for the selected item then opens.
4. Press the **Esc** key to return to the Operator menu action bar.
5. Press the **Esc** key a second time to deactivate the Operator menu action bar.

Figure 42 on page 102 shows the commonly used keys.

Note: Some actions prompt for confirmation before actual selection occurs. You typically confirm an action by pressing the Enter key or by selecting an OK or a Yes push button.

Selecting with the Pointing Device

Two types of pointing devices are available. Figure 42 on page 102 shows the trackball pointing device. The trackpoint pointing device is a red button in the middle of the keyboard, as shown in Figure 43 on page 102. You can use the pointing devices to select options on the display. You can take actions by using the accompanying buttons.

Trackball Pointing Device

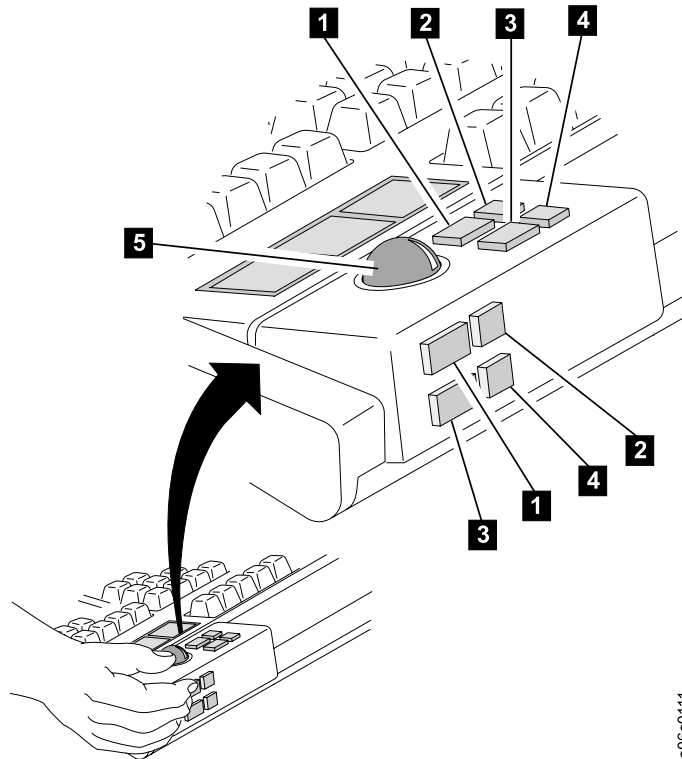
To select objects by using the trackball pointing device, perform the following steps:

1. Rotate the ball **5** to position the pointer on the object.
2. Press and quickly release button **1**. This action selects an object and is known as “clicking an object.”
3. Press and quickly release button **1** twice to initiate the selected object. This action is known as “double-clicking an object.”

To select and move an object on the screen, perform the following steps:

1. Rotate the ball **5** to position the pointer on the object.
2. Click the object by using button **2** or **4** to select and lock the pointer on the object.
3. Rotate the ball to move the object. This action is known as “dragging an object.”
4. Release the object by pressing either button.

Note: You may also move the object using an alternate method. Hold down button **1** or button **3** while moving the ball, then release it when the object is positioned as desired.



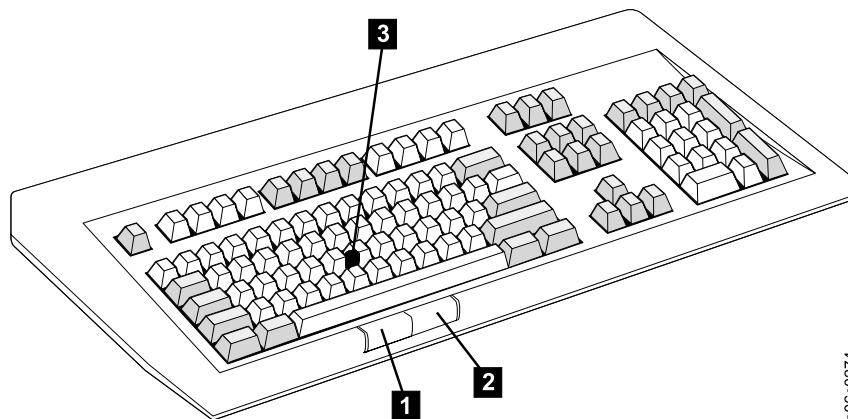
a06c0111

Figure 42. Trackball Pointing Device

Track Pointer Keyboard

To select objects by using the track pointer keyboard, perform the following steps:

1. Gently press the track point (**3** in Figure 43) in the direction you desire the pointer to move and position the pointer on the object.
2. Press and quickly release button **1** in Figure 43. This action selects an object and is known as “clicking an object.”
3. Press and quickly release button **1** in Figure 43 twice to initiate the selected item. This action is known as “double-clicking an object.”



a06c0274

Figure 43. Track Pointer Keyboard

To select and move an object on the screen, perform the following steps:

1. Gently press the trackpoint (**3** in Figure 43 on page 102) to position the pointer on the object.
2. Press and hold down button **1** in Figure 43 on page 102.
3. Gently press the trackpoint (**3** in Figure 43 on page 102) to move the object. This action is known as “dragging an object.”
4. Release the object by releasing button **1**.

Note: Button **2** in Figure 43 on page 102 is not used.

Using the Help Window

The Help facility provides additional information for using the various items in the windows. To get help for an action bar item, menu item, or window, use the pointing device to click the Help action bar item. You can also highlight the field or item from the keyboard and press F1 to display help. The Help window that opens gives a brief description of the item or field.

A Help option is available on the action bar of the Operator menu. You can select this option in the same way as any other option. Figure 44 shows the Help window.

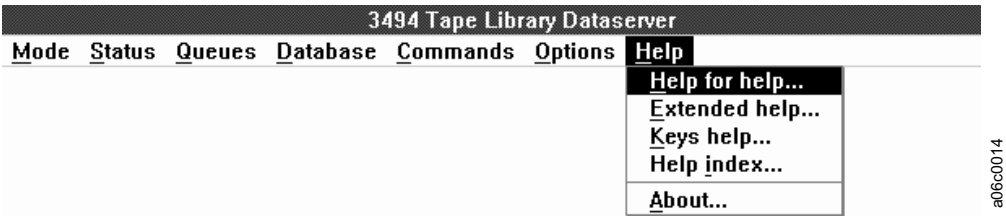


Figure 44. Help Window

The Help window includes the following additional options:

<u>H</u>elp for help...	Explains the content and how to use the other Help choices.
<u>E</u>xtended help...	Provides general information about the Operator menu. Click <u>E</u>xtended help... in the Help window (or select and press Enter). You can also press F2 from within a Help window.
<u>K</u>eys help...	Displays a list of key assignments available. Click <u>K</u>eys help... in the Help window (or select and press Enter). You can also press F9 from within a Help window.
<u>H</u>elp <u>i</u>ndex...	Provides an alphabetic list of items along with a search capability of all the Help information in the application (see Figure 45 on page 104). You can press F11 or Shift+F1 from within a Help window to view this list.
<u>A</u>bout...	Displays the copyright notice and version of the Library Manager and the version of the operating system.

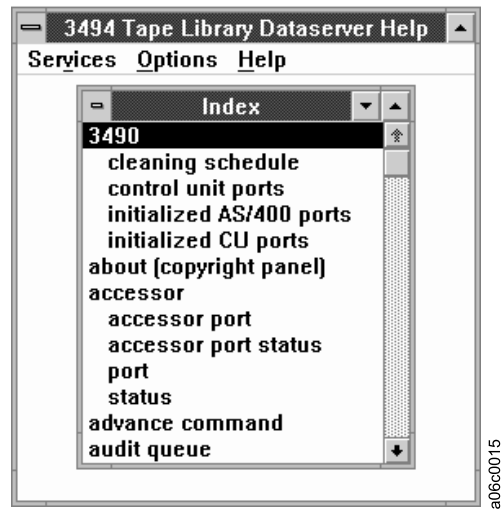


Figure 45. Help Index Window

Help Search

To search the list of Help topics, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Search** option in the Services window (or select and press Enter).

Note: The Services window is available under any of the Help windows.

2. Type the word or phrase in the **Search** field (case is ignored).
3. Select the desired search pattern, for example, the **Index** radio button. Use the tab keys on the keyboard to move between radio buttons and push button groups. Then, highlight the desired search pattern by using the cursor arrow keys.
4. Click the **Search** option (or select and press Enter).

Help Action Bar

The following Help action bar options are always available:

S <u>ervices</u>	Search through the Help windows.
O <u>ptions</u>	Expand or contract the list of available Help windows or display the list of Help windows you have viewed during the session.
H <u>elp</u>	Provide help to use the Help facility.

If you select the **Contents** option in the Options window, the Contents window opens. This window lists all the available Help topics. A plus sign (+) next to a topic indicates that additional entries are available for that topic. Click the plus sign to see the complete list. If you are using a keyboard, press the up arrow (↑) or down arrow (↓) key to highlight the topic. Then, press the + key.

Highlighted words and phrases indicate that Help is available for that topic. Highlighting can be words in reverse text (text with white letters on a black background) or words that are set off in a different color. To select, move the pointing device arrow to the reverse text topic and double-click. See “Selecting with the Pointing Device” on page 101 for instructions to use the pointing device to select options. To select an option from the keyboard, tab to the highlighted word and press Enter. See “Selecting with the Keyboard” on page 100 for instructions to use the keyboard to select options.

If you want to view a topic, double-click the topic (or select and press Enter). After you select a topic, the information for that topic displays in a window. The topic title is at the top of the window to remind you of the topic that you are viewing.

To close a Help window, press the **Esc** key. If a previous Help topic is available, it is displayed. If not, the previous window opens.

To exit the Help facility without viewing previous Help topics, do any of the following:

- Select the **C**lose option in the System Menu window.
- Press **Ctrl+F4**.
- Press **Alt+F4**.
- Press **Esc**
- Double-click the System Menu icon.

Note: When a + joins two keys, for example, Ctrl+F4, press and hold Ctrl, press F4, then release F4 and Ctrl.

You can also move the pointing device arrow to the – sign in the upper left corner of the Help window and double-click with the pointing device button. See “Selecting with the Pointing Device” on page 101 for instructions to use the pointing device to select options.

Library Manager Function Keys

The following function keys are available for use with the Library Manager:

F1	Displays the Help window.
F2	Displays extended Help (general Help information) from within the Help window displayed currently.
F3	Initiates shutdown procedures.
F9	Displays a list of keys from within any Help window.
F10	Activates the window action bar.
F11 or Shift+F1	Displays the Help index from within any Help window.
Ctrl+F10	Activates the Operator menu action bar.
Ctrl+PgUp	Displays the text to the left of the window.
Ctrl+PgDn	Displays the text to the right of the window.
Alt+F4	Closes the window.
Alt+F5	Restores the window to its original size.
Alt+F7	Moves the window.
Alt+F8	Sizes the window.
Alt+F9	Minimizes the window on the display.
Alt+F10	Maximizes (enlarges) the window.
Alt+Spacebar	Cycles between the application window and the selected window.
Shift+F10	Displays information about the Help facility.
Shift+Esc	Cycles between the application window and the selected window.
Shift+Tab	Moves the cursor to the left among a group of choices.
Tab	Moves the cursor to the right among a group of choices.
Arrows	Moves the cursor among selectable choices.
End	Causes the last selectable option in the window to be highlighted (ready for selection).
Esc	Cancels a window or a system menu.
Home	Causes the first selectable option in the window to be highlighted (ready for selection).
PgDn	Scrolls down one window.
PgUp	Scrolls up one window.

Underlined letter

Permits simplified keyboard selection by using only a single letter for an action bar or a window item.

Using the Operator Menu

- The Operator menu (Figure 46) opens after one of the following occurs:
- The Library Manager is powered on.
 - The Copyright window opens.
 - The Auto mode and Online state process has completed.



Figure 46. Operator Menu

The Operator menu window consists of a title bar, an action bar, and initially, the System Summary window (Figure 47).

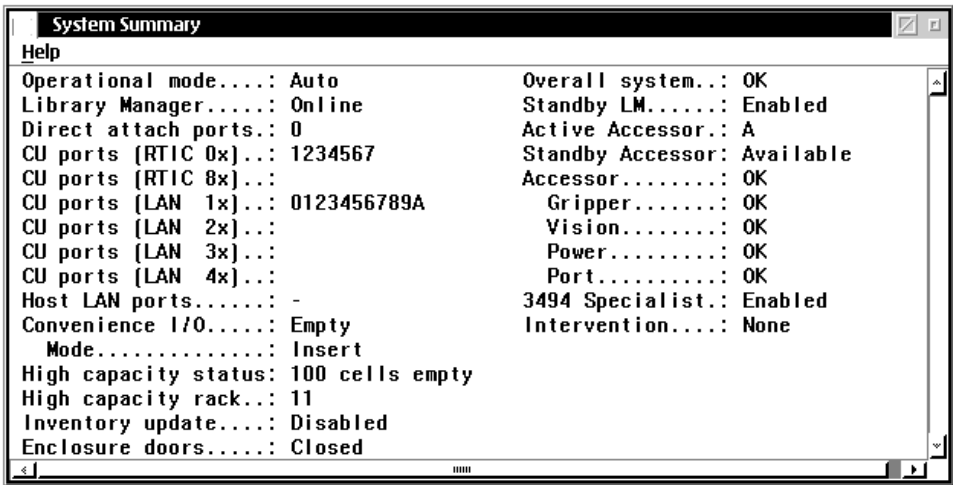


Figure 47. System Summary Window

You can select any of the action bar items on the Operator menu. When you select one of the action bar items, a window opens with additional information or options, as follows:

Selection	Menu Options
<u>M</u> ode	Allows selection of an operational mode and state (see “Using the Mode Window” on page 108).
<u>S</u> tatus	Displays subsystem status and statistics (see “Using the Status Window” on page 119).
<u>Q</u> ueues	Displays the contents of the command queues (see “Using the Queues Window” on page 149).
<u>D</u> atabase	Provides database search procedures for volumes (see “Using the Database Window” on page 151).

<u>C</u> ommands	Provides operator commands and allows responses to intervention-required conditions (see “Using the Commands Window” on page 173)
<u>O</u> ptions	Provides various subsystem options (see “Using the Options Window” on page 279).
<u>H</u> elp	Provides general Help (see “Using the Help Window” on page 103).

See “Library Manager Function Keys” on page 106 for a listing of the keys associated with the Operator menu.

Using the Mode Window

Use the Mode window (Figure 48) to change the operating mode of the 3494. The Mode window shows the current operating mode and state of the 3494 by using check marks next to appropriate line items. When you select a new mode or state, the check marks move to the new line items.

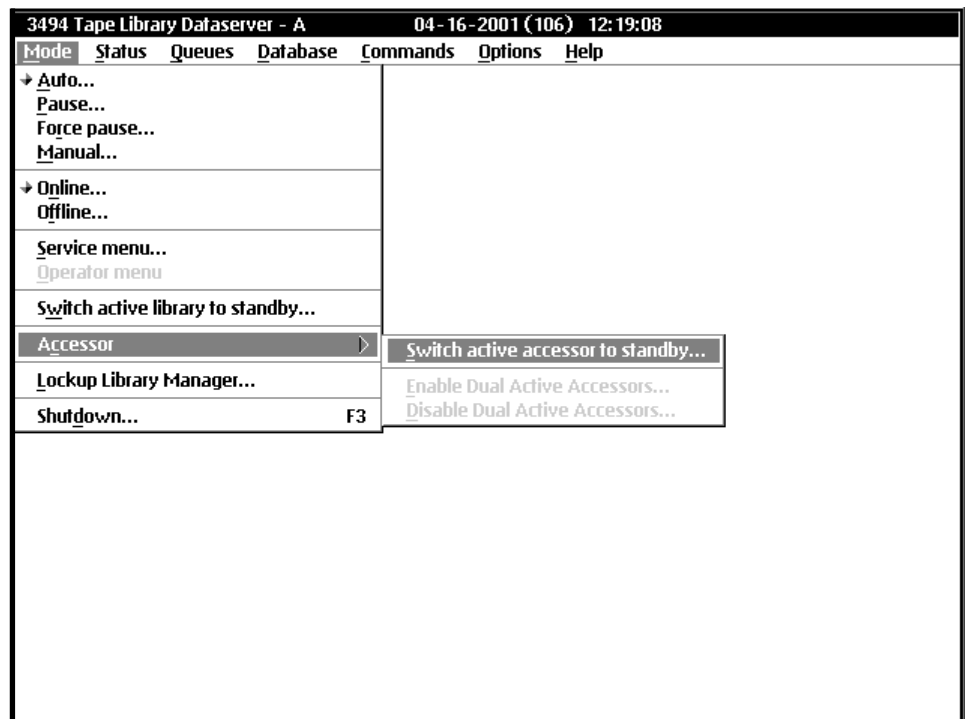


Figure 48. Mode Window

The following options are available in the Mode window:

<u>A</u> uto...	Selects automated operation (see “Auto” on page 109).
<u>P</u> ause...	Pauses cartridge accessor motion (see “Pause” on page 109).
<u>F</u> orce pause...	Releases the 3494 from Pause Pending mode (see “Force Pause” on page 110).
<u>M</u> anual...	Places the 3494 in Manual mode (see “Manual” on page 110).

<u>O</u>ne...	Allows the 3494 to accept host commands (see "Online" on page 110).
<u>O</u>ffline...	Causes the 3494 to reject host commands (see "Offline" on page 112).
<u>S</u>ervice menu...	Displays the Service menu (see "Service Menu" on page 114).
<u>O</u>perator menu	Causes the Operator menu to open when in Service mode.
<u>S</u>witch active library to standby...	Allows you to switch the active Library Manager manually to be the standby Library Manager.
<u>A</u>ccessor	Allows you to switch the active accessor manually to be the standby accessor, enable dual active accessors, or disable dual active accessors.
<u>L</u>ockup Library Manager...	Locks keyboard and display to system administrator password.
<u>S</u>hutdown...	Causes the library to enter the shutdown process (see "Shutdown" on page 117).

Auto

Select the **Auto...** option for automated operations. After confirmation of your Auto mode selection, the Library Manager sends all motion commands to the cartridge accessor controller.

You are prompted to confirm your selection. The confirmation step allows you to explore the list of options before you confirm your selection.

If you select Auto mode while in Pause mode, cartridge accessor motion is again enabled. If you select Auto mode while in Manual mode, then all commands queued for Manual mode are requeued. They are requeued for the cartridge accessor and the cartridge accessor's motion is enabled. The icon preceding the **Auto...** option indicates that you selected Auto mode.

When the LM is powered on and the initialization code executes successfully, Auto mode starts automatically after a two-minute delay unless the user intervenes. You or a service representative may want to prevent the Library Manager from going online and into Auto mode automatically. A window opens (after the IBM logo panel display times out) that allows you to press Enter and continue directly into Auto mode and Online state or to select one of the following modes and states:

- Auto mode and Offline state
- Pause mode and Online state
- Pause mode and Offline state
- Manual mode and Online state
- Manual mode and Offline state

See Figure 49 on page 111 for the Initial Mode/State Selection window.

Note: Auto mode and Online state is the default without user intervention.

Pause

Select the **Pause...** option for the cartridge accessor to move to its park position in the service area after finishing the operation in progress. Note that several

commands may have to complete before the 3494 enters Pause mode. You are then prompted to confirm your selection. The icon preceding the **Pause...** option indicates that you selected Pause mode.

The Library Manager continues to accept commands from the host. The commands are either performed (immediate non-motion, non-mount commands) or queued (motion commands) if the 3494 is online.

The System Summary window contains the operational mode status. It displays **Pause Pending** from the time you select the **Pause...** option to the time the cartridge accessor stops. When the cartridge accessor stops, the System Summary window displays **Pause**.

Use Pause mode when you want to stop all cartridge accessor motion in an orderly manner (usually to open a front door).

To resume cartridge accessor motion, select the **Auto...** option in the Mode window.

Note: If you are in Pause mode and you want to go to the Offline state, you must go to either Auto mode or Manual mode. From either of these modes (selected in the Pause/Offline Pending window), you can complete the transition to the Offline state. This process allows the library to handle all pending host commands before going to the Offline state.

Force Pause

Select the **Force Pause...** option when you need access to the enclosure, but the 3494 seems to be stuck in Pause Pending mode.

Perform the following to release the 3494 from Pause Pending mode:

1. After you have selected the **Pause...** option, wait at least 20 minutes for the transition to complete. If the 3494 is still in Pause Pending mode after 20 minutes, continue with step 2.
2. Open any library enclosure door. If the 3494 is still in Pause Pending mode after 1 minute, continue with step 3.
3. Select the **Force Pause...** option.

Manual

Select the **Manual...** option when the cartridge accessor is out of service. In Manual mode, the Library Manager console displays all mount and eject requests. The display also shows the cartridge volser, the 3494 drive number, and the location of the cartridge.

When selected, the mode changes from Auto or Pause mode to Manual mode. You are prompted to confirm your selection. The icon preceding the **Manual...** option indicates that you selected Manual mode. The cartridge accessor is parked in the home position automatically. The Library Manager then directs motion commands to the Manual mode window instead of to the cartridge accessor.

See “Using Manual Mode” on page 279 for a complete description of the Manual mode operating procedure.

Online

Selecting the **Online...** option causes the LM to send a message to all attached 3490E, 3590, and VTSs indicating the LM is online. If you select the **Online...** option and the Library Manager is already online, your selection is ignored. No

messages are sent to the attached control units. The window indicates **Online Pending** while the Library Manager is in the process of going online.

You are prompted to confirm your selection. The icon preceding the **Online...** option indicates that you selected the Online state.

After the LM is powered on and the initialization code executes successfully, Auto mode and Online state start automatically after a two-minute delay unless the user intervenes. You or a service representative may want to prevent the Library Manager from going online and into Auto mode automatically. A window opens (after the IBM logo panel display times out) that allows you to press Enter and continue into Auto mode and Online state or to select an option. Options that are not selectable are disabled (not available). See Figure 49.

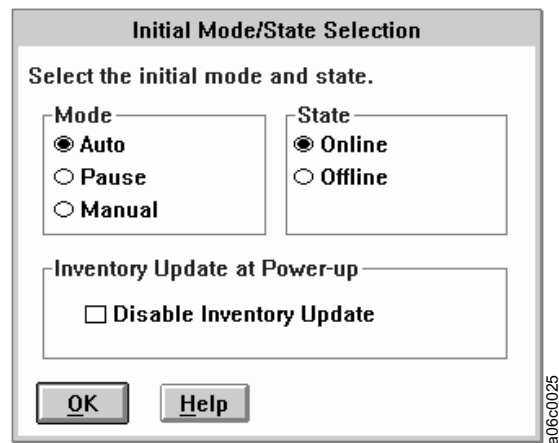


Figure 49. Initial Mode/State Selection Window

While in the Online state, the Library Manager is capable of receiving, queueing, and executing commands from attached hosts.

Whenever the Library Manager is brought online, it checks for "Fast Ready" categories. If the 3494 has a VTS installed and there are no "Fast Ready" categories defined, a warning message is displayed (see Figure 50 on page 112). The message simply warns that at least one "Fast Ready" category should be defined. If you do not select the **OK** push button, the warning message is removed automatically after one minute. If a VTS is not installed or there are "Fast Ready" categories defined, no warning message is displayed. See "Set VTS Category Attributes" on page 191 for information on setting "Fast Ready" categories.

Note: If you see this message, notify your system administrator.

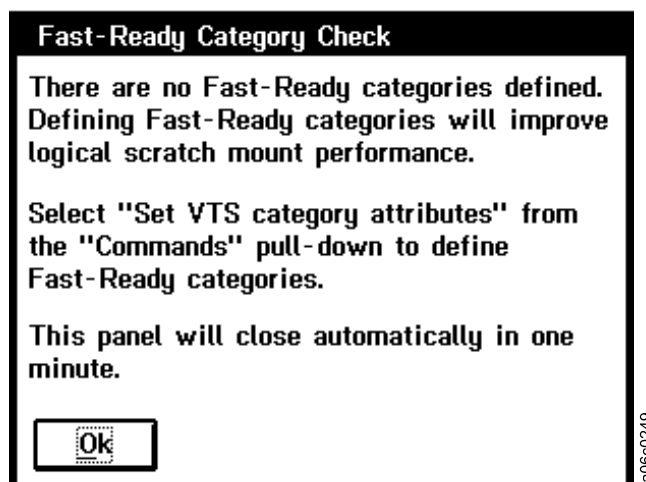


Figure 50. Fast-Ready Category Check Window

Offline

Select the **Offline...** option for the cartridge accessor to complete all queued requests. No additional requests are accepted. During the processing of queued requests, the 3494 is in the Offline Pending state. If you select the **Offline...** option and the Library Manager is already offline, your selection is ignored. No messages are sent to the attached control units. The window indicates **Offline Pending** while the Library Manager is in the process of going offline.

You are prompted to confirm your selection. The icon preceding the **Offline...** option indicates that you selected the Offline state.

The Offline Request window (Figure 51 on page 113) instructs you to

- Vary the 3494 offline
- Resolve any intervention-required conditions
- Put any PtP VTSs in Service Preparation state

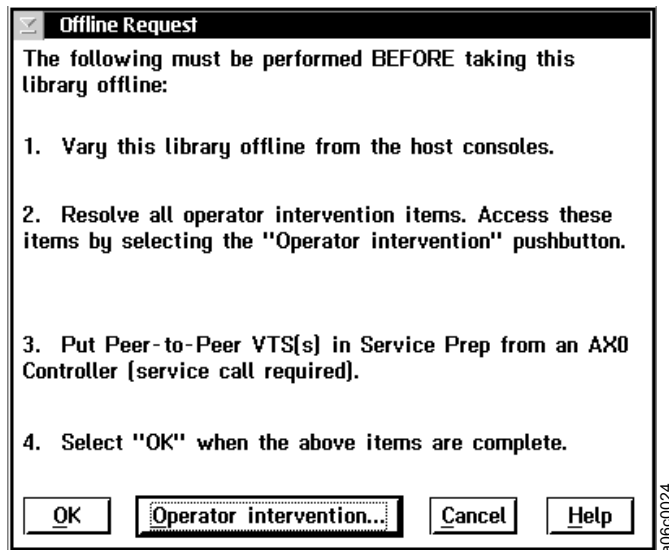


Figure 51. Offline Request Window

If an Export or an Import operation is in progress, the Library Manager cannot go to the Offline state. If you attempt to do this, the message shown in Figure 52 is displayed, alerting you to do one of the following actions:

- Wait for the operation to complete.
- Cancel the operation from the host.
- Cancel the operation by selecting the **Cancel VTS Export/Import** option under the **System Management** option in the Commands window.

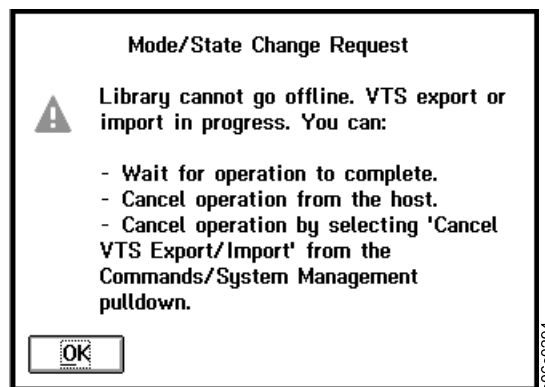


Figure 52. Mode/State Change Request Window

If no intervention-required conditions exist, the instruction is reduced in contrast (dimmer) from other items.

The Offline Request window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u> K	This option continues the Offline process.
<u>O</u> perator intervention...	If enabled, this option takes you to the Operator Intervention window.
<u>C</u> ancel	This option cancels the Offline request and leaves the 3494 in the Online state.

Help

This option provides additional information to aid you in the Offline process.

A message is sent to all attached hosts indicating that the Library Manager is going offline. When the Library Manager is offline, maintenance activity can be performed, or the Library Manager can be powered off after shutdown is selected (see “Shutdown” on page 117).

Service Menu

The **Service menu...** option allows the service representative, or an operator with service level authorization, access to additional service functions. This menu is active only when the Operator menu is present.

Typically, Service mode is password protected. The password protection option can be selected during installation. Figure 53 shows the Service mode notice that is displayed when Service mode is accessed and is not password protected.

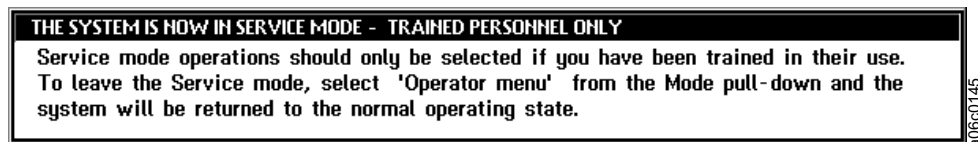


Figure 53. Service Mode Notice

Switch Active Library to Standby

Note: This option is available only when the HA1 Frames is installed and the standby Library Manager is enabled.

The **Switch active library to standby...** option allows you to switch the active Library Manager manually to become the standby Library Manager. To process the switchover, the active Library Manager must be in the Offline state and in Pause mode. The switch takes approximately five minutes to complete. The Library Manager may prompt you for the system administrator password (Figure 54).



Figure 54. System Administrator Password Window

The Library Manager then asks you for confirmation before continuing with the switchover (Figure 55).

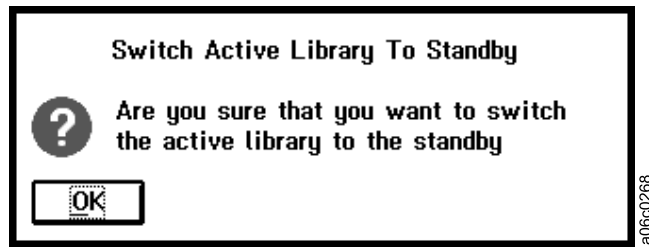


Figure 55. Library Switchover Confirmation Window

During the switchover, the Library Manager displays the Switching window (Figure 56).



Figure 56. Switching Window

When the System Status window opens, the switchover is complete.

Accessor

The following sections describe the actions you can take that involve the cartridge accessor.

Switch Active Accessor to Standby:

Note: This option is available only when the HA1 Frames is installed.

The **Switch active accessor to standby...** option allows you to switch the active accessor manually to become the standby accessor. When selected, the Library Manager asks you for confirmation before continuing with the switchover (see Figure 57).

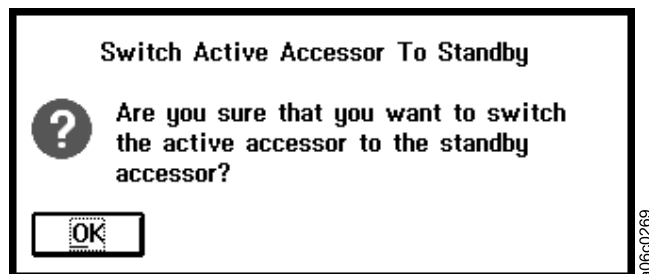


Figure 57. Accessor Switchover Confirmation Window

During the switchover, the Library Manager displays the Switch Active Accessor to Standby window (Figure 58).



Figure 58. Switch Active Accessor to Standby Window

Enable Dual Active Accessors:

Note: This option is available only when the Dual Active Accessors feature is installed.

The Enable Dual Active Accessors... option allows you to enable the Dual Active Accessors feature manually. When selected, the Library Manager opens the Dual Active Accessor Status window (Figure 59).

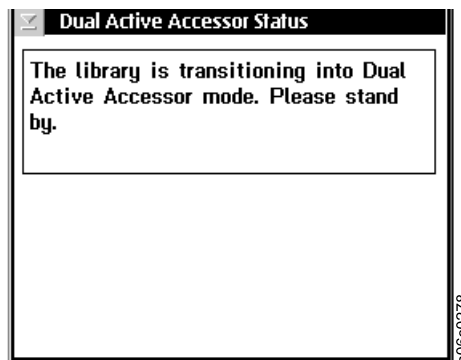


Figure 59. Dual Active Accessor Status Window - Enabling

Disable Dual Active Accessors:

Note: This option is available only when the Dual Active Accessors feature is installed.

The Disable Dual Active Accessors... option allows you to disable the Dual Active Accessors feature manually. When selected, the Library Manager opens the Mark Accessor Active window (Figure 60 on page 117).

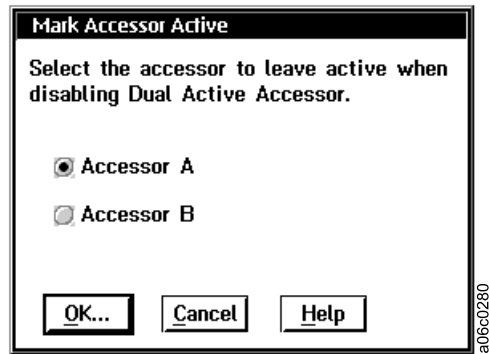


Figure 60. Mark Accessor Active Window

When you select an accessor to leave active, the Library Manager opens the Dual Active Accessor Status window (Figure 61).

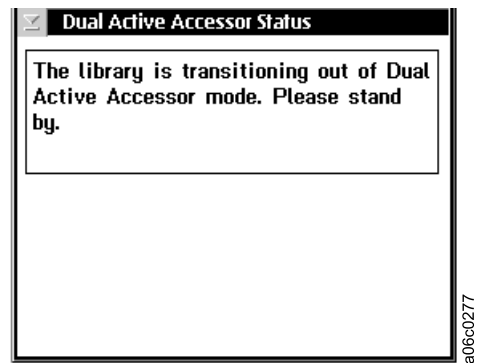


Figure 61. Dual Active Accessor Status Window - Disabling

Lockup Library Manager

The **Lockup Library Manager...** option locks the keyboard and display until you enter the system administrator's password.

Shutdown

The **Shutdown...** option prepares the Library Manager for the power-off procedure. If the Library Manager is currently in the Offline state and Pause mode, the volume database stops, files close, and the Library Manager program ends. The system administrator password is required to initiate the shutdown procedures if the password option is chosen. See "Change System Administrator Password" on page 253 for instructions to set the system administrator password.

Select the **Shutdown...** option in the Mode window or press **F3** to cause the System Administrator Password window (Figure 62 on page 118) to open.

Note: This window opens only if the password option is chosen.



Figure 62. System Administrator Password Window

If you select the **C**ancel option, the shutdown request ends, and the window closes. If you enter a valid password and select **O**K, an **Are you sure?** query is displayed. If you select **N**o, the shutdown request ends. If you select **Y**es, the 3494 Tape Library Dataserver Shutdown window (Figure 63) opens.

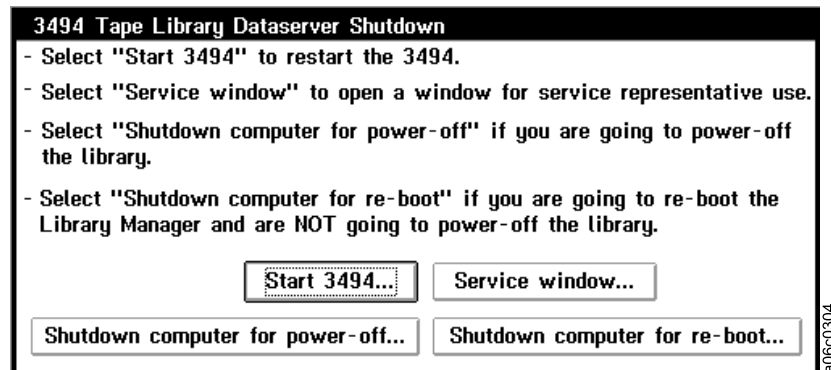


Figure 63. 3494 Tape Library Dataserver Shutdown Window

Using the Status Window

Use the Status window (Figure 64) to display the status of the 3494.

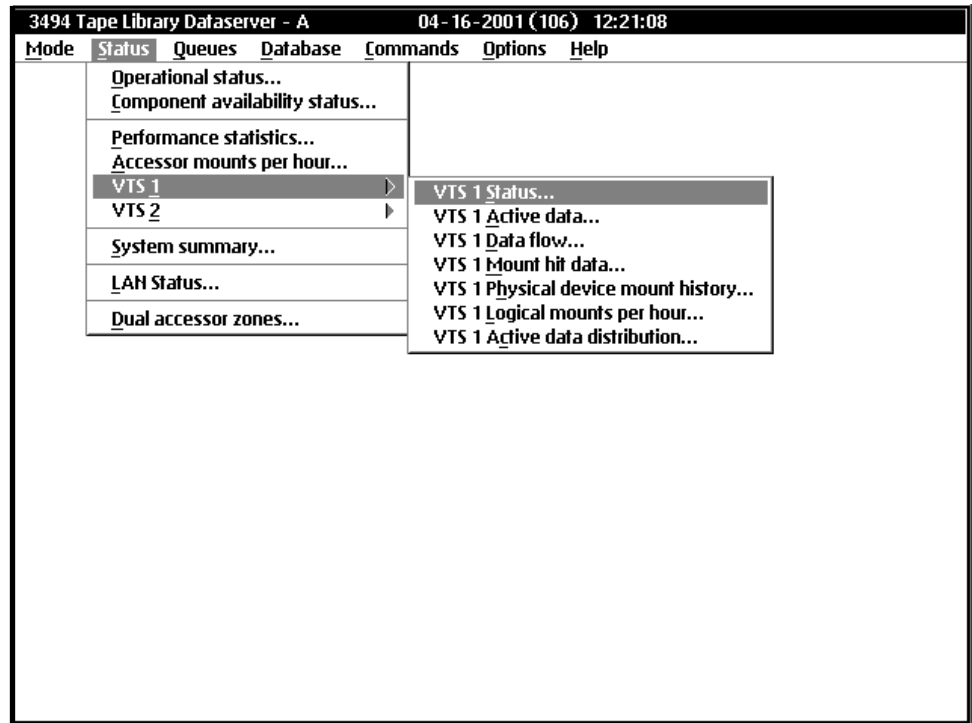


Figure 64. Status Window

The following options are available in the Status window:

- Operational status...** Displays the status (see “Operational Status” on page 121).
- Component availability status...** Displays the status (see “Component Availability Status” on page 124).
- Performance statistics...** Displays statistics (see “Performance Statistics” on page 129).
- Accessor mounts per hour...** Displays mounts per hour for each accessor (see Figure 73 on page 131).
- VTS x** Allows selection of the following for each VTS, where x denotes the VTS number:
 - VTS x Status...** Displays the status of each VTS configured in the 3494 (see “Using the VTS Status Window” on page 127).
 - VTS x Active data...** Displays VTS active data statistics (see “VTS Active Data” on page 132).
 - VTS x Data flow...** Displays VTS data flow statistics (see “VTS Data Flow” on page 134).

VTs x Mount hit data...

Displays VTS mount hit data (see "VTS Mount Hit Data" on page 135).

VTs x Physical device mount history...

Displays VTS physical device mount history (see "VTS Physical Device Mount History" on page 137).

VTs x Logical mounts per hour...

Displays VTS logical mounts per hour statistics (see "VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour" on page 138).

VTs x Active data distribution...

Displays VTS active data distribution statistics (see "VTS Active Data Distribution" on page 139).

System summary...

Displays subsystem status (see "Using the System Summary Window" on page 141).

LAN Status...

Displays LAN status (see "LAN Host Status" on page 147).

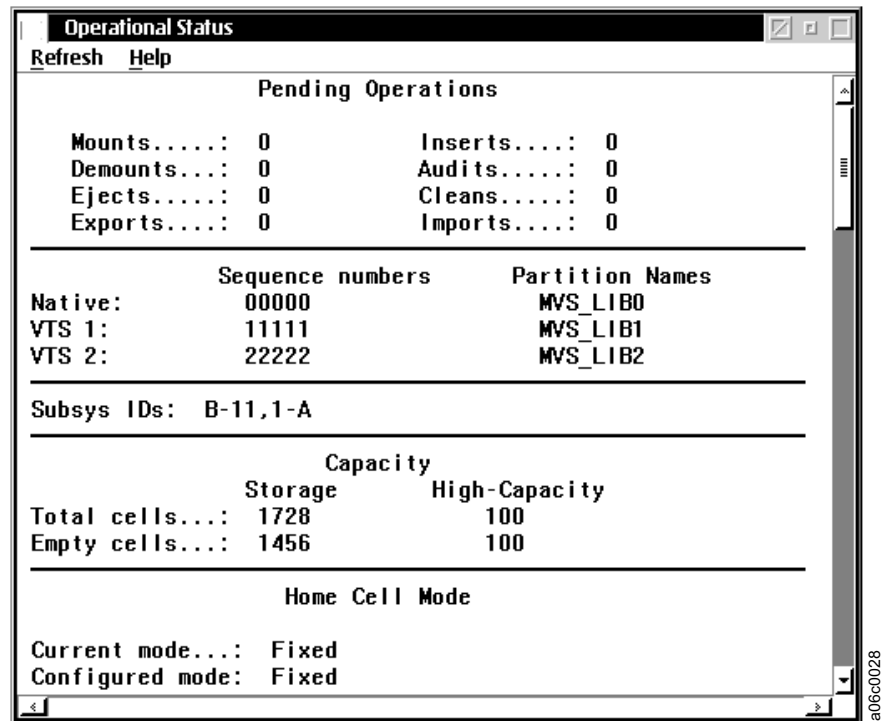
Dual accessor zones...

Displays frames that each accessor services (see Figure 83 on page 148).

Operational Status

Figure 65 shows the top portion of the Operational Status window.

Note: You can view operational status from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).



The screenshot shows a window titled "Operational Status" with a menu bar containing "Refresh" and "Help". The window is divided into several sections by horizontal lines. The first section is titled "Pending Operations" and contains two columns of data. The second section is titled "Sequence numbers" and "Partition Names" and contains three rows of data. The third section is titled "Capacity" and contains two columns of data. The fourth section is titled "Home Cell Mode" and contains two rows of data. A vertical scrollbar is visible on the right side of the window.

Pending Operations			
Mounts.....	0	Inserts....	0
Demounts....	0	Audits.....	0
Ejects.....	0	Cleans.....	0
Exports.....	0	Imports....	0

	Sequence numbers	Partition Names
Native:	00000	MVS_LIB0
VTs 1:	11111	MVS_LIB1
VTs 2:	22222	MVS_LIB2

Subsys IDs: B-11,1-A

	Capacity	
	Storage	High-Capacity
Total cells...	1728	100
Empty cells...	1456	100

Home Cell Mode

Current mode...	Fixed
Configured mode:	Fixed

Figure 65. (Part 1 of 4) Operational Status Window

Pending Operations shows the number of pending operations for the following requests:

- Mounts and demounts
- Ejects and inserts
- Audits
- Cleans
- Exports
- Imports

When an operation is pending, it is in progress, queued, or blocked. If you need more specific information about a pending operation, select the appropriate queue (see “Using the Queues Window” on page 149).

Sequence numbers shows the unique identification numbers for each logical library within the physical 3494. Numbers are displayed for non-VTS libraries and for each VTS library that exists in the 3494. The customer assigns these numbers (known as Library ID by host software), and they are set during the Teach operation.

Partition Names shows the unique names for the 3494 partitions. They are also known as **Distributed Library Names**; the Web server displays them. The service

representative defines these names in a Teach screen named Update Library Definitions. If they have not been defined, **Not Defined** is displayed.

Subsys IDs shows the unique identification numbers for the tape subsystems installed in the library. The host software uses this information to determine the configuration.

Capacity shows the total and empty number of storage cells in the library. It also shows the total and empty number of high-capacity output facility cells.

Home Cell Mode shows where the accessor returns a cartridge after processing. In **Fixed** mode, the cartridge is returned to the cell from which it was retrieved originally. In **Floating** mode, the cartridge is returned to a cell that the Library Manager determines.

Figure 66 shows the next portion of the Operational Status window.

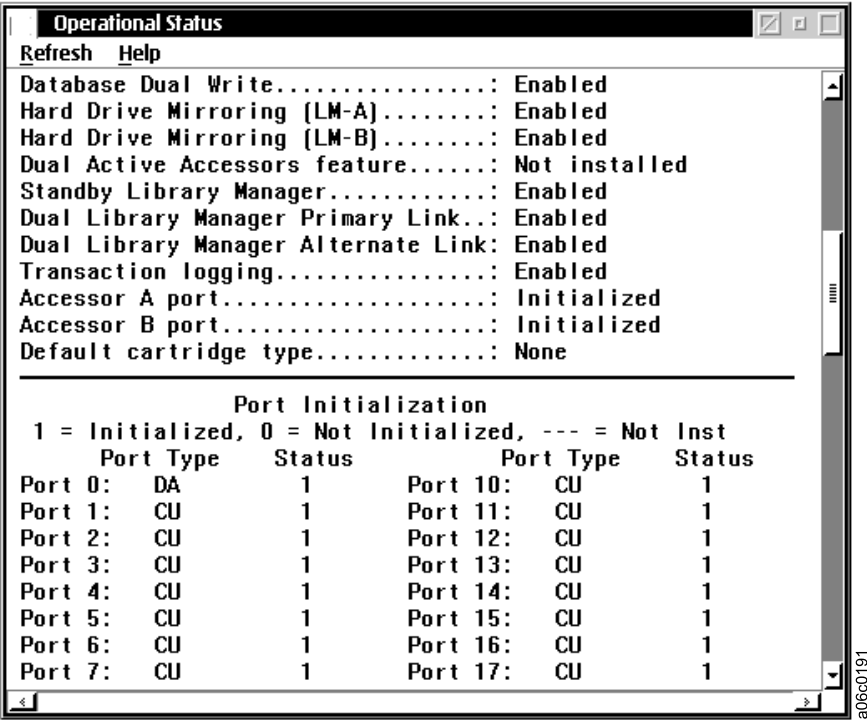


Figure 66. (Part 2 of 4) Operational Status Window

Database Dual Write shows whether the Database Dual Write function is enabled. It indicates **Disabled**, **Enabled**, or **Not installed**.

Hard Drive Mirroring (LM-A) or (LM-B) shows the status of mirroring. It indicates **Disabled**, **Enabled**, **Failed**, or **Not installed**.

Dual Active Accessors feature shows the status of the Dual Active Accessors feature. It indicates **Disabled**, **Enabled**, or **Not installed**.

Standby Library Manager shows the status of the standby Library Manager. It indicates **Enabled**, **Disabled**, **Pending** (waiting for a database copy to complete), or **Code Update** (shut down for a code update by service personnel).

Dual Library Manager Primary Link shows the status of the primary communication path between the two Library Managers. It indicates **Enabled**, **Disabled**, or **Not Installed**.

Dual Library Manager Alternate Link shows the status of the secondary communication path between the two Library Managers. It indicates **Enabled**, **Disabled**, or **Not Installed**.

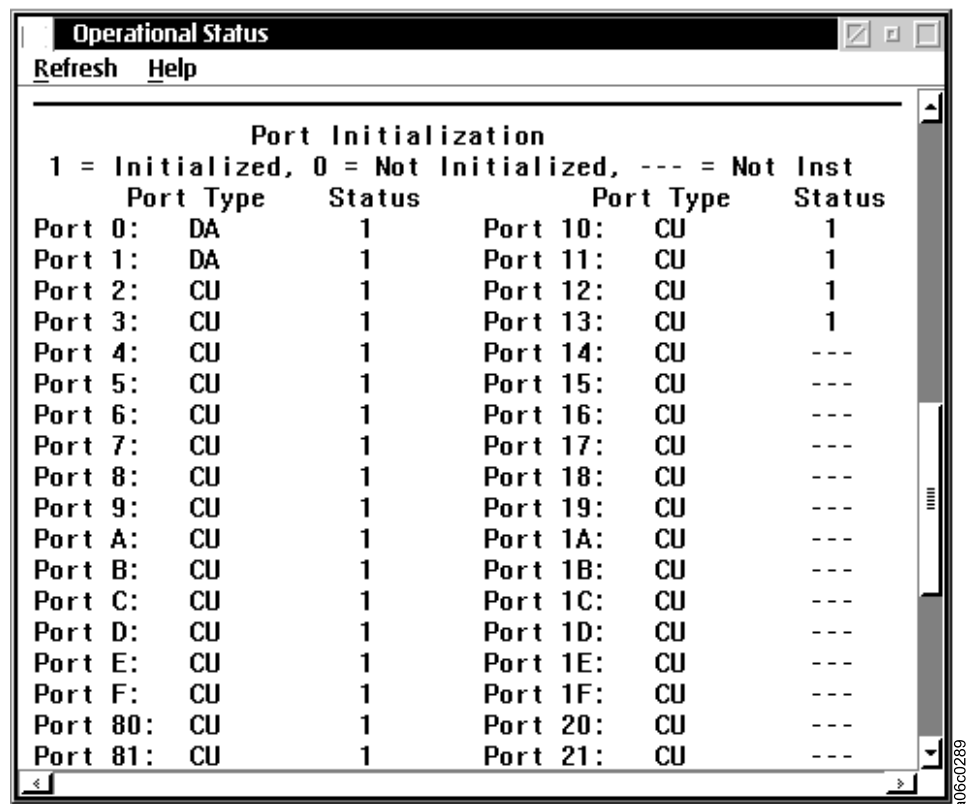
Transaction logging shows the status of transaction logging. It indicates **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

Accessor A port and **Accessor B port** show the status of the accessor port initialization. They indicate **Initialized**, **Not initialized**, **Not installed**, **Not taught**, or **Not available**.

Default cartridge type shows the default cartridge type. The options are **1**, **E**, **J**, **K**, or **None**.

Port Initialization shows the status of the tape subsystem control unit ports and direct-attached ports. It indicates whether a port is a Direct Attached (DA) or a Control Unit (CU) port. It indicates **Initialized**, **Not Initialized**, or **Not Installed**.

Figure 67 and Figure 68 on page 124 show the bottom portion of the Operational Status window.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Operational Status" with a menu bar containing "Refresh" and "Help". Below the menu bar is a section titled "Port Initialization" with a legend: "1 = Initialized, 0 = Not Initialized, --- = Not Inst". The table below lists 22 ports, each with a "Port Type" and a "Status".

Port	Port Type	Status	Port	Port Type	Status
Port 0:	DA	1	Port 10:	CU	1
Port 1:	DA	1	Port 11:	CU	1
Port 2:	CU	1	Port 12:	CU	1
Port 3:	CU	1	Port 13:	CU	1
Port 4:	CU	1	Port 14:	CU	---
Port 5:	CU	1	Port 15:	CU	---
Port 6:	CU	1	Port 16:	CU	---
Port 7:	CU	1	Port 17:	CU	---
Port 8:	CU	1	Port 18:	CU	---
Port 9:	CU	1	Port 19:	CU	---
Port A:	CU	1	Port 1A:	CU	---
Port B:	CU	1	Port 1B:	CU	---
Port C:	CU	1	Port 1C:	CU	---
Port D:	CU	1	Port 1D:	CU	---
Port E:	CU	1	Port 1E:	CU	---
Port F:	CU	1	Port 1F:	CU	---
Port 80:	CU	1	Port 20:	CU	---
Port 81:	CU	1	Port 21:	CU	---

Figure 67. (Part 3 of 4) Operational Status Window

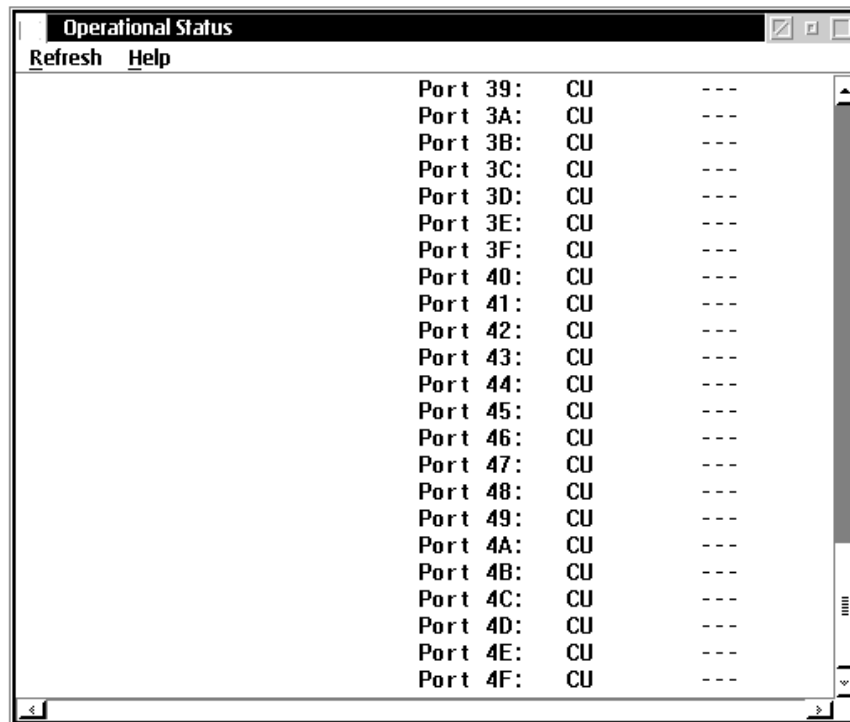


Figure 68. (Part 4 of 4) Operational Status Window

The Operational Status window has the following available on its action bar:

Refresh Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. The window is refreshed periodically; however, clicking the pointing device in the selection area of the window causes an immediate update of the window.

Help Provides help about the Operational Status window.

To close the Operational Status window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

Component Availability Status

The Library Manager keeps track of the components that are available so that it can make the best use of the available hardware when processing commands. When a component fails, the component is marked unavailable for use automatically. The LM does not use the component until it is marked available through the Service menu on the LM console.

You can display the availability status of all the 3494 components on the Library Manager console. Availability information is kept in the Library Manager database so that it is not lost if the Library Manager is shut down.

Drives can be marked on the Library Manager as available or unavailable. If a drive is available, it is available to the cartridge accessor. If the drive is marked unavailable, the drive is not available to the cartridge accessor.

Note: Device availability or unavailability is independent of the drive status (online or offline) with the host.

A drive is marked unavailable when something prevents the cartridge accessor from going to that drive (for example, when the drive is being serviced). Even if no host requests are made for the drive, the Library Manager may try to clean a drive if it is available.

Device availability is not checked when host requests are received and validated. It is not checked because the drive availability can change between the time the command is accepted and the time the request is executed. If a host request is accepted and the required drive is marked as unavailable when it is time to execute the request, the request fails. Conversely, if the required drive is unavailable at request acceptance but is made available before the request executes, the request completes normally.

The Component Availability Status window (see Figure 69) displays information about the availability of the components in the 3494 system. The following are the main sections of the Component Availability Status window:

- Convenience I/O Availability
- Accessor Availability
- Control Unit Port and Device Availability

Note: You can view component availability status from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

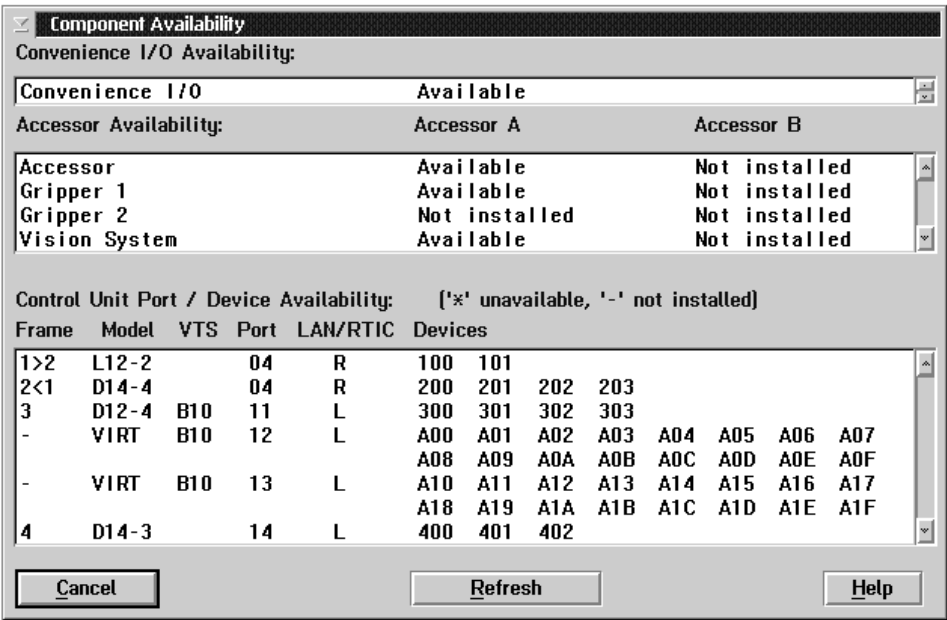


Figure 69. Component Availability Status Window

Convenience I/O Availability shows the status of the convenience I/O station. It indicates **Available**, **Not available**, or **Not installed**.

Accessor Availability shows the status of the cartridge accessor components.

- **Accessor** shows the status of the cartridge accessors. It indicates **Available**, **Not available**, or **Not installed**
- **Gripper 1** shows the status of Gripper 1. It indicates **Available**, **Not available**, or **Not installed**

- **Gripper 2** shows the status of Gripper 2. It indicates **Available**, **Not available**, or **Not installed**
- **Vision System** shows the status of the Vision System. It indicates **Available**, **Not available**, or **Not installed**

Control Unit Port / Device Availability shows the control unit ports associated with tape subsystems. It lists the ports by frame number, starting with the leftmost (lowest number) frame. It does not list host ports.

- **Frame** shows the library frame where this port is located. If the frames are linked (adjacent frames), then the two frame numbers will be displayed with either a (>) or (<) separating them. This arrow points in the direction of the linked frame. If the port number displayed is associated with a virtual device subsystem for a LAN-attached B18, B10, or B20 VTS, there is no associated 3494 frame. In this case, it indicates a dash (-).
- **Model** shows the frame type that was selected during the Teach operation. If the port number displayed is associated with VTS virtual devices, then it indicates **VIRT**.
- **VTS** shows the VTS type for ports that are associated with a VTS. It indicates **B16**, **B18**, **B10**, or **B20**.
- **Port** shows the port number associated with this tape subsystem. If the port status is **Available**, then there is no indicator immediately after the port number. If the port status is **unavailable**, then there is an asterisk (*) immediately after the port number. If the port status is **not installed**, then there is a dash (-) immediately after the port number.
- **LAN/RTIC** shows how the port is attached. It indicates **L** if the port is LAN-attached. It indicates **R** if the port is RTIC-attached.
- **Devices** shows a list of the devices (physical or virtual) that are associated with this port (tape subsystem). If there are more than eight devices on this tape subsystem, then a second line of devices is displayed. If the device status is **Available**, then there is no indicator immediately after the device number. If the device status is **Not available**, then there is an asterisk (*) immediately after the device number. If the device status is **Not installed**, then there is a dash (-) immediately after the device number.

The Component Availability Status window has the following push buttons:

<u>C</u> ancel	Closes the Component Availability Status window.
<u>R</u> efresh	Refreshes the Component Availability Status window. The window refreshes automatically if a change of availability occurs in the library.
<u>H</u> elp	Provides help about the Component Availability Status window.

Using the VTS Status Window

The VTS Status window () displays information about the status of each individual VTS installed in the 3494.

Note: You can view VTS status from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

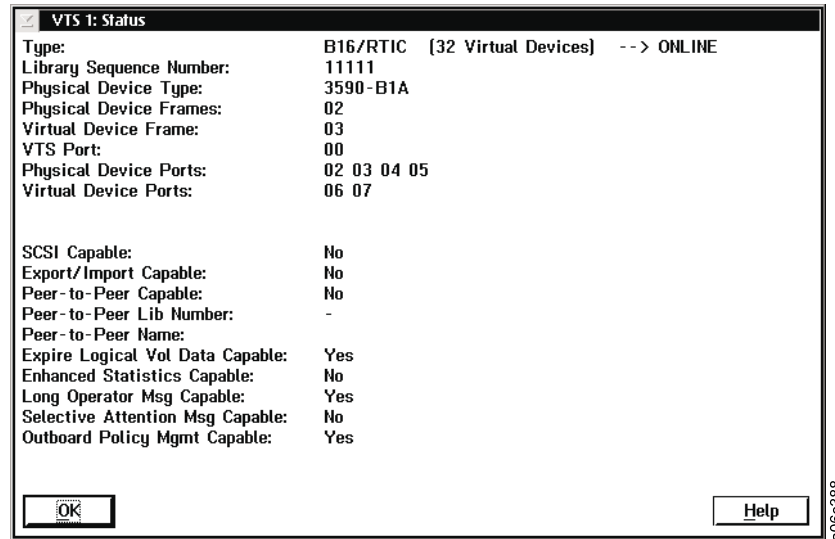


Figure 70. VTS Status Window

Type shows the type of VTS and its connection to the 3494. It indicates **B16**, **B18**, **B10**, or **B20** and attachment type **ARTIC** or **LAN**, as well as the number of virtual devices.

Library Sequence Number shows the library sequence number of this VTS.

Physical Device Type shows the type of physical device. It indicates either 3590 Model B1A or 3590 Model E1A.

Physical Device Frames shows the numbers of the frames that contain the physical devices that this VTS uses.

Virtual Device Frame shows the number of the frame that contains the VTS processor. For a B16 VTS, it indicates the frame number. For a B18, B10, or B20 VTS, it indicates **Bxx Virtual devices not in 3494 frame**. This is because the VTS processor is in a frame that is not attached to the library frames.

VTS Port shows the port that the Library Manager uses to communicate with the VTS. For a B16 VTS, it indicates **ARTIC port 0**. For a B18, B10, or B20 VTS, it indicates the LAN port number, which typically starts at 0x10. If the Library Manager has initialized with the port, it indicates the port's number. If it is not initialized, it indicates a dash (-).

Physical Device Ports shows the ports that the Library Manager uses to communicate with the physical devices associated with the VTS. For a B16 VTS, it indicates one port for each physical drive. For a B18, B10, or B20 VTS, it indicates

the one port that communicates with all of the VTS physical drives. If the Library Manager has initialized with a port(s), it indicates the port number. If it is not initialized, it indicates a dash (-).

Virtual Device Ports shows the ports that the Library Manager uses to communicate with the virtual devices associated with the VTS. There is one port for each virtual subsystem of 16 drives. A B16 VTS has two virtual subsystems. A B18, B10, or B20 VTS can have between two and 16 virtual subsystems. If the Library Manager has initialized with a port, it indicates the port's number. If it is not initialized, it indicates a dash (-).

Primary IP Address shows the Library Manager's Internet Protocol (IP) address with which the VTS processor communicates with the Library Manager. It is displayed only for a B18, B10, or B20 VTS.

SCSI Capable shows if the VTS has the SCSI Host Attachment feature. It indicates **Yes** or **No**.

Export/Import Capable shows if the VTS is capable of Export and Import operations. It indicates **Yes** or **No**. Your service representative can disable the Export/Import capability by using a service window function.

Peer-to-Peer Capable shows if the VTS has been identified as being part of a PtP VTS. It indicates **Yes** or **No**. Your service representative can assign this capability during a service action. If an asterisk (*) follows the **Yes** or **No**, the assigned capability conflicts with the capability information that the VTS passed to the Library Manager. **Yes *** indicates that the VTS has been identified as being part of a PtP VTS. However, the VTS has either not yet sent this information to the Library Manager or sent the capability as **No**. **No *** indicates that the VTS has **not** been identified as being part of a PtP VTS. However, the VTS sent capability information to the Library Manager that indicates that it **is** part of a PtP VTS. This may be a temporary condition, but if this conflict indicator persists, contact your service representative.

Peer-to-Peer Lib Number shows the PtP library number assigned during a service action. It indicates **1** or **2**. The User Interface PtP VTS has a value of **1** and is displayed as **1-User Interface**. A dash is displayed if not part of PtP.

Peer-to-Peer Name shows the PtP Composite Library name. It indicates a name from one to 30 characters long. However, it must be unique within each library because it identifies the members of a PtP VTS. A blank is displayed if not part of PtP.

Expire Logical Vol Data Capable shows if the VTS has been identified as being capable of expiring logical volume data. It indicates **Yes** or **No**.

Enhanced Statistics Capable shows if the VTS has been identified as being capable of displaying enhanced performance statistics. It indicates **Yes** or **No**.

Long Operator Msg Capable shows if the VTS has been identified as being capable of displaying long operator messages. It indicates **Yes** or **No**.

Selective Attention Msg Capable shows if the VTS has been identified as being capable of allowing you to select which attention messages are displayed. It indicates **Yes** or **No**.

Advanced Policy Mgmt Capable shows if the VTS has been identified as being capable of advanced policy management (FC 4001, 4002, 4003, or 4004 is installed). It indicates **Yes** or **No**.

The VTS Status window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u> K	Closes the VTS Status window.
<u>H</u> elp	Provides help about the VTS Status window.

Performance Statistics

Note: You can view performance statistics from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The Performance Statistics window (Figure 71 on page 130 and Figure 72 on page 130) displays the following statistics for the 3494. These statistics reflect activity involving physical volumes in the library. Commands involving VTS logical volumes are not part of these statistics.

- The number of physical mounts for the previous seven days
- The number of physical mounts for the previous 24 hours
- The number of physical mounts per hour for the previous 24 hours
- The average physical mount time for the previous 24 hours
- The number of physical ejects for the previous 24 hours
- The number of physical inserts for the previous 24 hours
- The number of physical audits for the previous 24 hours
- The peak number of physical mounts per hour for the previous 24 hours
- The time when peak physical mounts per hour occurred
- The number of physical mounts during the last hour
- The number of physical demounts during the last hour
- The number of physical ejects during the last hour
- The number of physical inserts during the last hour
- A graph showing the number of physical mounts per hour during the previous 24 hours

Hourly statistics are calculated on the hour (7:00, 8:00, and so on).

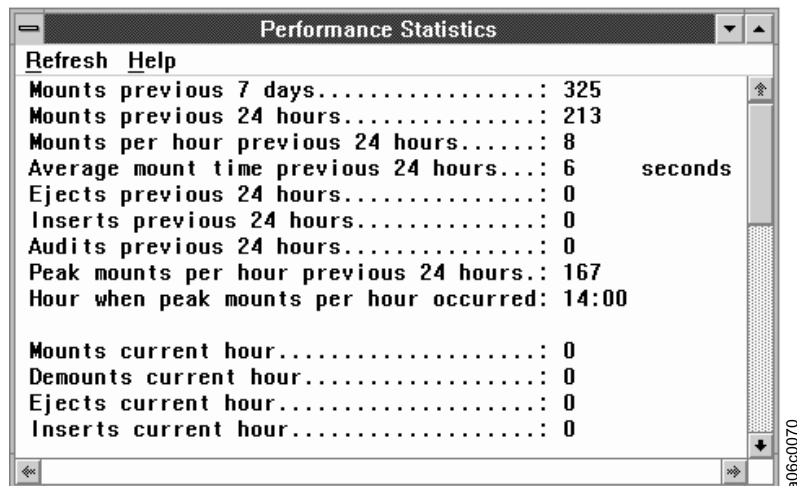


Figure 71. (Part 1 of 2) Performance Statistics Window

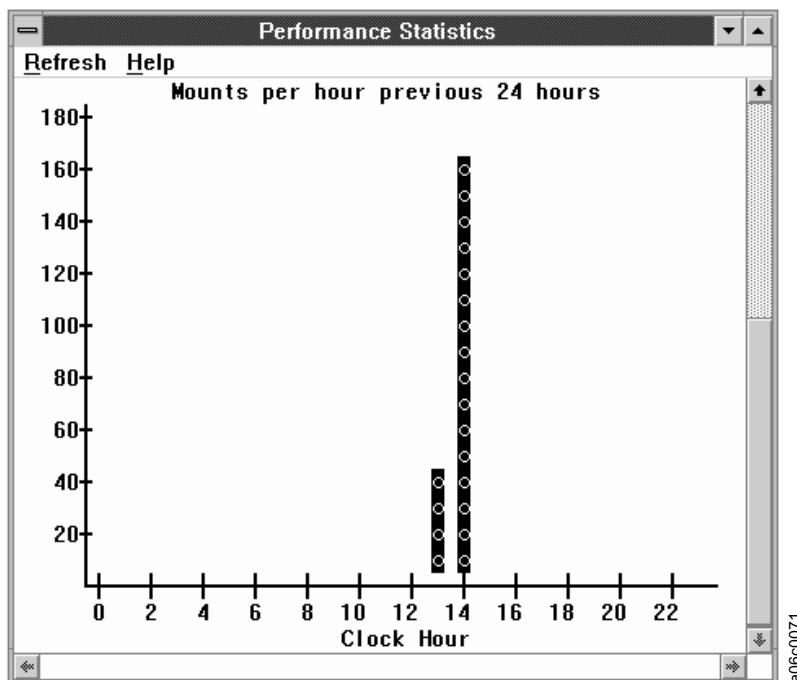


Figure 72. (Part 2 of 2) Performance Statistics Window

The Performance Statistics window has the following available on its action bar:

- Refresh** Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately instead of periodically (about every 30 seconds). You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window.
- Help** Provides help about the Performance Statistics window.

To close the Performance Statistics window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

Accessor Mounts Per Hour

Note: You can view accessor mounts per hour from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The Accessor Mounts per Hour window (Figure 73) displays a graph showing the number of mounts per hour for each accessor. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours. An asterisk (*) for Accessor A and a diamond (◆) for Accessor B designate the current hour's data.

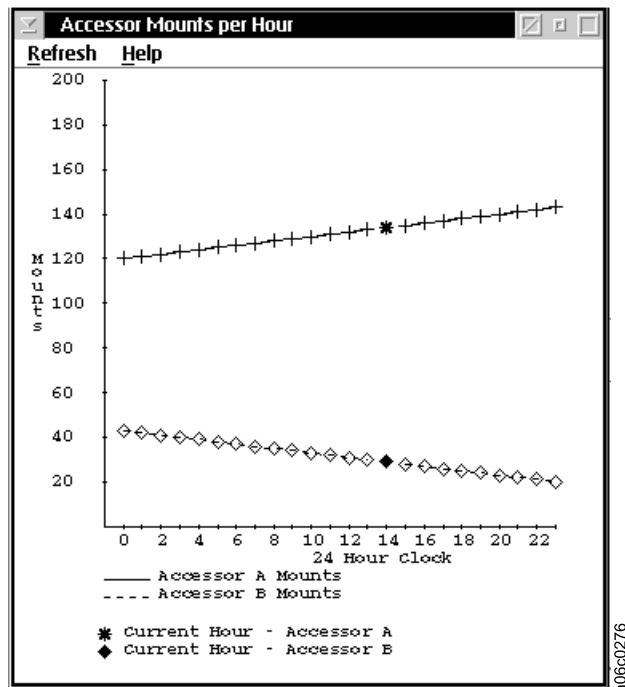


Figure 73. Accessor Mounts Per Hour Window

The Accessor Mounts per Hour window has the following available on its action bar:

Refresh Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window.

Help Provides help about the Accessor Mounts per Hour window.

To close the Accessor Mounts per Hour window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

VTS Active Data

Note: You can view VTS active data from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The VTS Active Data window (Figure 74) displays a graph showing the amount of active data, amount of free storage, maximum active data, and a free storage alarm level for the stacked volumes in a VTS. The data stored on stacked volumes is from the tape volume cache and may be compressed when the VTS has the ESCON High Performance Option feature or the Extended High Performance Option feature. Therefore, the graphs do not represent actual host data bytes but the compressed volume sizes as stored in the tape volume cache. A separate graph is available for each VTS in the 3494. Data is displayed for the previous 29 days as of midnight and for the current day on an hourly snapshot.

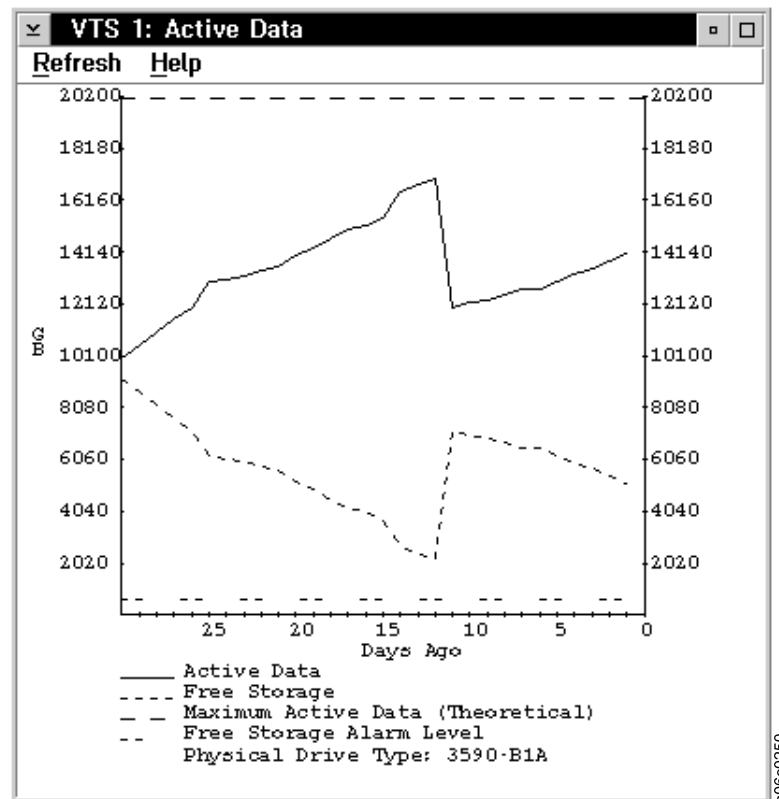


Figure 74. VTS Active Data Window

Active Data is the total size, as stored in the tape volume cache, of all active logical volumes that have been copied to stacked volumes. Virtual volumes that exist in the tape volume cache but have not been copied to tape are not included. The graph includes invalidated copies of logical volumes (duplicate volumes that the reconciliation process did not delete from the active volume list).

Maximum Active Data is the total capacity of all stacked volumes that have been inserted in the VTS. For the B16 VTS, the Maximum Active Data is a theoretical value computed by assuming that stacked volumes are filled with data compressed at a 2:1 ratio. The B18, B10, and B20 VTSs use the actual compression ratio for all data copied from the TVC to full stacked volumes to calculate the Maximum Active Data. Because data received from enhanced ESCON host attachments was

compressed previously into the TVC, no further compression to the stacked volume from the tape volume cache occurs for the B18, B10, and B20 VTSs. Note that invalidated copies of logical volumes reduce the amount of active data you can store on the stacked volumes.

Free Storage is the total capacity of all empty stacked volumes in the 3494 calculated by using a compression ratio as described previously for Maximum Active Data. This calculation does not include partially filled stacked volumes. Free Storage gives an indication of how much data from the tape volume cache can be added to stacked volumes currently in the VTS.

Free Storage Alarm Level is a threshold to warn you when to add more stacked volumes to the VTS. If the number of empty stacked volumes available is less than the number of stacked volumes required to store the amount of tape volume cache data that the Free Storage Threshold (GB) specifies, the Library Manager signals an intervention required condition to notify you to add more stacked volumes. You can modify the Free Storage Alarm Level with the **Free Storage Threshold (GB)** field in the Library Manager's VTS Management Policies window (see "VTS Management Policies" on page 193).

Physical Drive Type: Maximum Active Data, Free Storage, and the Free Storage Alarm Level are determined based on the tape drive type (3590 Model B1A or E1A) associated with the VTS.

The VTS Active Data window has the following available on its action bar:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| <u>R</u>efresh | Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window. |
| <u>H</u>elp | Provides help about the VTS Active Data window. |

To close the VTS Active Data window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

VTs Data Flow

Note: You can view VTS data flow from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The VTS Data Flow window (Figure 75) displays a graph showing the amount of data written to and read from the channel. A separate graph is available for each VTS in the library. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours. A diamond-shaped (◆) marker designates the current hour’s data.

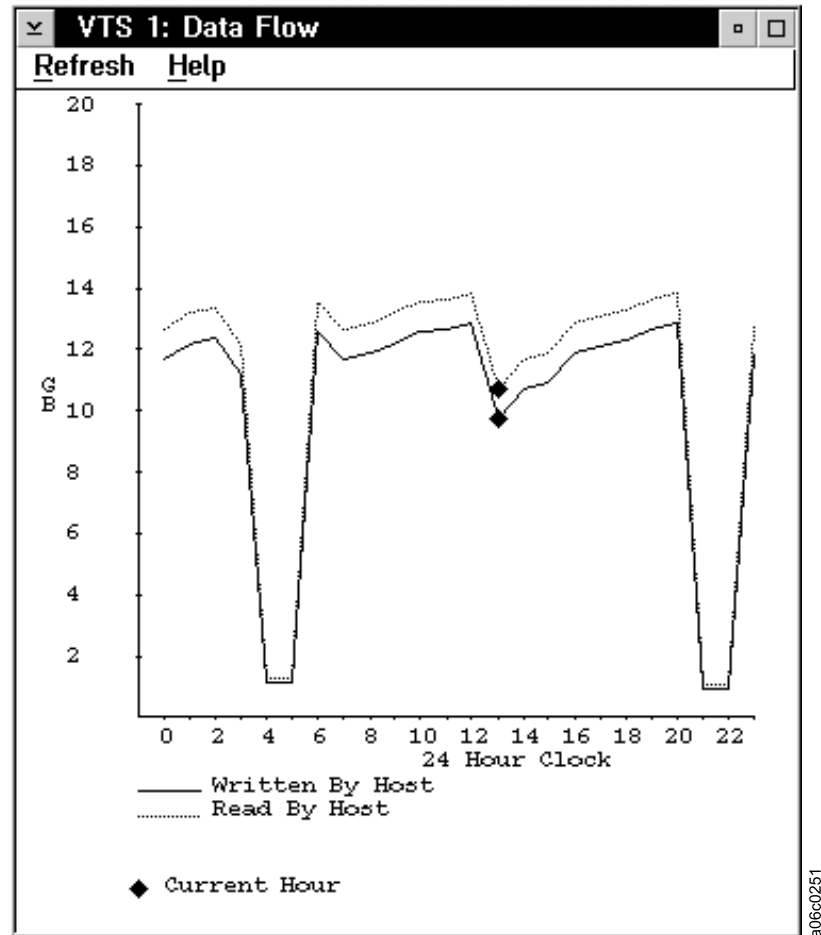


Figure 75. VTS Data Flow Window

The VTS Data Flow window has the following available on its action bar:

Refresh Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window.

Help Provides help about the VTS Data Flow window.

To close the VTS Data Flow window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

VTS Mount Hit Data

Note: You can view VTS mount hit data from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The VTS Mount Hit Data window (Figure 76 on page 136) displays a graph showing how logical mounts have been accomplished as a percent of the total mounts for an hour. The three types are: Fast Ready, Cache Hit, and logical mounts requiring a recall or a cache miss. A separate graph is available for each VTS in the 3494. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours. A diamond-shaped (♦) marker designates the current hour's data.

A Fast Ready Hit is a mount that the host requested where the category of the volser was designated as a “Fast Ready” category. This type of mount does not require any recall of data from tape. This is the fastest type of mount.

A Cache Hit is a mount where the volume to be mounted still resides within the VTS cache. This type of mount does not require any recall of data from tape.

A Physical Mount Required means that a stacked volume needed to be mounted and data read from it to satisfy the logical mount request. This is the slowest type of mount. This is also known as a cache miss.

The graph displays three lines, one for each type of mount, as a percentage of the total number of mounts for an hour.

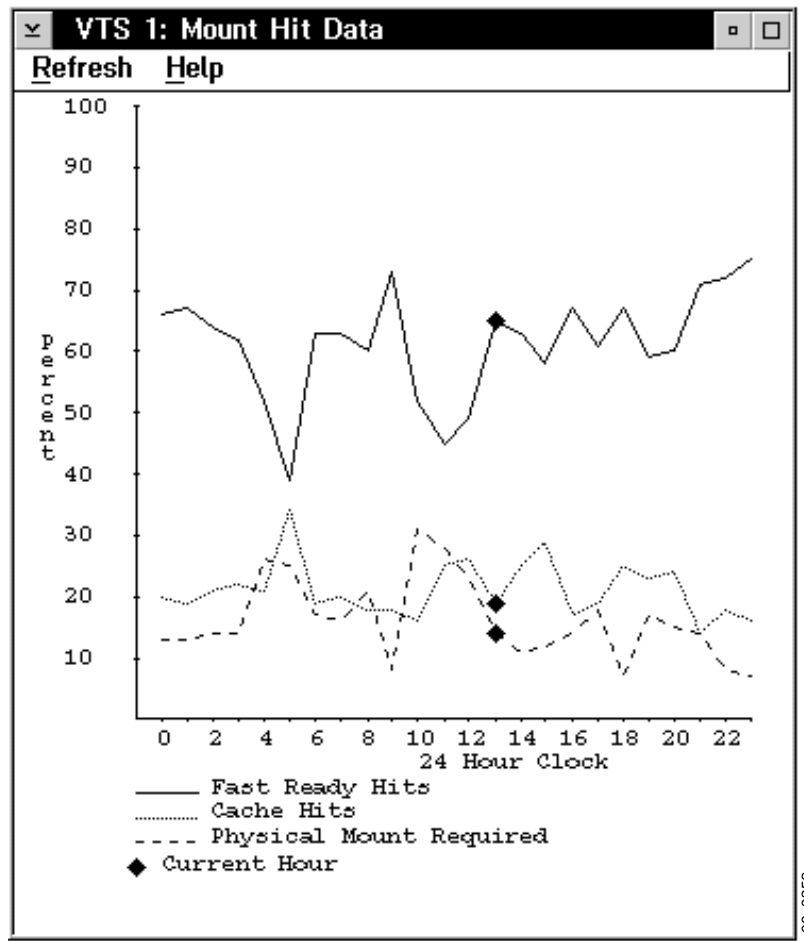


Figure 76. VTS Mount Hit Data Window

The VTS Mount Hit Data window has the following available on its action bar:

Refresh Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window.

Help Provides help about the VTS Mount Hit Data window.

To close the VTS Mount Hit Data window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

VTS Physical Device Mount History

Note: You can view VTS physical device mount history from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The VTS Physical Device Mount History window (Figure 77) displays a graph showing the minimum, average, and maximum number of physical drives used at one time to mount stacked volumes. A separate graph is available for each VTS in the 3494. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours. A diamond-shaped (◆) marker designates the current hour's data.

This data can be used to determine if there are a sufficient number of physical drives to handle the mount work load. It can also be used to determine if the mount work load should be shifted such that the mounts requiring a recall (mounting of a stacked volume) be redistributed to other times of the day.

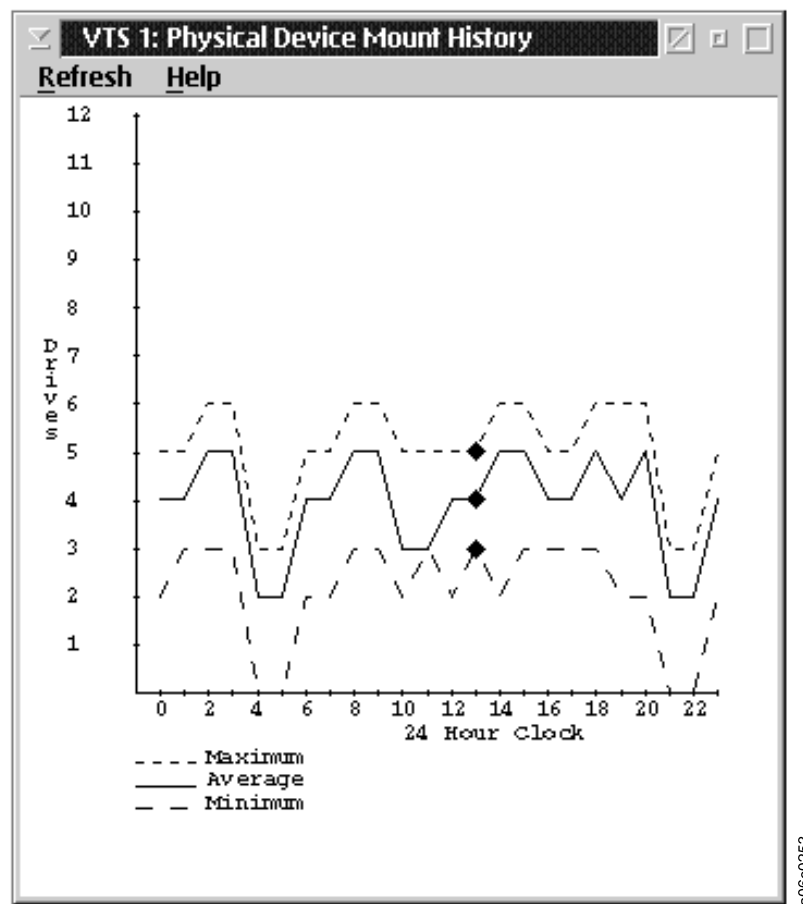


Figure 77. VTS Physical Device Mount History Window

The VTS Physical Device Mount History window has the following available on its action bar:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| <u>Refresh</u> | Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window. |
| <u>Help</u> | Provides help about the VTS Physical Device Mount History window. |

To close the VTS Physical Device Mount History window, select the **C**lose option in the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour

Note: You can view VTS logical mounts per hour from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour window (Figure 78) displays a graph showing the number of logical mounts per hour. A separate graph is available for each VTS in the 3494. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours. A diamond-shaped (◆) marker designates the current hour's data.

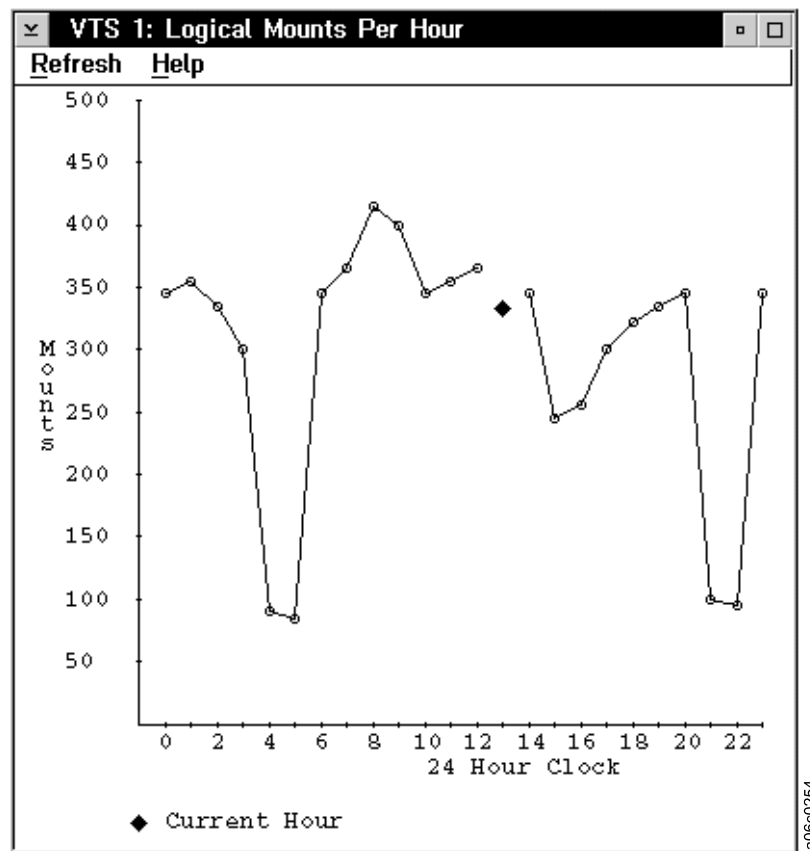


Figure 78. VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour Window

The VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour window has the following available on its action bar:

- Refresh** Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window.
- Help** Provides help about the VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour window.

To close the VTS Logical Mounts Per Hour window, select the **C**lose option in the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

VTs Active Data Distribution

Note: You can view VTS active data distribution from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The VTS Active Data Distribution windows display graphs showing the distribution of active data on stacked volumes. Separate graphs are available for each VTS in the 3494. If the VTS is Advanced Policy Management capable, data can be displayed for all pools (Figure 79) or for a specific pool (Figure 80 on page 140). If the VTS is not Advanced Policy Management capable, data is displayed for all pools. Data is displayed in 5% increments. The first data point shows the number of volumes that contain 0%–5% active data, the second data point shows the number of volumes containing 6%–10%, and so on.

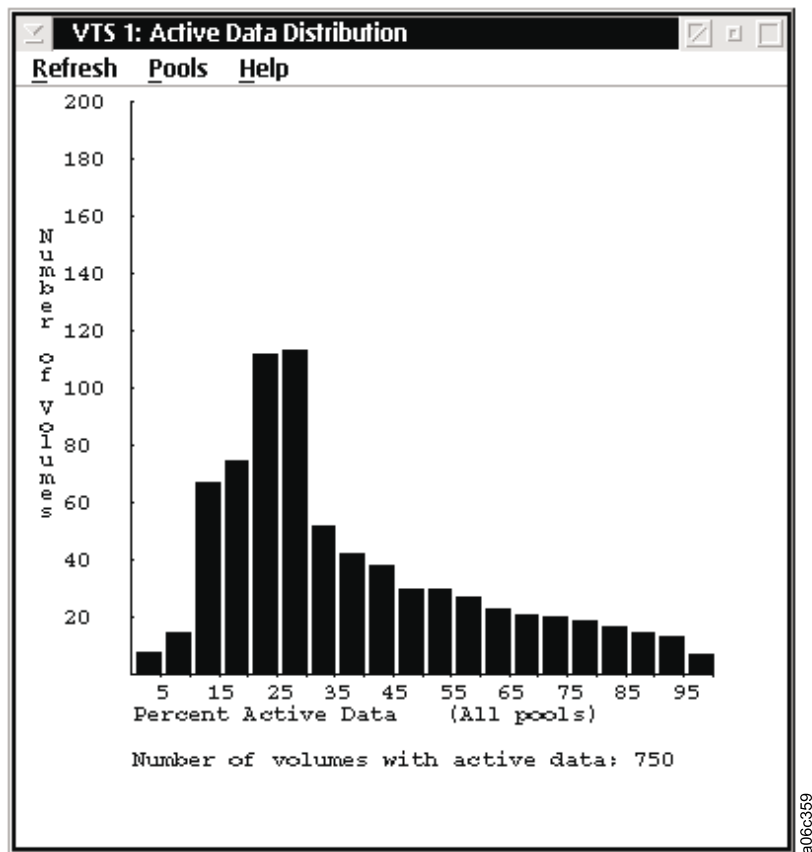


Figure 79. VTS Active Data Distribution (All Pools)

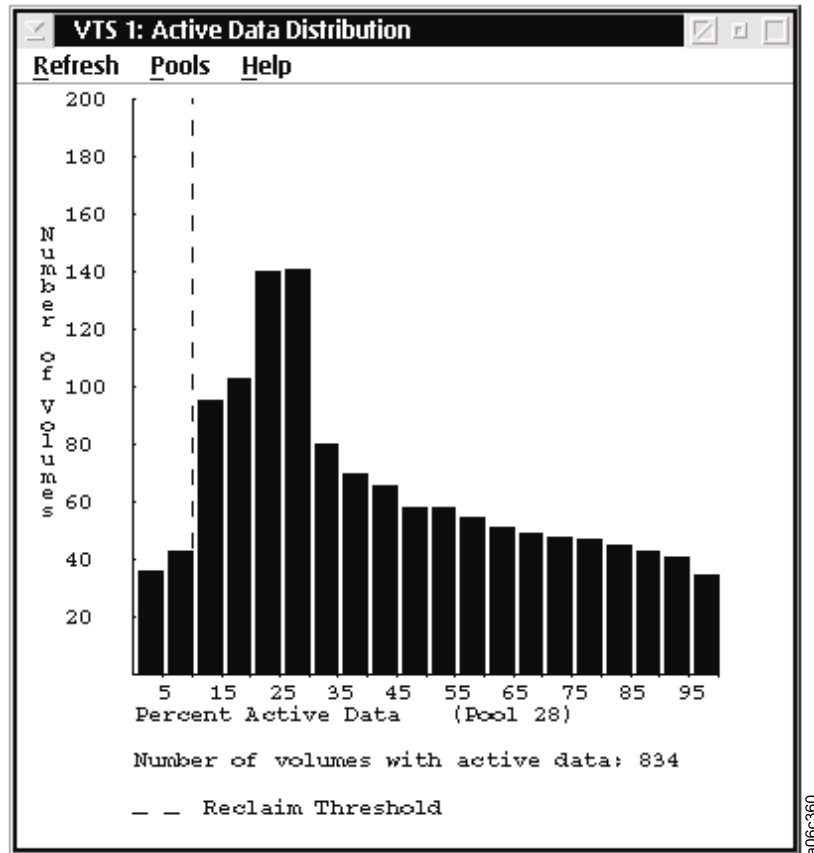


Figure 80. VTS Active Data Distribution (Specific Pool)

The VTS Active Data Distribution window has the following available on its action bar:

- Refresh** Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately. You can also click the pointing device in the client area of the window.
- Pools** Shows active data distribution by pool. This menu item is disabled (grayed out) if the VTS is not Advanced Policy Management capable.
- Help** Provides help about the VTS Active Data Distribution window.

To close the VTS Active Data Distribution window, select the **Close** option in the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

Using the System Summary Window

Note: You can view system summary from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The System Summary window (Figure 81) provides an overview of important 3494 information.

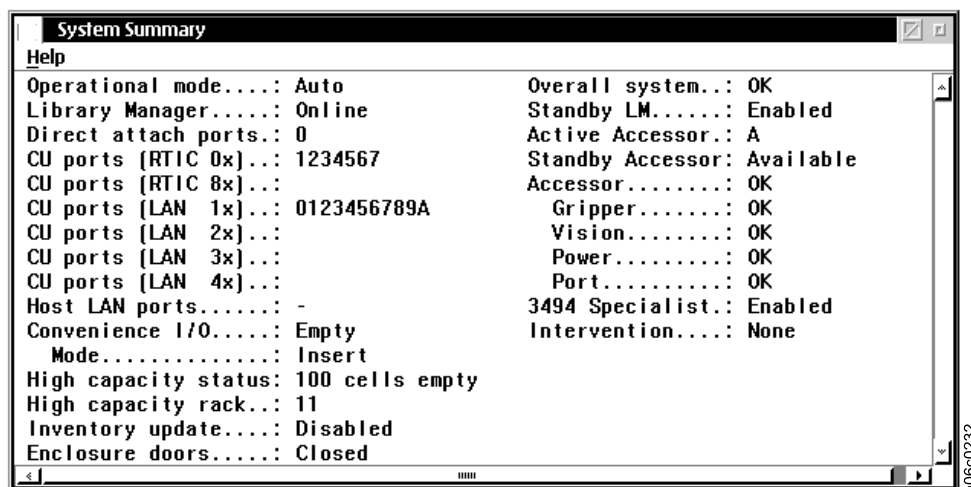


Figure 81. System Summary Window

Operational mode shows the subsystem mode. It indicates **Auto**, **Auto Pending**, **Pause**, **Pause Pending**, **Manual Pending**, or **Manual**. See “Using the Mode Window” on page 108 for an explanation of the operational modes.

Library Manager shows the state of the Library Manager. It indicates **Online Pending**, **Online**, **Offline Pending**, or **Offline** to the attached tape control units. See “Using the Mode Window” on page 108 for an explanation of the Online and Offline states.

Direct attach ports shows the direct-attached host ports that are initialized. It indicates a port’s number if that port is initialized. A - indicates that the port is not initialized, and **Blank** indicates that the port is not installed. Each installed port is shown from left to right (0–3 or 8–B).

CU ports (RTIC 0x) shows the serial control unit (CU) ports that are initialized. It indicates a port’s number if that port is initialized. A - indicates that the port is not initialized, and **Blank** indicates that the port is not installed. Each installed port is shown from left to right (0–F depending on port configuration). These are the RTIC ports associated with the first two RTIC cards.

CU ports (RTIC 8x) shows the serial control unit (CU) ports that are initialized. It indicates a port’s number if that port is initialized. A - indicates that the port is not initialized, and **Blank** indicates that the port is not installed. Each installed port is shown from left to right (0–F depending on port configuration). These are the RTIC ports associated with the third and fourth RTIC cards.

CU ports (LAN 1x) shows the LAN-attached control unit (CU) ports that are initialized. It indicates a port’s number if that port is initialized. A - indicates that

the port is not initialized, and **Blank** indicates that the port is not installed. Each installed port is shown from left to right (0–F depending on port configuration). These are the first set of 16 LAN ports.

CU ports (LAN 2x) shows the LAN-attached control unit (CU) ports that are initialized. It indicates a port's number if that port is initialized. A - indicates that the port is not initialized, and **Blank** indicates that the port is not installed. Each installed port is shown from left to right (0–F depending on port configuration). These are the second set of 16 LAN ports.

CU ports (LAN 3x) shows the LAN-attached control unit (CU) ports that are initialized. It indicates a port's number if that port is initialized. A - indicates that the port is not initialized, and **Blank** indicates that the port is not installed. Each installed port is shown from left to right (0–F depending on port configuration). These are the third set of 16 LAN ports.

CU ports (LAN 4x) shows the LAN-attached control unit (CU) ports that are initialized. It indicates a port's number if that port is initialized. A - indicates that the port is not initialized, and **Blank** indicates that the port is not installed. Each installed port is shown from left to right (0–F depending on port configuration). These are the fourth set of 16 LAN ports.

Host LAN ports shows the total number of initialized LAN-attached host ports. It indicates **Not initialized** if no LAN-attached host ports are initialized. A - indicates that no LAN host ports are initialized.

Convenience I/O shows the state of the convenience I/O station. It indicates **Not installed**, **Not available**, **Empty**, **Volumes present**, **Opened**, or **Unknown**.

Convenience I/O Mode shows the mode setting for the convenience I/O station:

- **Insert** indicates that the convenience I/O station is in Insert mode.
- **Import** indicates that the convenience I/O station is in Import mode (you can disable Export/Import capability by using a service Utilities window option).
- **Unknown** indicates that the convenience I/O station mode is unknown.
- **Blank** indicates that the convenience I/O station is not installed.

High capacity output or I/O status shows the status of the high-capacity facility:

- **Not inventoried** indicates that an inventory operation must be performed before the number of empty cartridge storage cells is known.
- **x cells empty** indicates that the high-capacity operation is complete. It also shows the number of empty cells that remain available in the high-capacity facility.
- **Failed** indicates that a high-capacity operation was canceled by the operator.
- **Canceled** indicates that you canceled the operation.
- **In Progress** indicates that either an inventory update that includes the high-capacity rack is in progress or a **High-Capacity only** Inventory Update is in progress.
- **Percent Complete** indicates the progress of the high-capacity facility operation.
- **Blank** indicates that the 3494 has not been taught.
- **Not installed** indicates that the high-capacity facility was not defined when the 3494 was taught.

High capacity rack shows the rack that contains either the high-capacity output facility or the high-capacity I/O facility. **Blank** indicates that the facility is not installed.

Inventory update shows the operational status of Inventory Update:

- **Disabled** indicates that Inventory Update is not performed.
- **Not started** indicates that an Inventory Update operation has not been performed since the 3494 was initialized.
- **Failed** indicates that the Inventory Update operation failed.
- **Canceled** indicates that the Inventory Update operation was canceled.
- **In progress** indicates that the Inventory Update operation is in progress.
- **Percent Complete** indicates the progress of the Inventory Update operation.
- **Completed** indicates that the Inventory Update operation has completed. An inventory update status window opens during the Inventory Update operation. See “Perform Inventory Update (Partial)” on page 230.
- **Blank** indicates that the 3494 has not been taught.

Enclosure doors shows the status of the enclosure doors

- **Closed** indicates that the front doors are closed.
- **Open** indicates that a front door is open.

Overall system shows the overall subsystem status:

- **OK** indicates that the subsystem is functional.
- **Degraded** indicates that part of the subsystem failed, but the subsystem can function in a degraded manner.

For additional information, select **Operational status...** and **Component availability status...** in the Status window (see “Operational Status” on page 121).

Standby LM shows the status of the standby Library Manager:

- **Enabled** indicates that the standby LM is functional.
- **Disabled** indicates that the standby LM is not functional and causes the overall system to report **Degraded**.
- **Not installed** indicates that the standby LM feature is not installed.
- **Degraded** indicates that the standby LM has lost one of its communication links with the active LM.

Active Accessor shows the accessor that is active:

- **A** indicates that accessor A is active.
- **B** indicates that accessor B is active.
- **None** indicates that no accessor is active currently (both are unavailable).
- **Both** indicates that both accessors are active currently on a 3494 with the Dual Active Accessors feature installed.

Standby Accessor shows the status of the standby accessor:

- **Available** indicates that the standby accessor can be used if an accessor switchover occurs.
- **Service Mode** indicates that the accessor is unavailable while being serviced.
- **Not available** indicates that the accessor has components marked unavailable that make it unusable.

- **Not installed** indicates that the second accessor is not installed.
- **Not Taught** indicates that the accessor has not completed a successful Teach operation, thus making it unusable.
- **Blank** indicates that both accessors are active.

Accessor shows the status of the cartridge accessor:

- **OK** indicates that the cartridge accessor is functional.
- **Failed** indicates that the cartridge accessor failed and cannot function.
- **Degraded** indicates that an accessor component has failed, but the accessor can continue to function in a degraded manner.

Gripper shows the status of the gripper:

- **OK** indicates that the installed gripper on the cartridge accessor is functional.
- **Degraded** indicates that one of two grippers failed on the cartridge accessor.
- **Failed** indicates that the gripper failed, and the cartridge accessor is unavailable for use.

If the HA1 Frames is installed, **Gripper** shows the status for both accessors:

- **OK** indicates that the grippers on both accessors are functional.
- **Degraded** indicates that one of the grippers has failed on either the active or the standby accessor. If dual grippers are installed, **Degraded** indicates that one, two, or three of the grippers have failed.
- **Failed** indicates that all the grippers have failed.

Vision shows the status of the vision system:

- **OK** indicates that the vision system is functional.
- **Failed** indicates that the vision system failed.

If the HA1 Frames is installed, **Vision** shows the status of the vision system on both cartridge accessors:

- **OK** indicates that both vision systems are functional.
- **Degraded** indicates that one of the vision systems has failed.
- **Failed** indicates that all vision systems have failed.

Power shows the status of power for the cartridge accessor:

- **OK** indicates that power is enabled to the cartridge accessor.
- **Power is Off** indicates that power is disabled to the cartridge accessor.

If the HA1 Frames is installed, the **Power** shows the status of power for both cartridge accessors:

- **OK** indicates that power is enabled to both cartridge accessors.
- **Power is off** indicates that power is disabled to both cartridge accessors.
- **Degraded** indicates that power is disabled on one of the cartridge accessors. This is OK if power was turned off to one accessor and the system has not yet transitioned to Auto mode.

Port shows the status of the communication port between the cartridge accessor controller and the Library Manager:

- **OK** indicates that communication on this port is established and is active.

- **Not initialized** indicates that communication on this port is not established or is lost.
- **Not installed** indicates that installation is not complete.

If the HA1 Frames is installed, the port status shows the status for both cartridge accessors:

- **OK** indicates that communication on this port is established and is active for both cartridge accessors.
- **Not initialized** indicates that communication on this port is not established or is lost for both cartridge accessors.
- **Degraded** indicates that communication on this port is established and is active for one of the cartridge accessors.

3494 Specialist shows the status of the Specialist (Web server):

- **Not available** indicates that the Specialist is not active. System restraints prevent the Specialist from being activated.
- **Enabled** indicates that the Specialist is active and enabled.
- **Disabled** indicates that the Specialist is active but disabled. You can enable or disable the Specialist from the Commands window (see “Using the Commands Window” on page 173).

Intervention shows whether you need to perform any operator-intervention operations:

- **None** indicates that no intervention-required conditions exist in the 3494.
- **Required** indicates that one or more intervention-required conditions exist in the library (see “Operator Intervention” on page 251).

The System Summary window has the following available on its action bar:

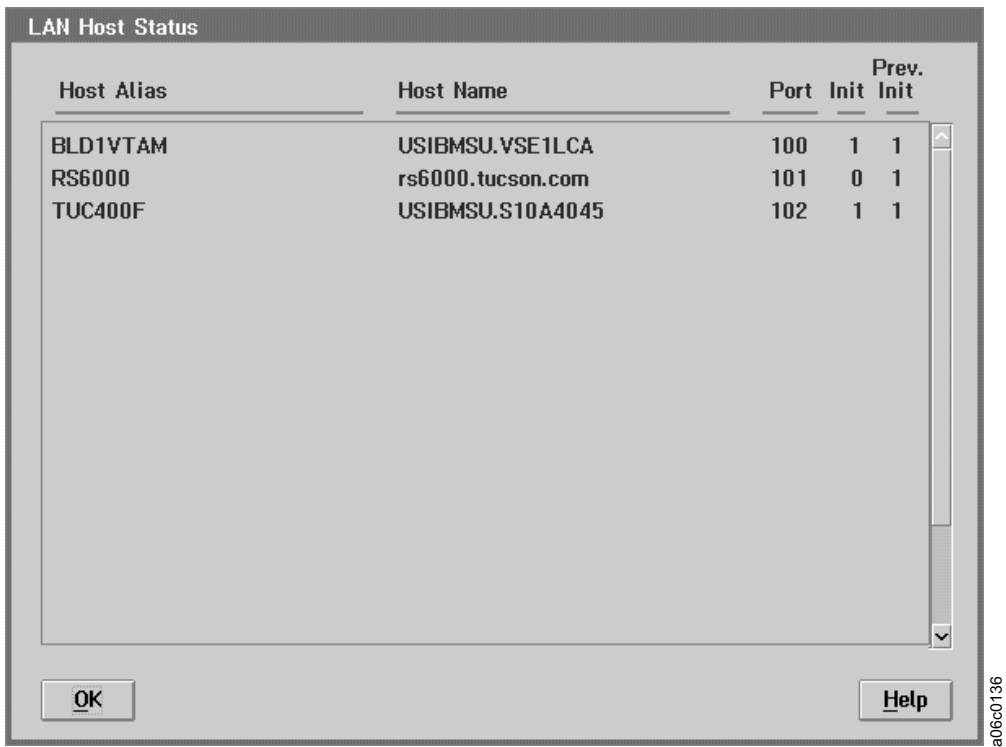
Help Provides help about the System Summary window.

To close the System Summary window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon (upper-left corner of the window).

LAN Host Status

The LAN Host Status window (Figure 82) provides information on the status of the hosts attached to the 3494 through a LAN.

Note: You can view LAN host status from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).



The screenshot shows a window titled "LAN Host Status". Inside the window is a table with the following data:

Host Alias	Host Name	Port	Init	Prev. Init
BLD1VTAM	USIBMSU.VSE1LCA	100	1	1
RS6000	rs6000.tucson.com	101	0	1
TUC400F	USIBMSU.S10A4045	102	1	1

At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "OK" and "Help". On the right side of the window, there is a vertical scrollbar and a small text label "a06c0136".

Figure 82. LAN Host Status Window

Host Alias	This field lists the aliases of the LAN-attached hosts. The alias for a host is a nickname that you supply for that host. If this field is blank, no alias has been set up for this host.
Host Name	<p>This field lists the names of all the hosts that are configured with the 3494 through LANs.</p> <p>For TCP/IP hosts, the Host Name is the Hostname defined in the TCP/IP network. In Figure 82, rs6000.tucson.com is a TCP/IP Hostname.</p> <p>For APPC and APPC/VTAM hosts, the Host Name is a combination of the Host Network ID and the Host Location Name. For example, if the Host Network ID is USIBMSU, and the Host Location Name is S10A4045, then the Host Name is USIBMSU.S10A4045.</p>
Port	The Library Manager assigns a LAN port number to each LAN-attached host. The LAN port number

is displayed in this field as a hexadecimal number, and service personnel use it in problem determination.

Init

This field indicates if the LAN port is initialized:

- 0 indicates that the LAN is not initialized.
- 1 indicates that the LAN is initialized.

Prev. Init (Previously Initialized)

This field indicates if the Library Manager has been initialized previously with this host through a LAN:

- 0 indicates that the Library Manager has not yet been initialized with this host.
- 1 indicates that the Library Manager is initialized or was initialized previously with this host.

The LAN Host Status window has the following push buttons:

OK

Closes the LAN Host Status window.

Help

Provides help about the LAN Host Status window.

Dual Accessor Zones

Note: You can view dual accessor zones from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The Dual Accessor Zones window (Figure 83) displays a diagram showing the string of frames that make up the 3494. It also has indicators that show the frames that each accessor services. **Boundary** is the frame number of the frame that is currently serving as the zone boundary between Accessor A’s work zone and Accessor B’s work zone. **Mode** is the boundary mode (**fixed** or **float**). **Fixed** means the boundary is fixed and does not change based on activity. **Float** means that the boundary changes automatically based on activity to balance the accessor work load. The default mode is **float**.

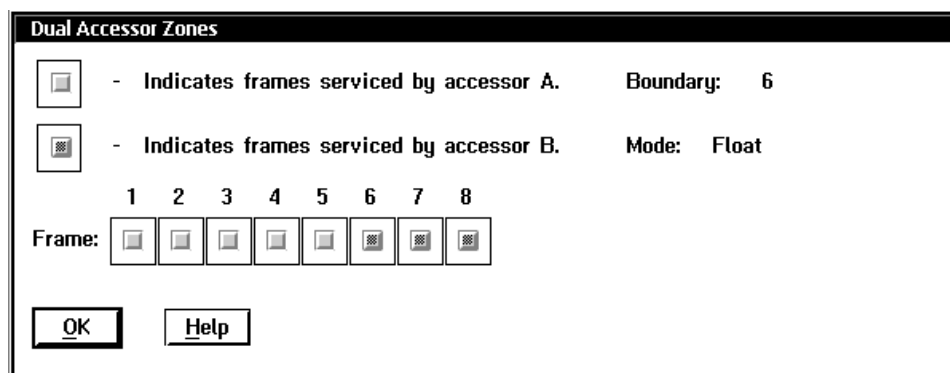


Figure 83. Dual Accessor Zones Window

The Dual Accessor Zones window has the following push buttons:

OK

Closes the Dual Accessor Zones window.

Help

Provides help about the Dual Accessor Zones window.

Using the Queues Window

The Queues window (Figure 84) allows you to display the various types of requests that are in progress or waiting to be performed.

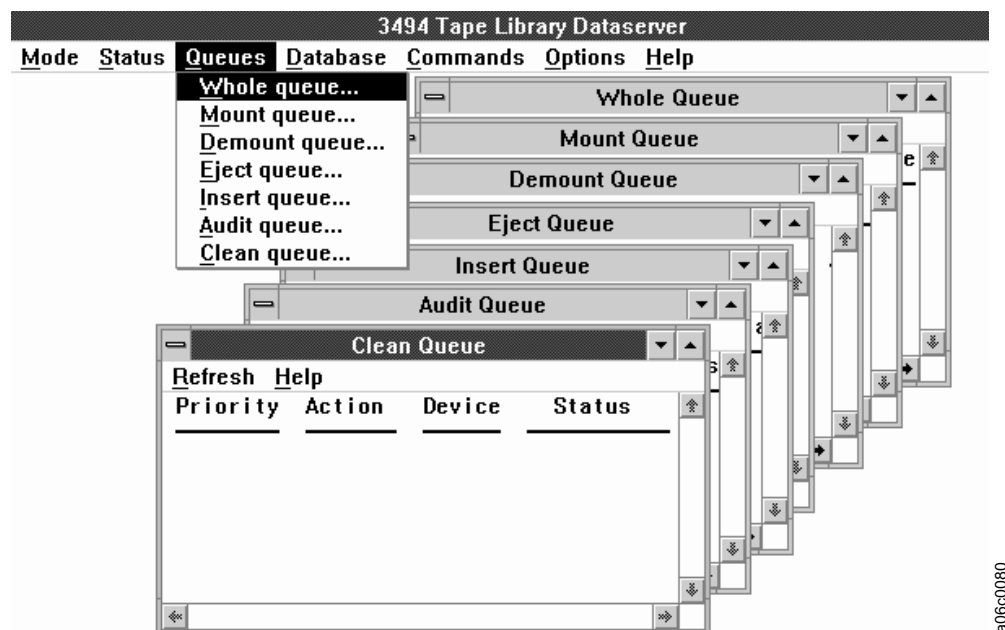


Figure 84. Queues Window Menu

Select any item on this window to display a moveable, sizeable, scrollable window containing the requested information. In each case, the window has an action bar option to update the information in the window.

The following options are available in the Queues window:

<u>W</u> hole queue...	Displays all the requests in the request queue.
<u>M</u> ount queue...	Displays all the mount operations in the request queue.
<u>D</u> emount queue...	Displays all the demount operations in the request queue.
<u>E</u> ject queue...	Displays all the eject operations in the request queue.
<u>I</u> nsert queue...	Displays all the insert operations in the request queue.
<u>A</u> udit queue...	Displays all the audit operations in the request queue.
<u>C</u> lean queue...	Displays all the clean operations in the request queue.

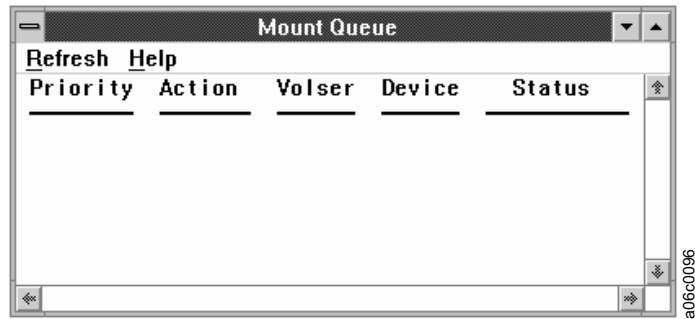


Figure 85. Mount Queue Window

The queue windows, for example, Mount Queue (Figure 85), contain the following information for each operation in the queue:

Priority	The priority group into which the operation was placed.						
Action	The name of the request.						
Volser	The volser associated with the operation. If no volser is identified, the field is blank. The Clean Queue entry does not require a volser field.						
Device	The device identifier associated with the operation. If no device is identified, the field is blank. The Eject, Insert, and Audit queues do not require a device field.						
Status	The current status of the operation: <table> <tr> <td>Queued</td><td>The operation is waiting for action.</td></tr> <tr> <td>In Progress</td><td>The operation is being executed currently.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Blocked</td><td>The operation is waiting for another operation to complete execution before the blocked operation can start. No operator action is needed.</td></tr> </table>	Queued	The operation is waiting for action.	In Progress	The operation is being executed currently.	Blocked	The operation is waiting for another operation to complete execution before the blocked operation can start. No operator action is needed.
Queued	The operation is waiting for action.						
In Progress	The operation is being executed currently.						
Blocked	The operation is waiting for another operation to complete execution before the blocked operation can start. No operator action is needed.						

Use the Whole Queue window to determine why a 3494 operation is not completing an operation as expected.

Each queue window has the following available on its action bar:

<u>Refresh</u>	Refreshes or updates the contents of the window immediately instead of periodically.
<u>Help</u>	Provides help about the queue window that is open.

To close a queue window, select the **Close** option on the System Menu icon in the upper-left corner of the window.

Using the Database Window

Use the Database window (Figure 86) to view selected volumes based on the specified search criteria.

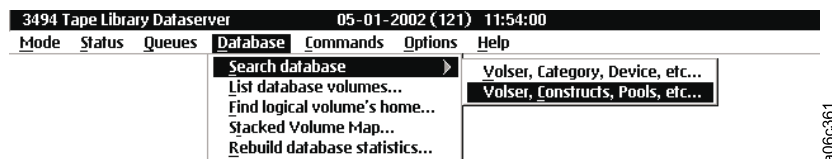


Figure 86. Database Window

The following options are available in the Database window:

Search database

Volser, Category, Device, etc.

Allows a search of the volume database based on search criteria (see “Search Database for Volsers, Categories, Devices” on page 152).

Volser, Constructs, Pools, etc.

Allows a search of the volume database based on search criteria (see “Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools” on page 156).

List database volumes...

Used to output a customized database search to a flat file on a diskette or to the C: drive (see “List Database Volumes” on page 162). The 3494 must be offline to use this option.

Find logical volume's home...

Used to determine the physical volume that a logical volume resides on (see “Find A Logical Volume's Home” on page 168).

Stacked Volume Map...

Used to output to diskette a map of logical volumes that reside on a stacked volume (see “Stacked Volume Map” on page 170).

Rebuild database statistics...

Used to rebuild database statistics when 3494 performance becomes degraded (see “Rebuild Database Statistics” on page 171).

Search Database for Volsers, Categories, Devices

The Search Database for Volsers, Categories, Devices Window (Figure 87) allows a search of the volume database for specific volumes, based on search criteria. The more search criteria used, the more restrictive the search.

Search Database for Volumes

Search criteria

Volser: Volser Flags: Yes No Ignore Media Type:

Category: Expire Time:

Device:

Volser	M.T.	Cat.	Cat. Order	Flags	Device	Cell	Home	Mts	Expire
J00001	J	FF00	40	00000	06A01	06A01	0	Not	Set
J00002	J	FF00	39	00000	06A02	06A02	0	Not	Set
J00003	J	FF00	38	00000	06A03	06A03	0	Not	Set
J00004	J	FF00	37	00000	06A04	06A04	0	Not	Set
J00005	J	FF00	36	00000	06A05	06A05	0	Not	Set
J00006	J	FF00	35	00000	06A06	06A06	0	Not	Set
J00007	J	FF00	34	00000	06A07	06A07	0	Not	Set
J00008	J	FF00	33	00000	06A08	06A08	0	Not	Set
J00009	J	FF00	32	00000	06A09	06A09	0	Not	Set
J00010	J	FF00	31	00000	06A10	06A10	0	Not	Set

Figure 87. Search Database for Volsers, Categories, Devices Window

Search Criteria

The following options can be included in the search criteria:

- Volser** Enter the volser used in the search. The volser consists of one to six alphanumeric characters that match the cartridge label. You can include a wild card (pattern-matching) character, where ? or _ indicates one character and * or % indicates multiple characters.
- Category** Enter the category used in the search. A category is a logical grouping of cartridges for a specific use. The categories are 0000 to FFFF, must contain four hexadecimal characters, and cannot contain wild card characters. The following are predefined categories:
- FF00** Insert
 - FF01** VTS Insert
 - FF03** VTS Scratch (not used if licensed internal code is 527 or higher)
 - FF04** VTS Private (includes Scratch Stacked if licensed internal code is 527 or higher)
 - FF05** VTS Disaster Recovery
 - FF06** VTS Disaster Recovery
 - FF08** VTS Stacked Volume Internal Label Unreadable
 - FF09** Temporary Eject

	FF10	Convenience Eject
	FF11	Bulk Eject
	FF12	Export-Pending
	FF13	Exported
	FF14	Import
	FF15	Import-Pending
	FF16	Unassigned
	FF17	Export Hold
	FF20	Corrupted Token
	FFF6	Service Volser (3590)
	FFF7	Mount from Input Station
	FFF9	Service Volser (3490E)
	FFFA	Manually Ejected
	FFFD	Cleaner Volser (3590)
	FFFE	Cleaner Volser (3490E)
	FFFF	Volser Specific
Device	Either press Enter or select the device used in the search. A device is represented by a three-digit tape device identifier. Select the ▼ to get a list of valid device identifiers. Single and multiple character wild cards are valid.	
Media Type	Select the correct media types for the type of tape drives and associated logical library installed in the 3494.	
	1 - CST (non-VTS)	Cartridge System Tape in a non-VTS logical library
	E - ECCST (non-VTS)	Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in a non-VTS logical library
	J - HPCT (non-VTS)	High Performance Cartridge Tape in a non-VTS logical library
	K - EHPCT (non-VTS)	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in a non-VTS logical library
	1 - CST (VTS 1)	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library
	E - ECCST (VTS 1)	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library
	J - HPCT (VTS 1)	High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library
	K - EHPCT (VTS 1)	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library

1 - CST (VTS 2)	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library
E - ECCST (VTS 2)	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library
J - HPCT (VTS 2)	High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library
K - EHPCT (VTS 2)	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library
?	Unknown. This is an actual media type that is no longer used. The option is available for backward compatibility.
Don't Care	Do not use media type as a search criterion.

Expire Time You can include logical volume expiration times in the search criteria. Select the ▼ to get a list of search examples. You can enter a suffix qualifier to denote minutes (M), hours (H), days (D), or weeks (W). If you enter a number without a suffix qualifier, the default is hours. The following are examples of expire times:

- 3M=3 minutes
- 27H=27 hours
- 1D=1 day
- 2W=2 weeks
- 4=4 hours

Volser Flags The following volser flag options can be included in the search criteria:

Misplaced	The cartridge location is unknown. A volser specified in a 3494 request is not in the 3494 where expected.
Unreadable	The vision system cannot read the cartridge volser (bar code label).
Mounted	The cartridge is mounted or being mounted on a drive.
Inaccessible	The cartridge accessor cannot access the cartridge. A volser specified in a 3494 request is in the 3494, but the cartridge accessor cannot access it because of a problem with either the cartridge or the cell that contains the cartridge.
Manual mode	You handled the cartridge during Manual mode processing.

The following are possible values for each volser flag:

Yes Search for volumes to which this flag applies.

	No	Search for volumes to which this flag does not apply.
	Ignore	Search for volumes without regard for this flag.
<u>S</u>earch		Start the search by using the search criteria entered.

Search Results

A list displays the results of the search. The display list can contain up to 100 records at one time. The vertical scroll bar in the display list can be used to scroll through 100 records. If you find more than 100 records, use the **Next 100** and **Prev 100** push buttons to display the additional records. Each record contains the following information:

Volser	The volume serial number of the cartridge
M.T.	The media type of the cartridge:
1	Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library
E	Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library
J	High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library
K	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library
1-1	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library
E-1	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library
J-1	Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library
K-1	Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library
1-2	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library
E-2	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library
J-2	Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library
K-2	Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library
?	Unknown
Cat.	The category represented by four digits that identify the group of volumes or a predefined category
Cat. Order	The position of the cartridge in the category
Flags	The status of the flags

Note: For service volumes, the status of the volumes is not reflected in the flags.

Figure 88 on page 156 shows a summary of the flag values.

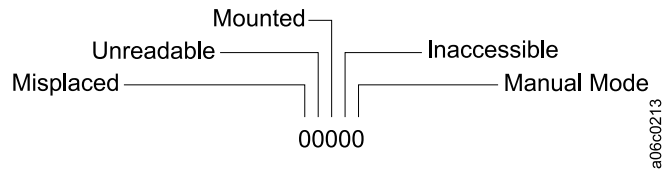


Figure 88. Status Flags

Device	The tape device identifier if the cartridge is mounted
Cell	The storage cell that contains the cartridge
Home	The cartridge home-cell location
Mts	The total number of times that the cartridge has been mounted
Expire	The amount of time until the 3494 expires the logical volume data.

Note: The library expires logical volume data once an hour, on the half-hour (that is, 00:30, 01:30, 02:30, and so on to 23:30).

Expire is expressed in minutes (M), hours (H), days (D), or weeks (W). If the expire time is expressed in minutes, then it shows the time remaining until the next hourly expiration. If no expire time is defined, then it indicates **Not Set**. If the logical volume data has already expired, then it indicates **Expired**.

Displaying Search Results

The Search Database for Volumes window has the following push buttons:

<u>T</u>op	Displays the first database records found that match the search criteria.
<u>B</u>ottom	Displays the last database records found that match the search criteria.
<u>N</u>ext 100	If you find more than 10 records, display the next 100 records in the list box. If you find fewer than 100 records, this control is disabled.
<u>P</u>revious 100	If you find more than 100 records, display the previous 100 records in the display list. If you find fewer than 100 records, this control is disabled.
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the Search Database for Volumes window.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Search Database for Volumes window.

Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools

The Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools Window () allows a search of the volume database for specific volumes, based on search criteria. The more search criteria used, the more restrictive the search.

Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools

Search criteria

Volser: Storage Group: Current Pool:

Category: Management Class: Home Pool:

Storage Class: Media:

Data Class:

Records found: 10000

Volser	M.T.	Cat	StorGroup	MgmtClass	StorClass	DataClass	CurrPool	HomePool
L10000	1-1	FF00	STORGRP1	-----	STRCLS1	-----	00	00
L10001	1-1	FF00	STORGRP1	-----	STRCLS1	-----	00	00
L10002	1-1	FF00	STORGRP1	-----	STRCLS1	-----	00	00
L10003	1-1	FF00	STORGRP1	-----	STRCLS1	-----	00	00
L10004	1-1	FF00	-----	MANCLS1	-----	DATCLS1	00	00
L10005	1-1	FF00	-----	MANCLS1	-----	DATCLS1	00	00
L10006	1-1	FF00	-----	MANCLS1	-----	DATCLS1	00	00
L10007	1-1	FF00	-----	MANCLS1	-----	DATCLS1	00	00
L10008	1-1	FF00	STORGRP1	MANCLS1	STRCLS1	DATCLS1	00	00
L10009	1-1	FF00	STORGRP1	MANCLS1	STRCLS1	DATCLS1	00	00

a06c387

Figure 89. Search Database for Volsers, Constructs, Pools Window

Search Criteria

The following options can be included in the search criteria:

- Volser** Enter the volser used in the search. The volser consists of one to six alphanumeric characters that match the cartridge label. You can include a wild card (pattern-matching) character, where ? or _ indicates one character and * or % indicates multiple characters.
- Category** Enter the category used in the search. A category is a logical grouping of cartridges for a specific use. The categories are 0000 to FFFF, must contain four hexadecimal characters, and cannot contain wild card characters. The following are predefined categories:
- FF00** Insert
 - FF01** VTS Insert
 - FF03** VTS Scratch (not used if licensed internal code is 527 or higher)
 - FF04** VTS Private (includes Scratch Stacked if licensed internal code is 527 or higher)
 - FF05** VTS Disaster Recovery
 - FF06** VTS Disaster Recovery
 - FF08** VTS Stacked Volume Internal Label Unreadable
 - FF09** Temporary Eject
 - FF10** Convenience Eject
 - FF11** Bulk Eject
 - FF12** Export-Pending
 - FF13** Exported
 - FF14** Import

FF15	Import-Pending
FF16	Unassigned
FF17	Export Hold
FF20	Corrupted Token
FFF6	Service Volser (3590)
FFF7	Mount from Input Station
FFF9	Service Volser (3490E)
FFFA	Manually Ejected
FFFD	Cleaner Volser (3590)
FFFE	Cleaner Volser (3490E)
FFFF	Volser Specific

Storage Group

Select a storage group to be used in the search. Storage groups are defined by a one to eight alphanumeric character name. Select "Don't Care" if there is no preference.

Management Class

Select a management class used in the search. Management classes are defined by a one to eight alphanumeric character name. Select "Don't Care" if there is no preference.

Storage Class

Select a storage class used in the search. Storage classes are defined by a one to eight alphanumeric character name. Select "Don't Care" if there is no preference.

Data Class

Select a data class used in the search. Data classes are defined by a one to eight alphanumeric character name. Select "Don't Care" if there is no preference.

Current Pool

Select a current pool user in the search. The current pool can be between 0 and 32. This is only used for stacked volumes.

Home Pool

Select the default storage pool for the Volser you are searching for. The default storage pool can be between 0 and 32. This is only used for stacked volumes.

Media

Select the correct media types for the type of tape drives and associated logical library installed in the 3494.

1 - NonVTS	Cartridge System Tape in a non-VTS logical library
E - NonVTS	Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in a non-VTS logical library
1, E - NonVTS	Cartridge System Tape and Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in a non-VTS logical library
J - NonVTS	High Performance Cartridge Tape in a non-VTS logical library

K - NonVTS	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in a non-VTS logical library
J, K - NonVTS	High Performance Cartridge Tape and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in a non-VTS logical library
All - NonVTS	Cartridge System Tape, Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, High Performance Cartridge Tape, and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in a non-VTS logical library
1 - VTS1	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library
E - VTS1	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library
1, E - VTS1	Logical Cartridge System Tape and Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library
J - VTS1	High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library
K - VTS1	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library
J, K - VTS1	High Performance Cartridge Tape and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library
All - VTS1	Logical Cartridge System Tape, Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, High Performance Cartridge Tape, and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library
1 - VTS2	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library
E - VTS2	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library
1, E - VTS2	Logical Cartridge System Tape and Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library
J - VTS2	High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library

K - VTS2	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library
J, K- VTS2	High Performance Cartridge Tape and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library
All - VTS2	Logical Cartridge System Tape, Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, High Performance Cartridge Tape, and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library
1 - VTS1, VTS2	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 and VTS 2 logical libraries
E - VTS1, VTS2	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 and VTS 2 logical libraries
1, E - VTS1, VTS2	Logical Cartridge System Tape and Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 and VTS 2 logical libraries
J - VTS1, VTS2	High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 and VTS 2 logical libraries
K - VTS1, VTS2	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 and VTS 2 logical libraries
J, K - VTS1, VTS2	High Performance Cartridge Tape and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 and VTS 2 logical libraries
All - VTS1, VTS2	Logical Cartridge System Tape, Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, High Performance Cartridge Tape, and Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 and VTS 2 logical libraries
?	Unknown. This is an actual media type that is no longer used. The option is available for backward compatibility.
Don't Care	Do not use media type as a search criterion.

Search

Start the search by using the search criteria entered.

Search Results

A list displays the results of the search. The display list can contain up to 100 records at one time. The vertical scroll bar in the display list can be used to scroll through 100 records. If you find more than 100 records, use the **Next 100** and **Prev 100** push buttons to display the additional records. Each record contains the following information:

Volser	The volume serial number of the cartridge																										
Category	The category represented by four digits that identify the group of volumes or a predefined category.																										
M.T.	The media type of the cartridge: <table><tr><td>1</td><td>Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library</td></tr><tr><td>E</td><td>Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library</td></tr><tr><td>J</td><td>High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library</td></tr><tr><td>K</td><td>Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library</td></tr><tr><td>1-1</td><td>Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>E-1</td><td>Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>J-1</td><td>Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>K-1</td><td>Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>1-2</td><td>Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>E-2</td><td>Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>J-2</td><td>Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>K-2</td><td>Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library</td></tr><tr><td>?</td><td>Unknown</td></tr></table>	1	Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library	E	Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library	J	High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library	K	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library	1-1	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library	E-1	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library	J-1	Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library	K-1	Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library	1-2	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library	E-2	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library	J-2	Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library	K-2	Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library	?	Unknown
1	Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library																										
E	Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in non-VTS logical library																										
J	High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library																										
K	Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in non-VTS logical library																										
1-1	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library																										
E-1	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 1 logical library																										
J-1	Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library																										
K-1	Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 1 logical library																										
1-2	Logical Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library																										
E-2	Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape in VTS 2 logical library																										
J-2	Stacked High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library																										
K-2	Stacked Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape in VTS 2 logical library																										
?	Unknown																										
StorGroup	The storage group that the volser is assigned to. The storage group is used for volume pooling and to set the primary storage pool.																										
MgmtClass	The management class that the volser is assigned to. The management class is used for volume duplexing. Allows assignment of peer-to-peer copy control parameters and secondary storage pool.																										
StorClass	The storage class that the volser is assigned to. The storage class is used for tape volume cache management.																										
DataClass	The data class that the volser is assigned to. The data class is used for future use.																										
CurrPool	The storage pool that contains the Volser for Stacked Only. Indicates the storage pool the stacked volume is currently in for Stacked Only.																										

HomePool The Volser Home Pool location for Stacked Only. Indicates the stacked volume's home pool. May be the same as current pool. If it is different, it indicates the volume is borrowed or will be moved to this pool as a result of a pool move operation.

Displaying Search Results

The Search Database for Volumes window has the following push buttons:

<u>T</u> op	Displays the first database records found that match the search criteria.
<u>B</u> ottom	Displays the last database records found that match the search criteria.
<u>N</u> ext 100	If you find more than 10 records, display the next 100 records in the list box. If you find fewer than 100 records, this control is disabled.
<u>P</u> revious 100	If you find more than 100 records, display the previous 100 records in the display list. If you find fewer than 100 records, this control is disabled.
<u>C</u> ancel	Closes the Search Database for Volumes window.
<u>H</u> elp	Provides help about the Search Database for Volumes window.

List Database Volumes

The List Database Volumes window (Figure 90) allows you to create an output file containing a customized listing of selected database columns. The output file is a flat file that can be output to a selectable file name on a diskette or to C:\LM\LISTDB.LST.

The 3494 must be in the Offline state for this operation.

List Database Volumes

- Up to 5 column fields may be selected to be included in the output list. The data will be sorted by the first two output columns.
- The data may be decreased by selecting a specific rack, media type, category, a volume mask, or by specifying one more more indicator flags.
- The output may be directed to a file on the A: disk or to the LISTDB.LST file on the C: drive.

Output Column 1	Output Column 2	Output Column 3	Output Column 4	Output Column 5
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

	Yes	No	Ignore	
<input type="checkbox"/> Specific Rack	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Misplaced
<input type="checkbox"/> Specific Media Type	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Unreadable
<input type="checkbox"/> Specific Category	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Mounted
<input type="checkbox"/> Volume Mask	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Inaccessible
	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Manual mode

Output Device ☒ A: Filename ☐ C:\LM\LISTDB.LST

Figure 90. List Database Volumes Window

During the output process, **** OPERATION IN PROGRESS **** is displayed.

Specify the list output contents on the output columns using the five **Output Column** list controls. Each list contains the following options:

None	List nothing for this column.																								
Volser	List the volser.																								
Cell	List the volume's current rack, column, and row.																								
Home	List the volume's home rack, column, and row.																								
Category	List the volume's category in hexadecimal form.																								
Category Order	List the volume's category order in decimal form.																								
Media Type	<p>List the volume's media type. The media type describes the physical cartridge characteristics as well as the logical library that the volume is associated with as follows:</p> <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>CST, Cartridge System Tape for non-VTS logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>E</td><td>ECCST, Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for non-VTS logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>J</td><td>HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for non-VTS logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>K</td><td>EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for non-VTS logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>1-1</td><td>CST, Logical Cartridge System Tape for VTS 1 logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>E-1</td><td>ECCST, Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for VTS 1 logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>J-1</td><td>HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 1 logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>K-1</td><td>EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 1 logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>1-2</td><td>CST, Logical Cartridge System Tape for VTS 2 logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>E-2</td><td>ECCST, Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for VTS 2 logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>J-2</td><td>HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 2 logical library</td></tr> <tr> <td>K-2</td><td>EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 2 logical library</td></tr> </table>	1	CST, Cartridge System Tape for non-VTS logical library	E	ECCST, Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for non-VTS logical library	J	HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for non-VTS logical library	K	EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for non-VTS logical library	1-1	CST, Logical Cartridge System Tape for VTS 1 logical library	E-1	ECCST, Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for VTS 1 logical library	J-1	HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 1 logical library	K-1	EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 1 logical library	1-2	CST, Logical Cartridge System Tape for VTS 2 logical library	E-2	ECCST, Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for VTS 2 logical library	J-2	HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 2 logical library	K-2	EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 2 logical library
1	CST, Cartridge System Tape for non-VTS logical library																								
E	ECCST, Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for non-VTS logical library																								
J	HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for non-VTS logical library																								
K	EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for non-VTS logical library																								
1-1	CST, Logical Cartridge System Tape for VTS 1 logical library																								
E-1	ECCST, Logical Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for VTS 1 logical library																								
J-1	HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 1 logical library																								
K-1	EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 1 logical library																								
1-2	CST, Logical Cartridge System Tape for VTS 2 logical library																								
E-2	ECCST, Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape for VTS 2 logical library																								
J-2	HPCT, High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 2 logical library																								
K-2	EHPCT, Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape for VTS 2 logical library																								
Mount Date	List the last date the volume was mounted or inserted.																								
Mounts	List the number of times the volume has been mounted.																								
Misplaced	<p>List if the volume is misplaced.</p> <p>Zero (0) indicates that the volume is not misplaced. One (1) indicates that the volume is misplaced.</p>																								

Unreadable	<p>List if the volume's label is unreadable.</p> <p>Zero (0) indicates that the volume's label is readable. One (1) indicates that the volume's label is unreadable.</p>
Mounted	<p>List if the volume is mounted.</p> <p>Zero (0) indicates that the volume is not mounted. One (1) indicates that the volume is mounted.</p>
Inaccessible	<p>List if the volume is inaccessible.</p> <p>Zero (0) indicates that the volume is accessible. One (1) indicates that the volume is inaccessible.</p>
Manual mode	<p>List if the volume was moved during Manual mode.</p> <p>Zero (0) indicates that the volume was not moved during Manual mode. One (1) indicates that the volume was moved during Manual mode.</p>
Expire time	<p>Lists the logical volume data's expire time, if an expire time has been defined.</p> <p>Expire time is expressed in minutes (M), hours (H), days (D), or weeks (W). If no expire time is defined, then it indicates Not Set. If the logical volume data has already expired, then it indicates Expired.</p>

You can select up to five output columns to include in the output list. The data is sorted by the first two output columns. The first column takes precedence over the second column.

You can decrease the amount of data contained in the list by narrowing certain list criteria. You can use one or more of the following to refine the data retrieved:

Specific Rack	<p>Select this check box if the list output should include only volumes from a particular rack. Use the associated list to select the rack to which to limit the output. The list contains all of the racks in the 3494.</p>
Specific Media Type	<p>Select this check box if the list output should include only volumes of a certain media type. Use the associated list to select the media type to which to limit the output. The media type describes the physical characteristics of the cartridge as well as the logical library with which the volume is associated. The library sequence number is shown next to each media type (xxxxx). Some or all of the following options are available based on the number and type of logical libraries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 - CST (Non-VTS xxxxx) • E - ECCST (Non-VTS xxxxx) • J - HPCT (Non-VTS xxxxx) • K - EHPCT (Non-VTS xxxxx) • 1 - CST (VTS 1 xxxxx)

- E - ECCST (VTS 1 xxxxx)
- J - HPCT (VTS 1 xxxxx)
- K - EHPCT (VTS 1 xxxxx)
- 1 - CST (VTS 2 xxxxx)
- E - ECCST (VTS 2 xxxxx)
- J - HPCT (VTS 2 xxxxx)
- K - EHPCT (VTS 2 xxxxx)

Specific Category

Select this check box if the list output should include only volumes with a specific category. Use the associated entry field to enter the desired category. The category must be entered as a four-digit hexadecimal number.

Volume Mask

Select this check box if the list output should include only volumes that match the volume mask. Use the associated entry field to enter the one- to six-character volume mask. You can include a wild card (pattern-matching) character, where ? or _ indicates one character and * or % indicates multiple characters.

Flags

Select the desired flag buttons if the list should include only volumes with certain flags set or cleared. Each flag can be set to one of three possible settings by clicking the associated button.

The flags can be one of the following options:

- *Yes*
The flag's condition applies to this volume (list volumes to which this flag applies).
- *No*
The flag's condition does not apply to this volume (list volumes to which this flag does not apply).
- *Ignore*
List volumes with the flags set to any value (list volumes without regard to the state of the flag).

You can select the following flags:

- Misplaced
- Unreadable
- Mounted
- Inaccessible
- Manual mode

The output listing can be created on the A: diskette drive or on the C: drive. Select the desired device button. If you select the A: drive, you can enter a filename. The filename can be up to 79 characters long. If you select the C: drive, the output is sent to C:\LM\LISTDB.LST.

The output listing consists of the following:

- The date and time

- The selection criteria
- Column headings describing the contents of each column
- The selected data
- Total number of records listed

If the output listing spans multiple diskettes, the selection criteria are not repeated.

Various messages can be displayed during or at the end of the list database operation. The following are possible messages:

- **Insert a formatted disk into Drive A: Select OK to begin the operation.**
Displayed initially when the output listing is being directed to the A: drive.
- **Insert another formatted disk into Drive A: Select OK to begin the operation.**
Displayed if the output listing is large enough that it spans multiple diskettes.
- **The List Database Volumes operation completed successfully.**
The output listing has been created, and the operation is complete.
- **The List Database Volumes operation failed.**
The operation failed due to an internal error, try again.
- **The disk is write-protected. Insert another disk into Drive A: Select OK to retry the operation.**
The diskette is write-protected. Insert a diskette that is not write-protected and try again.
- **The disk in the A: Drive is full. Insert another formatted disk into Drive A: Select OK to begin the operation.**
Displayed if you selected the A: drive for output and there is not enough room on the diskette to fit the output listing.
- **The disk in the A: Drive is not formatted. Insert another formatted disk into Drive A: Select OK to begin the operation.**
The diskette is not formatted. Insert a formatted diskette and try again.
- **The operation could not be completed because the C: Drive is full.**
Displayed if you selected the C: drive for output and there is not enough room on the drive to fit the output listing.
- **A disk error occurred attempting the List Database Volumes operation.**
The operation failed due to a disk error. Insert another diskette and try again.

The following are examples of using the List Database Volumes function:

- To find all misplaced volumes in rack 3 and display their locations, perform the following steps:
 1. Select **Volser** for **Output Column 1**.
 2. Select **Home** for **Output Column 2**.
 3. Select the **Specific Rack** check box.
 4. Select rack **3** in the associated list.
 5. Select the **Yes** button associated with **Misplaced**.
 6. If you selected **A:**, select the desired **Output Device** button and enter the **Filename**.
 7. If you selected **A:**, insert a non-write-protected diskette in the A: drive.
 8. Select the **Create list...** push button. An Operation In Progress message is displayed during the list operation.
 9. When the operation is complete, a completion message is displayed.

- To find all volumes starting with BCD in rack 4 and display their locations and category, perform the following steps:
 1. Select **Volser** for **Output Column 1**.
 2. Select **Category** for **Output Column 2**.
 3. Select **Home** for **Output Column 3**.
 4. Select the **Specific Rack** check box.
 5. Select rack **4** in the associated list.
 6. Select the **Volume Mask** check box.
 7. Enter **BCD*** in the Volume Mask entry field.
 8. If you selected **A;**, select the desired **Output Device** button, then enter the **Filename**.
 9. If you selected **A;**, insert a non-write-protected diskette in the A: drive.
 10. Select the **Create list...** push button. An Operation In Progress message is displayed during the list operation.
 11. When the operation is complete, a completion message is displayed.

The List Database Volumes window has the following push buttons:

Create list...	Initiates the List Database Volumes operation.
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the List Database Volumes window.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the List Database Volumes window.

Find A Logical Volume's Home

The Find A Logical Volume's Home window (Figure 91) allows you to determine the stacked volume or volumes on which a logical volume resides.

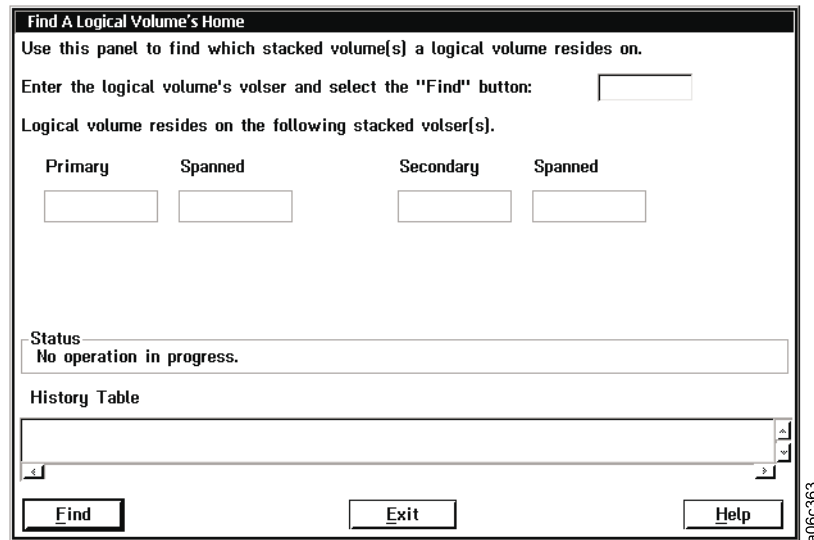


Figure 91. Find A Logical Volume's Home Window

Enter the logical volume's volser in the **Logical volser:** field, then select the **Find** push button. A "Search in progress" message is displayed while the search is occurring. The appropriate VTS is interrogated for where the logical volume resides.

If the search is successful and the logical volume does reside on a stacked volume, data is displayed. The following information can be displayed in the window:

Primary

The primary physical volume that contains the specified logical volume.

Spanned

If the logical volume does not fit entirely on the primary stacked volume, the remainder of the data is written to this spanned primary stacked volume. The data that makes up the requested logical volume has been split between the primary stacked volume and the primary spanned volume.

Secondary

If a secondary copy of a logical volume has been made (as defined by the volume's management class), this is the physical volume that contains the secondary copy of the logical volume. A logical volume can only have a secondary copy if Advanced Policy Management is installed and enabled and the volume's management class indicates a secondary copy should be made.

Spanned

If the logical volume does not fit entirely on the secondary stacked volume, the remainder of the data is written to this spanned secondary stacked volume. The data that makes up the requested logical volume has been split between the secondary stacked volume and the secondary spanned volume.

If the search is not successful, messages are displayed that describe why the search failed.

The Find A Logical Volume's Home window has the following push buttons:

<u>F</u>ind	Initiates the search for the logical volume's home.
<u>E</u>xit	Closes the Find A Logical Volume's Home window.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Find A Logical Volume's Home window.

Stacked Volume Map

The Stacked Volume Map window () allows you to obtain a map of logical volumes that reside on a stacked volume, place it on the hard drive and then copy it to a diskette. This function is available only if a VTS is installed in the 3494.

Initially, a message will pop up to inform you of the two-part process of requesting a stacked volume map.

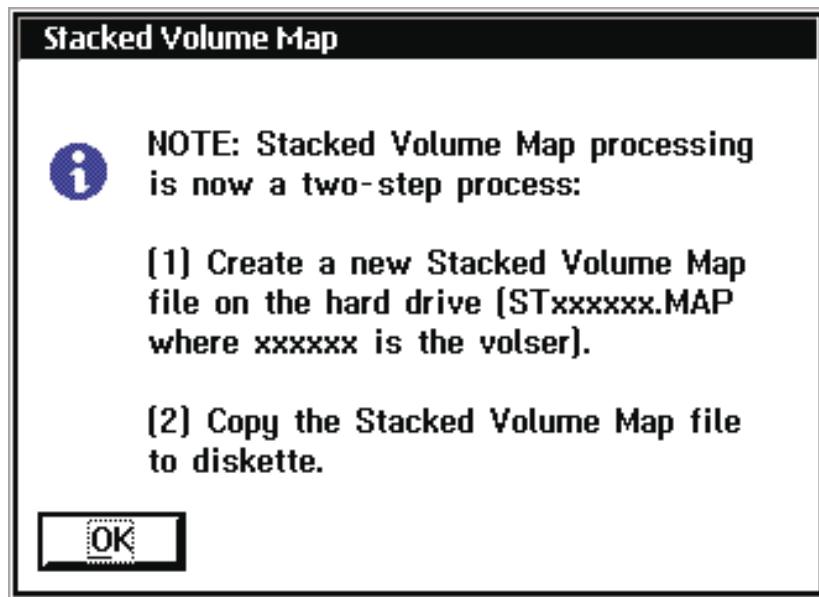


Figure 92. Stacked Volume Map Initial Message Popup

Click "OK" and the following screen will appear:

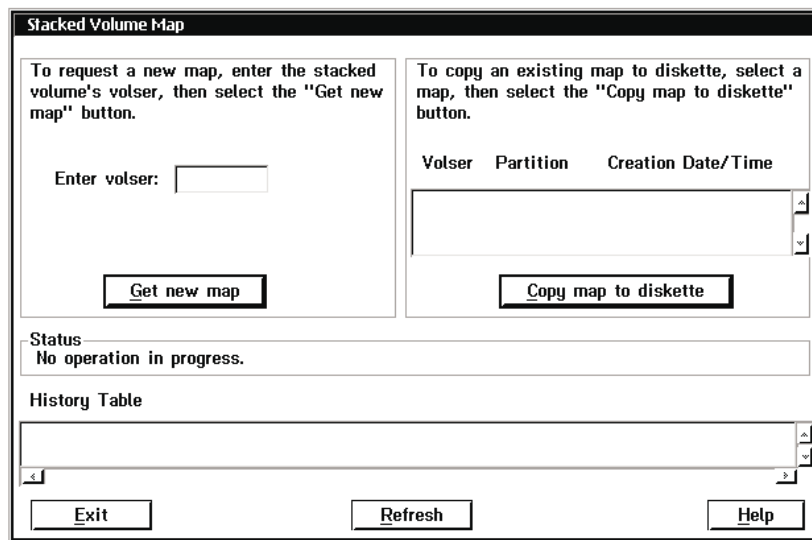


Figure 93. Stacked Volume Map Window

Enter the stacked volume's volser in the **Enter volser:** field, then select the **Get new map...** push button. A "Search in progress" message is displayed while the search is occurring. The appropriate VTS is interrogated for the map of the stacked volume.

The logical volumes are retrieved 100 at a time from the appropriate VTS. When the complete map is received successfully, a message is displayed.

If the search is not successful, messages are displayed that describe why the search failed.

The stacked volume map is stored on the hard drive in a file named **STxxxxx.MAP**, where **xxxxxx** is the stacked volume VOLID. The new map will be displayed in the list of existing maps.

To copy the map to a diskette, insert a blank, formatted diskette in the A: drive. Select the new map from the list and select the **Copy map to diskette** push button.

The output file is in the following format:

```
Version: 00001
Time and Date of Map: 13:40:24 08/26/2001
Library Sequence Number: 12345
Customer ID: IBM Global Services
Stacked Volser: BAR010
Number of Logicals: 120
LOG000
LOG010
LOG234
.
.
.
LOG465 SPAN
```

If a logical volume spans two stacked volumes, the word **SPAN** is displayed next to the volser.

The Stacked Volume Map window has the following push buttons:

<u>G</u>et map...	Initiates the search for logical volumes.
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the Stacked Volume Map window.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Stacked Volume Map window.

Rebuild Database Statistics

The **Rebuild database statistics...** option allows you to rebuild the database statistics when the 3494 performance becomes degraded due to database performance issues. When you select the **Rebuild database statistics...** option, a Database Maintenance Utilities window (Figure 94 on page 172) opens, indicating that the rebuild initiated successfully. Select **OK** to close the window.

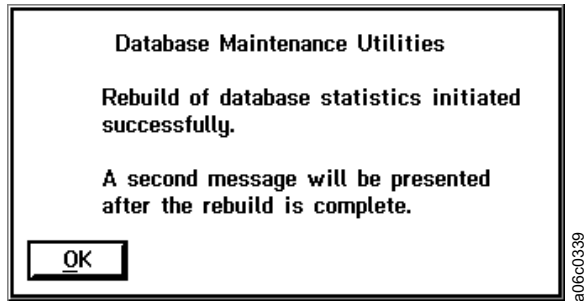


Figure 94. Database Maintenance Utilities Window - Initiated

When the rebuild operation is complete, a Database Maintenance Utilities window (Figure 95) opens, indicating that the rebuild completed successfully. Select **OK** to close the window.

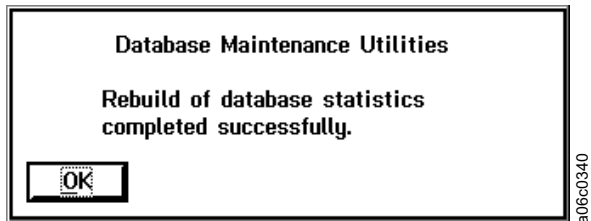


Figure 95. Database Maintenance Utilities Window - Completed

Using the Commands Window

Use the Commands window (Figure 96) to work with the 3494 commands.

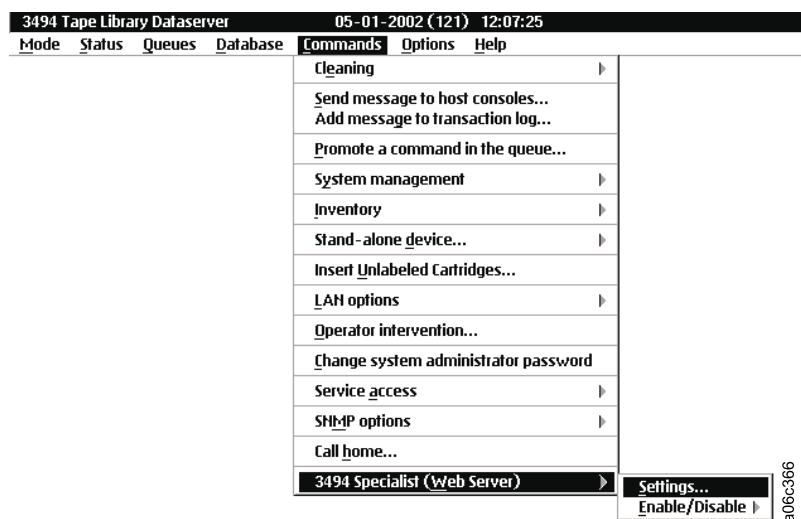


Figure 96. Commands Window

The following options are available in the Commands window:

Cleaning

Allows you to select the following options:

Schedule Cleaning

Schedule the cleaning of the tape drives based on time or usage (see “Schedule Cleaning” on page 178).

Eject a Cleaner Cartridge

Eject a selected cleaner cartridge (see “Eject a Cleaner Cartridge” on page 181).

Cleaner Masks

Change cleaner masks (see “Set Cleaner Masks” on page 182).

Send message to host consoles...

Opens a window where you can enter a message (70 characters maximum). The message is then sent to all the hosts (see “Send Message to Host Consoles” on page 183).

Promote a command in the queue...

Opens a window where you can select one or more requests in the command queue to be promoted (see “Promote a Command in the Queue” on page 185).

System management

Allows you to select the following:

Volser ranges for media types

This window allows you to enter up to 50 or 256 volser ranges and associated media types. The volser ranges are used to help determine a volser’s media type when it is inserted into the 3494 (see “Volser Ranges

for Media Types” on page 186). Volser ranges are used only for physical volumes.

Delete Logical Volumes

This window allows you to delete logical volumes that are in the Insert category (see “Delete Logical Volumes” on page 189).

Eject A Stacked Volume

This window allows a VTS stacked volume to be ejected from the 3494 (see “Eject A Stacked Volume” on page 190).

Set VTS Category Attributes

This window allows you to set a category to a “Fast Ready” category and to set an expire time for logical volumes assigned to fast ready categories. (see “Set VTS Category Attributes” on page 191).

Set VTS Management Policies

This window allows you to enter the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule, the Reclaim Threshold Percentage, and the Free Storage Threshold (see “VTS Management Policies” on page 193).

Manage Unassigned Volumes

This window allows you to move J- and K-type physical volumes from the Unassigned category to the Import or Insert category or eject the volumes from the 3494 (see “Manage Unassigned Volumes” on page 196).

Manage Import Volumes

This window allows you to move J- and K-type physical volumes from the Import category to the Insert category or to eject the volumes from the 3494 (see “Manage Import Volumes” on page 198).

Manage Insert Volumes

This window allows you to reevaluate the physical volumes in the Insert category for 3590 native use or eject the volumes from the 3494 (see “Manage Insert Volumes” on page 199).

Manage Export-Hold volumes

This window allows you to move Exported Stacked Volumes in the Export-hold category to the Import category or eject the Exported Stacked Volumes from the 3494 (see “Manage Export-Hold Volumes” on page 200).

Cancel VTS Export/Import

This window allows you to send a cancel request for an in-progress Export or Import

operation (see “Cancel VTS Export/Import” on page 201).

Manage Constructs and Pools

This window allows you to do the following:

- Manage Storage Groups (see “Manage Storage Groups” on page 202)
- Manage Management Classes (see “Manage Management Classes” on page 203)
- Manage Storage Classes (see “Manage Storage Classes” on page 205)
- Manage Data Classes (see “Manage Data Classes” on page 206)

Stacked Volume Pool Properties

This window allows you to modify stacked volume pool properties (see “Stacked Volume Pool Properties” on page 207).

Move/Eject Stacked Volumes

This window allows you to move and eject stacked volumes (see “Move/Eject Stacked Volumes” on page 208).

Move/Eject Stacked Volumes Status

This window allows you to view the status of move/eject requests for the VTS (see “Move/Eject Stacked Volumes (Status)” on page 212).

Manage Logical Volumes

This window allows two operations:

- Insert new logical volumes into a VTS
- Change existing logical volumes

See “Manage Logical Volumes” on page 214.

Display VTS Export/Import Volumes

This window allows you to display the physical volumes in the Unassigned, Import, or Export-Hold categories (see Figure 126 on page 220).

Inventory

Allows you to select the following:

Inventory new storage or re-inventory complete system

Start an inventory of any storage components that the 3494 has not inventoried previously or start an inventory of all storage components (see “Inventory New Storage or Re-inventory Complete System” on page 219). This is typically a system administrator function that is password-protected.

	<p>Disable inventory update Disables inventory update allowing doors to be opened and closed without performing inventory update (see “Disable Inventory Update” on page 228).</p> <p>Enable inventory update Enables inventory update to take place whenever the 3494 system is returned to Auto mode and Online state after an enclosure door is opened and closed (see “Enable Inventory Update” on page 229).</p> <p>Perform inventory update (full) Performs an immediate inventory update. This option is available only if the 3494 is in the Auto mode and Online state (see “Perform Inventory Update (Full)” on page 229).</p> <p>Perform inventory update (partial) Performs an inventory on only the frames on which the doors have been opened and possibly the frames to either side of the door that was opened. This option is available only if the 3494 is in the Auto mode and Online state (see “Perform Inventory Update (Partial)” on page 230).</p>
Stand-alone <u>d</u>evice...	<p>Allows you to select the following options:</p> <p>Setup stand-alone device Sets up special stand-alone 3494 functions (see “Stand-Alone Device” on page 231).</p> <p>Reset stand-alone device Resets stand-alone devices (see “Reset Stand-Alone Device” on page 234).</p> <p>Stand-alone device status Provides status for stand-alone devices (see “Stand-Alone Device Status” on page 235).</p>
Insert <u>U</u>nabeled Cartridges...	<p>Opens the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges window, which allows you to insert unlabeled cartridges into the 3494 (see “Insert Unlabeled Cartridges” on page 235).</p>
<u>L</u>AN options	<p>Allows you to select the following:</p> <p>Add LAN host See “Add LAN Host to Library” on page 237.</p> <p>Delete LAN host See “Delete LAN Host from Library” on page 243.</p> <p>Update LAN host information See “Update LAN Host Information” on page 244.</p>

	LM LAN information See "Library LAN Information" on page 250.
<u>O</u>perator intervention...	Displays the intervention-required conditions. You can specify the items where action was taken (see "Operator Intervention" on page 251).
<u>C</u>hange system administrator password	Opens a window that allows you to change the system administrator's password (see "Change System Administrator Password" on page 253).
<u>S</u>ervice <u>a</u>ccess	Allows you to select the following: Enable service access Provides the ability to access the Library Managers through a modem connection when installed (see "Service Access" on page 254). Disable service access Prevents the ability to access the Library Managers through a modem connection if installed (see "Service Access" on page 254).
<u>S</u>NMP options	Allows you to select the following: Start SNMP Provides the ability to start the SNMP messaging process (see "Monitoring Library Manager Events" on page 254). Stop SNMP Provides the ability to stop the SNMP messaging process (see "Monitoring Library Manager Events" on page 254). Change SNMP trap destinations Provides the ability to add and delete the SNMP trap destinations for SNMP trap messages (see "Monitoring Library Manager Events" on page 254). Select SNMP trap types Provides the ability to select the SNMP trap type of messages to be sent to an SNMP monitoring station (see "Monitoring Library Manager Events" on page 254). Send TESTM trap Provides the ability to send test messages to SNMP monitoring stations (see "Monitoring Library Manager Events" on page 254).
<u>C</u>all <u>h</u>ome...	Opens a window that allows you to send a "Call Home" request to a subsystem (see "Call Home" on page 273).
Specialist (<u>W</u>eb Server)	

Settings ...

Provides the ability to administer passwords for the Specialist function and enable/disable access to various panels on the Specialist (see "Specialist (Web Server)" on page 274).

Enable/Disable

Provides the ability to enable or disable the Specialist function (see "Specialist (Web Server)" on page 274).

Note: If the **Specialist (Web Server)** option is grayed out, the Library Manager operating system either is not at the correct level or does not have enough memory. In these conditions, you cannot enable and start the Specialist.

Cleaning

The **Cleaning** option allows you to select the following operations:

- Schedule cleaning
- Eject a cleaner cartridge
- Set cleaner masks

Schedule Cleaning

From the Clean Schedule, you can schedule automatic cleaning of the tape drives based on time or usage. Also, the 3490E or 3590 control units can request a cleaning based on tape drive performance.

3490E or 3590 Device Cleaning

The Library Manager manages device cleaning in the 3494. During installation of the 3494 and at any other time, you can establish a cleaning schedule by selecting the Commands pulldown in the Operator menu, then selecting the **Schedule Cleaning** option in the Cleaning window. You can then specify one of the following cleaning schedules:

Time of Week The drives are cleaned at specific times and days during a week. This sets up a cleaning based on time.

Usage The drives are cleaned after a specified number of mounts on a per-drive basis.

The operator settings do not affect the cleaning that tape drive performance causes. The control unit examines tape drive performance to determine if a drive requires cleaning. When the control unit determines that a drive requires cleaning, the control unit informs the Library Manager to place a clean operation in the operations queue.

When the clean operation is executed, the next cleaner volume is selected from the appropriate cleaner-volume category and mounted on the drive. When the volume is unloaded after the clean operation, the host systems are notified that a cleaning operation completed.

Cleaner Cartridge Replacement at End-of-Life

Cleaner cartridges are ejected automatically from the 3494 when they are used the maximum number of times specified in the Clean Schedule window.

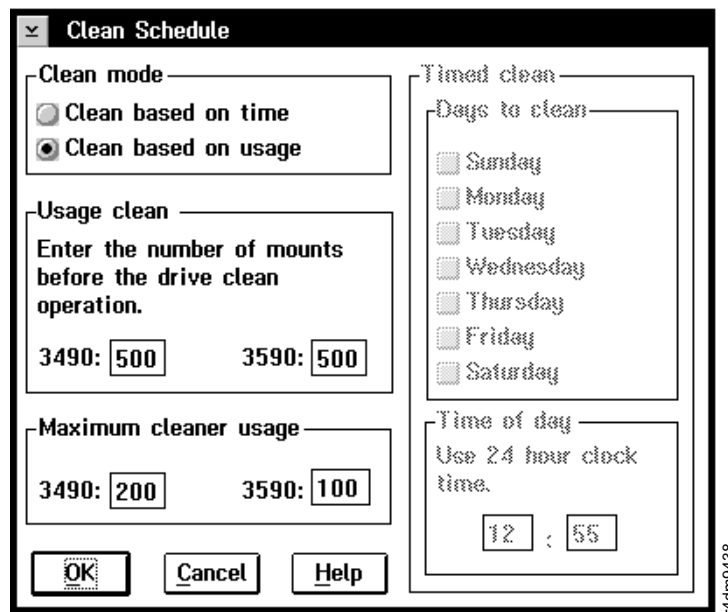
When the number of mounts of a cleaner cartridge equals the number of allowed uses, that cartridge is ejected automatically and placed in the convenience I/O station. All attached hosts are notified that a cleaner cartridge was ejected from the 3494. If the 3494 is out of cleaner cartridges and a drive requires cleaning, all attached hosts are notified that the 3494 is out of cleaner cartridges. Operator intervention is posted on the Library Manager console.

You can specify a value for the maximum uses of a cleaner cartridge before it is ejected from the 3494. For 3490E drives, the default is 200, and the maximum allowed is 500. For 3590 drives, the recommended usage is 100.

Errors related to the handling of a cleaner cartridge are not reported to the host; the Library Manager logs them.

Clean Schedule

The Clean Schedule window (Figure 97) allows you to schedule cleaning of the tape drives by either time or usage.

The screenshot shows the 'Clean Schedule' window with a title bar and a close button. It is divided into two main sections: 'Usage clean' and 'Timed clean'. The 'Usage clean' section is active, showing 'Clean mode' with 'Clean based on usage' selected. It includes a 'Usage clean' section with a text prompt and two input fields for '3490' and '3590', both set to '500'. Below this is a 'Maximum cleaner usage' section with input fields for '3490' (set to '200') and '3590' (set to '100'). The 'Timed clean' section is inactive. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons. A vertical text 'r4dm9438' is on the right side of the window.

Clean Schedule

Clean mode

☐ Clean based on time

☒ Clean based on usage

Usage clean

Enter the number of mounts before the drive clean operation.

3490: 3590:

Maximum cleaner usage

3490: 3590:

Timed clean

Days to clean

☐ Sunday

☐ Monday

☐ Tuesday

☐ Wednesday

☐ Thursday

☐ Friday

☐ Saturday

Time of day

Use 24 hour clock time.

:

OK **Cancel** **Help**

r4dm9438

Figure 97. Clean Schedule Window

The Clean Schedule window has the following controls:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Clean based on time | This button selects the Timed clean area of the window for entering time parameters. Select the Days to clean and Time of day fields. |
| Clean based on usage | This button selects the Usage clean area of the window for entering numbers. Specify drive cleaning in the Enter the number of mounts before the drive clean operation field. |

The Clean Schedule window has the following options:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Usage clean | Specify that tape drives are cleaned after a certain number of mounts on a per-drive basis. The default is 500. |
| Days to clean | Specify the days during a week when cleaning is to be initiated. |
| Time of day | Specify the time of the day when cleaning is to be started. Enter the time of day in the fields provided based on a 24-hour clock; for example, 16:00 is 4:00 PM. |
| Maximum cleaner usage | For both time- and usage-based cleans, you must enter a maximum cleaner usage. Change the maximum number of times that cleaner cartridges are used before they are ejected automatically from the 3494. For 3490E, the default is 200, and the maximum allowed is 500. For 3590, the recommended usage maximum is 100. |

The Clean Schedule window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| <u>O</u>K | Sets the new clean schedule. |
| <u>C</u>ancel | Closes the Clean Schedule window without changing the cleaning schedule. |
| <u>H</u>elp | Provides help about the Clean Schedule window. |

The cleaning schedule is stored in the Library Manager database. When the cleaning schedule is changed, the tape drive's usage-based clean counter is reset to zero.

Eject a Cleaner Cartridge

The Eject a Cleaner Cartridge window (Figure 98) allows you to select a cleaner cartridge in the 3494, then eject the selected cleaner cartridge from the 3494.

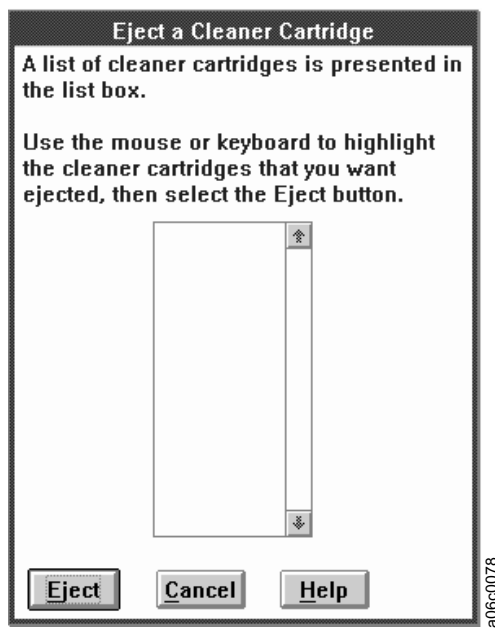


Figure 98. Eject a Cleaner Cartridge Window

The list box presents a list of cleaner cartridges.

Use the pointing device or the keyboard to highlight the cleaner cartridges that you want to eject, then select the **Eject** push button.

The Eject a Cleaner Cartridge window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| <u>E</u>ject | Ejects the selected cleaner cartridge from the 3494. |
| <u>C</u>ancel | Closes the Eject a Cleaner Cartridge window. |
| <u>H</u>elp | Provides help about the Eject a Cleaner Cartridge window. |

Set Cleaner Masks

Note: You can view cleaner masks from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The Cleaner Masks window (Figure 99) allows the entry of cleaner masks.

You must set at least one of the masks (for example, CLN***). The CLN prefix is not a requirement. You can use any valid volser. See “Cleaner Volume Masks” on page 223 for additional information.

Note: When you select the **Cleaner masks** option in the Cleaning window, the following rules apply to the changing of the masks:

- A cleaner mask cannot match the volser of any data cartridge in the 3494. You must either enter a different cleaner mask or eject all data cartridges in the 3494 that match the cleaner mask before using the mask.
- You cannot delete a cleaner mask when there are cleaner cartridges in the 3494 that match this mask. You must either retain this cleaner mask or eject all cleaner cartridges that match this mask before deleting the mask.

These rules do not apply when you change the masks as part of a full inventory operation.

Cleaner Masks

Verify cleaner cartridge masks and change if required.

At least one mask must be specified. A mask must contain 6 characters. Use an asterisk [*] as the wild card character [CLN***].

Mask 1:	<input type="text" value="CLN***"/>	Mask 6:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 2:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 7:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 3:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 8:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 4:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 9:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 5:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 10:	<input type="text"/>

Figure 99. Cleaner Masks Window

The Cleaner Masks window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| OK | Checks masks and saves. |
| Cancel | Closes the Cleaner Masks window without saving any changes. |
| Help | Provides help about the Cleaner Masks window. |

Send Message to Host Consoles

The Host Message window (Figure 100) allows you to enter up to 70 characters to be sent to all attached hosts. The Library Manager must be online for this option. If not, an error message is displayed, indicating that the 3494 must be online.

The acknowledgment **Message has been sent to all attached hosts** indicates that the broadcast was processed.

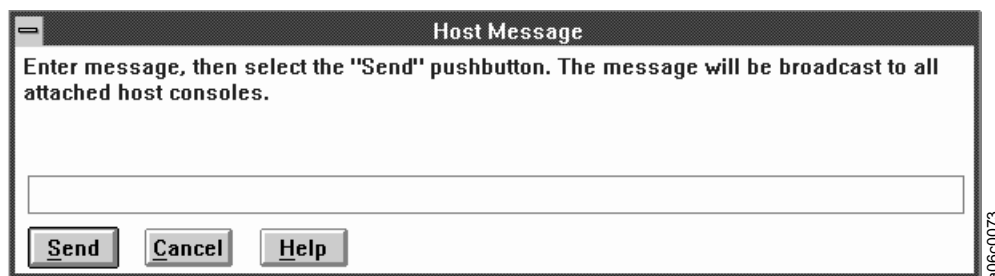


Figure 100. Host Message Window

The Host Message window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| <u>S</u> end | Sends the message to all attached hosts. |
| <u>C</u> ancel | Closes the Host Message window. |
| <u>H</u> elp | Provides help about the Host Message window. |

Add Message to Transaction Log

When you select the Add message to transaction log ... option in the Commands window, the Add Message to Transaction Log window (Figure 101) opens.

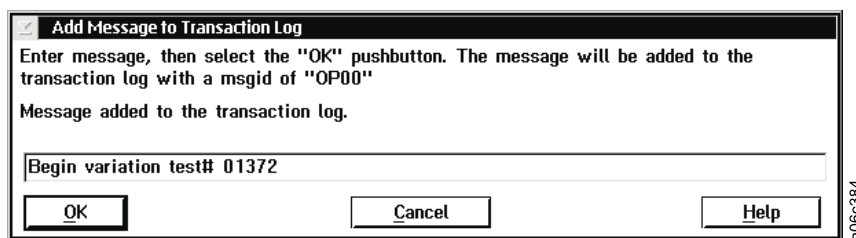


Figure 101. Add Message to Transaction Log Window

This panel allows the Operator or Service Representative to add a message to the transaction log. The text of the message can consist of any characters. Enter a message, then select the **OK**. The message will be added to the transaction log with a message ID of **OP00**.

There are many possible uses for this function. It can be used to indicate a problem has occurred or to indicate the beginning and end of a Library Manager test.

The Add Message to Transaction Log Command window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|------------|--|
| <u>O</u> K | The entered message text will be added to the transaction log. |
|------------|--|

Cancel

Close the panel.

Help

Display the help panel.

Promote a Command in the Queue

Note: You can view the Command queue from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

When you select the **Promote a command in the queue...** option in the Commands window, the Promote Command window (Figure 102) opens.

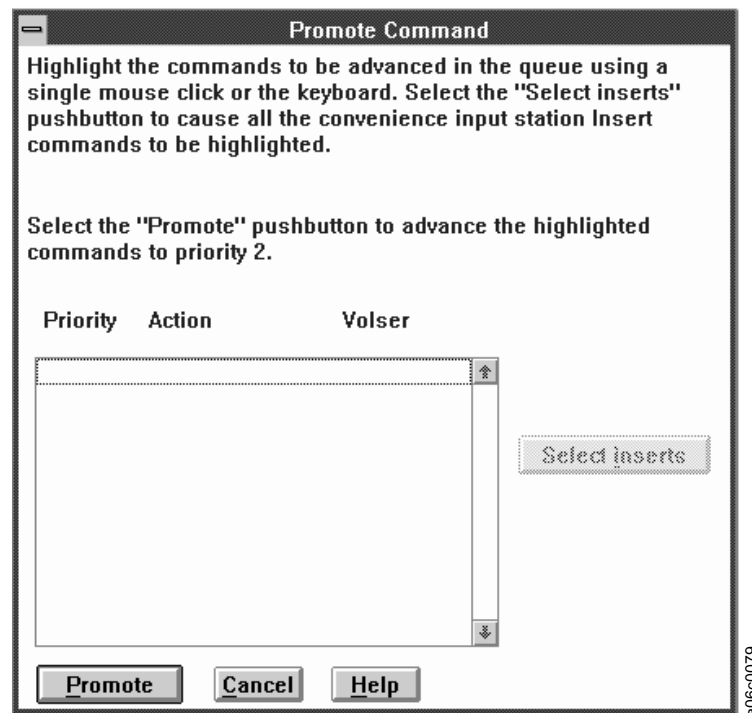


Figure 102. Promote Command Window

The list box in the window shows the commands in the command queue. For each command, the priority and volser, if applicable, are shown. The commands are shown in priority order with the highest priority command at the top of the list. You can select commands that you want to promote by highlighting. If you select a command for promotion and the command is already in progress, the command is not promoted. The list box is updated automatically when a command is promoted.

The Promote Command window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Select <u>i</u>nsets | Highlights all Insert commands for volumes entered through the convenience I/O station. |
| <u>P</u>romote | Promotes all highlighted commands to the top of the priority 2 queue. |
| <u>C</u>ancel | Closes the Promote Command window. Any promoted commands stay promoted. |
| <u>H</u>elp | Provides help about the Promote Commands window. |

System Management

The **System Management** option allows the following operations:

- Volser ranges for media types
- Delete logical volumes
- Eject a stacked volume
- Set VTS category attributes
- Set VTS management policies
- Manage unassigned volumes
- Manage import volumes
- Manage insert volumes
- Manage export-hold volumes
- Cancel VTS export/import
- Display export/import volumes
- Manage constructs and pools
 - Manage storage groups
 - Manage management classes
 - Manage storage classes
 - Manage data classes
 - Stacked volume pool properties
 - Move/Eject stacked volumes
 - Move/Eject stacked volumes — Status
 - Manage Logical Volumes
 - Transfer LM Administrative Data

Volser Ranges for Media Types

Note: You can view and modify volser ranges from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The Volser Ranges window (Figure 103 on page 188) allows you to enter up to 50 or 256 volser ranges and associated media types. The volser ranges are used to help determine a physical volume’s media type when it is inserted into the 3494. It is also used to assign stacked physical volumes to storage pools when they are inserted. When a range is added or modified, the system combines overlapping ranges with the same media type automatically and checks for range conflicts.

When a volser range changes, the media types and storage pools for existing volumes in the 3494 do not change. Volumes inserted subsequently reflect the new set of ranges and associated media types and storage pools. A volser range cannot conflict with existing volsers of a different media type.

A volume’s media type is determined by using the following rules:

- The media type that the vision system returns is used as a first choice.
- If the media type returned is for a **J-** or **K-**type cartridge and there is more than one logical library in the physical library, the volser ranges are used to determine the logical library to which the volume is assigned.
- If the vision system cannot determine a volume’s media type, the volser ranges are used. If the volume being inserted is within one of the ranges, the range’s associated media type is used. The search of the ranges is an inclusive search.

- If the volser does not fall into one of the ranges, the system uses the default media type defined during the Teach process to determine the media type.
- If there is no default media type, the volume is ejected, and an operator intervention is set.

To add a range, enter the two volsers in the **From** and **To** fields, select a media type, select a home pool (if it is a stacked volume range) then select the **Add / Modify** push button.

To expand a range, double-click the range, expand the volsers, select the media type, select the home pool (if it is a stacked volume range), then select the **Add / Modify** push button.

To delete a range, double-click the range, then select the **Delete** push button.

To determine if a volser is in a range, enter the volser in the **From** entry field, then select the **Volser in range?** push button.

To query the number of volsers in a range, highlight the range in the list box, then select the **Total volsers in range** push button.

The Volser Ranges window has the following controls:

From and To entry fields

The volser entry fields must contain six alphanumeric characters. The two volsers must be entered in the same format. Corresponding characters in each volser must both be either alphabetic or both be numeric. For example, AAA998 and AAB004 are of the same form, but AA9998 and AAB004 are not.

The volsers that fall within a range are determined as follows: the volser range is increased such that alphabetic characters are increased alphabetically, and numeric characters are increased numerically. For example, volser range ABC000–ABD999 would result in a range of 2,000 volsers (ABC000–ABC999 and ABD000–ABD999).

Media type list box

A selectable list of media types. Highlight the desired media type for the range.

Home pool

A selectable list of home pools (0 through 32). This field only applies to stacked physical volume ranges and is ignored for native volume ranges. Highlight the desired home pool. For native volser ranges, select 0.

Volser ranges list box

A scrollable list of the volser ranges. Highlighting a range causes the volsers and media type to be displayed in the entry fields and the media type list box. Highlight a range before selecting the **Delete range...** push button.

History table

A sequential list of completed actions and conditions.

From	To	Media type	Partition	Lib Seq Num	Home Pool
\$10000	\$10063	J - HPCT	VTS-1	11111	00
\$20001	\$20180	J - HPCT	VTS-2	22222	00

From: To: Home Pool: 00 [CSP]

Total volser in range

Volser in range?

Media type Partition Lib Seq Num

I - CST non-VTS 12345

E - ECCST non-VTS 12345

J - HPCT non-VTS 12345

Add/Modify

Delete

Status

No operation in progress.

History Table

Refresh Cancel Help

a06c367

Figure 103. Volser Ranges Window

The Volser Ranges window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <u>T</u>otal volser in range | Computes the number of physical volumes that are within a highlighted range. |
| <u>V</u>olser in range? | Checks to determine if the volser entered in the From: entry field is in a defined range. If so, the range is highlighted in the list box. |
| <u>A</u>dd / <u>M</u>odify | Adds or modifies a range. The volsers entered, the media type selected, and the home pool selected are used to add or modify a range. If there is a problem with the new or modified range, an error message is displayed. |
| <u>D</u>elete | Deletes the highlighted range from the list of ranges. You are prompted to confirm the Delete Range operation. Select Yes to perform the Delete Range operation. Select No to cancel the Delete Range operation. |
| <u>R</u>efresh | Refreshes the Volser Ranges window. |
| <u>C</u>ancel | Closes the Volser Ranges window. All changes to the ranges are saved. |
| <u>H</u>elp | Provides help about the Volser Ranges window. |

Delete Logical Volumes

The Delete Logical Volumes window (Figure 104 on page 190) allows you to delete logical volumes that have not been checked into a host's tape management system. You can use this window to delete only logical volumes that are in the Insert category.

Note: You can delete logical volumes that the host has moved from the Insert category only with host commands.

CAUTION:

Consult your system administrator to ensure that host insert processing is complete prior to deleting logical volumes that the host has moved from the Insert category.

The Delete Logical Volumes window lists the numbers of the logical volumes that are in the Insert category for each VTS. You may choose from the following Delete operations:

- To delete a single logical volume for a VTS, perform the following steps:
 1. In the first entry field, enter the volser of the logical volume. Leave the second entry field blank.
 2. Click the button for the VTS that the logical volume is associated with.
 3. Select the **Delete...** push button to start the Delete operation. A message box allows you to confirm your selection.
- To delete a range of logical volumes for a VTS, perform the following steps:
 1. In the first entry field, enter the volser of the first logical volume in the range.
 2. In the second entry field, enter the volser of the last logical volume in the range.
 3. Click the button for the VTS that the logical volumes are associated with.
 4. Select the **Delete...** push button to start the Delete operation. A message box allows you to confirm your selection.
- To delete all the logical volumes in the insert category for a VTS, perform the following steps:
 1. Select the check box labeled **Delete ALL logical volumes in the Insert category for a VTS.**
 2. Click the button for the VTS that the logical volumes are associated with.
 3. Select the **Delete...** push button to start the Delete operation. A message box allows you to confirm your selection.

The Delete Logical Volumes window has the following controls:

Volser entry fields

The volser entry fields must contain six alphanumeric characters. The two volsers must be entered in the same format. Corresponding characters in each volser must both be either alphabetic or both be numeric. For example, AAA998 and AAB004 are of the same form, but AA9998 and AAB004 are not.

The volser is increased such that alphabetic characters are increased alphabetically, and numeric characters are increased numerically. For

example, volser range ABC000–ABD999 would result in 2,000 volsers (ABC000–ABC999 and ABD000–ABD999).

VTs Library buttons

These buttons allow you to select the VTS from which the logical volumes will be deleted. Buttons are displayed only for the number of VTs installed. The buttons may be disabled if no logical volumes are in the Insert category.

Delete Logical Volumes

1. Enter a volser, range of volsers, or select 'Delete ALL logical volumes...'.
 2. Select from which VTS library the logical volumes are to be deleted.

Volser: through

☐ Delete ALL logical volumes in the Insert category for a VTS

VTS Library

VTS	Lib Seq Num	Insert Category
<input type="radio"/> VTS 1	11111	1002
<input type="radio"/> VTS 2	22222	1001

Status

Figure 104. Delete Logical Volumes Window

The Delete Logical Volumes window has the following push buttons:

- Delete...** Initiates the Delete Logical Volumes operation. You are prompted to confirm the operation. Select **Yes** to continue the Delete operation. Select **No** to cancel the Delete operation.
- Cancel** Closes the Delete Logical Volumes window. If a Delete operation is in progress, you are prompted to confirm the cancellation. Select **Yes** to cancel the Delete operation. Select **No** to continue with the Delete operation. You can cancel an in-progress Delete operation at any time.
- Help** Provides help about the Delete Logical Volumes window.

Eject A Stacked Volume

The Eject A Stacked Volume window (Figure 105 on page 191) allows you to eject a stacked volume from the 3494. Enter the stacked volume's volser, then select the **Eject...** push button. The list box displays the stacked volumes that are currently in the process of being ejected.

When an Eject Stacked Volume operation is initiated, a request is sent to the associated VTS to eject the stacked volume. The VTS then copies any active data

from the stacked volume to other stacked volumes. When all active data has been removed, the VTS initiates the eject of the now-empty stacked volume. This process can take a long time.

Notes:

1. If the Library Manager is busy, the VTS is busy, and the stacked volume being ejected contains many active data files, the eject process may take a VERY long time (up to several hours).
2. Only one eject of a stacked volume can be in-progress for each VTS. If more than one is attempted, an error message results.
3. Exported Stacked Volumes (those in the Unassigned, Import, or Export-Hold categories) cannot be ejected using this window. If you attempt this, an error message results.

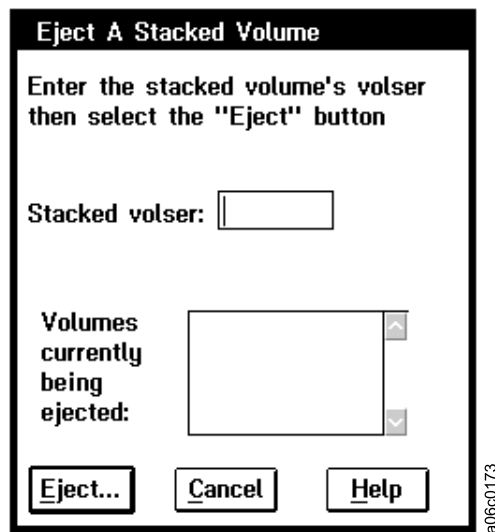


Figure 105. Eject A Stacked Volume Window

The Eject A Stacked Volume window has the following push buttons:

Eject... Initiates the Eject Stacked Volume operation. You are prompted to confirm the Eject operation. Select **Yes** to continue the Eject operation. Select **No** to cancel the Eject operation.

Note: If the volume selected is in a VTS at code level 2.26.1.0 or higher and the Library Manager is at code 527.00 or higher, you will be directed to use the move/eject stacked volumes panel instead. The move/eject stacked volumes panel allows a range of volumes to be ejected. See .

Cancel Closes the Eject A Stacked Volume window. All changes are saved.

Help Provides help about the Eject A Stacked Volume window.

Set VTS Category Attributes

Note: You can view VTS category attributes from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The Set VTS Category Attributes window (Figure 106 on page 192) allows you to define categories as “Fast Ready” categories and associate an expire time for the

category. A "Fast Ready" category means that the Library Manager can order category mounts from this category without recalling data from a stacked volume. This enables quick mount times because the mount request does not require a recall.

To define a "Fast Ready" category, enter the four-digit hexadecimal category number, select the desired VTS (and expire time, if desired), and select the **Add/Modify category** push button.

To associate an expire time for the category, define the category. Then, enter a number in the Expire Time field and select its associated unit. For example, if you wanted the expire time associated with the category to be six hours, you would enter "6" and select "hours." Select the **Add/Modify category** push button

To delete a category from the "Fast Ready" category list, highlight the category in the list box, then select the **Delete category...** push button.

Expire Time

The Library Manager and the VTS use this time to expire logical volume data for logical volumes in the defined "Fast-Ready" category. The minimum expire time is 24 hours. The maximum expire time is 32 767 hours (approximately 194 weeks). You can enter the expire time in hours, days, or weeks.

If zero is entered or if no entry is made in this field, the logical volumes will not be expired.

Define Fast Ready Categories

- To define a category as "Fast Ready", enter the 4 digit category number, select the VTS, select an expire time, then select the "Add/Modify category" button.

- To delete a category from the "Fast Ready" category list, highlight the category in the list box, then select the "Delete category" button.

NOTE: Category mounts or specific mounts of volumes in a category defined as a "Fast-Ready" category will not recall data from tape or the Tape Volume Cache. Only scratch categories should be defined as "Fast Ready".

Category:

☐ VTS 1 ☒ VTS 2

Expire Time:

Units:

Hours

Category	VTS	Expire Time
bbbb	2	0H
1111	1	0H

Add/Modify category

Delete category...

Cancel

Help

Figure 106. Set VTS Category Attributes Window

The Set VTS Category Attributes window has the following push buttons:

Add/Modify category

Adds or modifies the entered category to the selected VTS's "Fast Ready" category list along with its associated expire time.

Deletes the highlighted category from the associated VTs's "Fast Ready" category list. The library prompts you to confirm the Delete operation. Select **Yes** to continue the Delete operation. Select **No** to cancel the Delete operation.

<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Set VTS Category Attributes window.
--------------------	---

Note: You can view VTS management policies from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

VTS Management Policies

Inhibit Reclaim Schedule

- Add an entry to the schedule by selecting a day of week, start time, duration, which VTSs then select the "Add" pushbutton. Up to 14 entries can be made.
- Delete an entry by highlighting it in the list box then selecting the "Delete" pushbutton.

Day of week	Start Time		Duration		
	Hour	Minute	Hours	Minutes	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> VTS 1
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> VTS 2

Reclaim Threshold Percentage

VTS 1: VTS 2:

Free Storage Threshold (GB)

VTS 1: VTS 2:

The *Inhibit Reclaim Schedule* defines when the VTS should not perform reclaim operations. Reclaim operations require physical drives. This means that drives are used for reclaim operations at the same time others are used to recall data to satisfy mount requests. During times of heavy mount activity it may be desirable to make all of the physical drives available for recall operations. If these periods of heavy mount activity are predictable, you can use the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule to inhibit reclaim operations for the heavy mount activity periods. You can add up to 14 entries to the schedule.

Five lists and a set of check boxes are used to set up an inhibit reclaim entry. The lists contain the following options:

- **Day of week**

Sunday through Saturday or Every day. If you select the **Every day** option, the **Start Time** and **Duration** you enter apply to every day of the week.

- **Start Time - Hour and Minute**

The start hour and minute for the inhibit. A 24-hour clock is used where 00 in the hour field means midnight.

- **Duration - Hours and Minutes**

The number of hours and minutes that the inhibit reclaim should remain in effect. You can specify up to 167 hours and 59 minutes (seven days minus one minute). Specifying the maximum essentially always inhibits reclaim.

- Check boxes to indicate the VTS to which to apply the schedule.

Add an entry to the inhibit reclaim schedule by selecting a day of week, a start time, and the duration. Then select the **Add** push button.

Delete an entry by highlighting it in the list box, then selecting the **Delete** push button.

The *Reclaim Threshold Percentage* identifies when a stacked volume is to be made available for reclamation. Each stacked volume has some amount of active data and some amount of inactive (no longer needed) data. If the percentage of active data is less than the percentage specified in this window, the stacked volume is available to go through reclamation. During the reclamation process all of the active data from the original stacked volume is moved to another stacked volume. After all active data is moved from the original stacked volume, it is set to scratch. This makes it available for reuse.

The Reclaim Threshold Percentage is set at 10% initially. We recommend that you start with this value and raise it slowly by 5% increments, as necessary. As a general rule, try not to exceed 30%–40%. It is better to add additional stacked volumes than to increase this value. The higher this number is, the longer it takes the VTS to reclaim a stacked volume because more data must be copied from one stacked volume to another stacked volume. The Active Data Distribution bar graph assists you in setting this number. See “VTS Active Data Distribution” on page 139 for information about displaying the window. The Reclaim Threshold Percentage can be set for all pools or, if the VTS is Advanced Policy Management capable, for each individual pool. To set the Reclaim Threshold Percentage, select a percentage from the pulldown next to the VTS. If the VTS is Advanced Policy Management capable, select the push button “VTS x - Assign Percentages” to bring up the VTS Management Policies (VTS x) window (shown in Figure 108 on page 195).

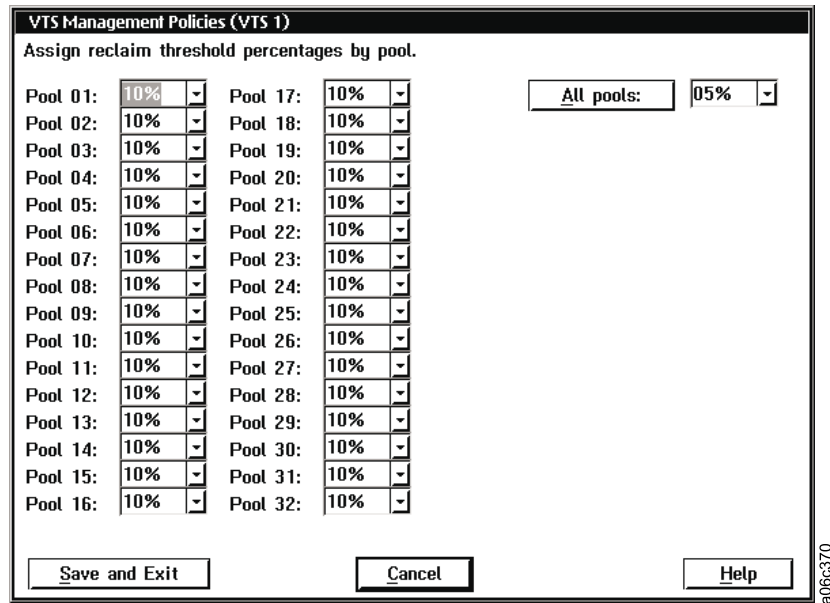


Figure 108. VTS Management Policies Window (by Pools)

The *Free Storage Threshold (GB)* provides a warning when the VTS is running low on free storage, the capacity of all the empty stacked volumes in the VTS. A threshold is provided for each VTS installed in the library and is entered in GB. The default value is 600 GB. The VTS Active Data window (Figure 74 on page 132) displays the Free Storage Threshold as the Free Storage Alarm Level. If the free storage drops below the threshold (alarm level), the Library Manager signals an intervention-required condition to notify you to add more stacked volumes.

The number of stacked volumes required to store the Free Storage Threshold GB specified in the VTS Management Policies window is dependent on the compression of data when writing from the tape volume cache to the stacked volume and the model of 3590 tape drive associated with the VTS (Model B1A or E1A). The B18, B10, and B20 VTSs with enhanced ESCON host attachments provide compression into the tape volume cache. Therefore, further compression when writing to the stacked volume is unlikely, and the capacity of a J media stacked volume is approximately 10 GB for 3590 Model B1A drives and 20 GB for 3590 Model E1A drives. The capacity for a K media stacked volume is approximately 20 GB for 3590 Model B1A drives and 40 GB for 3590 Model E1A drives. The earlier B16 VTS relied on the compression capability of the 3590 drives to store approximately 20 GB of tape volume cache data, assuming a compression ratio of 2:1.

Note: Very repetitive data may allow data compression to achieve greater stacked volume capacity.

Table 8 on page 196 provides examples of values for the Free Storage Threshold that result in an Intervention Required alarm when the number of scratch stacked volumes is less than required to contain the threshold free storage GB specified.

Table 8. Free Storage Threshold

Free Storage Threshold (GB) for J-Type Cartridges					
			Scratch Stacked Volumes		
VTs Model	3590 Tape Drive Model	Data Compression Feature	10	30	50
B16	B1A	not available	200 GB	600 GB	1000 GB
B18	B1A	none	200 GB	600 GB	1000 GB
B18	E1A	none	400 GB	1200 GB	2000 GB
B18	B1A	3200 or 3400	100 GB	300 GB	500 GB
B18	E1A	3200 or 3400	200 GB	600 GB	1000 GB
B10	B1A	included	100 GB	300 GB	500 GB
B10	E1A	included	200 GB	600 GB	1000 GB
B20	B1A	included	100 GB	300 GB	500 GB
B20	E1A	included	200 GB	600 GB	1000 GB

Note: For free storage threshold GB for K-type cartridges, multiply the values by two.

When only ten scratch stacked volumes are available, the VTS performance may be affected by reclamation, because the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule is ignored. Reclamation is necessary to provide stacked volumes for copying data from the tape volume cache. However, when more than 50 scratch stacked volumes are available, reclamation is non-invasive and occurs only when allowed by the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule. A balance of performance, excessive host messages, and additional cartridge expense may be achieved by using a Free Storage Threshold (GB) representative of 30 stacked volumes.

The VTS Management Policies window has the following push buttons:

<u>A</u>dd	Adds an entry to the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule.
<u>D</u>elete	Deletes an entry from the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule.
<u>S</u>ave	Closes the VTS Management Policies window and saves all the changes made to the Inhibit Reclaim Schedule, the Reclaim Threshold Percentage, and the Free Storage Threshold (GB).
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the VTS Management Policies window without saving any of the changes.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the VTS Management Policies window.

Manage Unassigned Volumes

The Manage Unassigned Volumes window (Figure 109 on page 197) opens automatically under the following conditions:

- When the 3494 is in Import mode
- When you have input volumes of J- or K-type media into the 3494 through the convenience I/O station

This window allows you to move Exported Stacked Volumes in the Unassigned category to the Import category. This is an essential step during a VTS Import operation. You can also move other physical volumes (J- and K-type) to the Insert

category or eject them. The Unassigned volumes are displayed in the list box titled **Unassigned**.

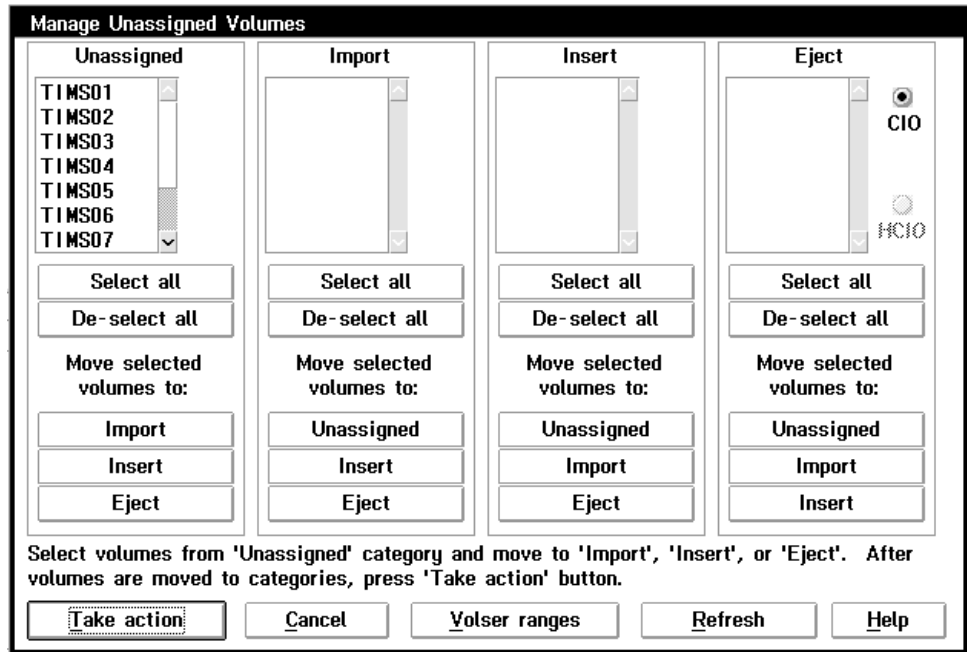


Figure 109. Manage Unassigned Volumes Window

The Manage Unassigned Volumes window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| Select all | Selects all volumes within the current list box. |
| De-select all | Deselects all volumes within the current list box. |
| Unassigned | Moves the selected volumes to the Unassigned category list box. |
| Import | Moves the selected volumes to the Import category list box. |
| Insert | Moves the selected volumes to the Insert category list box. |
| Eject | Moves the selected volumes to the Eject category list box. |
| Take action | Confirms and activates a request to move volumes to the selected category. |
| Cancel | Closes the Manage Unassigned Volumes window without saving any of the changes. |
| Volser ranges | Opens the Volser Ranges window (see Figure 103 on page 188). |
| Refresh | Refreshes the Manage Unassigned Volumes window. |
| Help | Provides help about the Manage Unassigned Volumes window. |

Note: Only 50 physical volumes are displayed. If more than 50 Unassigned volumes exist, then **–More–** is displayed at the bottom of the list box.

Manage Import Volumes

The Manage Import Volumes window (Figure 110) allows you to move physical volumes (J- and K-type) in the Import category to the Insert category. You can also eject the volumes from the 3494.

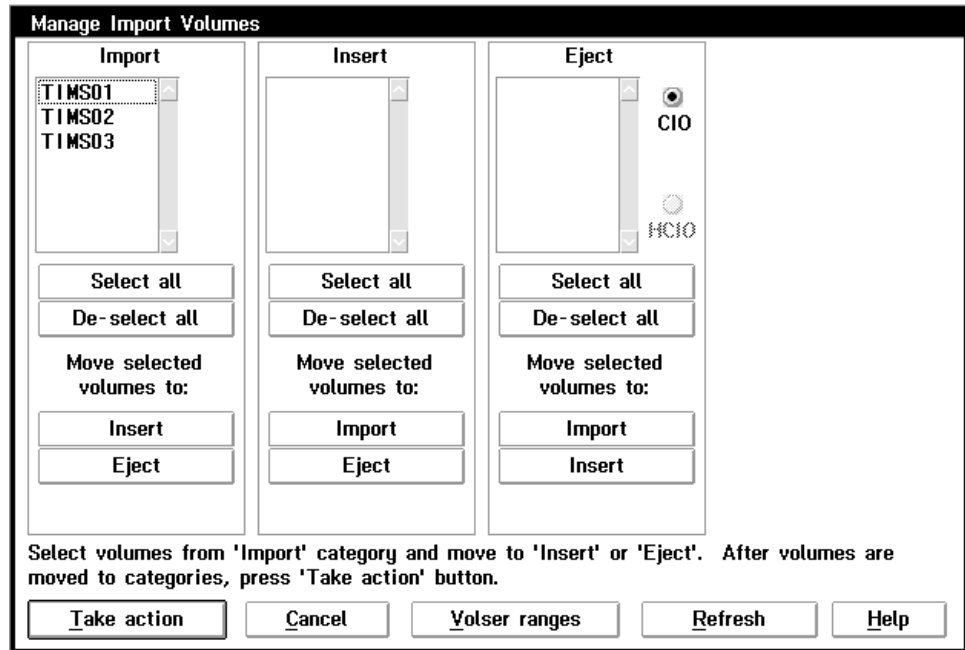


Figure 110. Manage Import Volumes Window

The Manage Import Volumes window has the following push buttons:

- Select all** Selects all volumes within the current list box.
- De-select all** Deselects all volumes within the current list box.
- Import** Moves the selected volumes to the Import category list box.
- Insert** Moves the selected volumes to the Insert category list box.
- Eject** Moves the selected volumes to the Eject category list box.
- Take action** Confirms and activates a request to move volumes to the selected category.
- Cancel** Closes the Manage Import Volumes window without saving any of the changes.
- Volser ranges** Opens the Volser Ranges window (see Figure 103 on page 188).
- Refresh** Refreshes the Manage Import Volumes window.
- Help** Provides help about the Manage Import Volumes window.

Note: Only 50 physical volumes are displayed. If more than 50 Import volumes exist, then **–More–** is displayed at the bottom of the list box.

Manage Insert Volumes

The Manage Insert Volumes window (Figure 111) allows you to reevaluate the physical volumes in the Insert category for 3590 native use. By redefining the volser ranges, you can move the volumes to the Insert categories for the VTSSs. You can also eject the volumes from the 3494.

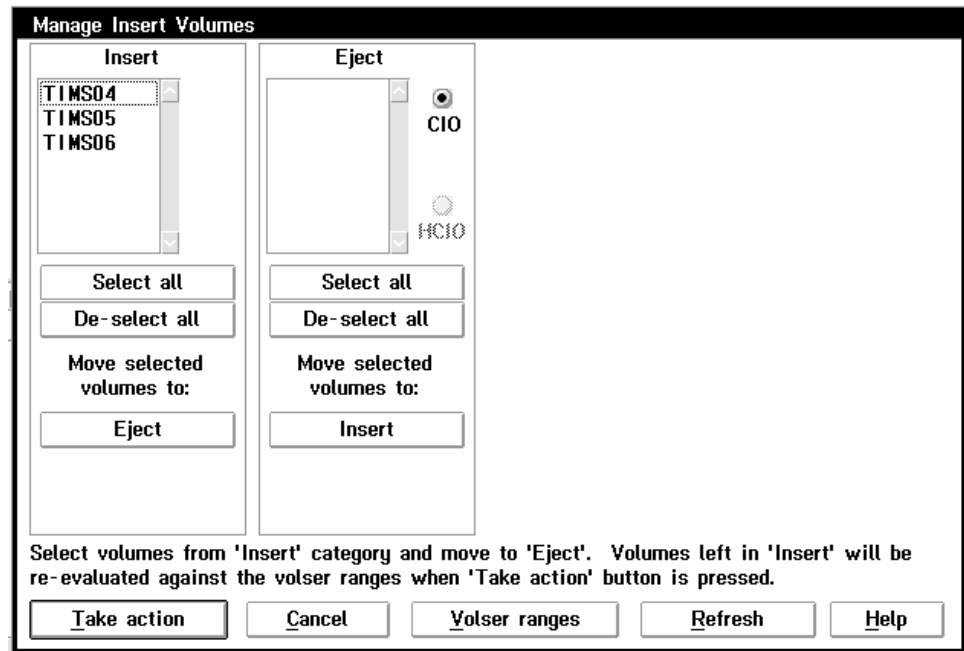


Figure 111. Manage Insert Volumes Window

The Manage Insert Volumes window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| Select all | Selects all volumes within the current list box. |
| De-select all | Deselects all volumes within the current list box. |
| Insert | Moves the selected volumes to the Insert category list box. |
| Eject | Moves the selected volumes to the Eject category list box. |
| Take action | Confirms and activates a request to move volumes to the selected category. |
| Cancel | Closes Manage Insert Volumes window without saving any of the changes. |
| Volser ranges | Opens the Volser Ranges window (see Figure 103 on page 188). |
| Refresh | Refreshes the Manage Insert Volumes window. |
| Help | Provides help about the Manage Insert Volumes window. |

Note: Only 50 physical volumes are displayed. If more than 50 Insert volumes exist, then **-More-** is displayed at the bottom of the list box.

Manage Export-Hold Volumes

The Manage Export-Hold Volumes window (Figure 112) allows you to move Exported Stacked Volumes in the Export-Hold category to the Import category. You can also eject the Exported Stacked Volumes from the 3494.

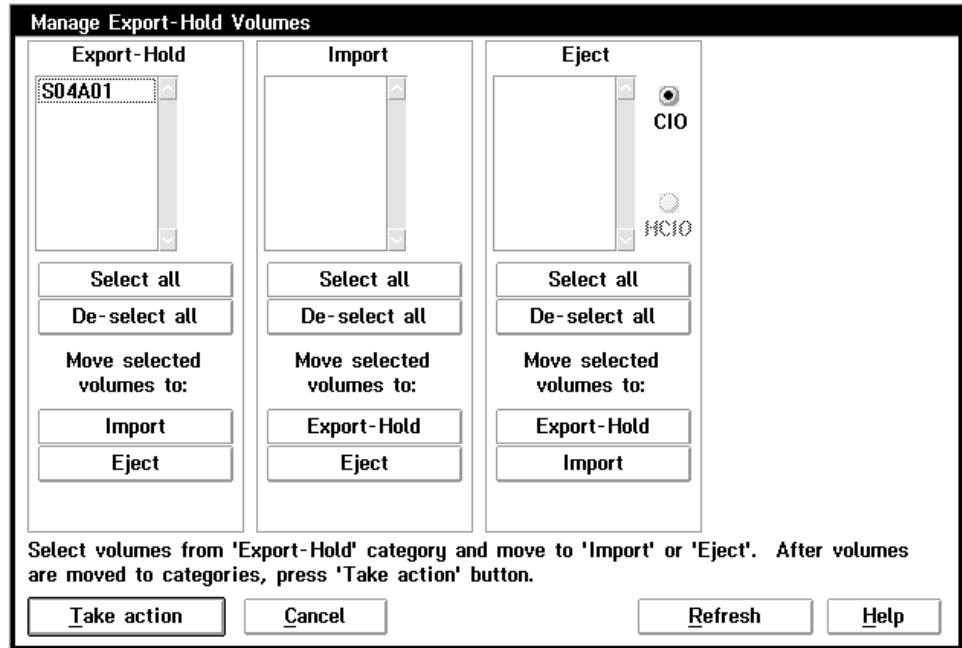


Figure 112. Manage Export-Hold Volumes Window

The Manage Export-Hold Volumes window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| Select all | Selects all volumes within the current list box. |
| De-select all | Deselects all volumes within the current list box. |
| Export-Hold | Moves the selected volumes to the Export-Hold category list box. |
| Import | Moves the selected volumes to the Import category list box. |
| Eject | Moves the selected volumes to the Eject category list box. |
| Take action | Confirms and activates a request to move volumes to the selected category. |
| Cancel | Closes the Manage Export-Hold Volumes window without saving any of the changes. |
| Refresh | Refreshes the Manage Export-Hold Volumes window. |
| Help | Provides help about the Manage Export-Hold Volumes window. |

Note: Only 50 physical volumes are displayed. If more than 50 Export-Hold volumes exist, then **–More–** is displayed at the bottom of the list box.

Cancel VTS Export/Import

The Cancel VTS Export/Import window (Figure 113) allows you to send a cancel request to the VTS for an in-progress Export or Import operation. The in-progress Export and Import operations are displayed in the list box. You can select only one operation at a time.

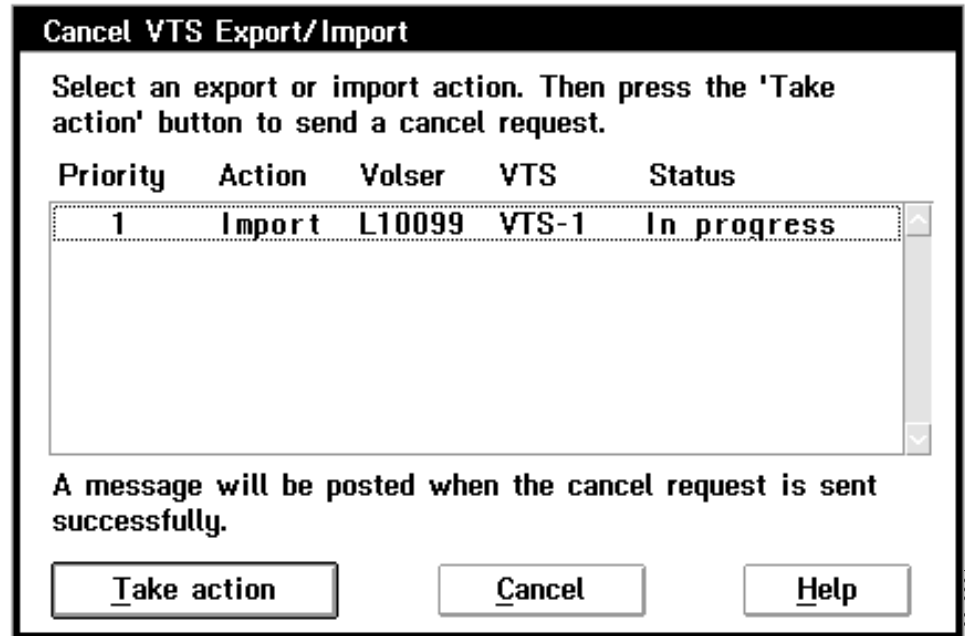


Figure 113. Cancel VTS Export/Import Window

The Cancel VTS Export/Import window has the following push buttons:

- Take action** Sends the cancel request for the highlighted Export or Import operation.
- Cancel** Closes the Cancel VTS Export/Import window. No action is taken.
- Help** Provides help about the Cancel VTS Export/Import window.

Manage Constructs and Pools

The Manage Constructs and Pools window (Figure 114 on page 202) provides access to multiple panels that allow you to manage the storage management constructs and stacked volume pool properties, move/eject stacked volumes, manage logical volumes, and transfer LM administrative data. To access a management function, use the mouse or keyboard to select a panel from the list box. Select the **Open panel** button.

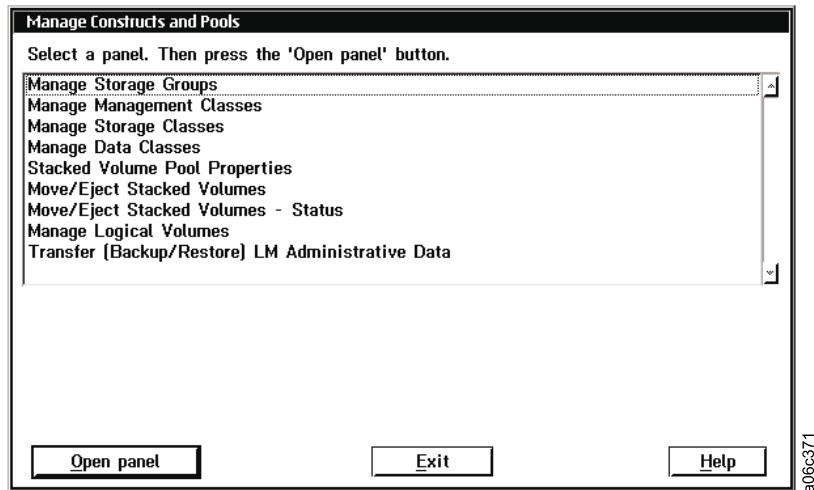


Figure 114. Manage Constructs and Pools

Open panel

Select a panel from the listbox. Then, select this button to open the panel.

Exit

Closes the Manage Constructs and Pools window.

Help

Provides help about the Manage Constructs and Pools window.

Manage Storage Groups

The Manage Storage Groups Window (Figure 115) allows you to view and manage storage groups. The following actions can be performed:

- Add a storage group
- Modify an existing storage group
- Delete a storage group

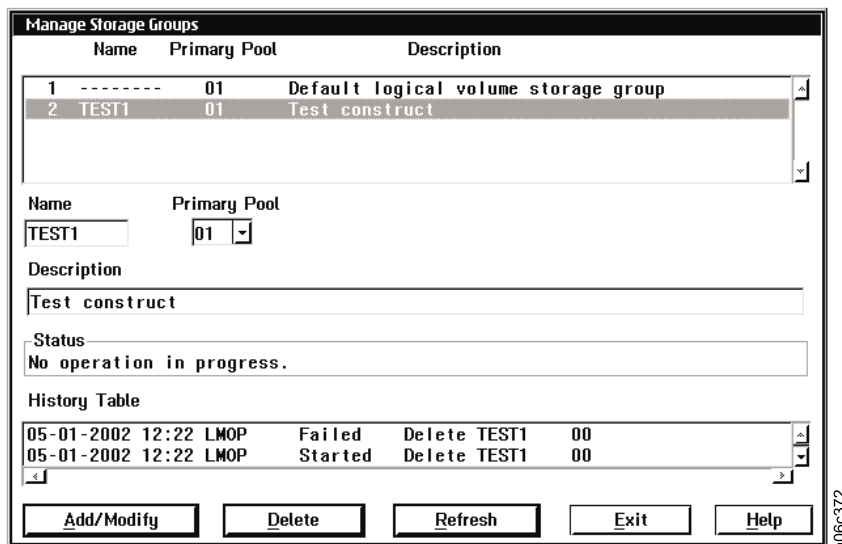


Figure 115. Manage Storage Groups Window

To add a storage group, enter a one to eight-character alphanumeric name in the **Name** field. The name must be unique within the storage group construct names. Select a primary pool and enter a short description in the **Description** field. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To modify a storage group, select from the list of current storage groups presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the storage group you want to modify. Make modifications to the primary pool and/or description. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To delete a storage group, select from the list of current storage groups presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the storage group you want to delete. Select the **Delete** button.

Notes:

1. The default storage group, identified by eight dashes (-----), cannot be deleted.
2. Up to 256 storage groups, including the default, can be defined.

Add/Modify

Adds the entered storage group or modifies the selected storage group.

Delete

Deletes the selected storage group.

Refresh

Refreshes the Manage Storage Groups window.

Exit

Closes the Manage Storage Groups window.

Help

Provides help about the Manage Storage Groups window.

Manage Management Classes

The Manage Management Classes window (Figure 116 on page 204) allows you to view and manage management classes. The following actions can be performed:

- Add a management class
- Modify an existing management class
- Delete a management class

Name	Secondary Pool	PTP Copy Control	Description	
1	-----	00	AX0 defined	Default management class

Name:

Secondary Pool:

PTP Copy Control:

Description:

Status:

History Table:

Buttons: Add/Modify, Delete, Refresh, Exit, Help

a06c373

Figure 116. Manage Management Classes Window

To add a management class, do the following:

1. Enter a one to eight-character alphanumeric name in the **Name** field. The name must be unique within the management class construct names.
2. Select a Secondary Pool. If "0" is selected, a secondary copy will not be made.
3. Specify the **Peer-to-Peer Copy Control**. If **Immediate** is selected, the copy is made at the same time as the first copy. If **Deferred** is selected, the copy is made at a time after the first copy is made. If **AX0 Defined** is selected, the setting is defined by the AX0 .
4. Enter a short description in the **Description** field.
5. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To modify a management class, select from the list of current management classes presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the management class you want to modify. Make modifications to the secondary pool, PtP copy control, and/or description. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To delete a management class, select from the list of current management classes presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the management class you want to delete. Select the **Delete** button.

Notes:

1. The default management class, identified by eight dashes (-----), cannot be deleted.
2. Up to 256 management classes, including the default, can be defined.

Add/Modify

Adds the entered management class or modifies the selected management class.

Delete Deletes the selected management class.

Refresh

Refreshes the Manage Management Class window.

Exit Closes the Manage Management Class window.

Help Provides help about the Manage Management Class window.

Manage Storage Classes

The Manage Storage Classes window (Figure 117) allows you to view and manage storage classes. The following actions can be performed:

- Add a storage class
- Modify an existing storage class
- Delete a storage class

Name	TVC Preference	Description
1	-----	Use IART
Default storage class		

Name:

TVC Preference:

Description:

Status:

History Table:

a06c374

Figure 117. Manage Storage Classes Window

To add a storage class, do the following:

1. Enter a one to eight-character alphanumeric name in the **Name** field. The name must be unique within the storage class construct names.
2. Specify the **Tape Volume Cache Preference**. If **Use IART** is selected, the Initial Access Response Time (IART) method specified by the host to the VTS is used. If **0** is selected, volumes are removed from the tape volume cached (TVC) as soon as they are copied to tape. If **1** is selected, copied volumes are the first to be removed from TVC when space is needed in the TVC.
3. Enter a short description in the **Description** field.
4. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To modify a storage class, select from the list of current storage classes presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the storage class you want to modify. Modify the TVC preference and/or description. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To delete a storage class, select from the list of current storage classes presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the storage class you want to delete. Select the **Delete** button.

Notes:

1. The default storage class, identified by eight dashes (-----), cannot be deleted.
2. Up to 256 storage classes, including the default, can be defined.

Add/Modify

Adds the entered storage class or modifies the selected storage class.

Delete Deletes the selected storage class.

Refresh

Refreshes the Manage Storage Class window..

Exit Closes the Manage Storage Class window.

Help Provides help about the Manage Storage Class window.

Manage Data Classes

The Manage Data Classes window (Figure 118) allows you to view and manage data classes. The following actions can be performed:

- Add a data class
- Modify an existing data class
- Delete a data class

Note: The Data Class does not have any associated actions at this time.

Manage Data Classes

Name	Description
1	Default data class

Name
[]

Description
[]

Status
No operation in progress.

History Table
[]

Add/Modify Delete Refresh Exit Help

a06c375

Figure 118. Manage Data Classes Window

To add a data class, do the following:

1. Enter an eight-character alphanumeric name in the **Name** field. The name must be unique within the data class construct names.
2. Enter a short description in the **Description** field.
3. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To modify a data class, select from the list of current data classes presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the data class you want to modify. Modify the description. Select the **Add/Modify** button.

To delete a data class, select from the list of current data classes presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the data class you want to delete. Select the **Delete** button.

Notes:

1. The default data class, identified by eight dashes (-----), cannot be deleted.
2. Up to 256 data classes, including the default, can be defined.

Add/Modify

Adds the entered data class or modifies the selected data class.

Delete Deletes the selected data class.

Refresh

Refreshes the Manage Data Classes window.

Exit Closes the Manage Data Classes window.

Help Provides help about the Manage Data Classes window.

Stacked Volume Pool Properties

The Stacked Volume Pool Properties window (Figure 119) allows you to modify stacked volume pool properties. The storage pool properties define whether a pool can borrow/take from the Common Scratch Pool, and if so, what type of media it can borrow/take and what media type to borrow/take first and second. Storage pool properties can be set for general use pools 1 through 32. Pool properties are set separately for each VTS.

Pool	Borrow Ind	1st Media	2nd Media	Reclaim Pool	Number Drives
01	Return	Any	None	01	Max
02	Return	Any	None	02	Max
03	Return	Any	None	03	Max

Pool Properties for VTS 1

Pool	Borrow Ind	1st Media	2nd Media	Reclaim Pool	Number Drives
01	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Return <input type="radio"/> Keep <input type="radio"/> No Borrowing	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> J <input type="radio"/> K	<input type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> J <input type="radio"/> K	01	Max

Status: No operation in progress.

History Table

Modify pool Refresh Exit Help

Figure 119. Stacked Volume Pool Properties Window

To modify pool properties, do the following:

1. Select VTS 1 or 2.
2. Select from the list of current stacked volume pools presented in the list box. Use the mouse or keyboard to highlight the stacked volume pool you want to modify.
3. In the Pool Properties for VTS section, modify the fields as needed.

Borrow Ind

The setting that defines if the pool borrows or takes from the common scratch pool (Pool 00)

Borrow, Keep

Borrows from the Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00) and does not return it

Borrow, Return

Borrows from the Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00) and returns it later

No Borrow, Keep

Does not borrow from the Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00), does not return existing cartridges

No Borrow, Return

Does not borrow from the Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00), returns existing cartridges later

1st Media

The setting that indicates the primary media type that the pool can borrow/take from the Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00)

Any No preference

J High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)

K Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)

2nd Media

The setting that indicates the secondary media type that the pool can borrow/take from the Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00)

None The only media type that the pool can borrow/take is defined by the 1st Media selection.

J High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)

K Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)

Reclaim Pool

The pool that physical volumes are assigned to when they are reclaimed by the VTS.

Number Drives

The maximum number of devices used to migrate data. Allows control of pre-migration tapes.

4. Select the **Modify pool** button

Modify pool

Modifies the selected storage pool's properties.

Refresh

Refreshes the Stacked Volume Pool Properties window.

Exit

Closes the Stacked Volume Pool Properties window.

Help

Provides help about the Stacked Volume Pool Properties window.

Move/Eject Stacked Volumes

The Move/Eject Stacked Volumes window (Figure 120 on page 209) allows you to move and eject stacked volumes. The VTS must be at code level 2.26.1.0 or higher and the Library Manager must be at code level 527 or higher to perform this function. The following action can be performed:

- Move a range of volumes to another pool
- Move a range of scratch only volumes to another pool
- Move a quantity of scratch only volumes to another pool
- Move data off stacked volumes
- Eject a range of volumes
- Eject a range of scratch only volumes
- Eject a quantity of scratch only volumes
- Cancel active move requests

- Cancel active eject requests

Figure 120. Move Stacked Volumes Window

Figure 121. Eject Stacked Volumes Window

The following requests can be completed for VTS 1 or VTS 2 (if installed). Select either one in the **Select a VTS:** option.

To move a range of volumes to another pool:

1. Select **Move range of stacked volumes**.
2. In the Request-specific entries, do the following:
 - a. Select **Scratch and Private**.
 - b. Define the volser range in the **Begin range** and **End range** fields or select a range using the **Ranges** pulldown.
 - c. Select the pool where the volumes will be moved to in the **Target Pool** pulldown.

- d. Select the media type for the request in the **Media** pulldown.
 - **Any:** Indicates that either J or K media types can be moved/ejected
 - **J:** Indicates the default is the High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)
 - **K:** Indicates the default is the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)
 - e. Select either **Priority** or **Deferred**. A priority move request is forced to the top of the queue so it is performed immediately. A deferred move request occurs as part of the normal reclaim function.
 - f. If **Priority** was selected, checking the **Honor Inhibit Reclaim Schedule** prevents requests from being performed during the times inhibited by the reclaim schedule.
3. Select the **Send Request** push button.

To move a range of scratch only volumes to another pool:

1. Select **Move range of stacked volumes**.
2. In the Request-specific entries, do the following:
 - a. Select **Scratch**.
 - b. Define the volser range in the **Begin range** and **End range** fields or select a range using the **Ranges** pulldown.
 - c. Select the pool where the volumes will be moved to in the **Target Pool** pulldown.
 - d. Select the media type for the request in the **Media** pulldown.
 - **Any:** Indicates that either J or K media types can be moved/ejected
 - **J:** Indicates the default is the High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)
 - **K:** Indicates the default is the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)
3. Select the **Send Request** push button.

To move a quantity of scratch only volumes to another pool:

1. Select **Move number of stacked volumes**.
2. In the Request-specific entries, do the following:
 - a. Specify the number of volumes to move in the **Number of vols:** field.
 - b. Select the pool where the volumes will be taken from in the **Source Pool** pulldown.
 - c. Select the pool where the volumes will be moved to in the **Target Pool** pulldown.
 - d. Select the media type for the request in the **Media** pulldown.
 - **Any:** Indicates that either J or K media types can be moved/ejected
 - **J:** Indicates the default is the High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)
 - **K:** Indicates the default is the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)
3. Select the **Send Request** push button.

To move data off stacked volumes:

1. Select **Move data off stacked volumes**.
2. In the Request-specific entries, do the following:
 - a. Define the volser range in the **Begin range** and **End range** fields or select a range using the **Ranges** pulldown.

- b. Select the pool where the data will be moved to in the **Target Pool** pulldown.
 - c. Select the media type for the request in the **Media** pulldown.
 - **Any:** Indicates that either J or K media types can be moved/ejected
 - **J:** Indicates the default is the High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)
 - **K:** Indicates the default is the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)
 - d. Select either **Priority** or **Deferred**. A priority move request is forced to the top of the queue so it is performed immediately. A deferred move request occurs as part of the normal reclaim function.
 - e. If **Priority** was selected, checking the **Honor Inhibit Reclaim Schedule** prevents requests from being performed during the times inhibited by the reclaim schedule.
3. Select the **Send Request** push button.

To eject a range of volumes:

1. Select **Eject range of stacked volumes**.
2. In the Request-specific entries, do the following:
 - a. Select **Scratch and Private**.
 - b. Define the volser range in the **Begin range** and **End range** fields or select a range using the **Ranges** pulldown.
 - c. Select the media type for the request in the **Media** pulldown.
 - **Any:** Indicates that either J or K media types can be moved/ejected
 - **J:** Indicates the default is the High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)
 - **K:** Indicates the default is the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)
 - d. Select either **Priority** or **Deferred**. A priority eject request is forced to the top of the queue so it is performed immediately. A deferred eject request occurs as part of the normal reclaim function.
 - e. If **Priority** was selected, checking the **Honor Inhibit Reclaim Schedule** prevents requests from being performed during the times inhibited by the reclaim schedule.
3. Select the **Send Request** push button.

To eject a range of scratch only volumes:

1. Select **Eject range of stacked volumes**.
2. In the Request-specific entries, do the following:
 - a. Select **Scratch**.
 - b. Define the volser range in the **Begin range** and **End range** fields or select a range using the **Ranges** pulldown.
 - c. Select the media type for the request in the **Media** pulldown.
 - **Any:** Indicates that either J or K media types can be moved/ejected
 - **J:** Indicates the default is the High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)
 - **K:** Indicates the default is the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)
 - d. Select where the cartridges will be ejected to by clicking the radio button next to **CIO** Convenience I/O or **HCIO** High Capacity I/O Facility (if installed).
3. Select the **Send Request** push button.

To eject a quantity of scratch only volumes:

1. Select **Eject number of stacked volumes**.
2. In the Request-specific entries, do the following:
 - a. Specify the number of volumes to eject in the **Number of vols:** field.
 - b. Select the pool where the volumes will be ejected from in the **Source Pool** pulldown.
 - c. Select the media type for the request in the **Media** pulldown.
 - **Any:** Indicates that either J or K media types can be moved/ejected
 - **J:** Indicates the default is the High Performance Cartridge Tape (HPCT)
 - **K:** Indicates the default is the Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (EHPCT)
 - d. Select where the cartridges will be ejected to by clicking the radio button next to **CIO** Convenience I/O or **HCIO** High Capacity I/O Facility (if installed).
3. Select the **Send Request** push button.

To cancel active move/eject requests:

1. Select **Cancel Active Move Requests** or **Cancel Active Eject Requests**.
2. Select an option in the Target Pool dropdown list.
 - To cancel actions for a specific pool, select the pool.
 - To cancel actions for all pools, select "All Pools".
3. Specify the cancellation of either **Priority**, **Deferred**, or **All** Requests.

Send Request

Sends the move/eject request.

Status Opens the Move/Eject Stacked Volumes — Status window.

Refresh

Refreshes the Move/Eject Stacked Volumes window.

Exit Closes the Move/Eject Stacked Volumes window.

Help Provides help about the Move/Eject Stacked Volumes window.

Move/Eject Stacked Volumes (Status)

This screen allows you to view the status of move/eject requests for the VTS.

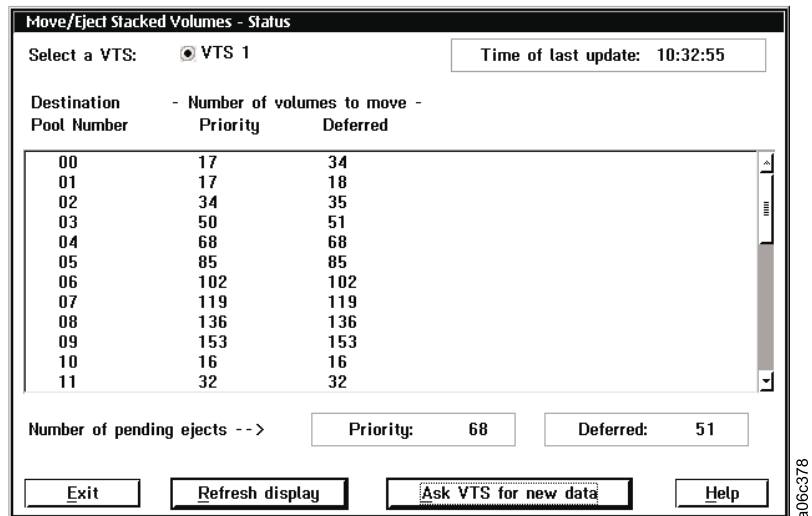


Figure 122. Move/Eject Stacked Volume (Status)

The table displays the following information:

Destination Pool Number

The storage pool where the range of volumes specified in the request are being moved.

Number of volumes to move — Priority

The number of active priority move requests. A priority move request is a request that is forced to the top of the queue, so that it gets completed immediately.

Number of volumes to move — Deferred

The number of active deferred move requests. A deferred move is a request where the move occurs as part of the normal reclaim function.

The number of pending ejects are separated into two categories:

Priority

The number of active priority eject requests. A priority eject request is a request that is forced to the top of the queue, so that it gets completed immediately.

Deferred

The number of active deferred eject requests. A deferred eject request is a request where the eject occurs as part of the normal reclaim function.

Exit Closes the Move/Eject Stacked Volumes (Status) window.

Refresh display

Refreshes the data on the Move/Eject Stacked Volumes (Status) window. Check the **Time of last update** to determine if the data is current.

Ask VTS for new data

Sends a request for new data to all VTSs that are Advanced Policy Management Capable. The panel data is refreshed automatically after the VTS responds to the request.

Help Provides help about the Move/Eject Stacked Volumes (Status) window.

Manage Logical Volumes

Note: In a PtP VTS configuration, the insertion of logical volumes is controlled only from the User Interface distributed library.

The Manage Logical Volumes window (Figure 123 on page 215) allows two operations — the insertion of logical volumes into a VTS and/or changing the construct names of existing logical volumes. With the latest Library Manager code, a total of 500 000 logical volumes (with a maximum of 250 000 volumes per VTS) can be inserted into the 3494. With previous versions of the code, up to 50 000 logical volumes can be inserted. For information on determining the code level you have, see “Using the Help Window” on page 103.

Volsers must be six characters in length and must be unique within a physical library. A logical volume’s volser cannot match another logical or physical volume’s volser. If a duplicate volser is encountered, the duplicate is not inserted.

To insert logical volumes, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Insert new logical volumes** radio button.
2. Enter a volser or range of volsers to be inserted into the 3494.
3. Select the cartridge type to be emulated.
4. Select management constructs in the dropdown lists beneath Storage Group, Storage Class, Management Class, and Data Class. Select Default or one of the existing constructs. For MVS attached systems, select Default for all four constructs.
5. Select the VTS library into which the volumes are to be inserted.
6. Select the **Perform action** push button.

To change the construct names of existing logical volumes, perform the following steps:

Note: If the host is an MVS host, do not change construct names of existing logical volumes. The host will overwrite the selected names.

1. Select the **Change existing logical volumes** radio button.
2. Enter a volser or range of volsers to be changed.
3. Select management constructs in the dropdown lists beneath Storage Group, Storage Class, Management Class, and Data Class. Select Default or one of the 8-character constructs.
4. Select the VTS library which volumes are to be changed.
5. Select the **Perform action** push button.

The Manage Logical Volumes window has the following controls:

Volser Range entry fields

The volser entry fields must contain six alphanumeric characters. The two volsers must be entered in the same format. Corresponding characters in each volser must both be either alphabetic or both be numeric. For example, AAA998 and AAB004 are of the same form, but AA9998 and AAB004 are not.

The volser is increased such that alphabetic characters are increased alphabetically, and numeric characters are increased numerically. For

example, volser range ABC000–ABD999 would result in 2,000 volsers (ABC000–ABC999 and ABD000–ABD999).

Emulation buttons

These buttons allow you to select the type of physical cartridge the logical volume will emulate. The options are Cartridge System Tape (CST) or Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape (ECCST).

Storage Management Construct dropdowns

These dropdown lists allow you to select the storage group, management class, storage class, and/or data class that the volser(s) should be assigned to.

Note: The default constructs are indicated by eight dashes (-----).

VTs Library buttons

These buttons allow you to select the VTS into which the logical volumes will be inserted. Buttons are displayed only for the number of VTs installed.

VTs	Lib Seq Num	Inserted	Max Allowed	Available
<input checked="" type="radio"/> VTS 1	11111	510	150000	149490
<input type="radio"/> VTS 2	22222	1023	250000	248977
Totals ->		1533	400000	398467

Figure 123. Manage Logical Volumes Window

The Manage Logical Volumes window has the following push buttons:

Perform action

Initiates the Insert Logical Volumes operation or Change Existing Logical Volumes operation. The number of volumes that are to be inserted is displayed for you to confirm. Select **Yes** to proceed with the Insert operation or **No** to cancel the Insert operation.

A check is made to ensure that the total number of logical volumes for the 3494 does not exceed the maximum allowable number. If the Insert operation would result in more than the maximum allowable number of logical volumes in the 3494, an error message is displayed, and the Insert operation is canceled.

When multiple VTSs are in the 3494, logical volumes may be assigned to each VTS in any quantity, providing that the total for all logical volumes does not exceed the maximum allowable for the 3494.

During the Insert operation, the line status indicates the progress of the Insert operation.

<u>C</u>ancel action	Closes the Manage Logical Volumes window.
<u>R</u>efresh	Refreshes the Manage Logical Volumes window.
<u>E</u>xit	Closes the Manage Logical Volumes window.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Manage Logical Volumes window.

Transfer LM Administrative Data

The Transfer LM Administrative Data window allows you to backup or restore Library and/or VTS data.

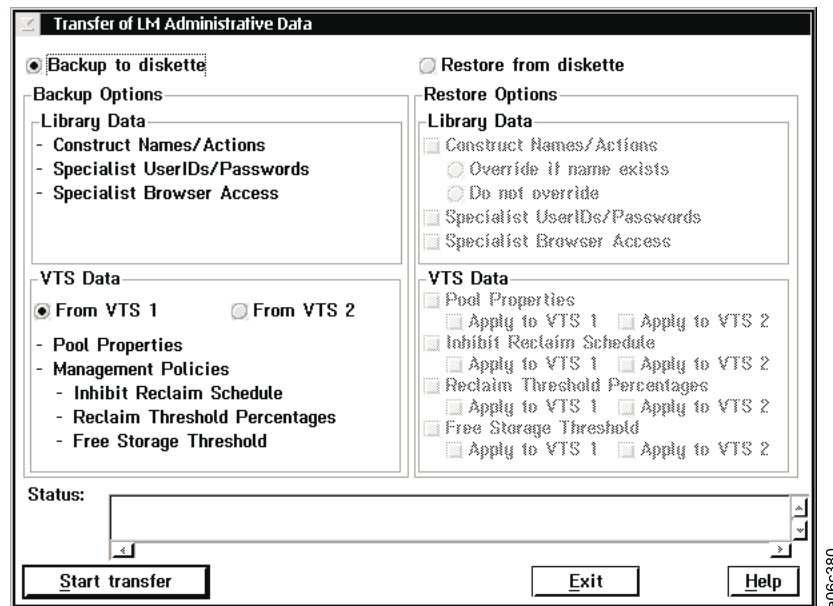


Figure 124. Transfer LM Administrative Data Window — Backup to Diskette

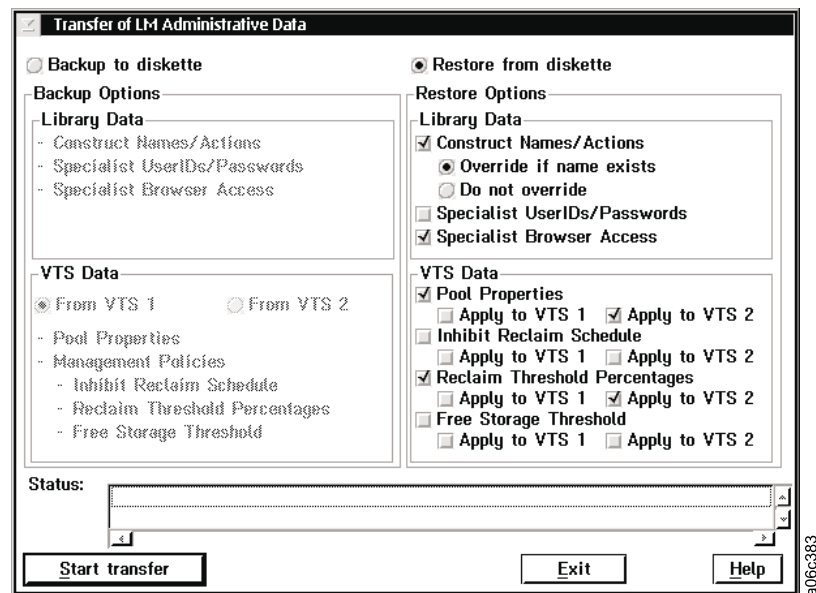


Figure 125. Transfer LM Administrative Data Window — Restore from Diskette

To backup the current LM administrative data to diskette, insert a blank, formatted diskette in the A: drive. Select the **Backup to diskette** radio button. Select **From VTS 1** or **From VTS 2** and then select the **Start Transfer** button.

To restore LM administrative data from a diskette, insert the diskette containing the data into the A: drive. Select the **Restore from diskette** radio button. Select the data you would like to restore and then select the **Start Transfer** button.

The data options are as follows:

- **Library Data**
 - **Construct Names/Actions:** On restore, non-existent construct names/actions are added up to the maximum construct names allowed. Select **Override if name exists** to copy over existing construct names/actions with the new ones on the diskette. Select **Do not override** to ignore existing construct names/actions on the diskette and keep the existing construct names/actions.
 - **Specialist Userids/Passwords:** All existing userids/passwords are replaced. Non-existent userids/passwords are added.
 - **Specialist Browser Access:** Replaces existing capabilities. This sets the Web access for Specialist-related pages.
- **VTs Data** — The following options can be applied to either VTS 1 or VTS 2 (if installed) for backups, and can be applied to either VTS 1, VTS 2 (if installed), or both for restores.
 - **Pool Properties:** The pool properties can be applied to any VTS in the library regardless of whether it has Advanced Policy Management FC 4001 installed. If a VTS does not support Advanced Policy Management, the pool properties applied will have no effect.
 - **Inhibit Reclaim Schedule:** The inhibit reclaim schedule is backed up. During restore, the schedule is applied based on the number of VTs in the library. The existing schedule is replaced.
 - **Reclaim Threshold Percentages:** The reclaim threshold percentages can be applied to any VTS in the library regardless of whether it has Advanced Policy Management FC 4001 installed. If a VTS does not support Advanced Policy Management, the reclaim threshold percentage for pool 01 is used.
 - **Free Storage Threshold:** The free storage threshold can be backed up and/or restored.

Inventory

The **Inventory** option allows the following operations:

- Inventory new storage or re-inventory complete system
- Disable inventory update
- Enable inventory update
- Perform inventory update (full)
- Perform inventory update (partial)

Inventory New Storage or Re-inventory Complete System

The system administrator password typically protects these options. The 3494 can perform the inventory process only under the following conditions:

- The Library Manager is offline and in Auto mode.
- The Teach process is completed.
- The cleaner volume masks are set (see “Cleaner Volume Masks” on page 223).
- The volser ranges are set (see “Set the Volser Range” on page 223).

Select a type of inventory as follows:

- Inventory new storage (at subsystem installation time)

Note: Selecting inventory new storage causes the 3494 to eject any cartridges with unreadable external labels.

- Re-inventory the complete system (at any time)

Notes:

1. If VTSs are installed, see “Re-inventory with VTSs” on page 226.
2. If you select the **Re-inventory Complete System** option and there are VTS Import or Export Stacked Volumes in the Unassigned, Import, or Export-Hold categories, then the Display VTS Export/Import Volumes window (Figure 126 on page 220) opens. You cannot continue with the re-inventory until you eject the Export and Import volumes. The re-inventory is blocked to prevent the possible destruction of important exported data. You should exit this window, then select the appropriate windows under the Commands window under **System Management** in the LM Operator window and eject the indicated volumes. When you have ejected all Export and Import volumes from the 3494, you can then select the **Re-inventory Complete System** option and continue.

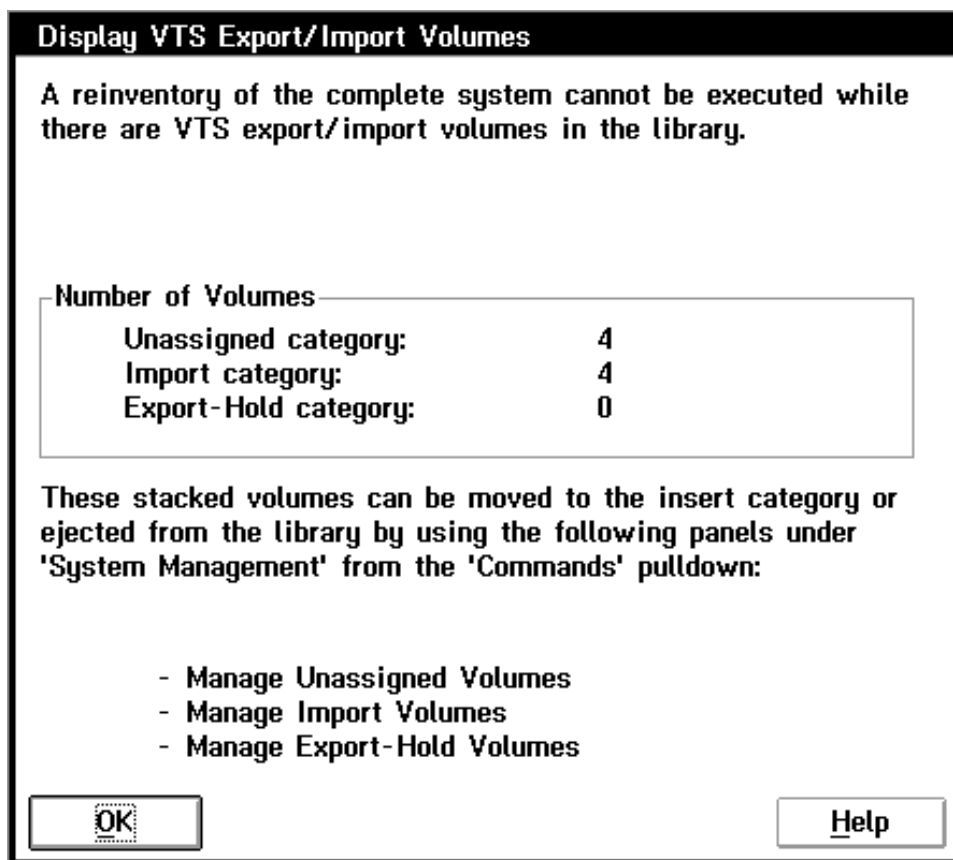


Figure 126. Display VTS Export/Import Volumes Window

Save Logical Volumes

When you request a complete inventory and the 3494 contains a VTS, the 3494 prompts you to save the logical volumes (see Figure 127 on page 221). Answering **Yes** saves the logical volumes. You do not need to reinsert them after the inventory completes. Answering **No** erases all the logical volumes. You must reinsert the logical volumes after the inventory completes.

Attention: If the library includes a VTS that is part of a PtP VTS configuration, you must save the logical volumes. This ensures that the logical volume databases will remain equal on the distributed libraries of the PtP VTS.

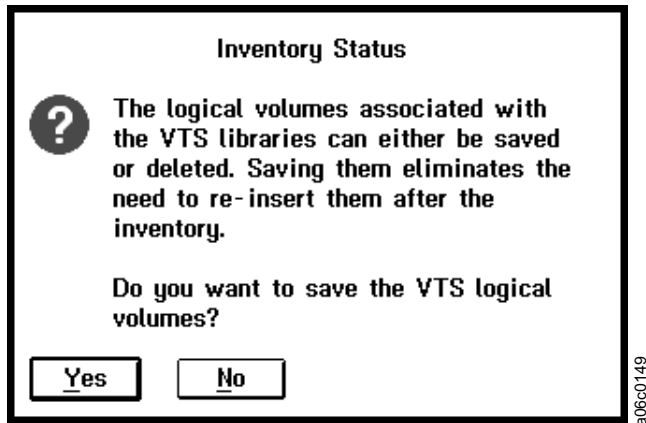


Figure 127. Save Logical Volumes Window

Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information

The Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information window (Figure 128 on page 222) opens before the start of an Inventory operation. This allows you to save the VTS logical volumes and physical volume information stored in the Library Manager database. This save operation has the following benefits:

- When you save the VTS logical volumes, you do not have to reinsert them later. This also preserves the category information in the database.
- When you save the physical volume information, you also preserve the category information in the database.

If the database contains physical volume information, this window contains two radio buttons for the non-VTS partition:

- Save physical volume information
- Don't save physical volume information

If the database contains both physical and logical volume information, this window contains three radio buttons for the VTS partitions:

- Save logical volumes and physical volume information
- Save logical volumes only
- Don't save any volumes or volume information

The Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information window has the following control:

Buttons for each partition These buttons allow you to select the Save or Don't Save action you want the 3494 to perform. Buttons are available only for the number of VTSs installed.

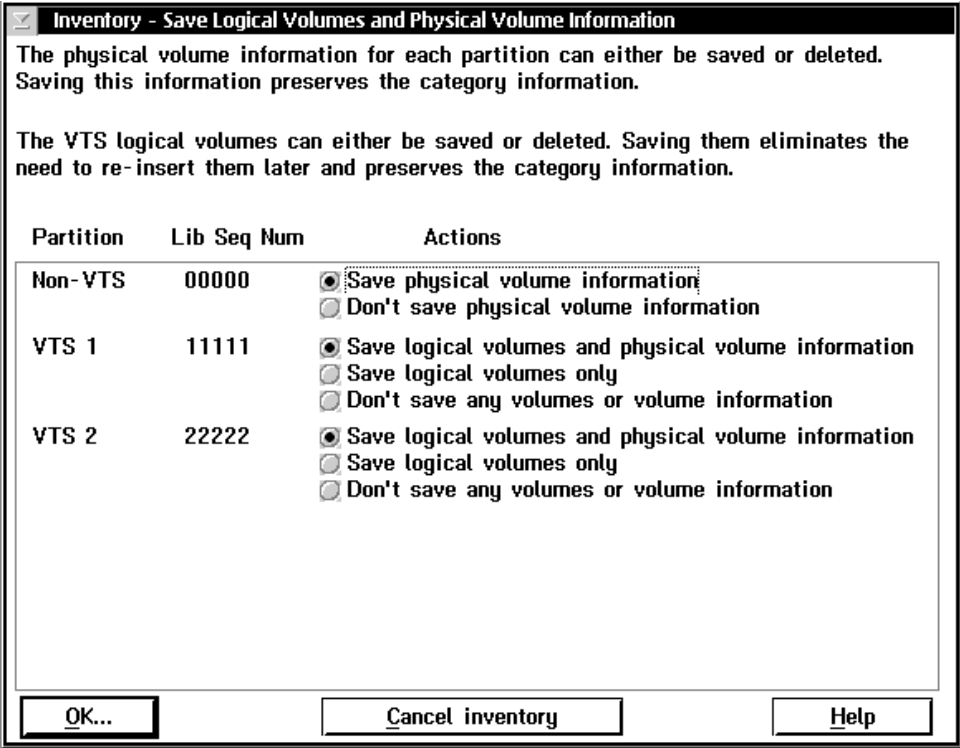


Figure 128. Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information Window

The Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information window has the following push buttons:

- OK...** Accepts the options selected with the radio buttons and continues with preparations for the Inventory operation.
- Cancel inventory** Cancels the Inventory operation and closes the Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information window.
- Help** Provides help about the Inventory - Save Logical Volumes and Physical Volume Information window.

Set the Volser Range

When selecting a type of inventory, the Volser Ranges window (Figure 129) opens to allow you to set the volser ranges.

The screenshot shows the 'Volser Ranges' window. It contains a table with the following data:

From	To	Media type	Partition	Lib Seq Num	Home Pool
\$10000	\$10063	J - HPCT	VTs-1	11111	00
\$20001	\$20180	J - HPCT	VTs-2	22222	00

Below the table, there are input fields for 'From:', 'To:', and 'Home Pool' (set to '00 (CSP)'). There are also buttons for 'Total volsers in range' and 'Volser in range?'. A section for 'Media type', 'Partition', and 'Lib Seq Num' shows a list with three items: 'I - CST non-VTS 12345', 'E - ECCST non-VTS 12345', and 'J - HPCT non-VTS 12345'. To the right of this list are buttons for 'Add/Modify' and 'Delete'. A 'Status' section shows 'No operation in progress.' Below that is a 'History Table' which is currently empty. At the bottom are buttons for 'Refresh', 'Cancel', and 'Help'. A vertical text 'a06c367' is visible on the right side of the window.

Figure 129. Inventory - Volser Ranges Window

This window is similar to the Volser Ranges window selectable in the Commands window (Figure 103 on page 188). The only difference is the addition of the **Start Inventory...** push button. Select this push button after reviewing or modifying the volser ranges. Selecting the **Start Inventory...** push button allows the inventory process to continue. Selecting the **Cancel inventory** push button cancels the inventory process.

Cleaner Volume Masks

When selecting a type of inventory, an option to set the cleaner volume masks is displayed. You must set at least one of the masks (for example, CLN***). The CLN prefix is not a requirement. You can use any valid volser. The Inventory - Cleaner Masks window (Figure 130 on page 224) allows you to set the cleaner volume masks.

The cleaner volume masks are external labels with patterns of characters used to identify the volumes that are cleaner cartridges. The cleaner volume masks allow for identification of cleaning cartridges that either are put into the 3494 through an input station or are identified during an inventory operation. When identified, cleaner volumes are assigned to a cleaner volume category.

The Inventory - Cleaner Masks window allows the entry of up to ten cleaner masks. If this is the first time the masks are displayed, the first mask is set to a default value of CLN***, and the other nine masks are set to blanks. If this is not the first time the masks are displayed, whatever was entered last is displayed. You can use the asterisk (*) in the mask. It is interpreted as a wild card character (any valid character). When the masks are set, the 3494 considers any volser labels that match any of the masks to be cleaner volumes.

Inventory - Cleaner Masks

Verify cleaner cartridge masks and change if required.

At least one mask must be specified. A mask must contain 6 characters. Use an asterisk (*) as the wild card character (CLN***).

Mask 1:	<input type="text" value="CLN***"/>	Mask 6:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 2:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 7:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 3:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 8:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 4:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 9:	<input type="text"/>
Mask 5:	<input type="text"/>	Mask 10:	<input type="text"/>

a06c0183

Figure 130. Inventory - Cleaner Masks Window

The Inventory - Cleaner Masks window has the following push buttons:

<u>S</u> tart inventory	Starts the inventory process.
<u>C</u> ancel inventory	Cancels the inventory process.
<u>H</u> elp	Provides help about the Inventory - Cleaner Masks window.

Inventory Status

The Inventory Status window (Figure 131) displays the status information about the inventory operation in progress. It is updated periodically as the operation progresses.



Figure 131. Inventory Status Window

The Inventory Status window contains the following messages:

- **Rack XX is being inventoried and Number of racks complete.** This display occurs during the physical inventory operation.
- **Indexing database, please stand by.** This display occurs after the physical inventory operation.
- **Inventory cancel in progress, please stand by.** This display occurs when you cancel the inventory.

Note: If the Dual Active Accessors feature is installed, information is displayed for both accessors (see Figure 132).

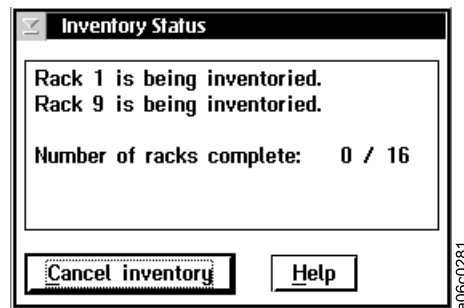


Figure 132. Inventory Status Window (Dual Active Accessor Libraries)

The Inventory Status window has the following push buttons:

Cancel inventory

Cancels the inventory process. You are prompted to confirm your selection. If you select **Yes**, the inventory is canceled, the current rack being inventoried is marked not inventoried, and the window is closed. If you select **No**, the inventory continues. This push button is disabled (grayed or reduced contrast) during the indexing database phase.

Note: If you cancel the inventory, select the **Inventory New Storage** option when you are ready to continue. This option allows the

inventory to continue from the point at which you canceled the original inventory.

Help

Provides help about the Inventory Status window.

Re-inventory with VTSs

Before selecting the **Re-inventory complete system** option, you must return VTS stacked volumes mounted on 3590 tape drives associated with the VTS to 3494 storage cells (this is done by taking the VTS offline, which causes the VTS to unload the drives). Do this by setting the VTSs to the Offline state before setting the 3494 to the Offline state.

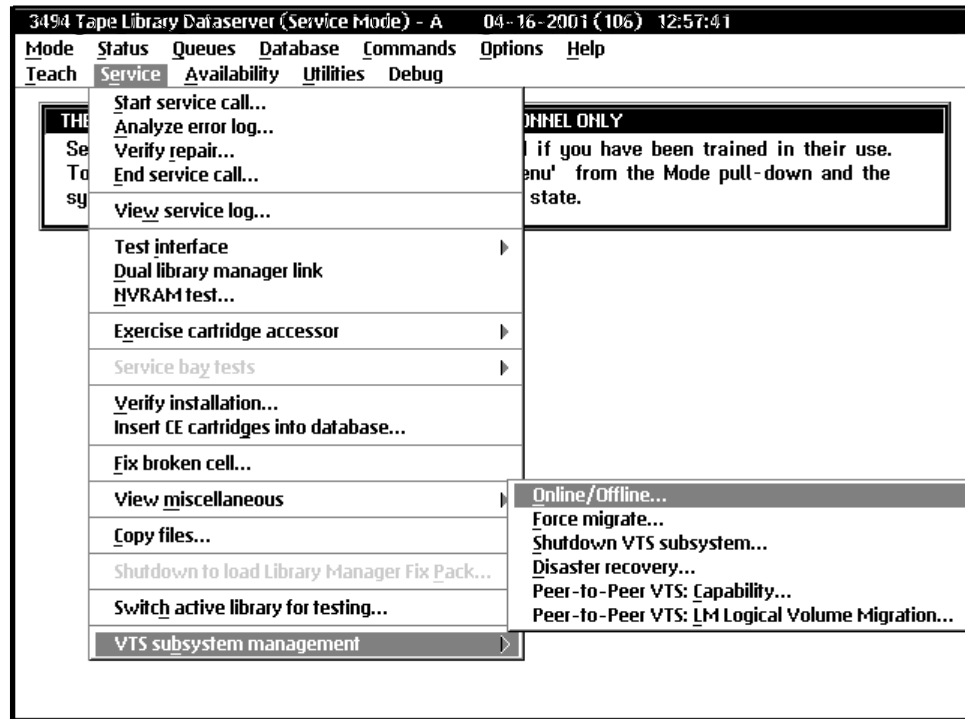
To prepare for **Re-inventory complete system**, perform the following steps:

1. All logical libraries (VTSs and non-VTS logical libraries, if any) must be varied offline at the attaching hosts.
2. Select the **Service menu...** option in the Mode window to allow access to additional service functions.
3. In the Service window (Figure 133 on page 227), select the **VTS subsystem management** option, then select the **Online/Offline...** option to display the VTS Online/Offline window (Figure 134 on page 228).
4. To set the VTS units offline, perform the following:
 - a. Select the **VTS 1 -> Offline** option and wait for messages indicating that the Offline operation initiated and completed successfully. If an error message is displayed, contact your service representative.
 - b. If a second VTS is installed, select the **VTS 2 -> Offline** option and wait for messages indicating that the Offline operation initiated and completed successfully.
 - c. When all VTS units are offline, close the window by selecting the **Cancel** option in the VTS Online/Offline window.
5. Place the 3494 in the Offline state by using the Mode window.
6. In the Commands window, select the **Inventory** option, then select the **Re-inventory complete system** option. When the inventory operation is complete, return the 3494 to the Online state by using the Mode window.

Note: Be sure to select the **Yes** option in the Save Logical Volumes window (see Figure 127 on page 221) when asked if you want to save the VTS logical volumes.

Attention: If the 3494 includes a VTS that is part of a PtP VTS configuration, you must save the logical volumes. This ensures that the logical volume databases will remain equal on the distributed libraries of the PtP VTS.

7. In the Service window, place all VTSs online by selecting the **VTS subsystem management** option and the **Online/Offline...** option.
8. Select the **Operator menu** option in the Mode window to display only operator action bar items.
9. The attaching hosts may vary libraries online.



a06c0256

Figure 133. Service Window

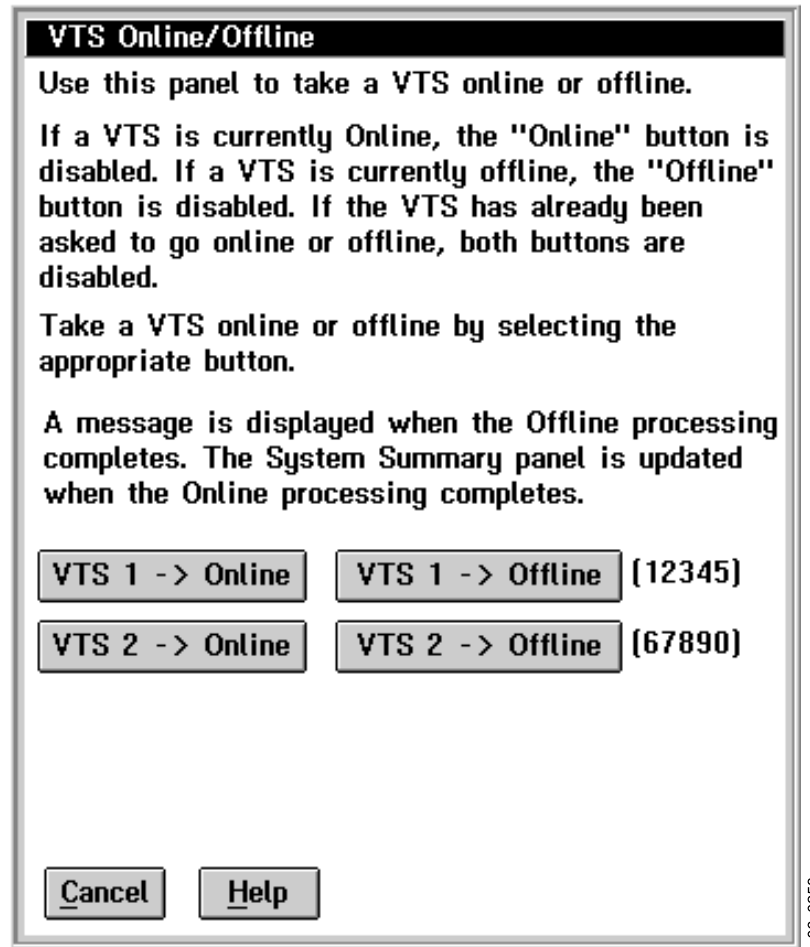


Figure 134. VTS Online/Offline Window

Disable Inventory Update

Select the **Disable Inventory Update** option (Figure 135 on page 229) to prevent the inventory update from being performed after you open and close a door. The 3494 remembers this selection across shutdowns.

Note: You should insert or eject cartridges through an I/O facility only while Inventory Update is disabled.

A system administrator password typically protects this option. The password protection option can be selected during installation (see “Change System Administrator Password” on page 253).

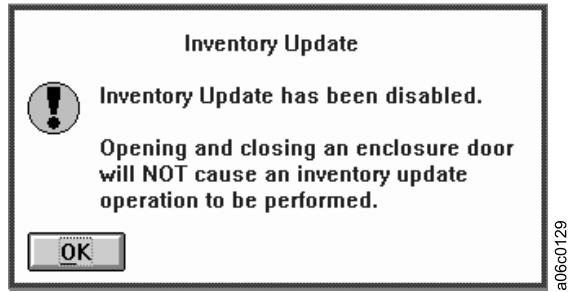


Figure 135. Disable Inventory Update Window

Enable Inventory Update

Select the **Enable Inventory Update** option (Figure 136) to perform an inventory update after opening and closing a door. This selection is remembered across shutdowns.

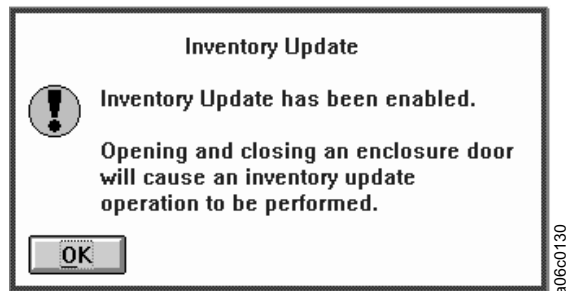


Figure 136. Enable Inventory Update Window

Perform Inventory Update (Full)

Select the **Perform Inventory Update (Full)** option (Figure 137) to perform an inventory update immediately. All frames in the 3494 are inventoried.

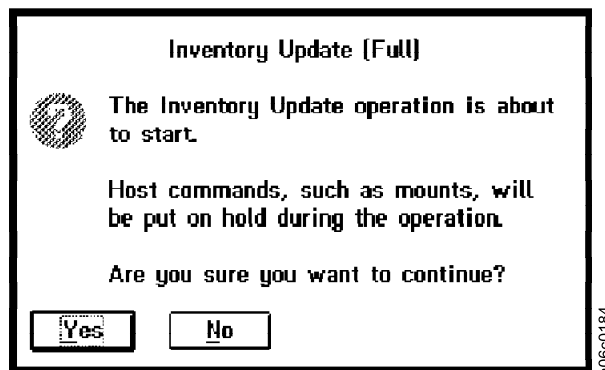


Figure 137. Perform Inventory Update Window

The Inventory Update Status window (Figure 138 on page 230) displays status information about the Inventory Update operation in progress.

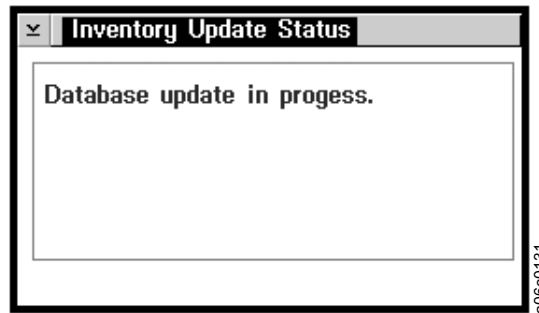


Figure 138. Inventory Update Status Window

The Inventory Update Status window contains the following messages:

- **Rack XX is being inventoried** and **Number of racks complete**. This display occurs during the physical inventory operation.
- **Database update in progress**. This display occurs after the physical inventory operation.

Note: If the Dual Active Accessors feature is installed, information is displayed for both accessors (Figure 139).

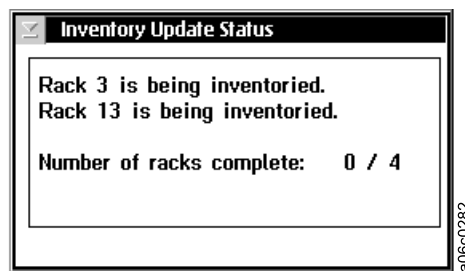


Figure 139. Inventory Update Status Window (Dual Active Accessor Libraries)

Perform Inventory Update (Partial)

Only those frames associated with doors that have been opened are inventoried. If Adjacent Frame Update was enabled during the Teach operation, the frames to either side are also inventoried. If the Dual Active Accessors feature is installed and if racks on both sides of the 3494 are being inventoried, both accessors are used; otherwise only one accessor is used.

The Perform Inventory Update (Partial) window (Figure 140 on page 231) is used to select the frames that should be scanned during the Inventory Update operation:

- A selected check box indicates that a frame's door has been opened since the last inventory.
- A cleared check box indicates that a frame's door has not been opened since the last inventory.
- The partial Inventory Update operation inventories the frames whose check boxes are selected.
- Select or clear the check boxes to reflect the frames that you want inventoried, then select the **Perform inventory update...** push button.
- Mounts and demounts are allowed during an inventory update for cartridges that are in a rack that has already been inventoried or is not involved in the

inventory update. However, performing mounts and demounts during an inventory update does affect the duration of the Inventory Update operation.

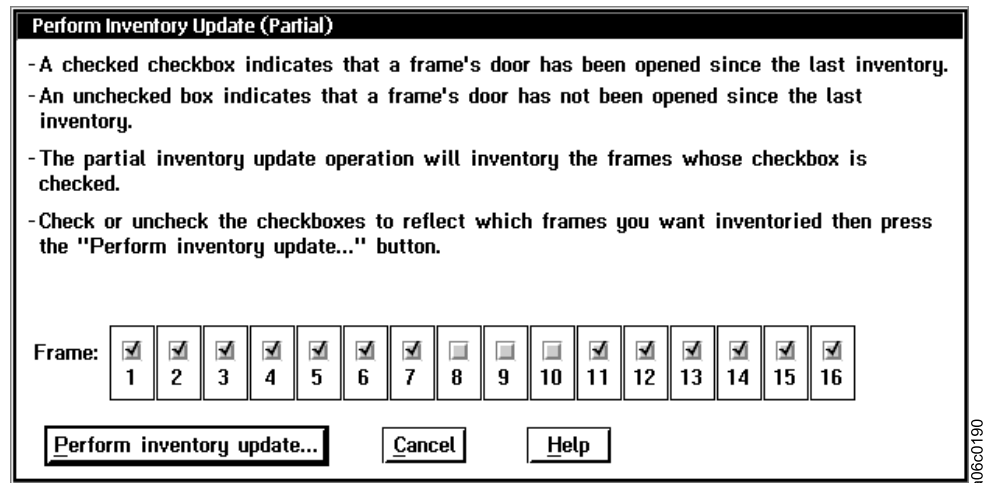


Figure 140. Perform Inventory Update (Partial) Window

The Perform Inventory Update (Partial) window has the following push buttons:

<u>P</u>erform inventory update...	Starts the Inventory Update operation on the selected frames.
<u>C</u>ancel	Cancels the frame selection.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Perform Inventory Update (Partial) window.

Stand-Alone Device

The **Stand-alone device...** option allows the following operations:

- Setup stand-alone device
- Reset stand-alone device
- Stand-alone device status

Setup Stand-Alone Device

The Setup Stand-alone Device window (Figure 141 on page 232) allows you to set up a drive in stand-alone mode. This mode is used to allow a host to run software that, in general, is in complete control of the drive. The software must be attached to a tape drive that is physically or virtually inside a 3494. The software is not aware that the drive is in the 3494, and it cannot issue commands to mount and demount volumes in that 3494.

Stand alone device is supported for virtual drives within a VTS with the exception of the Mount from Input Station feature.

Stand alone device is not supported for the physical drives associated with a VTS.

To assist the host software, the 3494 uses stand-alone mode to load and unload one or more specific cartridges automatically into a specific drive, without any host software interaction. The host software allows you to specify the cartridge that is mounted and demounted into a drive by using the Library Manager console.

Note: The drive that is being used in stand-alone mode should be varied offline from all hosts except the host that is being used in this special mode. This prevents unwanted interaction from all hosts except the desired one.



Figure 141. Setup Stand-Alone Device Window

Enter device This list box lists all the drives in the 3494, including virtual drives. It excludes physical drives that are associated with a VTS.

You can select the following operations:

Mount a single volume This operation causes the single volume to be mounted in a requested drive. When you select this operation, you must enter a volser in the **Volser:** field. You must also select either **Do not change volume category** or **Change at mount**.

Demount a single volume This operation causes a single volume to be demounted from the requested drive. When you select this operation, you can enter a volser in the **Volser:** field, or you can leave the field blank. If you leave the field blank, the volume mounted in the drive currently is demounted. You must select **Do not change volume category** or **Change at demount** for this operation.

Mount from Input Station This operation mounts non-3494 cartridges that are located in the convenience I/O station directly on the requested drive. It then returns them to the convenience I/O station after unloading.

Mount from Input Station is not supported for virtual drives within a VTS.

Assign category to a device	This operation causes a category to be assigned to a drive. When you select this operation, you must enter a Category to assign to device and select one of the three Change volume category options.
Volser	This entry field is active when you select either Mount a single volume or Demount a single volume . This field is required for the Mount a single volume option. It is optional for the Demount a single volume option.
Category to assign to device	This entry field is active when you select Assign category to a device . You must enter a valid category. The list displays the current user categories and their host-assigned aliases.
Select volumes in category order	<p>This option is available if you have selected Assign category to a device. Selecting this option causes volumes to be mounted in their category order.</p> <p>Note: If you select the Select volumes in category order option, you should also select one of the following (mount) options, or the drive will not be put in stand-alone mode.</p>
Mount first volume without host interaction	This option is available if you have selected Assign category to a device . Selecting this option causes the first mount to a device to be performed without host interaction.
Mount/demount volumes without host interaction	This option is available if you have selected Assign category to a device . Selecting this option causes mounts and demounts to be performed automatically without host interaction.
The following are methods for changing a volume's category:	
Do not change volume category	This option leaves the volume category alone during the stand-alone device operation.
Change at mount	This option changes the volume's category when a volume is mounted. If you select this method, you must make a valid entry in the Category to change volser to: field.
Change at demount	This option changes the volume's category when the volume is demounted. If you select this method, you must make a valid entry in the Category to change volser to: field.
Category to change volser to:	You must enter a valid category in this field. The list displays the current user categories and their host-assigned aliases.

The Setup Stand-alone Device window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u>K...	Requests that a device be set up as a stand-alone device. If the information that you entered is valid, you are prompted to confirm the request.
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the Setup Stand-alone Device window without setting up a device as stand-alone.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Setup Stand-alone Device window.

Reset Stand-Alone Device

The Reset Stand-alone Device option allows you to take a device out of stand-alone mode. The Reset Stand-alone Device window (Figure 142) presents a list of devices that are currently in stand-alone mode. To reset a device, select it, then select the **Reset...** push button. If there are no devices currently in stand-alone mode, a message is displayed.

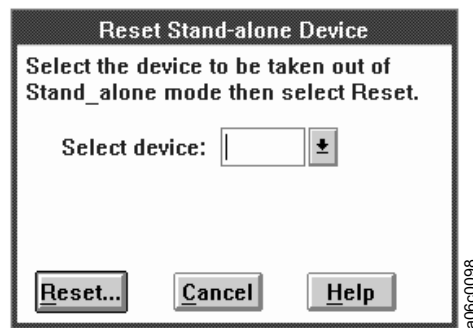


Figure 142. Reset Stand-Alone Device Window

The Reset Stand-alone Device window has the following push buttons:

<u>R</u>eset...	Requests that a device be taken out of stand-alone mode. If you entered a valid device, you are prompted to confirm your request.
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the Reset Stand-alone Device window without resetting a stand-alone device.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help for the Reset Stand-alone Device window.

Stand-Alone Device Status

Each device set up as a stand-alone device has a separate status window (see Figure 143).

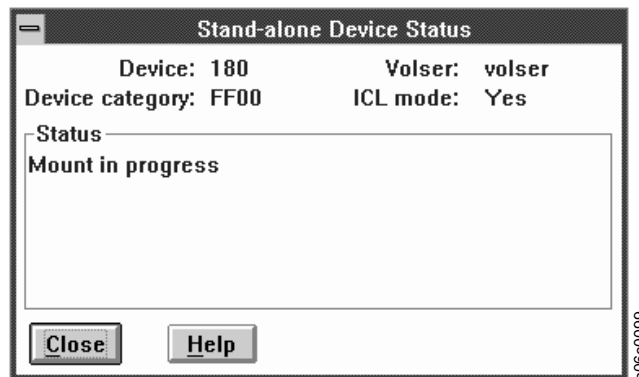


Figure 143. Stand-Alone Device Status Window

Device	The device identification of the stand-alone device.
Device category	The category associated with the stand-alone device, if any. The device category is displayed as 0 if the device does not have an associated category. The FFF7 category is used for Mount from Input Station.
Volser	Displays the volser of the currently mounted volume or the volser of the volume in the process of being mounted.
ICL mode	If you selected the Mount / demount volumes without host interaction option when you set up the device as a stand-alone device, a device is set up to implicitly mount and demount volumes. If you selected this option, the ICL mode status is displayed as <u>Yes</u> . If you did not select this option, the ICL mode status is displayed as <u>No</u> .
Status	The current status of the device is displayed here.

The Stand-alone Device Status window has the following push buttons:

<u>C</u> lose	Closes the Stand-alone Device Status window.
<u>H</u> elp	Provides help for the Stand-alone Device Status window.

Insert Unlabeled Cartridges

Note: Do not use this function using cartridges with device-readable labels.

The Insert Unlabeled Cartridges operation is designed to allow you to insert volumes into the Library Manager database that do not have an external device-readable label. These volumes may be used in the same manner that regular, properly labelled volumes are used, except for operations requiring an external device-readable label. To insert unlabeled cartridges, perform the following steps:

1. Ensure that the convenience I/O station is empty.

2. In the spaces in the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges window (Figure 144), enter the volsers and the cartridge type of all the cartridges you want to insert.

Note: If a volume with a device-readable label is inserted with a different volser entered in the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges window, problems will occur during a subsequent Inventory or Inventory Update operation.

3. Place the cartridges in the convenience I/O station in the same sequence as represented in the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges window, then close the convenience I/O station door.
4. Select the OK push button.

Each volser entered is checked to ensure that it is a valid number and that no other cartridge in the 3494 has the same number. The validity of the cartridge type is also checked. Valid characters for an unlabeled cartridge volser are alphanumeric characters plus the following special characters: - # & \$ @. The cartridges are then inserted into the 3494. After all the cartridges are inserted into the 3494, you may repeat the operation.

If the misplaced or inaccessible flags are set for an existing volser in the 3494, the cartridge is inserted and the flags are cleared.

5. Select the Cancel option to cancel the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges operation.

You can use the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges function to insert empty stacked volumes for a VTS. To be successful, the volser must fall into a stacked volume volser range (see Figure 144), and the media type must be J or K. However, IBM recommends that you **DO NOT** use the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges function for stacked volumes in normal operations. You should use it only for reinserting volumes that have a damaged external label.

I/O Station		
Cell	Volser	Cartridge Type
1		*
2		*
3		*
4		*
5		*
6		*
7		*
8		*
9		*
10		*

Enter the cartridge volsers into the I/O Cell table.

If the cartridge types are not the same as the default shown, enter the new type for each cartridge. An asterisk (*) is displayed if the library was taught with no default type. Valid types are 1, E, J, K.

Place the cartridges into the corresponding cell positions in the I/O station, close the I/O station door and select the OK button.

OK Cancel Help

a0600006

Figure 144. Insert Unlabeled Cartridges Window

The Insert Unlabeled Cartridges window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| <u>O</u> K | Performs the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges operation. |
| <u>C</u> ancel | Cancels the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges operation and closes the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges window. |

Next 10	Is displayed when the 30-cartridge convenience I/O station is installed; displays the next ten cells.
Prev 10	Is displayed when the 30-cartridge convenience I/O station is installed; displays the previous ten cells.
Help	Provides help about the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges window.

LAN Options

Note: You can view LAN information from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

LAN options allows the following operations:

- Add LAN host to library
- Delete LAN host from library
- Update LAN host information
- Library LAN information

Add LAN Host to Library

The Add LAN Host to Library window (Figure 145 on page 238) allows you to configure a LAN-attached host for communication with the 3494. You can configure up to 32 LAN host ports. The information you need to enter may be available from a command on the host. The person who set up your LAN configuration also may be able to provide this information.

Note: If the host is an AS/400 or iSeries, the following commands provide the information that you need to enter in the Add LAN Host to Library window:

- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is earlier than Version 3 Release 6, use DSPLANMLD (the Display LAN Information command).
- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is Version 3 Release 6 or later, use DSPLANMLB (the Display LAN Media Library Information command).

Communication Protocol

Select the type of communication protocol for use with this host.

Each LAN-attached host has a particular LAN protocol that it uses to communicate with the 3494. Table 9 lists LAN-attached hosts and their associated protocols.

Table 9. LAN Host Communication Protocols

LAN-Attached Host	LAN Protocol
AS/400, iSeries	APPC
VSE/ESA	APPC/VTAM
RS/6000, pSeries	TCP/IP
RS/6000 SP™	TCP/IP
Hewlett-Packard	TCP/IP
Sun	TCP/IP
Windows NT	TCP/IP

Table 9. LAN Host Communication Protocols (continued)

LAN-Attached Host	LAN Protocol
Windows 2000	TCP/IP

If you select APPC as the communications protocol, an Add LAN Host to Library window (Figure 145) opens. This window allows you to add a LAN-attached host, such as an AS/400 or iSeries, to the 3494 configuration.

Add LAN Host to Library

Communication Protocol
☒ APPC ☐ APPC/VTAM ☐ TCP/IP

Host Alias (optional) TUCF400F

Host Transaction Program Name QMLD/QMLDSTRCC

Host Network ID USIBMSU

Host Location Name S10A4045

Host Adapter Address 1000A5E12E75
☒ Ethernet Format

XID (optional) 05D11251

OK Cancel Help

a06c0140

Figure 145. Add LAN Host to Library Window (APPC Selected)

Fill in the following fields:

Host Alias (optional)

The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "." character.

Host Transaction Program Name

Specifies the name of the LAN transaction program that runs on the host to receive data from the Library Manager. For example, on the AS/400 and iSeries, the LAN transaction program name is **QMLD/QMLDSTRCC**. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "/" character. Blank spaces are not valid.

Host Network ID

Specifies the name of the remote network in which the adjacent control point (the host) resides. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "@", "#", and "\$" characters. Blank spaces are not valid.

	<p>The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the host remote network identifier and the host remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is USIBMSU.S10A4045, then the Host Network ID is USIBMSU.</p>
Host Location Name	<p>Specifies the remote location name (of the host) with which the 3494 communicates. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "@", "#", and "\$" characters. Blank spaces are not valid.</p> <p>The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the remote network identifier and the remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is USIBMSU.S10A4045, then the Host Location Name is S10A4045.</p>
Host Adapter Address	<p>Specifies the LAN adapter address of the remote controller (host). This can be the host adapter card universally administered address (UAA), such as 10005A1E3338, or a locally administered address (LAA), such as 400012345678. You may enter only hexadecimal digits in this field. Blank spaces are not valid. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "@", "#", and "\$" characters. Blank spaces are not valid.</p>
Ethernet Format check box	<p>If the Host Adapter Address that you entered in the Host Adapter Address field is in Ethernet Format, select this check box. If the Host Adapter Address field is in Token-Ring Format, do not select this check box.</p>
XID (optional)	<p>(Exchange ID) This is an optional field. If you leave it blank, the XID is assigned a value of "00000000". If you enter an XID value, it must be either five or eight hexadecimal bytes. If you enter only five bytes, the prefix "05D" is used.</p> <p>Note: XID is optional for APPC and APPC/VTAM hosts. It is not applicable for TCP/IP hosts.</p>

The Add LAN Host to Library window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u>K	Adds a LAN-attached host to the 3494 using the information in the Add LAN Host to Library window.
<u>C</u>ancel	Cancels the Add LAN Host operation and closes the Add LAN Host to Library window without adding a host.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Add LAN Host to Library window.

If you select APPC/VTAM as the communications protocol, an Add LAN Host to Library window (Figure 146) opens. This allows you to add a LAN-attached host, such as VSE/ESA, to the 3494 configuration.

Figure 146. Add LAN Host to Library Window (APPC/VTAM Selected)

Fill in the following fields:

Host Alias (optional)

The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "." character.

Host Transaction Program Name

Specifies the name of the LAN transaction program that runs on the host to receive data from the Library Manager. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "/" character. Blank spaces are not valid. For example, if the host is VSE/ESA, the default transaction program name is **VSE1LCA**.

Host Network ID

Specifies the name of the remote network in which the adjacent control point (the host) resides. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "@", "#", and "\$" characters. Blank spaces are not valid.

The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the host remote network identifier and the host remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is **USIBMSU.VSE1LCA**, then the Host Network ID is **USIBMSU**.

Host Location Name	<p>Specifies the remote location name (of the host) with which the tape library communicates. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the “@”, “#”, and “\$” characters. Blank spaces are not valid.</p> <p>The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the remote network identifier and the remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is USIBMSU.VSE1LCA, then the Host Location Name is VSE1LCA.</p>
Host Adapter Address	<p>Specifies the LAN adapter address of the remote controller (host). This can be the host adapter card universally administered address (UAA), such as 10005A1E3338, or a locally administered address (LAA), such as 400012345678. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the “@”, “#”, and “\$” characters. Blank spaces are not valid.</p>
Ethernet Format check box	<p>If the Host Adapter Address that you entered in the Host Adapter Address field is in Ethernet Format, select this check box. If the Host Adapter Address field is in Token-Ring Format, do not select this check box.</p>
Physical Unit Name	<p>This is the name of the physical unit that the 3494 communicates with for this host, for example, VSE3174. The physical unit name must be either eight or fewer characters, or eight or fewer characters followed by a period (.) and eight or fewer characters. This field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the “.” character. Blank spaces are not valid.</p>
XID (optional)	<p>(Exchange ID) This is an optional field. If you leave it blank, the XID is assigned a value of “00000000”. If you enter an XID value, it must be either five or eight hexadecimal bytes. If you enter only five bytes, the prefix “05D” is used.</p> <p>Note: XID is optional for APPC and APPC/VTAM hosts. It is not applicable for TCP/IP hosts.</p>

The Add LAN Host to Library window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u>K	Adds a LAN-attached host to the 3494 using the information in the Add LAN Host to Library window.
<u>C</u>ancel	Cancels the Add LAN Host operation and closes the Add LAN Host to Library window without adding a host.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Add LAN Host to Library window.

If you select TCP/IP as the communications protocol, an Add LAN Host to Library window (Figure 147) opens. This allows you to add a LAN-attached host, such as an RS/6000 or pSeries, to the 3494 configuration.

Figure 147. Add LAN Host to Library Window (TCP/IP Selected)

Fill in the following fields:

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Host Alias (optional) | The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the ".", "-", and "_" characters. |
| Host IP Address | The Host IP Address is the unique Internet address assigned to the host. This field accepts only digits and the ".", "-", and "_" characters. Blank spaces are not valid. The correct form is xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx where xxx represents a number from 000–255. |
| Host Name | The Host Name is the Hostname defined in the TCP/IP network. This field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the ".", "-", and "_" characters. Blank spaces are not valid. |

The Add LAN Host to Library window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| <u>OK</u> | Adds a LAN-attached host to the 3494 using the information in the Add LAN Host to Library window. |
| <u>Cancel</u> | Cancels the Add LAN Host operation and closes the Add LAN Host to Library window without adding a host. |
| <u>Help</u> | Provides help about the Add LAN Host to Library window. |

Delete LAN Host from Library

In the Delete LAN Host from Library window (Figure 148), select the LAN-attached host to be deleted from the 3494 configuration. The library no longer responds to requests from the deleted host.

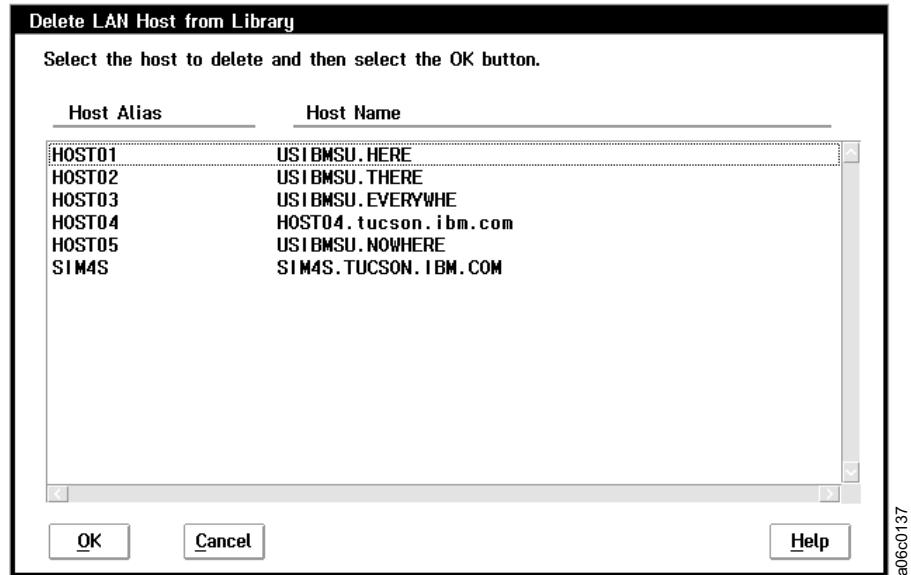


Figure 148. Delete LAN Host from Library Window

Host Alias (optional)

The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias.

Host Name

This field lists the names of all hosts that are configured with the 3494 through LANs.

For TCP/IP hosts, the Host Name is the Hostname defined in the TCP/IP network. In Figure 148, **rs6000.tucson.com** is a TCP/IP Hostname.

For APPC and APPC/VTAM hosts, the Host Name is a combination of the Host Network ID and the Host Location Name. For example, if the Host Network ID is **USIBMSU**, and the Host Location Name is **S10A4045**, then the Host Name is **USIBMSU.S10A4045**.

This window displays the host names and (if set up) the host aliases of all the hosts that are configured with the 3494 through a LAN. Select the host you want to delete, then select the **OK** push button.

A caution window opens to verify that you really want to delete this host. Selecting the **Yes** push button on this window deletes the host from the 3494.

The Delete LAN Host from Library window has the following push buttons:

OK

Deletes the selected host from the 3494.

Cancel

Cancels the Delete LAN Host operation and closes the Delete LAN Host from Library window without deleting a host.

Help Provides help about the Delete LAN Host from Library window.

Update LAN Host Information

The Update LAN Host Information window (Figure 149) allows you to select a particular LAN-attached host to update that host's 3494 LAN configuration data. After you select a host, you can update the host information.

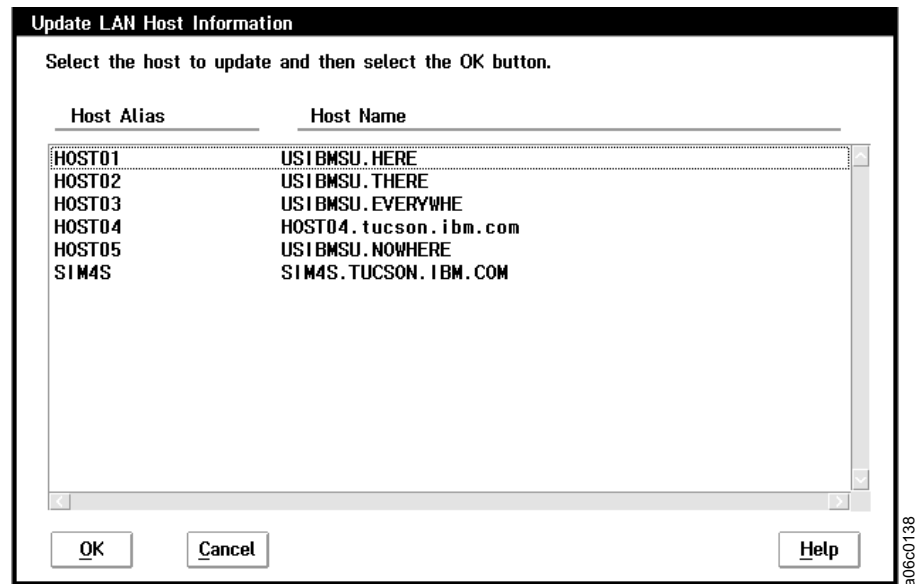


Figure 149. Update LAN Host Information Window

Host Alias (optional)

The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias.

Host Name

This field lists the names of all the hosts that are configured with the 3494 through LANs.

For TCP/IP hosts, the Host Name is the Hostname defined in the TCP/IP network. In Figure 149, **rs6000.tucson.com** is a TCP/IP Hostname.

For APPC and APPC/VTAM hosts, the Host Name is a combination of the Host Network ID and the Host Location Name. For example, if the Host Network ID is **USIBMSU**, and the Host Location Name is **S10A4045**, then the Host Name is **USIBMSU.S10A4045**.

Select the host that requires updating, then select the **OK** push button. This opens the Change LAN Host Information window, which shows the current LAN host information.

The Update LAN Host Information window has the following push buttons:

OK Closes the Update LAN Host Information window and opens a Change LAN Host Information window for the host that you selected.

Cancel Closes the Update LAN Host Information window without selecting a host for update.

Help

Provides help about the Update LAN Host Information window.

Change LAN Host Information

Figure 150 shows the Change LAN Host Information window for APPC hosts. Figure 151 on page 247 shows the Change LAN Host Information window for APPC/VTAM hosts. Figure 152 on page 249 shows the Change LAN Host Information window for TCP/IP hosts. These windows allow you to change the information about a LAN host in the 3494 configuration. When you have done this, the 3494 responds to the host with the new configuration data.

Change LAN Host Information

Make changes to any of the fields shown below and then select the OK button to update the host information with these changes.

Host Alias (optional)

Host Transaction Program Name

Host Network ID

Host Location Name

Host Adapter Address
☐ Ethernet Format

XID (optional)

a06c0151

Figure 150. Change LAN Host Information Window (APPC)

Host Alias (optional)

The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the ".", "-", and "_" characters.

Host Transaction Program Name

Specifies the name of the LAN transaction program that runs on the host to receive data from the Library Manager. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "/" character. Blank spaces are not valid.

Host Network ID

Specifies the name of the remote network in which the adjacent control point (host) resides. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "@", "#", and "\$" characters. Blank spaces are not valid.

The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the host remote network identifier and

the host remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is **USIBMSU.S10A4045**, then the Host Network ID is **USIBMSU**.

Host Location Name Specifies the remote location name (of the host) with which the 3494 communicates. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the “@”, “#”, and “\$” characters. Blank spaces are not valid.

The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the remote network identifier and the remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is **USIBMSU.S10A4045**, then the Host Location Name is **S10A4045**.

Host Adapter Address Specifies the LAN adapter address of the remote controller (host). This can be the host adapter card universally administered address (UAA), such as 10005A1E3338, or a locally administered address (LAA), such as 400012345678. Only hexadecimal digits can be entered. Blank spaces are not valid.

Ethernet Format check box If the Host Adapter Address that you entered in the Host Adapter Address field is in Ethernet Format, select this check box. If the Host Adapter Address field is in Token-Ring Format, do not select this check box.

XID (optional) (Exchange ID) This is an optional field. If you leave it blank, the XID is assigned a value of “00000000”. If you enter an XID value, it must be either five or eight hexadecimal bytes. If you enter only five bytes, the prefix “05D” is used.

Note: XID is optional for APPC and APPC/VTAM hosts. It is not applicable for TCP/IP hosts.

Note: If the host is an AS/400 or iSeries, the following commands provide the information that you need to update the Change LAN Host Information window:

- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is earlier than Version 3 Release 6, use DSPLANMLD (the Display LAN Information command).
- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is Version 3 Release 6 or later, use DSPLANMLB (the Display LAN Media Library Information command).

The Change LAN Host Information window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u>K	Updates the LAN host information by using the changes entered in the Change LAN Host Information window
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the Change LAN Host Information window without updating the host information.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Change LAN Host Information window.

The Change LAN Host Information window for APPC/VTAM hosts (Figure 151) allows you to change the information about a LAN host in the 3494 configuration. When this is done, the 3494 responds to the host with the new configuration data.

Figure 151. Change LAN Host Information Window (APPC/VTAM)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Host Alias (optional) | The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the ".", "-", and "_" characters. |
| Host Transaction Program Name | Specifies the name of the LAN transaction program that runs on the host to receive data from the Library Manager. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "/" character. Blank spaces are not valid. |
| Host Network ID | Specifies the name of the remote network in which the adjacent control point (host) resides. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the "@", "#", and "\$" characters. Blank spaces are not valid.

The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the host remote network identifier and the host remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is USIBMSU.S10A4045 , then the Host Network ID is USIBMSU . |
| Host Location Name | Specifies the remote location name (of the host) with which the 3494 communicates. This entry field |

accepts only alphanumeric characters and the “@”, “#”, and “\$” characters. Blank spaces are not valid.

The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the remote network identifier and the remote location. For example, if the host partner_LU_name is **USIBMSU.S10A4045**, then the Host Location Name is **S10A4045**.

Host Adapter Address

Specifies the LAN adapter address of the remote controller (host). This can be the host adapter card universally administered address (UAA), such as 10005A1E3338, or a locally administered address (LAA), such as 400012345678. Only hexadecimal digits can be entered. Blank spaces are not valid.

Ethernet Format check box

If the Host Adapter Address that you entered in the Host Adapter Address field is in Ethernet Format, select this check box. If the Host Adapter Address field is in Token-Ring Format, do not select this check box.

Physical Unit Name

This is the name of the physical unit that the 3494 communicates with for this host, for example, VSE3174. The physical unit name must be either eight or fewer characters, or eight or fewer characters followed by a period (.) and eight or fewer characters. This field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the “.” character. Blank spaces are not valid.

XID (optional)

(Exchange ID) This is an optional field. If you leave it blank, the XID is assigned a value of “00000000”. If you enter an XID value, it must be either five or eight hexadecimal bytes. If you enter only five bytes, the prefix “05D” is used.

Note: XID is optional for APPC and APPC/VTAM hosts. It is not applicable for TCP/IP hosts.

Note: If the host is an AS/400 or iSeries, the following commands provide the information that you need to update the Change LAN Host Information window:

- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is earlier than Version 3 Release 6, use DSPLANMLD (the Display LAN Information command).
- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is Version 3 Release 6 or later, use DSPLANMLB (the Display LAN Media Library Information command).

The Change LAN Host Information window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u>K	Updates the LAN host information by using the changes entered in the Change LAN Host Information window.
<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the Change LAN Host Information window without updating the host information.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Change LAN Host Information window.

The Change LAN Host Information window for TCP/IP hosts (Figure 152) allows you to change the information about a LAN host in the 3494 configuration. When this is done, the 3494 responds to the host with the new configuration data.

The image shows a graphical user interface window titled "Change LAN Host Information". Inside the window, there is a text instruction: "Make changes to any of the fields shown below and then select the OK button to update the host information with these changes." Below this instruction are three input fields. The first field is labeled "Host Alias (optional)" and contains the text "HOST04". The second field is labeled "Host IP Address" and contains the text "1.1.1.4". The third field is labeled "Host Name" and contains the text "HOST04.tucson.ibm.com". At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Help". On the right side of the window, there is a vertical text label "a06c0306".

Figure 152. Change LAN Host Information Window (TCP/IP)

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Host Alias (optional) | The alias for a host is a user-supplied nickname for that host. This is an optional field, and you may leave it blank if you do not want an alias. This entry field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the ".", "-", and "_" characters. |
| Host IP Address | The Host IP Address is the unique Internet address assigned to the host. This field accepts only digits and the ".", "-", and "_" characters. Blank spaces are not valid. The correct form is dotted decimal notation (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx where xxx represents a number from 000-255). |
| Host Name | The Host Name is the Hostname defined in the TCP/IP network. This field accepts only alphanumeric characters and the ".", "-", and "_" characters. Blank spaces are not valid. |

Note: If the host is an AS/400 or iSeries, the following commands provide the information that you need to update the Change LAN Host Information window:

- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is earlier than Version 3 Release 6, use DSPLANMLD (the Display LAN Information command).
- If the AS/400 or iSeries operating system is Version 3 Release 6 or later, use DSPLANMLB (the Display LAN Media Library Information command).

The Change LAN Host Information window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| <u>O</u>K | Updates the LAN host information by using the changes entered in the Change LAN Host Information window. |
| <u>C</u>ancel | Closes the Change LAN Host Information window without updating the host information. |
| <u>H</u>elp | Provides help about the Change LAN Host Information window. |

Library LAN Information

The Library LAN Information window (Figure 153) supplies the 3494 LAN information that the host system requires to communicate with the 3494.

Library LAN Information

Fields with asterisks [*] are for this Library Manager.

Library Transaction
Program Name LIBMGRTTP

Library Network ID USIBMSU *
USIBMSU

Library Location Name . . LIBMGRC3 *
LIBMGRC2

Library Adapter Address . 10005A8A5E75 *
10005CB100F5

Library IP Address 9.115.43.225 *
9.115.43.226

Library Host Name libmgrc3.ibm.com *
libmgrc2.ibm.com

a06c0263

Figure 153. 3494 LAN Information Window

Note: If HA1 Frames are installed, information for both Library Managers is shown. An asterisk (*) indicates that the item is for the local Library Manager.

Library Transaction Program Name

Specifies the name of the LAN transaction program that runs on the Library Manager to receive data from the host.

Library Network ID

Specifies the name of the remote network in which the adjacent control point (the Library Manager) resides.

The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the host, consists of the Library Manager network identifier and the Library Manager location name. For example, if the Library Manager partner_LU_name is **USIBMSU.LIBMGRC3**, then the Library Manager Network ID is **USIBMSU**.

Library Location Name	Specifies the remote location name (of the Library Manager) with which the host communicates. The Common Programming Interface (CPI) - Communications partner_LU_name of the Library Manager, consists of the network identifier and the location name. For example, if the Library Manager partner_LU_name is USIBMSU.LIBMGR3 , then the Library Manager Location Name is LIBMGR3 .
Library Adapter Address	Specifies the LAN adapter address of the remote controller (the Library Manager). This can be the Library Manager adapter card universally administered address (UAA), such as 10005A8A5E75, or a locally administered address (LAA), such as 40003494001A.
Library IP Address	The Library Manager IP Address is the unique Internet address assigned to the Library Manager.
Library Host Name	The Library Name is the Hostname defined in the TCP/IP network for the Library Manager. In Figure 153 on page 250, libmgr3.ibm.com is a TCP/IP Hostname.

The Library LAN Information window has the following push buttons:

<u>O</u>K	Closes the Library LAN Information window.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the Library LAN Information window.

Operator Intervention

Certain conditions in the 3494, when detected, require short-term operator intervention to resolve. These conditions do not stop the Library Manager from accepting commands but can delay the execution of certain queued operations. See Chapter 7, "Remote Library Manager Console Feature" on page 301 for most conditions that require intervention.

The Library Manager keeps track of the outstanding intervention-required conditions. These conditions can be displayed on the Library Manager console, and you can indicate the conditions that you have resolved. Steps are provided to resolve each condition. For instructions on removing a cartridge from the gripper, see "Cartridge Removal from the Gripper" on page 299.

Note: You can view operator intervention information from the Specialist (see "Specialist Features and Functions" on page 291).

The Operator Intervention window (Figure 154 on page 252) displays the list of conditions and the priority assigned (the priorities are 1, 2, and 3; priority 1 is the highest, and priority 3 is the lowest. If no outstanding conditions exist, the list is blank.

1. Determine what condition to resolve, perform the necessary action, then indicate that you resolved the condition by highlighting the condition and selecting the **OK** push button. You can also select the **Help** push button for the operator actions.

Notes:

- a. Certain conditions (for example, library full, convenience I/O station full, and out of cleaner cartridges) are cleared automatically after you resolve the intervention-required condition.
 - b. Certain conditions require you to open the frame door to resolve.
 - c. You can highlight more than one condition. Choosing **OK** clears all the items you highlighted.
 - d. You can display the operator interventions in date and time order or in priority order. Select the appropriate button under Display Order to change the display.
2. Repeat step 1 on page 251 until you have resolved all needed conditions.

When you indicate that all outstanding conditions are resolved, the window closes. Also, you can close the window and resolve some conditions later by selecting the **Cancel** push button.

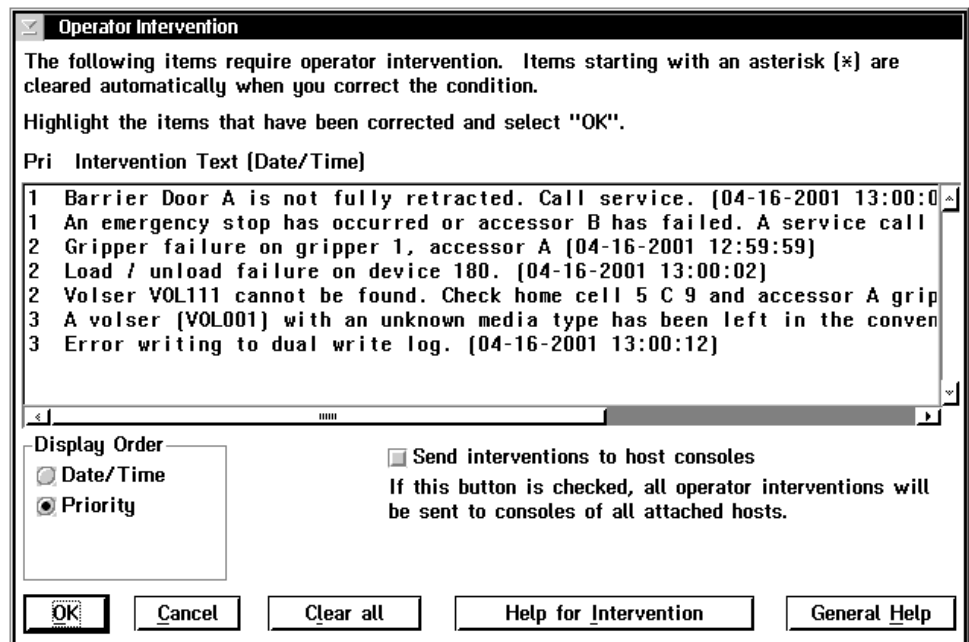


Figure 154. Operator Intervention Window

The Operator Intervention window has one check box:

Send interventions to host consoles

If you select this check box, all operator intervention messages are sent to all attached hosts. If the hosts are configured to display messages, these messages are displayed on the host console.

The Operator Intervention window has the following push buttons:

Clear all

Allows the system administrator to clear all operator interventions that start with an * (asterisk) from the list and closes the Operator Intervention window. This requires system administrator authority. These interventions should be cleared automatically.

OK

Clears the highlighted intervention items from the list. If all the items are cleared, closes the Operator Intervention window.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <u>C</u>ancel | Closes the Operator Intervention window without removing any highlighted intervention items from the list. |
| H<u>e</u>lp for I<u>n</u>terventions | Provides help about the highlighted intervention. |
| G<u>e</u>neral H<u>e</u>lp | Provides help about the Operator Intervention window. The Help contains a list of operator actions for every intervention condition. |

Change System Administrator Password

The System Administrator Password window (Figure 155) allows you to change the system administrator password, if it was selected during installation. The system administrator password protects the following functions:

- Access to actions required as part of emergency power off (EPO) recovery during Library Manager start-up.
If during initialization the Library Manager determines that EPO recovery is required, you are informed that either the system administrator or the service representative password is required. When you enter the password, the Library Manager displays the actions required for EPO recovery.
- Inventory new storage
- Re-inventory complete subsystem
- Shutdown
- Unlocking the keyboard and display when they have been locked by selecting the **Lockup Library Manager...** option under the Mode window
- Delete logical volumes
- Clear all operator interventions



Figure 155. System Administrator Password Window

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Current password | Specifies entry of the current password. |
| New password | Specifies entry of the new password. |
| Verify | Specifies reentry of the new password. |

The System Administrator Password window has the following push buttons:

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| <u>O</u>K | Updates the password to the new password. |
|------------------|---|

<u>C</u>ancel	Closes the System Administrator Password window without changing the password.
<u>H</u>elp	Provides help about the System Administrator Password window.

If you enter the current password correctly, you can access the function.

Note: Do not forget the system administrator password. If this is the first time this window opens, the **Current password** is the only entry required. This entry becomes the system administrator password for all protected functions. If you cannot remember the password, call your service representative.

You can change the password by entering a new password into the **New password** and **Verify** fields after entering the current password. If the current password is correct and the two new password fields match, you have access to the protected functions, and the password is changed. Changing the system administrator password on one protected menu changes the password to all protected menus, except for the Service menu. If Service mode is active, these functions do not require the system administrator password.

Service Access

Enable service access	This option provides the ability to access the Library Managers through a modem connection, if installed. This also allows service personnel to off-load files (log and dump) from the Library Manager. The Library Manager may prompt you for the system administrator password.
Disable service access	This option prevents the ability to access the Library Manager through a modem connection, if installed. The Library Manager may prompt you for the system administrator password.

Monitoring Library Manager Events

The 3494 can attach to many different host systems, with various operating systems that communicate with the 3494 using different types of connections. During operation, the 3494 may encounter situations that you would want to know about, such as a door being opened (which causes the 3494 to stop). Because there are many different attachment methods, the 3494 provides a standard TCP/IP protocol called Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to send alerts (called SNMP traps) over a TCP/IP LAN network to one or more SNMP monitoring stations. These monitoring stations, along with other user-supplied software, can alert operations staff to possible problems or operator interventions that occur at the 3494. Figure 156 shows a basic SNMP block diagram.

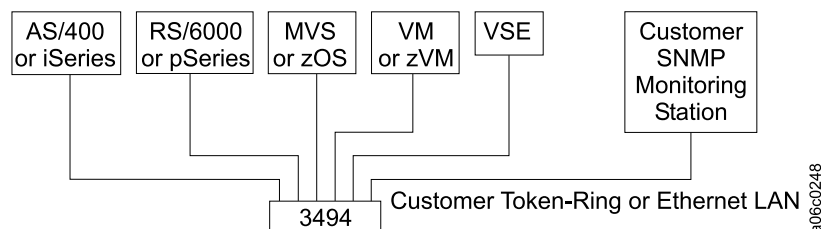


Figure 156. SNMP Basic Block Diagram

With this method, the 3494 can be monitored at one or more locations, along with other equipment (both IBM and non-IBM) that also supports the SNMP protocol. Monitoring is independent of the host system that is controlling the equipment and is independent of the location of the 3494s.

The Library Manager contains limited SNMP support. This section discusses how to use the Library Manager's SNMP features.

The Library Manager generates SNMP trap messages to inform network monitoring stations that certain events have occurred on the 3494. The Library Manager code does not contain any SNMP Management Information Base (MIB) support.

The Library Manager code offers the ability to monitor the following Library Manager events:

- **OPINT** - Operator Interventions
- **UNSOL** - Unsolicited Attention Messages
- **SERV** - Service Request Messages (not supported currently)
- **CHCK1** - Library Manager Check1 Conditions
- **TESTM** - Test SNMP Trap Message

OPINT Events

OPINT events inform the monitoring station of the state of the 3494. They can inform the monitor station that the 3494 has developed problems and can even request service calls. All OPINT messages are located in the OPINT message table (see Table 10 on page 262).

OPINT traps are the best way to monitor the 3494, and these Library Manager trap types should be selected at all times.

UNSOL Events

UNSOL events offer additional support to the OPINT messages. They are not as helpful as the OPINT message, but they can be used to track drive availability, volume movement, and so on.

In order to receive UNSOL messages, the 3494 must be online, and it must have at least one host. All UNSOL messages are located in the UNSOL message section (see "UNSOL Library Manager SNMP Traps" on page 268).

CHCK1 Events

CHCK1 events are posted when the Library Manager code encounters problems that require re-initializing the Library Manager.

TESTM Events

The Library Manager generates TESTM events automatically to test the ability to send SNMP trap messages. They are intended to verify the ability to send traps to the monitor station.

Using SNMP Features

The following sections describe the Library Manager's SNMP features.

Selecting SNMP Trap Types

First, you must select the type of Library Manager trap events that need to be monitored. To do this, select the **Commands** option on the Main menu, and select **SNMP options**. Then, select the **Select SNMP trap types** sub-menu option. The Select SNMP Trap Types window (Figure 157) opens, showing all the Library Manager trap types. Select the Library Manager trap types that need to be monitored, then select the **OK** push button.



Figure 157. Select SNMP Trap Types Window

Configuring SNMP Trap Destinations

When you have selected the Library Manager Trap Types, you must configure the Library Manager to send the SNMP traps to the correct monitoring station. To do this, select **SNMP Options** in the Commands window, then select the **Change SNMP trap destinations** option.

You can configure the Library Manager to send SNMP traps to a maximum of five different trap destinations.

Note: If HA1 Frames are installed, you need to configure only the active Library Manager. The Library Manager code configures the standby Library Manager automatically when the standby Library Manager becomes active. Only the active Library Manager sends trap messages.

The procedure for configuring the SNMP trap destination depends on the OS/2[®] version (2.11 or 4.0). To determine the version of OS/2 you have, select the **About** option on the Help menu (see “Using the Help Window” on page 103).

OS/2 Version 2.11

Figure 158 shows the OS/2 2.11 version of the Change SNMP Trap Destinations window.

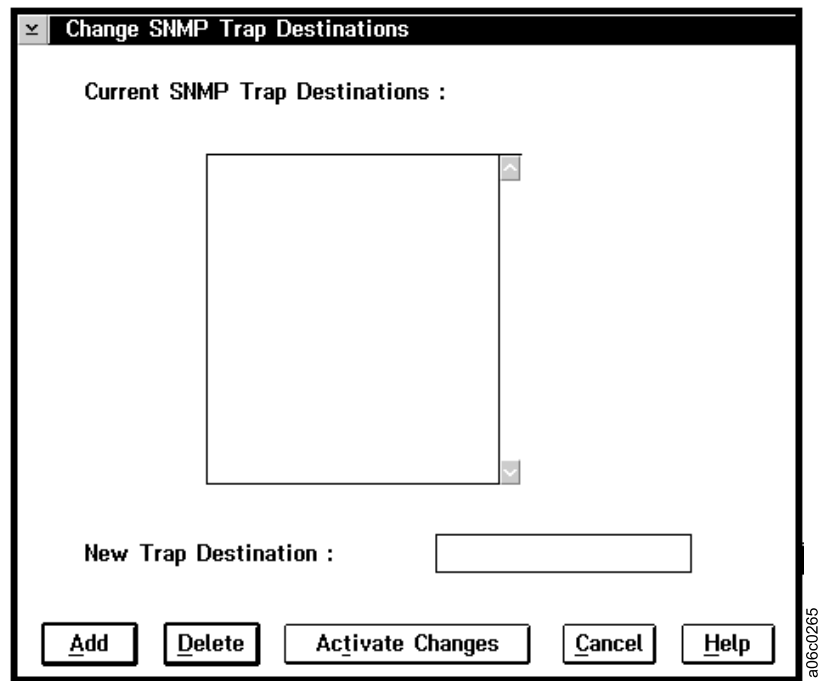


Figure 158. Change SNMP Trap Destinations Window (OS/2 2.11)

Adding a Destination: Perform the following steps to add an SNMP trap destination:

1. Enter the new SNMP trap destination in the **New Trap Destination** field.
2. Select the **Add** push button.

Deleting a Destination: Perform the following steps to delete an SNMP trap destination:

1. In the list box, highlight the SNMP trap destination that you want to delete.
2. Select the **Delete** push button.

The changes are activated when you select the **Activate Changes** push button. If the SNMP daemon is running when you select **Activate Changes**, the Library Manager kills it and restarts the daemon with the new changes.

OS/2 Version 4.0

For OS/2 Version 4.0, the SNMP HRMCNFIG program configures SNMP trap destinations. If you have OS/2 Version 4.0, selecting the **Change SNMP trap destinations** option starts this program for you automatically.

Figure 159 shows the SNMP Configuration window.

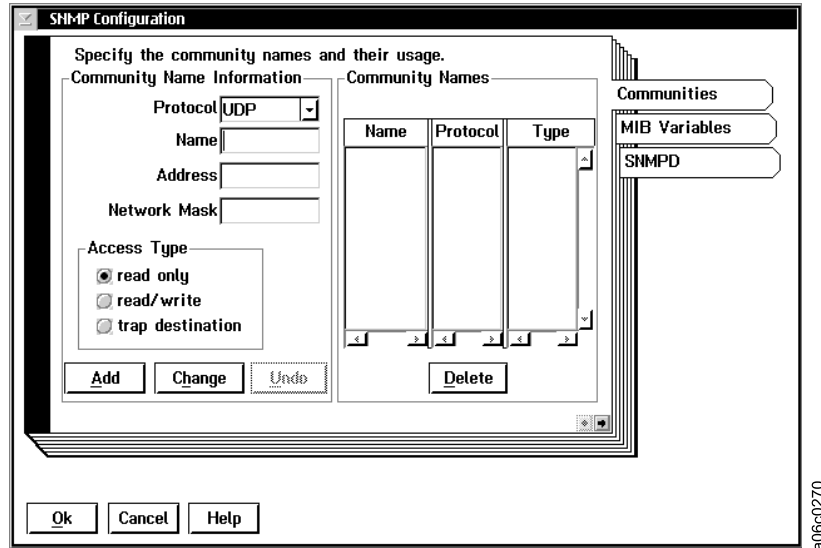


Figure 159. SNMP Configuration Window

Adding a Destination: Perform the following steps to add an SNMP trap destination:

1. When the HRMCNFIG program is running, select the **trap destination** radio button. The **Network Mask** input field is then unavailable. (SNMP trap messages do not need to use this option.)
2. Select **UDP** in the Protocol field, enter the monitor station name and address in the appropriate fields, then select the **Add** push button. Do this for each of the monitor stations.
3. Select the **OK** push button when done.

Note: HRMCNFIG is a process external to the Library Manager, and therefore, you must wait until that process has completed before Library Manager's SNMP support is enabled. To do this, wait until the **Change SNMP trap destinations** becomes available again. When it is available, you can use all SNMP features.

Deleting a Destination: Perform the following steps to delete an SNMP trap destination:

1. In the list box, highlight the SNMP trap destination that you want to delete.
2. Select the **Delete** push button.
3. Select the **OK** push button when done.

Starting SNMP

When you have selected the trap types and configured the SNMP trap destinations, you must enable the Library Manager SNMP support. To do this, select the **Start SNMP** option in the SNMP Options window.

Selecting this option starts the SNMP daemon. To ensure that the daemon is running, press **Ctrl+Esc** to bring up a window list and ensure that SNMPD is listed.

Stopping SNMP

Selecting the **Stop SNMP** option in the SNMP Options window disables the Library Manager's SNMP features. If the SNMP daemon is not running, no Library Manager SNMP traps are generated.

Sending TESTM Messages

When you have configured SNMP, send an SNMP trap to ensure that SNMP is configured correctly. The TESTM trap allows you to send a test message to the monitor stations, which have been set up to receive the SNMP trap messages.

To send a TESTM SNMP trap, select the **Send TESTM Trap** option in the SNMP Options window. Selecting this option opens a window that allows entry of a string to send to all the monitor stations that the Library Manager is configured for (see Figure 160).

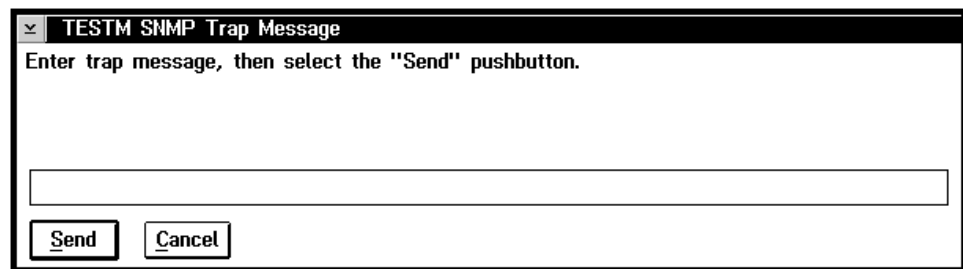


Figure 160. TESTM SNMP Trap Message Window

Most problems sending SNMP messages are related to network configuration. If the monitor station does not receive the trap, check the SNMPD window located on the Library Manager to see if the SNMPD trap message was sent. If the daemon shows the message, ensure that the network path to the monitor station is correct.

Trouble Shooting SNMP Problems

Most problems encountered are related to the site network or software. Check the following on the Library Manager to ensure that SNMP is working correctly:

1. Ensure that the SNMPD process is running.
2. Ensure that you can "ping" the monitor station from a Service window. If you cannot "ping" the monitor station, then there is a network configuration problem that you must correct. The SNMP trap can never get to the monitoring station until you correct the network configuration problem.
3. Generate a TESTM trap message, then check the SNMPD window to determine if it was sent. To do this, press **Ctrl+Esc** to bring up the Window List, then use the pointing device or arrow keys to highlight the SNMPD process. You should see the TESTM trap message in the window. If there are any errors, then the daemon is not being started correctly.

Receiving SNMPD Traps on the Monitor Station

All the Library Manager trap types follow a very similar format. Each Library Manager SNMP trap message generated has the same starting format. This helps the programmer on the monitor station handle the different Library Manager SNMP trap message types.

Each field in the Library Manager SNMP trap message is space delimited. This allows the programmer to tokenize the incoming Library Manager SNMP trap message.

Most Library Manager SNMP trap messages contain both a set of parameters and a message string. The parameters are intended to aid the programmer in extracting the necessary information from the trap message. The message string is intended for users who do not have the ability to program the network monitor station software to parse and process the Library Manager SNMP traps. Each Library Manager SNMP contains this message string, which contains enough information to post to the simplest SNMP monitor program.

The basic format for a Library Manager SNMP Trap Message is as follows:

3494 {Library Sequence Number} {Library Manager Trap Type} {Trap Number} {Rest of Message}

3494	Indicates that an 3494 generated this message.
Library Sequence Number	This is the Library Sequence Number of the logical library that generated the message. It gives the programmer the ability to know the 3494 that generated the SNMP Trap message. Each 3494 has a unique Library Sequence Number.
Library Manager Trap Type	This is one of the following trap types: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• OPINT• UNSOL• SERVC• CHCK1• TESTM
Trap Number	This is the trap number of the Library Manager Trap Type. Each Library Manager Trap Type contains a unique set of traps, each with its own format. This field allows the programmer to determine the Library Manager Trap Type message that was sent.
Rest of Message	The content of this part of the Library Manager SNMP trap message is quite flexible. Some Library Manager messages contain parameters or a message string. The Library Manager SNMP trap message parameters are meant to help the monitoring station software gather the related information quickly. The message string is meant for human readability.

Here is an example of a Library Manager SNMP trap message:

3494 C2444 OPINT 4 - - - *The Library is full.

In this example, the message was generated from a 3494 with a Library Sequence Number of C2444. The Library Manager Trap Type is OPINT, or an operator intervention. The OPINT trap number is 4, the parameters are all -, and the rest of the trap message indicates that the 3494 is full of cartridges.

Outline for Receiving Library Manager SNMP Traps

Perform the following steps to receive Library Manager SNMP traps:

1. Ensure that the SNMP trap was generated from a 3494.
2. If the message was generated from a Library Manager, tokenize the incoming SNMP trap and read the 3494 that generated the trap message. This can be done by reading the Library Sequence Number.
3. Determine the Library Manager SNMP Trap Type that was sent. This is one of the Library Manager SNMP Trap Types. This is the next field in the space-delimited string.
4. When you have determined that the SNMP trap message was generated from a 3494, its identity, and the type of Library Manager SNMP trap message that was sent, the message can be tokenized again to remove the message parameters and message string.

Note: It is a good idea to program the monitor station to handle conditions such as an unrecognized Library Manager SNMP trap. Additional Library Manager SNMP traps may be added and documentation updated, as they are updated.

Programming Tools

The Library Manager code contains an aid for the developer to help check the monitor's ability to handle all the Library Manager SNMP traps. This program is located in `C:\lm\exe`.

To use the program, first ensure that SNMP is enabled and configured on the Library Manager. The program cannot generate any SNMP traps if SNMP is not enabled on the Library Manager.

To start the program, open a service window and enter **SNMPTEST**.

If the program does not come to the foreground, press the **Ctrl+Esc** keys to bring up the Window List. Select the **SNMPTEST** program. Use the program to generate the required SNMP traps, and when done, exit the SNMPTEST program and close the service window.

OPINT Library Manager SNMP Traps

This section discusses the format of the Library Manager OPINT SNMP traps. Library Manager OPINT SNMP traps are the easiest to program for, because they all follow the same format. The general Library Manager OPINT SNMP trap has the following format:

3494 {Library Sequence Number} OPINT {OPINT Trap Number} {Parameter A} {Parameter B} {Parameter C} {Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message}

The following is an example of an OPINT Library Manager SNMP Trap:

3494 C2444 OPINT 48 180 - - A cartridge containing invalid media has been left in the device 180 feed slot. Remove the cartridge.

In this example, a cartridge with invalid media type has been left in the feed slot of device 180 on library C2444.

Notes:

1. Library Manager OPINT SNMP trap messages pad all unused parameters with a dash (-) in order to maintain the space delimited architecture.

2. All Library Manager SNMP trap messages are actually one line of text; however, due to the printing process, some may take up several lines of text in this manual.

Valid values for the OPINT tables parameters are:

- The dash indicates that the parameter is not used for this Library Manager OPINT messages.
- Gripper** Valid Gripper values are: 1, which indicates Gripper one, and 2, which indicates Gripper two.
- Accessor** Valid Accessor values are: A, which indicates Accessor A, and B, which indicates Accessor B.

Note: Only the HA1 Frames have an Accessor B.
- Device** Valid device values are from 0–0xFFFF. This parameter is always reported in hexadecimal.
- Volser** This is a six-character string (example: CNN444).
- Rack Cell** The Rack Cell parameter has the following format: RackColumnCell. As an example, 1 G 1 means rack 1, column G, and cell 1.
- External** Same as Volser - Used only in libraries with VTSs.
- Internal** Same as Volser - Used only in libraries with VTSs.
- VTS** Valid VTS parameters are the following:
 - **VTS_1**, which indicates VTS 1
 - **VTS_2**, which indicates VTS 2

Certain versions of OS/2 trap if the overall SNMP message is over 132 bytes in length. To prevent this trap, the Library Manager software checks to see if the SNMP trap message is longer than 132 bytes and inserts a null character at the 132-byte limit. Therefore, some Library Manager OPINT SNMP traps are truncated to prevent this problem.

Table 10 contains the Library Manager OPINT interventions.

Notes:

1. Items starting with an asterisk (*) are cleared automatically when you clear the condition causing the intervention.
2. You can view operator interventions from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

Table 10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type)

OPINT #	Parameter [A]	Parameter [B]	Parameter [C]	Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message
1	Gripper	Accessor	—	Gripper failure on Gripper [A], Accessor [B]
3	—	—	—	* The convenience I/O station is full.
4	—	—	—	* The library is full.
5	Volser	—	—	A duplicate volser ([A]) was ejected to the convenience I/O station.
6	Volser	—	—	A duplicate volser ([A]) was left in the convenience I/O station.

Table 10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type) (continued)

OPINT #	Parameter [A]	Parameter [B]	Parameter [C]	Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message
7	—	—	—	An unreadable volser was left in the convenience I/O station.
8	—	—	—	* The library is out of CST/ECCST cleaner cartridges.
9	Volser	—	—	An unexpected volser ([A]) was found and ejected to the convenience I/O station.
10	—	—	—	* The high-capacity output rack is full.
11	Volser	Rack Cell	—	A duplicate volser ([A]) was left in high-capacity Input rack cell [B].
12	Rack Cell	—	—	An unreadable volser was left in high-capacity Input rack cell [A].
13	Volser	Rack Cell	—	An invalid volser ([A]) was left in high-capacity Input rack cell [B].
14	Volser	—	—	An invalid volser ([A]) was left in the convenience I/O station.
15	Volser	Rack Cell	—	A duplicate volser ([A]) was ejected to high-capacity output rack cell [B].
16	Volser	Rack Cell	—	An unexpected volser ([A]) was ejected to high-capacity output rack cell [B].
17	Device	—	—	Load / unload failure on device [A]. Empty the feed slot.
18	Volser	—	—	An unexpected volser ([A]) was left in the convenience I/O station.
19	Volser	Rack Cell	—	An unexpected volser ([A]) was left in high-capacity output rack cell [B].
20	—	—	—	* The convenience I/O station door is open.
21	—	—	—	* The convenience I/O station door is open.
22	Volser	—	—	Volser ([A]) could not be put away. It was ejected to the convenience I/O station.
23	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser ([A]) could not be put away. It was ejected to high-capacity output rack cell [B].
24	—	—	—	The convenience I/O station should be empty but is not; check the station visually.
25	Gripper	Accessor	—	A cartridge could not be released from Gripper [A], Accessor [B].
26	Volser	—	—	A cartridge ([A]) has been dropped.
28	—	—	—	An emergency stop has occurred.
29	Volser	—	—	Damaged volser ([A]) ejected to the convenience I/O station.
30	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Damaged volser ([A]) ejected to high-capacity output facility cell: [B].
31	Device	—	—	Device [A] is not ready.
34	Device	—	—	A mislabeled cleaner cartridge has been left in device [A] feed slot. Remove the cartridge.

Table 10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type) (continued)

OPINT #	Parameter [A]	Parameter [B]	Parameter [C]	Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message
35	Device	—	—	A recoverable error occurred on device [A]. A service call may be needed if the error persists.
36	—	—	—	A mislabeled cleaner cartridge has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.
37	—	—	—	A mislabeled cleaner cartridge has been ejected to the high-capacity output station.
39	Rack Cell	—	—	A duplicate volser has been found at cell [A].
40	Rack Cell	—	—	The cartridge label located at cell [A] is unreadable.
41	Rack Cell	—	—	The cartridge label located at cell [A] is not valid.
42	—	—	—	The system has failed. A service call is required.
43	—	—	—	* The accessor or gripper configuration has changed. The library must be retargeted.
44	—	—	—	* The top two I/O station cells are inaccessible. Move cartridges to cell 3 or below.
45	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser ([A]) cannot be removed from cell [B].
46	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser ([A]) cannot be removed from high-capacity station cell [B].
47	Device	—	—	Device [A] has failed. A service call is needed.
48	Device	—	—	A cartridge containing invalid media has been left in device [A] feed slot. Remove the cartridge.
49	Volser	—	—	An invalid media volser ([A]) has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.
50	Volser	—	—	An invalid media volser ([A]) has been ejected to the high-capacity output station.
51	—	—	—	* The library is out of HPCT cleaner cartridges.
52	Volser	—	—	A volser ([A]) with an unknown media type has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.
53	Volser	Rack Cell	—	A volser ([A]) with an unknown media type has been ejected to high-capacity output facility cell [B].
54	Volser	—	—	Volser ([A]) cannot be removed from the convenience I/O station.
55	—	—	—	Free storage threshold has been crossed for VTS z.

Table 10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type) (continued)

OPINT #	Parameter [A]	Parameter [B]	Parameter [C]	Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message
56	Volser	—	—	A volser ([A]) with an unknown media type has been left in the convenience input station.
57	Volser	—	—	A volser ([A]) with an unknown media type has been left in the high-capacity input station.
58	Volser	—	—	An invalid volser ([A]) has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.
59	Rack Cell	—	—	The cartridge label located at cell [A] has an unknown media type.
60	Volser	—	—	During an Inventory Update operation, volser [A] was ejected to the convenience I/O station because there were no free cells.
61	Volser	—	—	During an Inventory Update operation, volser [A] was ejected to the High-Capacity station because there were no free cells.
62	Accessor	—	—	Power failure on Accessor [A]. Call service.
63	Accessor	—	—	Accessor [A] has failed. Call service.
64	—	—	—	Dual write has failed. A service call is required.
65	Volser	Slot	Rack Cell	An error occurred for cartridge [A] during insert from CIO slot [B] to cell [C].
66	—	—	—	* VTS Import: Unassigned volumes have been inserted into the library.
67	Volser	—	—	Eject failed for volser [A]. The Library Manager initiated this operation.
68	—	—	—	A Library Manager switch has completed. This switch was initiated by the operator.
69	—	—	—	A Library Manager switch has completed. This switch was due to an error.
70	—	—	—	<p>This message may be any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A hard drive has failed. Call service. • LM-A hard drive failure. Call service. Library is operational but degraded. Primary hard drive failed. • LM-A hard drive failure. Call service. Library is operational but degraded. Mirror hard drive failed. • LM-B hard drive failure. Call service. Library is operational but degraded. Primary hard drive failed. • LM-B hard drive failure. Call service. Library is operational but degraded. Mirror hard drive failed.

Table 10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type) (continued)

OPINT #	Parameter [A]	Parameter [B]	Parameter [C]	Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message
71	—	—	—	This message may be any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mirroring disabled. Call service. Library is operational but degraded. • LM-A mirroring disabled. Call service. Library is operational but degraded. • LM-B mirroring disabled. Call service. Library is operational but degraded.
72	—	—	—	Barrier door A is not fully retracted. Call service.
73	—	—	—	Barrier door B is not fully retracted. Call service.
74	—	Port #	—	Control unit on port xx requires a higher level of Library Manager.
75	—	—	—	Database discrepancies have been found. Call service. Library is still operational.
76	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser [A] cannot be found. Check home cell [B] and Accessor A, Gripper 1.
77	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser [A] cannot be found. Check home cell [B] and Accessor A, Gripper 2.
78	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser [A] cannot be found. Check home cell [B] and Accessor B, Gripper 1.
79	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser [A] cannot be found. Check home cell [B] and Accessor B, Gripper 2.
80	—	—	—	Error writing to dual write log (on Library Manager A or B).
81	Accessor	—	—	An emergency stop has occurred, or Accessor [A] has failed. A service call is required.
82	Volser	I/O Slot Number	—	Volser xxxxxx left in convenience I/O slot [B] due to vision system failure.
83	Volser	Rack Cell	—	Volser xxxxxx left in high-capacity rack cell xx y zz [B] due to vision system failure.
84	—	—	—	Scratch mount performance is degraded. A service call is required.
85	—	—	—	Database performance is degraded.
100	Volser	—	—	A read-only status stacked volume [A] has been ejected. (VTS z)
101	—	—	—	* A VTS is out of empty stacked volumes. (VTS z)
102	External	Internal	—	A stacked volume has a label error. Internal: [B], External: [A]. (VTS z)
103	—	—	—	A permanent, unrecoverable tape volume cache error has occurred. (VTS z)
104	Volser	—	—	An orphaned logical volume ([A]) has been found. Call service. (VTS z)
105	—	—	—	A VTS has a CHECK1 failure. (VTS z)

Table 10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type) (continued)

OPINT #	Parameter [A]	Parameter [B]	Parameter [C]	Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message
107	Stacked	Logical	—	Logical volume [B] was not fully recovered from damaged stacked volume [A]. (VTS z)
108	Error Code	—	—	The tape volume cache is degraded. ([A]) (VTS z)
109	Volser	—	—	Database restore from volume [A] failed. Attempting to restore from next most recent. (VTS z)
110	Volser	—	—	Insert of logical volume [A] failed during disaster recovery. (VTS z)
111	Volser	—	—	Damaged volume [A] ejected during disaster recovery. Could not be read on two drives. (VTS z)
112	Device	—	—	Device [A] has been made unavailable by a VTS. (VTS z)
113	VTS	—	—	A VTS does not have enough available physical drives to continue operation.
114	Volser	—	—	A VTS attempted unsuccessfully to eject a stacked volume ([A]) during disaster recovery. (VTS z)
115	Volser	—	—	A VTS attempted unsuccessfully to eject a damaged stacked volume ([A]). (VTS z)
116	Device	—	—	VTS physical device [A] is cabled incorrectly. It has been made unavailable. (VTS z)
117	Device	—	—	A VTS cannot communicate with device [A]. It has been made unavailable. (VTS z)
118	Physical	Logical	Reason Code	Mount of logical volume [B] failed because physical volume [A] is not in the library. (rc=[c]) (VTS z)
120	Physical	Logical	Reason Code	Mount of logical volume [B] failed because physical volume [A] is misplaced. (rc=[c]) (VTS z)
121	Physical	Logical	Reason Code	Mount of logical volume [B] failed because physical volume [A] is inaccessible. (rc=[c]) (VTS z)
122	Physical	Logical	Reason Code	Mount of logical volume [B] located on physical volume [A] failed. (rc=[c]) (VTS z)
123	Volser	Error Code	—	Stacked volume [A] is in Read-Only status with a reason code of [B]. (VTS z)
124	Volser	Error Code	—	Stacked volume [A] is unavailable with a reason code of [B]. (VTS z)
125	Error Code	—	—	VTS Controller degraded. Error Code [A]. Call service. (VTS z)
126	Device	—	—	VTS requested that device [A] be made unavailable, but a mount/demount is in progress. (VTS z)
127	—	—	—	Invalid mixture of VTS physical drive types. (VTS z)

Table 10. Operator Intervention Messages and Parameters (OPINT TRAP Type) (continued)

OPINT #	Parameter [A]	Parameter [B]	Parameter [C]	Actual Library Manager OPINT Trap Message
128	—	—	—	* A VTS does not have enough physical drives to continue operation. (VTS z)
130	Volser	—	—	Stacked volume [A] failed scratch mount. Label cannot be read. Tape needs to be re-initialized. (VTS z)
131	Volser	—	—	Stacked volume [A] ejected due to incompatible media type. (VTS z)
132	Volser	—	—	Stacked volume [A] could not be ejected because the convenience I/O station is full, or the door is open. (VTS z)
134	Volser	—	—	Write-protected stacked volume xxxxxx ejected. (VTS z)
135	Volser	—	—	A VTS unsuccessfully attempted to eject write-protected stacked volume xxxxxx. (VTS z)
300	—	—	—	One or more logical volumes have corrupted tokens. Call service. (VTS z)

UNSOL Library Manager SNMP Traps

This section discusses the format of the Library Manager UNSOL messages. Unlike the Library Manager OPINT SNMP traps, the UNSOL SNMP trap messages are all different and require special programming to handle them.

There are seven supported Library Manager UNSOL SNMP trap messages:

1. X10 - Category State Change
2. X11 - Library Manager Operator Message
3. X12 - Library I/O Station State Change
4. X13 - Operational State Change
5. X14 - Volume Exception
6. X15 - Device Availability Changed
7. X16 - Device Category Change Notification

Note: X represents the hexadecimal value.

Category State Change SNMP Trap

This message indicates that the Library Manager has added one or more cartridges into the Insert category. The Category State Change message format is:

3494 [Library Sequence Number] UNSOL 10 [Parameter A]
 *Volumes added to category: [Parameter A]

Library Sequence Number Unique Library Sequence Number of the 3494 that generated the SNMP trap message.

Parameter A This parameter is the category that volumes are added in.

Library Manager Operator Message SNMP Traps

The content is a message from the Library Manager operator console to all hosts connected to the 3494. The Library Manager Operator Message format is:

3494 [Library Sequence Number] UNSOL 11 *[Message from operator]

Library Sequence Number Unique Library Sequence Number of the 3494 that generated the SNMP trap message.

Message from operator This is the string that the operator on the Library Manager typed in.

Example:

3494 C2444 UNSOL 11 *The 3494 is being taken offline.

Here the C2444 3494 generated the message, and the operator entered "The 3494 is being taken offline".

Library I/O Station State Change SNMP Traps

The Library I/O Station State Change message format is:

3494 [Library Sequence Number] UNSOL 12 [Param A] [Param B] [Param C] [Param D]
[Param E] [Param F] [Param G] [Param H] *I/O Station

Library Sequence Number Unique Library Sequence Number of the 3494 that generated the SNMP trap message.

Param A It is one of the following:
1. **IE** - indicating "All Convenience Input Stations Empty"
2. —

Param B It is one of the following:
1. **IO** - indicating "Open Input Door"
2. —

Param C It is one of the following:
1. **OE** - indicating "All Convenience Output Stations Empty"
2. —

Param D It is one of the following:
1. **OF** - indicating "All Convenience Output Stations Full"
2. —

Param E It is one of the following:
1. **II** - indicating "3494 I/O Station in Input Mode"
2. —

Param F It is one of the following:
1. **BA** - indicating "Bulk I/O Allowed"
2. —

Param G It is one of the following:
1. **BF** - indicating "Bulk Output Station Full"
2. —

Param H It is one of the following:
1. **OO** - indicating "Open Output Door"
2. —

Example:

3494 C2444 UNSOL 12 IE IO - - II - BF - *I/O Station

Operational State Change SNMP Traps

The Operational State Change message format is:

3494 [Library Sequence Number] UNSOL 13 [Mode] [State] [Degraded] [Safety Enclosure Interlock Open] [Vision System Non-Operational] [Intervention Required] [Check1] [All Storage Cells Full] [Out of Cleaners] [Dual Write Disabled] [Smoke Detected] [Manual Mode] *Operational State Change

Library Sequence Number	Unique Library Sequence Number of the 3494 that generated the SNMP trap message.
Mode	The mode is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Auto• Pause• Manual
State	The state is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Online• Offline
Degraded	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• Degrad
Safety Enclosure Interlock Open	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• SO
Vision System Non-Operational	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• VN
Intervention Required	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• IR
Check1	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• C1
All Storage Cells Full	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• SF
Out of Cleaners	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• OC
Dual Write Disabled	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• DD
Smoke Detected	It is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• —• SM

Manual Mode

Manual mode is one of the following:

- —
- MM

Example:

```
C2444 UNSOL 13 AUTO ONLINE - - VN - - - - - *Operational State Change
```

This message indicates that the vision system is not operational.

Volume Exception SNMP Traps

The Volume Exception message format is:

```
3494 [Library Sequence Number] UNSOL 14 [Exception Code] [Volser]  
[Category] [ERA] [Message]
```

Library Sequence Number Unique Library Sequence Number of the 3494 that generated the SNMP trap message.

Exception Code The exception code is one of the following:

- 0x01
- 0x02
- 0x03
- 0x04
- 0x05
- 0x06
- 0x07
- 0x08
- 0x09

Volser This is a six-character string.

Category Category affected by the volume exception.

ERA Additional information, not supported currently.

Message The message is one of the following:

- *Misplaced Volume Found
- *Volume Misplaced
- *Duplicate Volser Ejected
- *Duplicate Volser in Input Station
- *Unreadable Volser left in Input Station
- *Unexpected Volume Ejected
- *Volume Inaccessible
- *Inaccessible Volumes Restored
- *Cleaner Volume Ejected
- *Unknown Volume Exception

The following is an example of a message:

```
3494 C2444 UNSOL 14 1 CNN444 FF01 20 *Misplaced Volume Found
```

Device Availability Changed SNMP Traps

The Device Availability Changed message format is:

```
3494 [Library Sequence Number] UNSOL 15 [Device] [Availability] [Modifier]  
[First Errorcode] [Message String]
```

Library Sequence Number	Unique Library Sequence Number of the 3494 that generated the SNMP trap message.
Device	Device that is going either available or unavailable.
Availability	Availability is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A - Device becoming available • U - Device going unavailable
Modifier	Additional information, not supported currently.
First Errorcode	Additional information, not supported currently.
Message String	The message string is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • *Device [Device] has been made available by the library • *Device [Device] has been made unavailable by the library

The following is an example of a message string:

```
3494 C2444 UNSOL 15 180 A 20 6E84 *Device 180 has been made available by
the Library.
```

Device Category Change Notification SNMP Traps

The Device Category Change Notification message format is:

```
3494 [Library Sequence Number] UNSOL 16 [Device] [Category] [Parameters]
*Device Category Change
```

Library Sequence Number	Unique Library Sequence Number of the tape library that generated the SNMP trap message.
Device	Device reporting the change.
Category	Category change has been made.
Parameters	Additional information, not supported currently.

Example:

```
3494 C2444 UNSOL 16 180 FF01 20 *Device Category Change
```

CHCK1 Library Manager SNMP Traps

This section discusses the format of the Library Manager CHECK1 messages. All CHECK1 Library Manager SNMP Traps have the same format.

The format for CHECK1 Library Manager SNMP Traps is:

```
3494 [Library Sequence Number] CHCK1 [Errorcode] [Modifier] *A CHECK1 with
errorcode: [Errorcode], and modifier: [Modifier], has occurred on [Library Sequence Number]
```

The following is an example of a CHECK1 Library Manager SNMP trap message:

```
3494 C2444 CHCK1 BDDD 230 *A CHECK1 with errorcode: BDDD, and modifier:
230, has occurred on C2444
```

Note: All Library Manager SNMP trap messages are actually one line of text; some have been split in order to fit on the pages of this document.

In the example, a BDDD CHECK1, with modifier 230, occurred on the C2444 tape library.

Errorcode The error code is a hexadecimal value from 0 to 0xFFFF.

Modifier The modifier that the CHECK1 uses for additional information about the condition. Valid values are 0 to 64 KB.

TESTM Library Manager SNMP Traps

This section discusses the TESTM Library Manager SNMP trap messages. All Library Manager TESTM SNMP trap messages have the following format:

3494 [Library Sequence Number] TESTM *{User Message}

The following is an example of a TESTM Library Manager SNMP trap message:

3494 C2444 TESTM *THIS IS A TEST, 8/26/01 - 10:30 am

In this example, the user entered the string "THIS IS A TEST, 8/26/01 - 10:30 am". The asterisk character (*) is inserted automatically in the Library Manager TESTM message. It is intended to aid the monitor station programmer.

Call Home

The Call Home window () allows you to initiate a "Call Home" for a selected subsystem.

You can initiate a "Call Home" request by performing the following steps:

1. Select a subsystem from the list box, which contains a list of subsystems that are capable of Call Home operations.
2. Select the button for the **Type of Call Home** request. There are two types of Call Home requests:

Initial install

Select to send a request to test the installation of the Call Home function in the subsystem. A service representative normally initiates this request.

Subsystem problem

Select to send a request to a subsystem to execute its Call Home function. You normally initiate this request because you found a problem in the subsystem.

Send LM code level

Select to send a request to the subsystem to execute its LM Call Home function. This is generally not an error condition and is normally initiated by the customer so that accurate LM code levels are reported. Please note that a subsystem may be "Call Home" capable but not necessarily "LM Call Home" capable. In this case a warning popup message will be posted for that subsystem.

3. Select the **Initiate call home...** push button to send the request.

The Call Home window has the following controls:

Type of Call Home

These buttons allow you to select the type of Call Home request that you want to initiate.

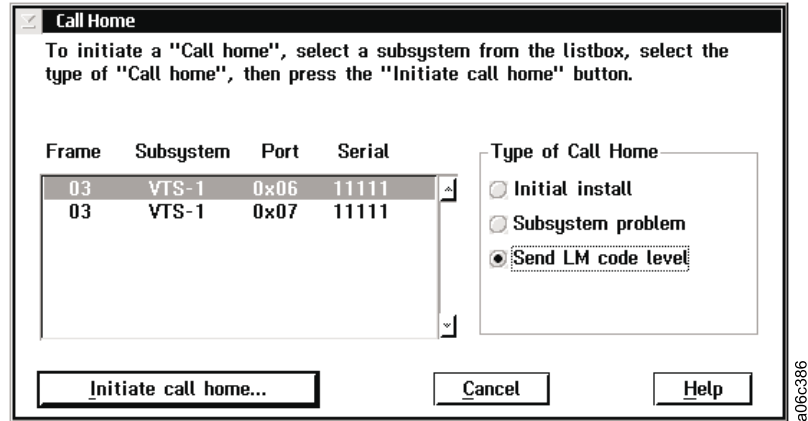


Figure 161. Call Home Window

The Call Home window has the following push buttons:

<u>I</u> nitiate call home...	Initiates the Call Home request.
<u>C</u> ancel	Closes the Call Home window without initiating the Call Home request.
<u>H</u> elp	Provides help about the Call Home window.

Specialist (Web Server)

The Specialist must be enabled before it can function. Selecting the **Specialist (Web Server)** option opens a window with the following options:

Settings	Selecting this option allows control of the Web Administrator's userid and selection of function available to users through the Specialist interface. The Web Administrator's userid must be activated from the LM console before any set up of additional userids and passwords can be done. The 3494 Specialist is shipped with a default userid. Once the Web Administrator's userid is activated successfully, the system administrator can login as the WEBADMIN user and create other userids and passwords. The WEBADMIN userid is shipped with a default password.
-----------------	--

Note: See "Establishing Userids" on page 276 below for more information on administering userids and passwords. The default userid and password can be found in that section.

The following actions can be performed from the Settings screen on the LM:

- Activate/Deactivate the Web Administrator's User ID (select the Activate or Deactivate button)
- Reset the Web Administrator's password to the default password (select the Reset to default

button). This should be used in emergency situations when the person who knows the password is not available.

- Allow or restrict access to Web pages that provide control of Library Manager information. The System Administrator can decide what LM control functions are available to users. Each control page can be allowed or restricted. The administrator may allow users to insert logical volumes, but not allow them to update storage pool properties. To do this, select "Yes" or "No" in the Allow Access options and select the **Submit Access Change** button.

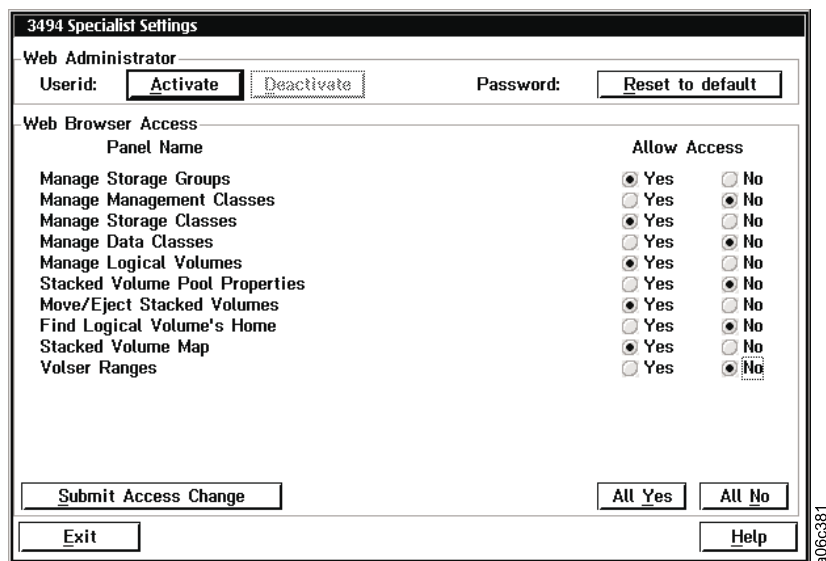


Figure 162. 3494 Specialist Settings

<u>A</u> ctivate	Activates the Web Administrator's User ID.
<u>D</u> eactivate	Deactivates the Web Administrator's User ID.
<u>R</u> eset to default	Resets the Web Administrator's password to the default password.
<u>S</u> ubmit Access Change	Submits the selected access changes.
<u>A</u> ll <u>Y</u> es	Marks all of the Allow Access options "Yes."
<u>A</u> ll <u>N</u> o	Marks all of the

		Allow Access options "No."
	Exit	Closes the 3494 Specialist Settings window.
	Help	Provides help about the 3494 Specialist Settings window.
Enable/Disable	<p>Selecting this option allows you to either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enable: Enable and start the Specialist function. This allows remote access to Library Manager status information and limited control functions. • Disable: Disable and stop the Specialist function and prevent it from restarting. Remote access to Library Manager status information and control functions is not allowed. You may select this option at any time. <p>When you have enabled the Specialist, it continues to run while the Library Manager is powered-on. To ensure that the Specialist is running, press Ctrl+Esc. If the Specialist is enabled and running, 3494 TotalStorage Specialist will be in a window list. Press Esc to close the window list.</p> <p>Note: You cannot enable the Specialist from the Specialist. You must do this at the Library Manager.</p> <p>If the Enable option is unavailable, the Specialist has already been enabled. At this time, the Disable option is available.</p> <p>If the Specialist (Web server) option in the Commands window is unavailable, the Library Manager operating system either is not at the proper level or does not have enough memory to support the Web server. The Specialist cannot be started.</p>	

Establishing Userids

The default userid and password are WEBADMIN and WEBADMIN. In order to use any control functions on the Web Specialist, the default userid must be activated from the LM. To activate the WEBADMIN userid, do the following:

1. Select **Commands**.
2. Select **3494 Specialist (Web Server)**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select the **Activate** push button.
5. Wait for the message that the Web Administrator Userid was activated.

Attention: It is recommended that the default password be changed immediately following activation of the userid.

To change a user's password (including WEBADMIN), do the following:

1. Access the Specialist Web interface.
2. Select **Security**.
3. Select **Change User Password**.

Users can also modify their own passwords by completing the above procedure.

The Specialist allows limited control functions to be performed from a remote location. These functions are protected by secure userids and passwords. When one of these functions that allow modifications to the Library Manager is selected, you will be prompted for a userid and password. You are only required to log in once per browser session. If you leave the browser open and walk away after logging in, other people will have access to make modifications. If you open a different browser or close the browser completely, you will be asked to log in again.

To add additional users, do the following:

Note: The maximum number of users is 48.

1. Access the Specialist Web interface.
2. Select **Security**.
3. Select **Administer Users**.
4. Add the appropriate userids and passwords. Userids or passwords must be a one to eight-alphanumeric character name. They are not case sensitive.

It is recommended that the WEBADMIN userid be deactivated after the individual userids have been established. The WEBADMIN userid is a superuser ID. There should be limited access to the password. To deactivate the WEBADMIN userid, do the following:

1. Select **Commands**.
2. Select **3494 Specialist (Web Server)**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select the **Deactivate** push button.

Using the Specialist

A Web browser, such as Netscape Navigator 4.7 or Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.0, must be installed on the user's computer. Perform the following steps to use the Specialist:

1. From the user's computer, start either Netscape Navigator or Microsoft Internet Explorer.
2. In the Web address or Location space (where you would enter, for example, www.ibm.com), type the host name of the Library Manager. This is the TCP/IP name that was given to the Library Manager at configuration time. Your TCP/IP administrator should know this name. Instead of the host name in the Web address space, you can enter the IP address of the Library Manager. If you do not have a nameserver or the name of your Library Manager does not have an entry in your nameserver, you must use the IP address instead of a name. Again, your TCP/IP administrator will know this information.

In this example, you would type:

`http://libmgr01`

OR

`http://9.67.43.126`

With newer browsers, it is not necessary to type:

`http://`

before entering the host name or IP address.

Note that you can always use the IP address, but it is more difficult to remember than a host name. That is why a nameserver is used normally. You might need to type the whole host name and domain name, such as:

`http://libmgr01.vnet.ibm.com`

Try typing only the host name first. In a local intranet, this usually works. If you receive the home page for the Specialist, it is enabled and running.

Using the Options Window

Figure 163 shows the Options window.

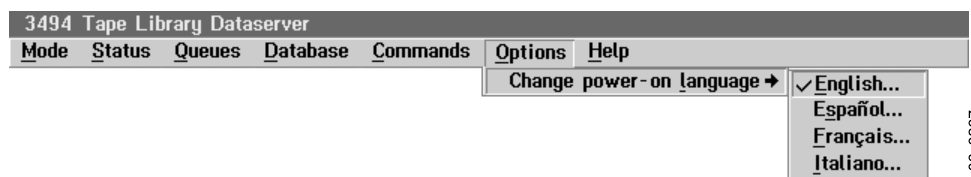


Figure 163. Options Window

The following option is available in the Options window:

Change power-on language	Displays a list of supported languages that are selectable. A check mark indicates the current language. If you select a language, you are requested to confirm your selection. The new language becomes active when the Library Manager is shut down and restarted.
---------------------------------	--

Using Manual Mode

You can use Manual mode during the following conditions:

- A problem in the 3494 prevents automated operations.
- A service representative is performing scheduled maintenance activities.

The Library Manager allows you to select Manual mode in the Mode window of the Operator menu (see “Manual Mode” in “Using the Mode Window” on page 108).

When in Manual mode, you follow the instructions on the Library Manager display and confirm as necessary when you complete the instructions. The 3494 continues to process automatically mount and demount requests that are issued to the virtual drives in a VTS. These requests are not included in the actions that display for operator processing. If a logical volume needs to be recalled from a physical volume in order to satisfy a mount to a virtual drive, the actions that are required under Manual mode include the resulting mount for that physical volume.

Typical actions include physical cartridge mounts, demounts, and ejects (removing cartridges from the 3494). A sample window with pending actions is shown in Figure 168 on page 282.

The Library Manager recognizes when a requested physical cartridge is mounted successfully in the requested drive and removes the mount request from the list automatically. Instructions to eject a cartridge are removed from the list manually when you use the keyboard to confirm (respond) that the action is completed or has an error.

A limited number of processed instructions can be viewed on the Library Manager display to correct any mistakes (see Figure 171 on page 288).

See “Cartridge Storage Cells” on page 26 for a description of the **From** and **To** locations used to find a cartridge for a mount.

Note: The display windows shown are examples. They may not be exactly the same as the windows on your Library Manager display.

Attention: In the event the Library Manager cannot park the accessor, it is possible usually to operate the 3494 in Manual mode. The operator should move the accessor manually only to gain access to a cartridge or to a drive. If necessary, perform “Cartridge Removal from the Gripper” on page 299. Call your service representative.

Starting Manual Mode

To start Manual mode, perform the following steps:

1. Select **Mode** (Figure 164) from the action bar of the Operator menu at the Library Manager (see “Using the Mode Window” on page 108).
2. Verify that the 3494 is online. If it is offline, select the **Online...** option and confirm your selection (see “Online” on page 110).
3. Select the **Manual...** option in the Mode window (see “Manual” on page 110).

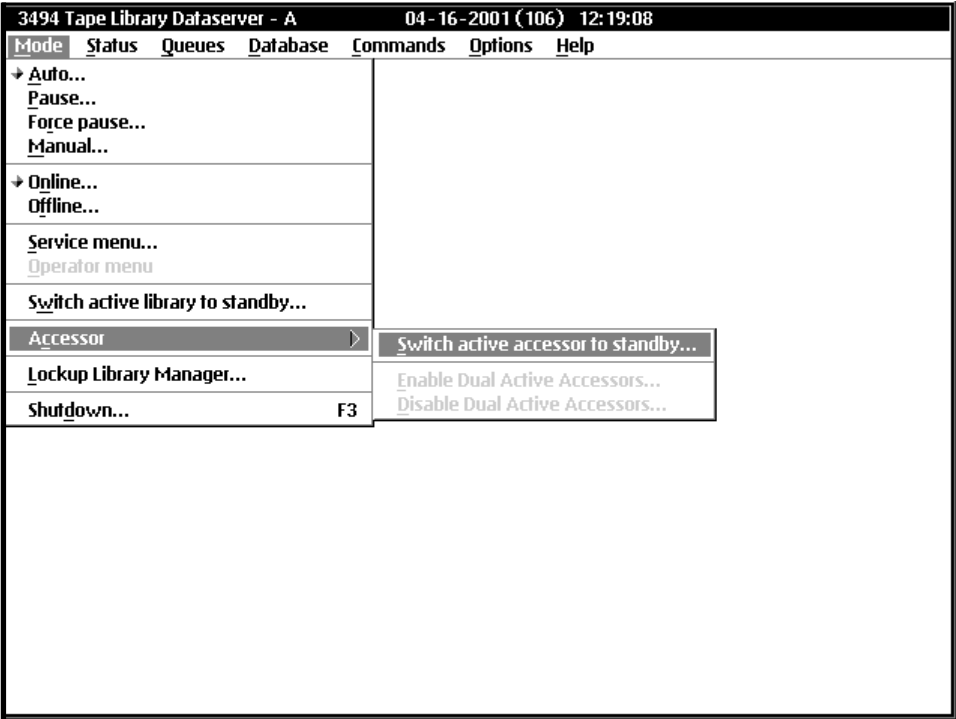


Figure 164. Mode Window

4. Select the **Yes** push button in the Mode/State Change Request window (Figure 165 on page 281) to start the change to Manual mode.

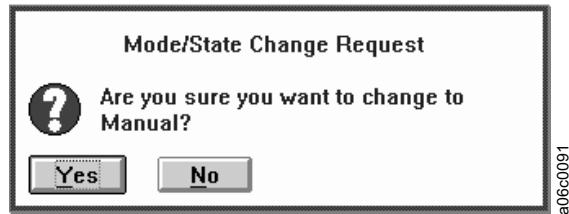


Figure 165. Mode/State Change Request Window

During the change to Manual mode, a wait period allows the Library Manager, if possible, to process all operations in progress, park the cartridge accessor, and remove power from the cartridge accessor. Figure 166 shows the Manual Pending window.

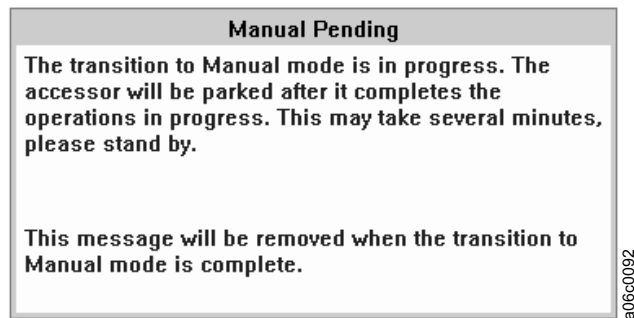


Figure 166. Manual Pending Window

When the transition to Manual mode is complete, the Manual Mode Terminal window opens, displaying the Help screen for the Action List (see Figure 167).

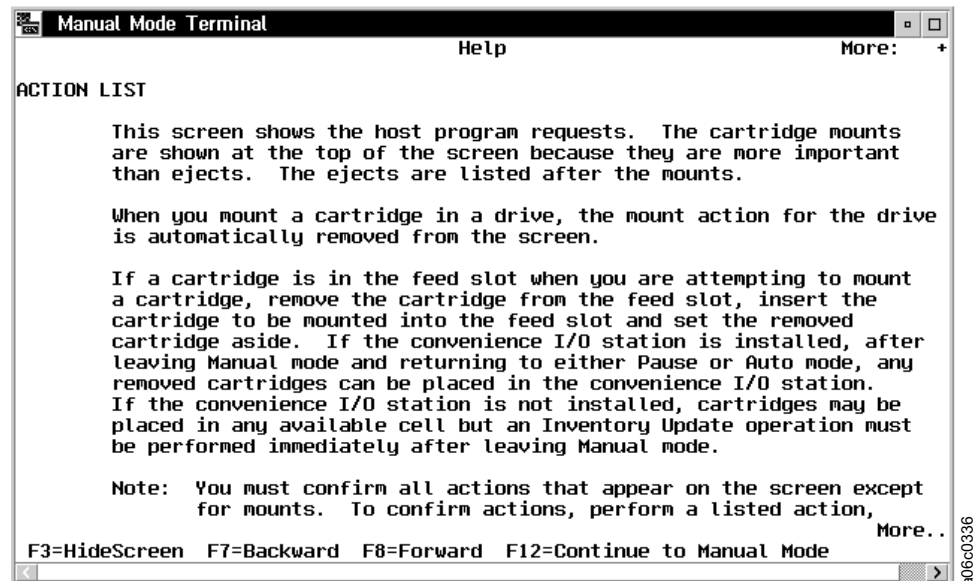


Figure 167. Help Screen for Action List

To continue to the Manual Mode Action List, press F12. This completes the transition to Manual mode.

You can use the F3 key to hide the Manual Mode Terminal window. The window will be hidden, but you can retrieve it by selecting the **Manual...** option in the Mode window.

Operating in Manual Mode

Figure 168 shows the Manual Mode Terminal window with the Action List.

Action List

Select an action. Press Enter to confirm action completion (except Mounts).

Action	VOLSER	From	To
Mount	WCC007	Rack 12 B 11	Device 3F1
Mount	WSB392	Rack 7 C 5	Device 3F0
Mount	TFW001	Device 201	Device 3F1
Mount	SCR023	Rack 12 E 6	Device 3F0
Mount	WR0112	Rack 3 J 13	Device 201
Mount	TGB041	Rack 4 F 3?	Device 200
Mount	ECR223	Rack 10 D 13	Device 3F1
Mount	SFC607	Rack 9 F 2	Device 3E1
Mount	FGG641	Rack 11 C 10	Device 200
Eject	ERV399	Rack 13 F 11	

More actions are waiting.
Press the Refresh key (F9) to update the list.
F1=Help F3=HideScreen F4=Error F5=Insert F6=Review F9=Refresh F10=Locate

Figure 168. Manual Mode Terminal Window with Action List

Legend:

Action	The operator task. See the following procedures for details.
VOLSER	The cartridge volume serial number.
From	The place where you should find the cartridge specified in VOLSER.
To	The place where you should put the cartridge.
Device	The 3490E or 3590 tape drive.
Rack	The physical storage address that can contain one cartridge.
?	The cartridge may not be in the location specified. See note 2b on page 284.

The Action List presents tasks to perform. Perform the actions in the sequence listed (see Figure 168). Read the following Mount, Demount, Insert, and Eject procedures for how to perform each action.

The following function keys are available on the Action List:

- F1** Displays instructions for performing Manual mode tasks.
- F3** Hides the Manual Mode Terminal window. The window is hidden, but you can retrieve it by selecting the Mode window, then selecting **Manual** mode.
- F4** Indicates that an action cannot be completed. The Error Processing window opens, which contains a list of possible error choices (see Figure 172 on page 289).

- F5** Allows you to add volumes manually to the 3494. The Insert Cartridges window opens, which contains prompts for cartridge insertion (see Figure 169 on page 285).
- F6** Displays up to the last 20 commands processed in Manual mode. You can use this to verify or to correct a possible error when returning a cartridge to its storage cell.
- F7** Displays information above the visible area of the screen.
- F8** Displays information below the visible area of the screen.
- F9** Updates the Action List with additional host requests.
- F10** Opens the Locate Cartridge Home window, which allows you to find a volser's home cell (see Figure 173 on page 290).

In addition, the following keys are on the Action List:

- Arrows** Highlights the action to be performed. You can use the up arrow (↑) or down arrow (↓).
- Enter** Sends confirmation to the Library Manager that the highlighted action (eject) was completed.

Select the action. Instructions include the following:

- Mount** Specifies the cartridge volser to be retrieved from a specific storage cell and loaded in a specific tape drive.
- Eject** Specifies the cartridge volser to be removed from the 3494.

Note: If the drive's feed slot already contains a cartridge, perform "Demounting Cartridges" on page 284.

Mounting Cartridges

The 3490E message display or the 3590 operator panel and the Action List display mount requests from the host. The two mount procedures are "Using the Drive Message Display", which is the most efficient, and "Using the Action List".

Attention: Do not attempt to insert a 3590 High Performance Cartridge Tape or Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape into a 3490E tape drive. Do not attempt to insert a 3490E Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape into a 3590 tape drive.

Using the Drive Message Display

Do not use the Library Manager for this procedure. Perform the following steps to use the drive message display:

1. Read the 3490E or 3590 message display for the volume serial number of the cartridge and the cell location of the volume. The drive message display alternates between the two messages.
2. Get the cartridge from the specified cell location.
3. Mount the cartridge on the specified drive. If the drive's feed slot already contains a cartridge, perform "Demounting Cartridges" on page 284.

Using the Action List

Use the Library Manager for this procedure. Perform the following steps to use the Action List:

1. Select mounts in the order shown on the Action List (Figure 168 on page 282). The mounts are listed in order of priority with the highest priority at the top.

Note: Mounts are confirmed and removed from the Action List automatically when a successful mount is done.

2. Get the specified volume at its **From** storage cell location. See “Cartridge Storage Cells” on page 26 if you are not familiar with the numbering of components.

Notes:

- a. If the **From** location is a drive, remove the cartridge from the drive.
 - b. If the **From** location is followed by ?, the cartridge has already been used in Manual mode. If the cartridge is not in the indicated **From** location, look in the output facility where you are storing demounted cartridges (for example, the cartridge cart or the high-capacity output facility).
3. Place the volume in the specified **To** drive. The message display on the drive indicates the volser of the requested volume alternating with the cell location of the cartridge.

Note: If the drive already contains a cartridge, perform “Demounting Cartridges”.

Demounting Cartridges

Note: Do not place demounted cartridges in the high-capacity output facility. If you do, they will not be scanned and reinserted, because the facility is configured only for output. If the high-capacity I/O facility is defined, you can use it to store the demounted cartridges, because the facility will be scanned on returning to Auto mode.

When you are performing a mount and the drive contains a cartridge, perform the following steps:

1. Remove the cartridge from the drive.
2. Perform one of the following procedures with the cartridge:
 - Place the cartridges in a secure location, such as a cartridge cart. Put these cartridges in the 3494 through an I/O station when you return the 3494 to Auto mode.
 - For an extended period of Manual mode, you may choose to use Figure 173 on page 290 to put the cartridges in their home cells.
 - Place the cartridge in any unoccupied cartridge cell in the 3494, **except in the high-capacity output cells**. Ensure that Inventory Update is enabled.

Inserting Cartridges

An Insert operation is initiated when you must add a cartridge to the 3494. One or more cartridges may be in the convenience I/O station, or someone may give you a cartridge to add to the 3494. Perform the following steps to insert a cartridge:

1. Press the **Insert** key (F5) on the Action List of the Library Manager (see Figure 168 on page 282).
2. In the Insert Cartridges window (Figure 169 on page 285), enter the volser of the cartridge to be inserted. The cartridge volser is the set of up to six alphanumeric characters on the label attached to the end of the cartridge.

Note: Use the left arrow (←) and right arrow (→) keys to move the cursor within a field. Use the Tab key to move between fields.

3. Type the character (**1**, **E**, **J**, or **K**) that corresponds to the cartridge type.

Notes:

- a. Cartridge System Tape (single-tone case) is type **1**.
 - b. Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape (two-tone case) is type **E**.
 - c. High Performance Cartridge Tape (black with blue inserts) is type **J**.
 - d. Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape (black with green inserts) is type **K**.
4. Type the character (0, 1, or 2) that corresponds to the 3494 with which to associate the cartridge. The following are the options:
 0. Non-VTS Library
 1. VTS 1
 2. VTS 2

The associated library sequence number displays next to each option.

Note: You can insert only **J**- and **K**-type media into a VTS logical library.

Insert Cartridges

Complete the cartridge information, then press the Enter key.

Volser of Cartridge. . .	WCC001
Cartridge type	<u>1</u> . Cartridge System Tape
	E. Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
	J. High Performance Cartridge Tape
	K. Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape
Library	<u>0</u> . Non-VTS Library - xxxxx
	1. VTS 1 - xxxxx
	2. VTS 2 - xxxxx

F1=Help F3=HideScreen F12=Cancel

Figure 169. Manual Mode Insert Cartridges Window

The following function keys are available in the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| F1 | Provides help about the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window. |
| F3 | Hides the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window. The Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window is hidden, but you can retrieve it by selecting the Mode window, then selecting the Manual mode option. |
| F12 | Closes the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window and returns to the Action List. |
| Arrows | Move the cursor by pressing the right arrow (→) or left arrow (←) key. |
| Enter | Confirms entries in a field or confirms the insertion of a cartridge. |

5. Press the **Enter** key. A window (Figure 170) opens with the **Home Cell** rack storage location for the inserted cartridge.
 6. Place the cartridge in the designated rack storage cell.
- Note:** If you cannot put the cartridge in the specified storage cell, press the **Error** key (**F4**) to request a new storage cell location.
7. Press the **Enter** key to confirm that the Insert action is complete. The Insert Cartridges window opens again.
 8. If you have another cartridge to insert, repeat step 2 on page 284 through step 7 for the next cartridge. If there are no more cartridges to insert, press the **Cancel** key (**F12**) to return to the Action List.

Insert Cartridges

Complete the cartridge information, then press the Enter key.

Volser of Cartridge. . . WCC001

Cartridge type

- _1. Cartridge System Tape
- _E. Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
- _J. High Performance Cartridge Tape
- _K. Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape

Put the cartridge in the indicated home cell, press the Enter key.
If you cannot use the home cell, press the Error key (F4) to have a different cell specified.

Home Cell . . . Rack 1 B 10

F1=Help F4=Error F12=Cancel

F1=Help F3=HideScreen F12=Cancel

Figure 170. Manual Mode Insert Cartridges Window

The following function keys are available in the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window:

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| F1 | Provides help about the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window. |
| F4 | Allows you to specify another home-cell location because you cannot insert the cartridge in the specified location. |
| F12 | Closes the window and returns to the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window. |
| Enter | Sends confirmation to the host program, which verifies that the cartridge is inserted in the specified location. Also, opens the Manual Mode Insert Cartridges window for the next Insert operation. |

Note: When you return to the Manual mode Action List (Figure 168 on page 282), if you inserted J- or K-type media in a 3494 capable of Export and Import operations, the Manage Unassigned Volumes window (Figure 109 on page 197) opens automatically.

Ejecting Cartridges

Perform the following steps to remove a cartridge from the 3494:

1. From the Action List window (Figure 168 on page 282), determine the drive (device) or storage cell **From** location containing the cartridge that you want to eject.
2. Go to the drive or storage cell and remove the cartridge. Verify that the cartridge volser matches the volser specified on the Action List.

Notes:

- a. If the **From** location is a drive, remove the cartridge from the drive.
- b. If a ? follows the **From** location, the cartridge has already been used in Manual mode. If the cartridge is not present in the indicated **From** location, look in the location where you are storing demounted cartridges (for example, the high-capacity output area).
3. Remove the cartridge from the enclosure or place it in a safe location. Be sure to remove all ejected cartridges from the enclosure when you complete Manual mode operations.
4. Confirm that the eject operation is complete by performing the following steps:
 - a. On the Library Manager Action List, highlight the action item you want to confirm.
To highlight an item, use the up arrow (↑) or down arrow (↓) key to move the highlight bar to the desired action item.
 - b. To confirm the highlighted action item, press the **Enter** key.

Note: Be sure to confirm each ejected cartridge after completing the eject task. Eject actions remain on the Action List until you confirm them manually.

5. Press the **Refresh** key (F9) to update the list.

Reviewing Unknown Volume Locations

Use this procedure if you are not sure where a volume should go. You can display the volser **From** location and **To** location of the last 20 completed actions. Perform the following steps and use this information to verify the accuracy of a completed action item:

1. Press the **Review** key (F6) on the Library Manager Action List (Figure 168 on page 282).
2. Press **F12** to return to the Action List.

If the Manual Mode Review List (Figure 171 on page 288) did not list the volume, use the Locate Cartridge Home window (Figure 173 on page 290) to find a storage cell to put the volume in.

Review List					
Action	VOLSER	From		To	
Mount	GKT333	Rack	2 B 40	Device 200	Confirmed
Eject	SRJ485	Rack	1 A 7		Confirmed
Mount	EPF371	Device	200	Device 3E1	Confirmed
Mount	SDR495	Rack	7 A 6	Device 201	ERROR (see Note)

F1=Help F3=HideScreen F12=Cancel

Figure 171. Manual Mode Review List Window

Note: The operator pressing F4 on the Action List caused the ERROR indication.

You can only view this list. You perform the tasks (actions) from the Action List.

Error Processing

Perform the following steps to describe the problem to the host system if you cannot complete a mount or eject action:

1. Highlight the action item that you cannot complete on the Action List. Use the up arrow (↑) or down arrow (↓) key to highlight the questioned action.
2. Press the **Error** key (F4) on the Library Manager Action List.
3. Select the error description that best fits the problem. Use the up arrow (↑) or down arrow (↓) key in the Manual Mode Error Processing window (Figure 172 on page 289) to highlight the error description.
4. Press the **Enter** key to send the error description to the host processor.

Note: Press the **Cancel** key (F12) to replace the Error Processing window with the Action List. No error message is sent.

Error Processing

Select the error description that best fits the error situation and press the Enter key.

Action	VOLSER	From	To
Mount	SSG332	Rack 2 D 22	Device 3F5

Error Description . . .

- Rack Cell Empty
- Rack Cell In Use
- Wrong VOLSER
- Device In Use
- No Cartridge In Device
- Cartridge Not Found**
- Other Error

F1=Help F3=HideScreen F12=Cancel

Figure 172. Manual Mode Error Processing Window

Locating and Identifying Home-Cell Locations

You may need to locate and identify the home-cell location for one of the following reasons:

- To determine the home cell in which to place a misplaced or inaccessible volume.
- To determine the home cell so you can find a volume.

Perform the following steps to locate and identify the home-cell location:

1. Press the **Locate** key (**F10**) on the Library Manager Action List (Figure 168 on page 282).
2. Enter the volume to find its home cell, then press the **Enter** key.
The home cell for the volume displays in the Locate Cartridge Home window (Figure 173 on page 290).
3. If you place the volume in the home cell or verify that the volume is already in the home cell, press the **Enter** key; otherwise, press the **Cancel** key (**F12**).
4. Press the **Cancel** key (**F12**) to return to the Action List.

Note: The Locate function works only for physical volumes. Logical volumes do not have a home cell.

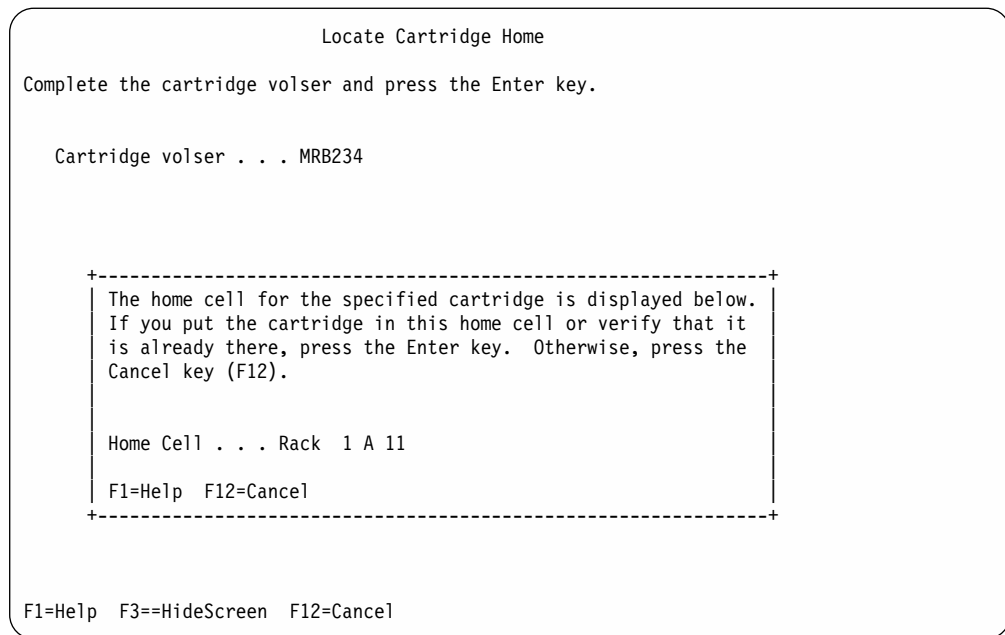


Figure 173. Manual Mode Locate Cartridge Home Window

Ending Manual Mode

To end Manual mode, perform the following steps:

1. Leave the cartridges in the drives. The 3494 moves them automatically when it returns to Auto mode.
2. Close the front doors on the 3494.
3. Ensure that any mounts that have been started are not on the Manual Mode display.
4. Press **Ctrl+Esc** to produce the task list.
5. Select the **Library Manager** option on the task list with the pointing device.
6. Select **Mode** from the action bar on the Operator menu.
7. Verify that the 3494 is online. If the 3494 is offline, select the **Online...** option and confirm your selection.
8. Enable Inventory Update if it is disabled so that Inventory Update can reestablish current location on all volsers.
9. Select the **Auto...** option in the Mode window. The Mode Change Request window opens to ask if you want to change the operating mode. Select the **Yes** push button to change to Auto mode.

An Auto Pending message indicates that the transition to Auto mode is in progress. The 3494 returns to Auto mode after Manual mode.

When the transition to Auto mode is made, an inventory update is performed. The Inventory Update operation must complete before the Auto activity resumes.

3494 Web Interfaces

This section describes the following 3494 remote Web interfaces:

- Specialist
- Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist

These features are part of a family of IBM TotalStorage management products. These Specialists enable you to communicate with specific storage devices in your enterprise from a remote location using a Web browser.

Specialist Features and Functions

The Specialist is the Web-based user interface that can be used to view the current status and configuration of the 3494 and the Library Manager. It can also be used to perform limited control functions on the Library Manager.

Specialist Page Layout

The Specialist provides display functions and limited control functions. The following are available on the Specialist:

- A home page
- A set of Library Manager pages
- A set of Logical Libraries pages
- A set of VTS pages (if a VTS is installed)
- A set of Security pages (functional code level 527 or greater)
- Links to the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist (if a Peer-to-Peer VTS is installed)

The Specialist displays the content of pages similar to the content of pages at the Library Manager. This makes the transition to using the Specialist easier. The tasks that can be performed from the Specialist are listed in Table 11 in the order they appear in the navigation frame. For more information on each task, there is user assistance provided on the Specialist.

Table 11. Quick Reference to Specialist Advanced Operating Procedures

Task	Description
Home	Displays what is currently attached to the system. Also allows you to select a language.
Library Manager	Displays a system summary of the Library Manager.
Operational Status	Displays information on the 3494 operational status.
Operator Interventions	Displays a list of operator interventions which can be sorted by date and time or priority.
Component Availability	Displays the availability of library components.
Performance Statistics	Displays a table and graph that displays the current library performance statistics. Statistics are compiled on the hour.
Accessor Mounts per Hour	Displays a table and graph that displays the accessor mounts per hour. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours.
Command Queue	Displays a table that shows the commands in the queue and information about the commands.
Volser Ranges	Displays a table that summarizes the currently defined volser ranges.
Cleaner Masks	Displays a list of cleaner cartridge masks currently being used in the library.

Table 11. Quick Reference to Specialist Advanced Operating Procedures (continued)

Logical Libraries	An overview of the 3494 logical configuration.
Native	Displays information about the native partition status of the Library.
VTs 1	Displays information about the VTs partition status of the Library. If a second VTs exists in the configuration, a VTs 2 navigation item will appear.
VTs	Summarizes the VTs status, if a VTs exists in the configuration. If there are two VTss configured, a second navigation item will appear.
Status	
Active Data	Displays the amount of free storage, maximum active data, active storage, and a free storage alarm level for VTs. Data is displayed for the previous 30 days.
Active Data Distribution	Displays distribution in percentage of active data on volumes. If the VTs is Advanced Policy Management capable (FC 4001), percentages are shown for each pool, as well as all pools.
Data Flow	Displays the amount of data written to and read from the channel. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours.
Logical Mounts per Hour	Displays the number of logical mounts per hour, which includes the sum of fast ready mounts, cache hit mounts, and physical mounts (recalls). Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours.
Mount Hit Data	Displays the distribution in percentage of three types of logical mounts: fast ready hits, cache hits, and physical mounts required. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours.
Physical Device Mount History	Displays the maximum, average, and minimum numbers of physical tape drives used at one time to mount stacked volumes. Data is displayed for the previous 24 hours.
Real Time Statistics	Displays the VTs real time statistics. If the VTs is Advanced Policy Management capable (FC 4001), backstore media counts by pool are included.
Move/Eject Status	Displays the status of in-progress eject and move stacked volume requests.
Volser Ranges	Displays the currently defined volser ranges.
Management Policies	Displays the current VTs management policy settings for inhibit reclaim and the free storage threshold. If the VTs is Advanced Policy Management capable (FC 4001), thresholds are shown by pool.
Category Attributes	Displays a list of categories which are defined as "Fast Ready" categories.

Table 11. Quick Reference to Specialist Advanced Operating Procedures (continued)

Administration	
Find Logical Volume	Allows you to locate a logical volume's physical location.
Manage Logical Volume	Allows you to insert logical tape volumes into a VTS partition or change storage constructs assigned to logical volumes.
Manage Constructs	Allows you to add, delete, or change storage management constructs (storage groups, storage classes, management classes, data classes).
Move/Eject Stacked Volumes	Allows you to move and eject stacked volumes. You can also cancel active move/eject stacked volume requests. This feature is only available if the VTS is Advanced Policy Management capable (FC 4001). Eject functions may be available with a recent level of functional code.
Request Stacked Volume Mape	Allows you to request a list of logical volumes on a physical cartridge and download it to your hard drive or to a disk.
Select Storage Pool Properties	Allows you to set storage pool properties. These properties define whether a pool can borrow/take from the Common Scratch Pool, and if so, what type of media.
Modify Volser Ranges	Allows you to add, modify, delete, or view Volser ranges.
Security	Allows you to make changes to user and password settings.
Change User Password	Allows all authorized users to change their passwords.
Administer Users	Allows a person with Web administrator (webadmin) authority to add users, delete users, or change passwords for other users.
Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist	Selecting Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist displays a list of PtP VTSs configured in the library (see "Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Features and Functions" on page 295). Then, selecting the name of a PtP VTS displays a list of virtual tape controllers. Selecting a virtual tape controller links you to the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist. Note that if there is not at least one PtP VTS configured in the 3494, the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist selection will not be shown and will not be selectable.

Specialist Connection

Figure 174 on page 294 shows the connection for the Specialist. The connection uses currently available 3494 components. The Web browser is in your system. Your system must be LAN-attached to provide connectivity to the 3494. Service representatives may also use the Remote Access path by using SLIP through the Remote Support modem and switch.

You must connect the Library Manager to your system's LAN with FC 5219 (Token-Ring Adapter) or FC 5220 (Ethernet Adapter). During the installation process, the service representative will set up TCP/IP on the Library Manager to use your assigned TCP/IP host name and TCP/IP address (and router information, if necessary). You can help the installation process if you obtain the following information before the installation starts:

- TCP/IP host name
- TCP/IP address
- Subnet mask (or network mask)
- Router address (or Gateway address)*
- Domain name*
- Nameserver address*

* These items are optional. Their use depends on your system's LAN configuration.

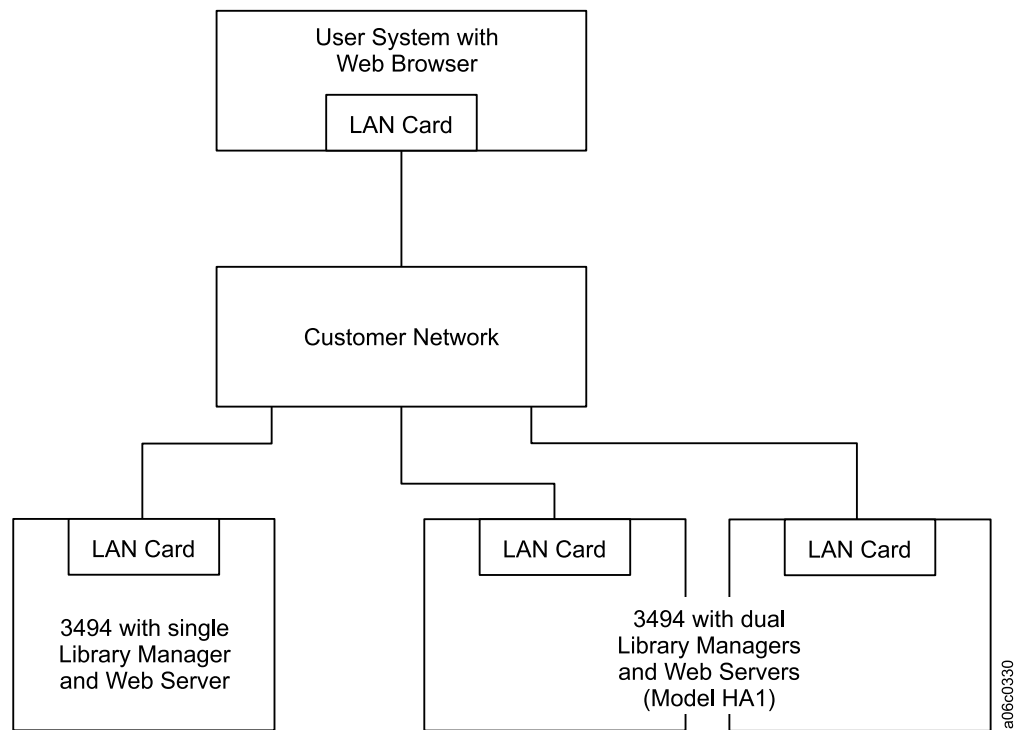


Figure 174. Specialist Connection

System Requirements

You must have a commonly used browser to view the information provided by the Specialist. Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 5.0 or Netscape Navigator Version 4.7 with JavaScript™ and Java™ enabled provides compatible capability. The Specialist does not support a text-based Web browser.

Help Text

Help is available on a page basis. There is a Help button on each Web page that, when selected, brings up a new instance of a browser with the Help text for that page. The user closes the new browser instance when finished with the Help. The Web page that called Help is still available in the background.

Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist Features and Functions

The Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist is the Web-based user interface that can be used to view the current status and configuration of the PtP VTS. The following sections list the information that you can access through the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist. Note that the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist does not allow access to data that is stored on the logical tape volumes.

The composite library name is displayed at the top of each of the following pages:

Home Page

This is the initial web page served up when the Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist is accessed. This screen provides a link to the System Status screen. It also allows you to select the language.

The Home Page screen contains the following information:

- Network name (HOSTNAME) of the virtual tape controller that is serving the Web pages
- Library information:
 - Library type and number
 - Library name
 - Sequence number

System Status

This screen displays an at-a-glance status of the components in the PtP VTS system. Clicking any virtual tape controller displays the Virtual Tape Controller Status screen. Clicking any VTS displays the VTS Status screen. Clicking any library displays the Library Status screen. Clicking any link between the virtual tape controllers and the VTSs opens a new browser window that contains additional information.

Virtual Tape Controller Status: This screen displays status information for all of the virtual tape controllers. If a problem exists, one or more fields will contain a red arrow. Clicking a value with a red arrow next to it opens a new browser window that contains additional information.

The Virtual Tape Controller Status screen contains the following information:

- Controller number
- Network name
- State
- Indication of whether copying is disabled

VTS Status: This screen displays status information for all of the VTSs from the perspective of the virtual tape controller being accessed. If a problem exists, one or more fields will contain a red arrow. Clicking a value with the red arrow next to it opens a new browser window that contains additional information.

The VTS Status screen contains the following information:

- VTS number
- Library name for the associated distributed library
- Status
- Activity level
- VTS service preparation state

Library Status: This screen displays status information for all of the libraries from the perspective of the virtual tape controller being accessed. If a problem exists, one or more fields will contain a red arrow. Clicking a value with the red arrow next to it opens a new browser window that contains additional information.

The Library Status screen contains the following information:

- Library type and number
- Library name
- Library mode
- Library Manager status
- Indication of whether the library is operating in a degraded mode
- Indication of whether the safety enclosure interlock has been opened
- Indication of whether intervention is required
- Indication of whether there are insufficient resources for mounts
- Indication of whether the VTS has run out of empty stacked volumes
- Indication of whether VTS operations are degraded
- Indication of whether a VTS is in service preparation state

System Configuration

This screen displays the components in the PtP VTS system. Clicking any virtual tape controller displays the Virtual Tape Controller Configuration screen. Clicking any VTS displays the VTS Configuration screen. Clicking any 3494 displays the Library Configuration screen.

Virtual Tape Controller Configuration: The Virtual Tape Controller Configuration screen contains the following virtual tape controller information:

- Deferred copy priority threshold
- Controller number
- Network name
- Serial number
- Network IP address
- Code level
- Number of virtual tape drives that the virtual tape controller presents to the host
- Operational mode
- I/O VTS selection mode
- Copy mode

VTS Configuration: The VTS Configuration screen contains the following VTS information:

- VTS number
- Library name for the associated distributed library
- Serial number
- Number of virtual tape drives available to the virtual tape controllers
- Code level

Library Configuration: The Library Configuration screen contains the following library information:

- Library type and number
- Library name

- Sequence number
- Indication of the distributed library that is the User Interface Library
- Network IP address for Library Managers A and B
- Code level for Library Managers A and B
- Code level for physical tape drives

Current Drive Activity

This screen displays current activity on the virtual drives.

The Current Drive Activity screen contains the following information:

- Controller number
- Virtual tape drive number
- The volume serial number of the volume currently mounted
- Number of bytes written to the volume currently mounted
- Number of bytes read from the volume currently mounted
- The amount of time the volume has been mounted
- The time it took to mount the volume
- Indication of which VTS is being used for read and write operations

Logical Volume Status

This screen allows the user to request information for a given logical volume. This screen also provides a link to the Current Drive Activity screen.

The Logical Volume Status screen contains the following:

- Logical volume entry box
When the user enters the serial number of a logical volume, the Logical Volume Status Results screen is displayed.

Logical Volume Status Results

This screen displays information for the requested logical volume from the perspective of the virtual tape controller being accessed.

The Logical Volume Status Results screen contains the following information:

- Logical volume information:
 - Indication of whether the latest version of the logical volume has been copied
- Logical volume information for each VTS:
 - Library name for the associated distributed library
 - Serial number of the stacked (physical) volume on which the logical volume is stored
 - Indication of whether the data is current or downlevel on the VTS
 - Category of the logical volume
 - Indication of whether the volume category is current or downlevel on the VTS
 - Indication of whether the logical volume is a pre-existing volume (that is, existed on a VTS before being converted to a PtP VTS)
 - Indication of whether the logical volume is resident in the VTS cache
 - Amount of compressed data written to the logical volume (file size)
 - The time the Rewind/Unload command completed when the logical volume was modified

- The time the Rewind/Unload command completed when the logical volume was accessed

Current Copy Workload

This screen contains information on the amount of copy work that the PtP VTS system is performing from the perspective of the virtual tape controller being accessed.

The Current Copy Workload screen contains the following information:

- Indication of whether copying is disabled
- Copy work not yet started for each VTS:
 - The number of volumes to be copied

Access to Additional Information

You can access the following additional information:

- User assistance provides the following:
 - An overview of the PtP VTS system
 - Descriptions of the information provided on the various screens
 - A glossary of terms
- Online access to documentation

You can access the documentation over the Internet by using the links provided:

 - *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*
 - *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Operator Guide*
 - *IBM Magstar 3494 Tape Library: Planning, Implementing, and Monitoring*
 - *IBM Magstar 3494 Peer-to-Peer Tape Library: A Comprehensive Implementation Guide*
- Links to the Specialist home pages (see “IBM TotalStorage 3494 Tape Library Specialist” on page 32)

Cartridge Removal from the Gripper

Some operator intervention conditions require you to remove a cartridge from the gripper. Figure 175 shows the picker and the gripper assembly. Perform the following steps to remove the cartridge from the gripper:

1. If the 3494 is not already in Pause mode, press the **Pause** push button on the operator panel.
2. Open the front door of the 3494 in front of the cartridge accessor.
3. Rotate the picker **1** so that it is pointing toward the right side of the device, parallel to the rails **3**.
4. Push the reach assembly **5** out so that it is extended fully.
5. Press the top **2** of the gripper assembly to release the cartridge **4**.
6. Push the reach assembly in so it is retracted fully.
7. Close the front door.
8. Press the **Auto** push button on the operator panel to return the 3494 to Auto mode.

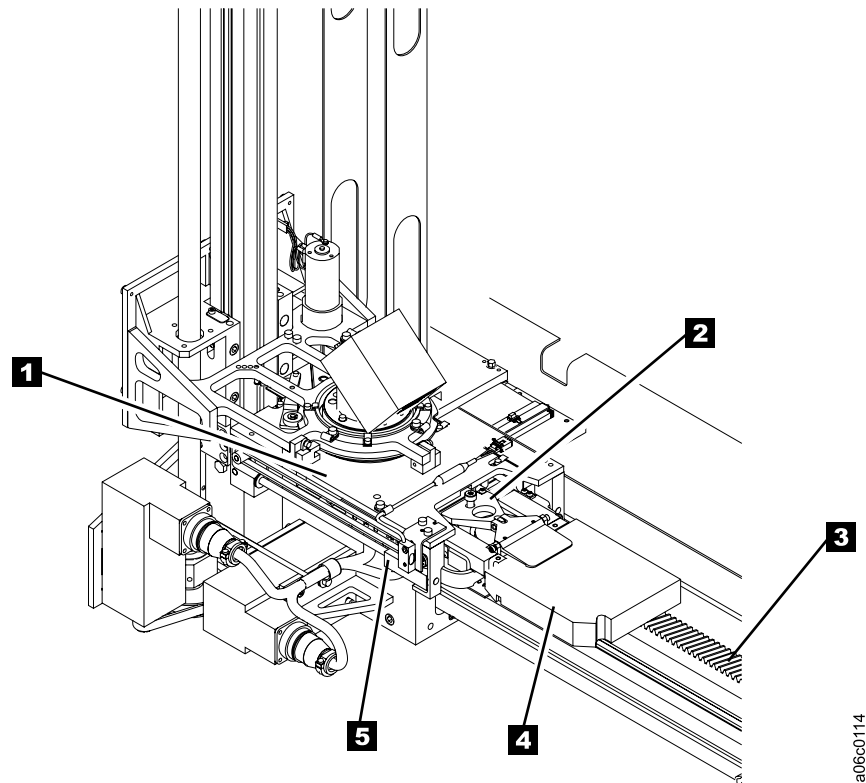


Figure 175. Cartridge Removal from the Gripper

Using the Keyboard Template

Appendix A, “Keyboard Template” on page 373 shows the function keys on the Library Manager keyboard that you use during normal activity.

You can remove and copy the template, then fold it to create a triangular bar shape with the keys showing on one face. You can then place the template in a convenient location for quick access to the correct key for a specific function.

Chapter 7. Remote Library Manager Console Feature

This chapter describes the Remote Library Manager Console feature for the 3494.

When the Remote Library Manager Console feature is installed, you can control or monitor operations for 3494s from a remote location. The Remote Library Manager Console (controlling workstation) is connected to the Library Manager (controlling workstation) through a local area network (LAN). Either the Token-Ring LAN Attachment feature or the Ethernet LAN Attachment feature is ordered when the Remote Library Manager Console feature is ordered. Figure 176 shows an example of the Token-Ring LAN and the Ethernet LAN.

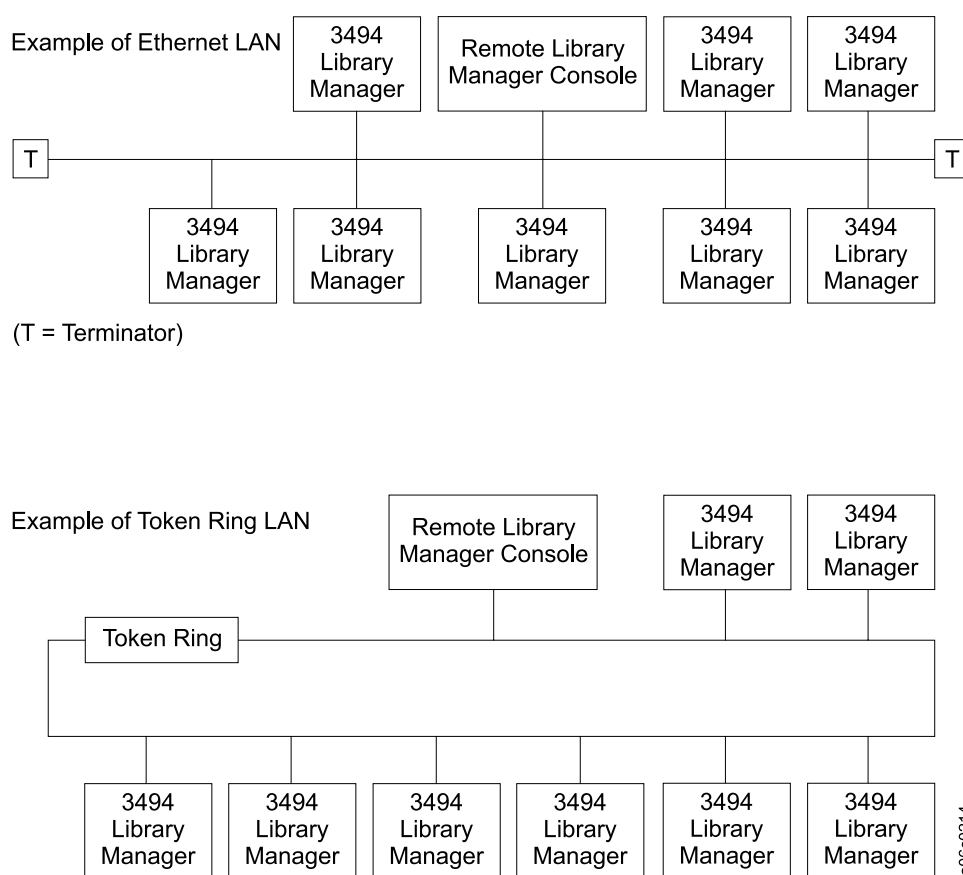


Figure 176. LAN Attachments

The Distributed Console Access Facility (DCAF) product is installed on the Library Manager and the remote Library Manager console when the Remote Library Manager Console feature is installed. If this topic does not describe a task you want to perform, see the *Distributed Console Access Facility: Installation Guide* and the *Distributed Console Access Facility: V1R3.1 Target User's Guide*. If the task is similar to one in a referenced document, use the description presented here.

This chapter is intended for system planners, system programmers, LAN administrators, and operators. Some users are expected to be familiar with operating system and text editor.

Installing and Configuring

The Remote Library Manager Console feature can use one of two communication protocols to establish communications between the remote (controlling workstation) console and the (target workstation) Library Manager. To establish communications between the remote Library Manager console and the 3494, the *communications protocol* and *LAN adapter protocol* support must be configured properly. The installation program, which is on the Remote Library Manager Console feature disk, handles configuration. Review the Remote Library Manager Console feature installation instructions to understand the following:

- How the remote Library Manager console and 3494 communications are integrated
- How the names and addresses are used to configure the communications protocol

Starting DCAF on the Remote Library Manager Console

Starting DCAF on the remote Library Manager console causes DCAF to start automatically on the Library Manager. To start the remote Library Manager console program, perform the following steps:

1. Start the Communications Protocol on the remote (controlling workstation) console.
2. Select the **Distributed Console Access Facility** group, as shown in Figure 177.



Figure 177. Icon for Distributed Console Access Facility

3. Select the **DCAF Controller** icon in the Distributed Console Access Facility - Icon View window (Figure 178).

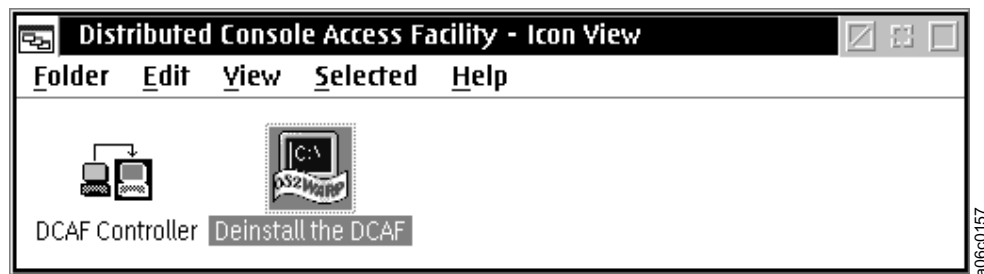


Figure 178. Distributed Console Access Facility - Icon View Window

After the IBM logo is displayed, the DCAF controlling main window (Figure 179) opens.

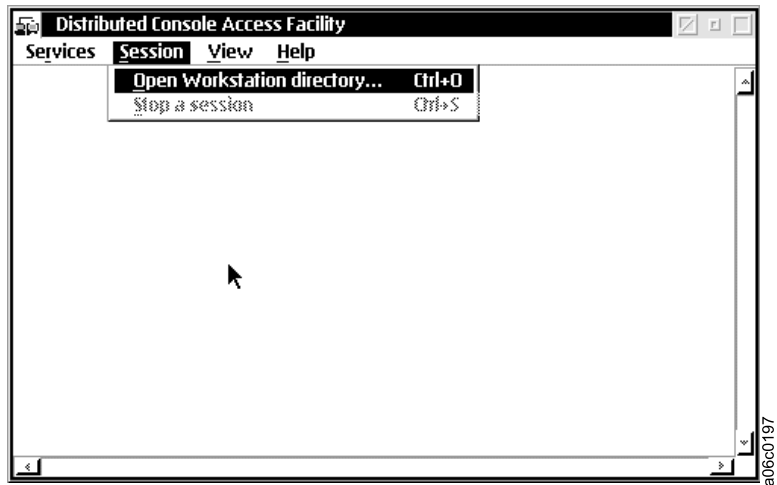


Figure 179. DCAF Controlling Main Window

4. Workstations must be added (see step 8 on page 306). Select the **Open Workstation directory...** option on the Session menu.

The DCAF - Directory window (Figure 180) opens. This window lists the link records of the target workstations that are connected directly through the Communications Protocol.

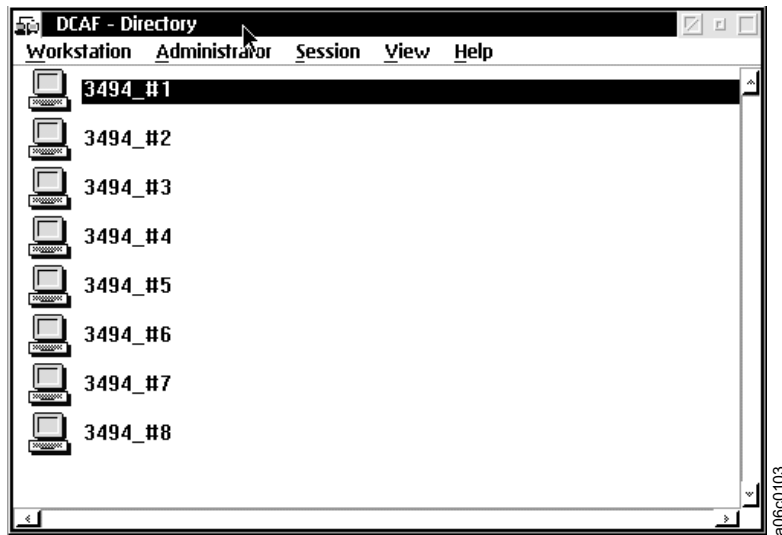


Figure 180. DCAF - Directory Window

5. Select the workstation name by performing one of the following:
 - Position the pointing device cursor on the required link (for example, 3494_#1), then double-click with the left pointing device button.
 - Use the up arrow (↑) or down arrow (↓) key to select a link record, then press the Enter key.

The DCAF - Target Password window (Figure 181 on page 304) opens.

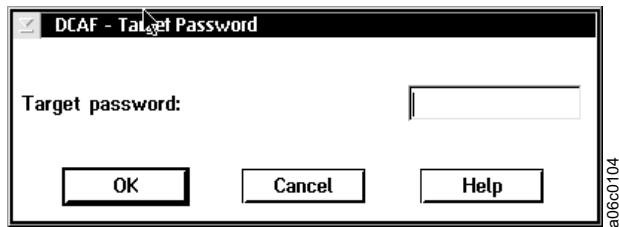


Figure 181. DCAF - Target Password Window

6. Type the target password (the default is *lmpsword*) to start the session.
As you type the password, the cursor moves, and an asterisk (*) is displayed in place of the character. The following are password guidelines:
 - One to eight characters
 - Uppercase or lowercase letters A–Z
 - Digits 0–9
 - Embedded blanks (blanks after the last character are ignored)
7. Select the **OK** push button or select **OK** with the left pointing device button.
While the remote Library Manager console Distributed Console Access Facility is starting, it displays its status (Figure 182).

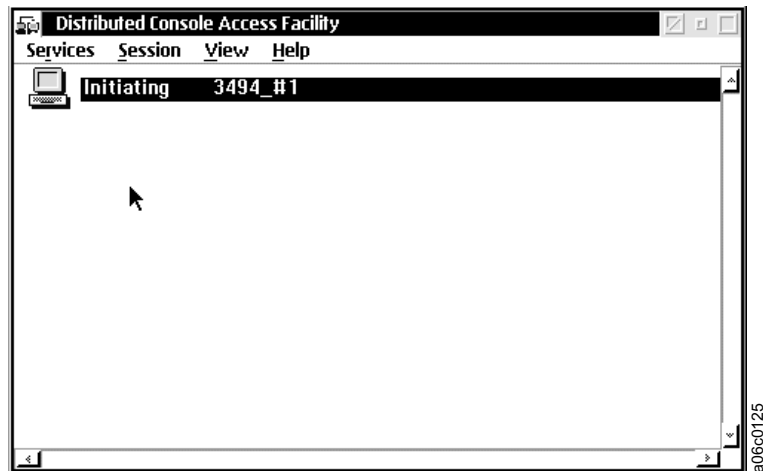


Figure 182. Initiating the Remote Library Manager Console

The advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) or TCP/IP indicating **Started** is displayed momentarily on the Library Manager display (Figure 183).

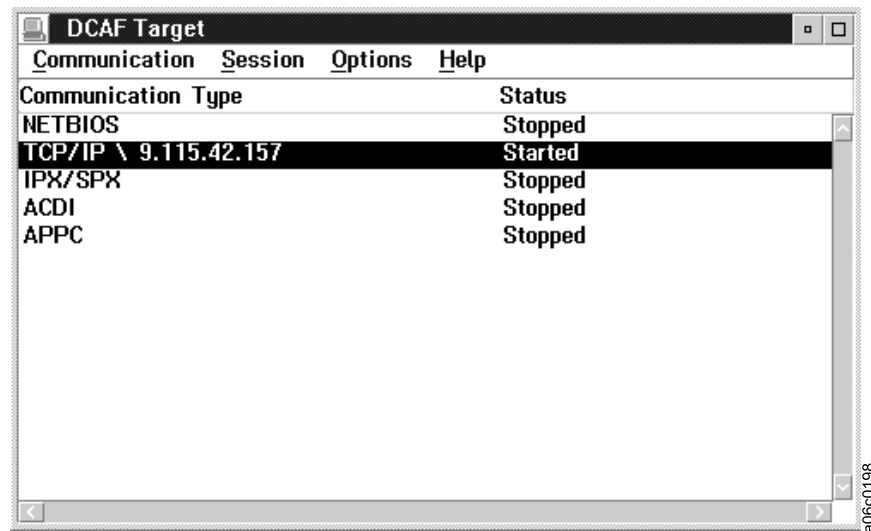


Figure 183. Establishing Communication with the Library Manager

After the initiation of the Library Manager is completed, the main window opens on the remote Library Manager console (Figure 184). In this case, the selected Library Manager is paused, and the Whole Queue window is displayed when the remote Library Manager console is started. You can size this window to full screen by placing the pointing device cursor in the right box of the title bar and clicking once with the left pointing device button.

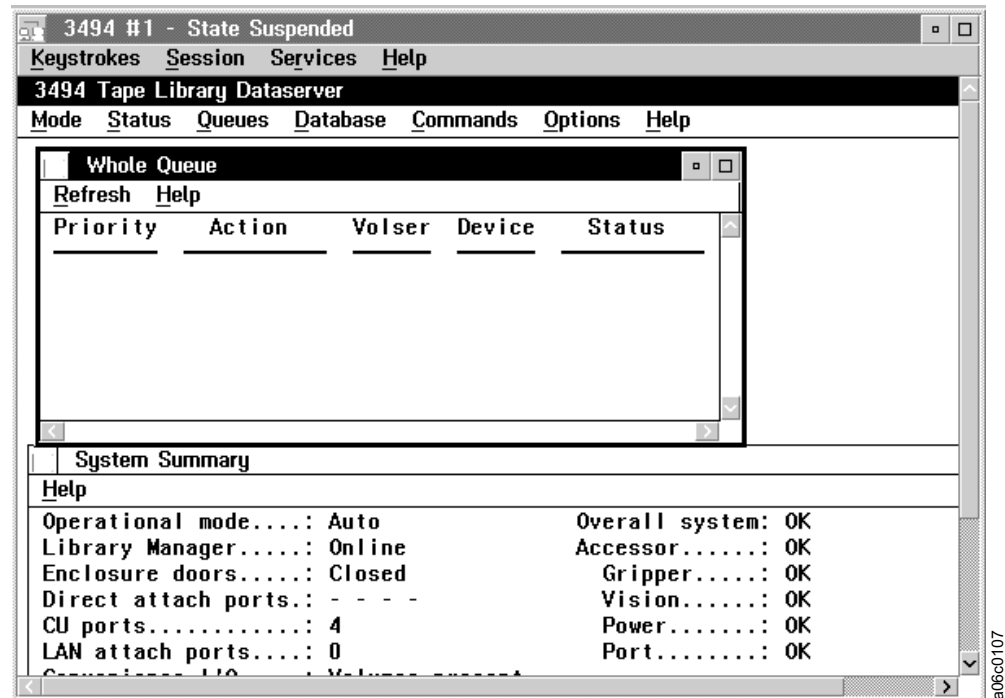


Figure 184. Remote Library Manager Console Main Window

You can now use the pointing device cursor and buttons to select options on the selected 3494, just as if you were at that 3494.

From the remote Library Manager console, you can also select the following options:

<u>K</u> keystrokes	See “Using Keystrokes during a Remote Library Manager Console Session”.
<u>S</u> session	See “Changing the Session State from Remote Library Manager Console” on page 309.
<u>S</u> services	See “Transferring Files” on page 312.
<u>H</u> help	Select this push button to receive information about the item that the cursor is on or about the entire window.

8. To start a session with another 3494, perform the following steps:
 - a. Press **Ctrl+Esc** to view the task list on the remote (controlling workstation) console.
 - b. Under **DCAF Controller**, select the **Distributed Console Access Facility** option.
 - c. Repeat step 4 on page 303 (**Open Workstation directory...** on the Session menu) through step 7 on page 304.

Controlling a 3494 from Remote Library Manager Console

The remote Library Manager console operator can control one or more 3494s from a remote Library Manager console when the **Active** option is selected on the Session menu. The remote Library Manager console displays the target Library Manager screen of each selected 3494 in the network. You can display the screens by switching between Library Managers or by displaying them simultaneously through windows by using the remote Library Manager console task list.

Using Keystrokes during a Remote Library Manager Console Session

The Keystrokes mode, displayed on the title bar of the remote Library Manager console session window, determines whether the remote Library Manager console’s keyboard input and pointing device movements affect the remote Library Manager console or the Library Manager. The remote Library Manager console starts with *State Active* and *Keystrokes remote* displayed in the title bar (Figure 185 on page 307).

The remote Library Manager console operator can change keystroke modes during an active session.

Keystrokes Remote Mode on Remote Library Manager Console

All the keyboard input on the remote Library Manager console, except the remote Library Manager console operating system hot keys, affects the Library Manager. Operating system hot key combinations always affect only the remote Library Manager console. Alt+Esc, Alt+Tab, and Ctrl+Esc are the hot key combinations. For example, Ctrl+Esc causes the remote Library Manager console’s task list to be displayed on the remote Library Manager console.

Pointing device movements inside the Library Manager window on the remote Library Manager console are sent to the Library Manager. If you move the pointing device outside the Remote Library Manager Console window, the pointing device movements are processed on the remote Library Manager console. For example, if

you select an action from a menu in a Library Manager window, the action is processed on the Library Manager. If you select an action from a menu in a remote Library Manager console window, the action is processed on the remote Library Manager console.

You can send operating system hot key combinations to the Library Manager from the Keystrokes menu (Figure 185).

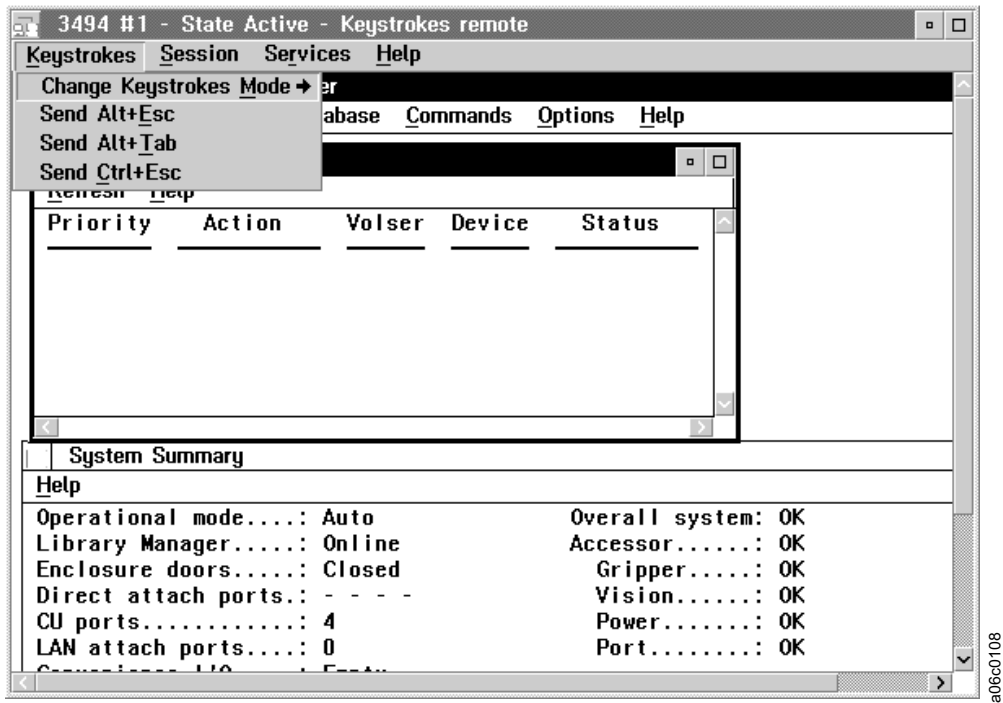


Figure 185. Remote Library Manager Console Window with Keystrokes Menu

Figure 185 shows the remote Library Manager console window with a view of the Library Manager’s display during an active session. The remote Library Manager console user is working in *Keystrokes remote* mode.

Keystrokes Local Mode on Remote Library Manager Console

All the keyboard input and pointing device movements affect only the remote Library Manager console. The remote Library Manager console processes all keystrokes on the remote console.

Only shortcut keys from the Keystrokes menu affect the Library Manager. These shortcut keys simulate the operating system hot key combinations, which are Alt+Esc, Alt+Tab, and Ctrl+Esc. Table 12 shows the effect of the shortcut keys.

Table 12. Shortcut Keys for the Library Manager

Keys	Result
Ctrl+E	Simulates the Alt+Esc key combination on the Library Manager, which causes the Library Manager to show the windows and full-screen sessions in an ordered rotation.
Ctrl+U	Simulates the Alt+Tab key combination on the Library Manager, which causes the Library Manager to show the system menus for the windows and full-screen sessions in an ordered rotation.

Table 12. Shortcut Keys for the Library Manager (continued)

Keys	Result
Ctrl+C	Simulates the Ctrl+Esc key combination on the Library Manager, which causes the Library Manager to display its task list.

Changing Keystrokes Mode

To change Keystrokes mode on the remote Library Manager console, perform one of the following:

- Press the controlling hot key combination (default **Alt+T**) to switch between *Keystrokes local* and *Keystrokes remote* mode or
- Move the pointing device into the Keystrokes menu and select **Keystrokes remote** or **Keystrokes local** under **Change Keystrokes Mode**.

Using Hot Key Combinations

To view the task list on the remote Library Manager console, press **Ctrl+Esc**.

To view the task list on the Library Manager, select the **Send Ctrl+Esc** option on the Keystrokes menu on the remote Library Manager console.

Sending the Alt+Esc Command to the Library Manager

To send the Alt+Esc command to the Library Manager, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Send Alt+Esc** option on the Keystrokes menu on the remote Library Manager console session window (Figure 185 on page 307).
2. If the remote Library Manager console is in Keystrokes local mode, press the **Ctrl+E** shortcut key.

Sending the Alt+Esc command lets you see the Library Manager's full screen or window sessions in an ordered rotation. If you go through the rotation to a full screen session, you are immediately in the full screen session of the Library Manager.

Sending the Alt+Tab Command to the Library Manager

To send the Alt+Tab command to the Library Manager, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Send Alt+Tab** option on the Keystrokes menu on the remote Library Manager console session window (Figure 185 on page 307).
2. If the remote Library Manager console is in Keystrokes local mode, press the **Ctrl+U** shortcut key.

Sending the Alt+Tab command lets you see the system menu for the Library Manager's full screen or window sessions in an ordered rotation. Sending this command causes the Library Manager's system menu for the next window to be displayed.

Sending the Ctrl+Esc Command to the Library Manager

To send the Ctrl+Esc command to the Library Manager during an active session, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Send Ctrl+Esc** option on the Keystrokes menu in the remote Library Manager console session window (Figure 185 on page 307).

2. If the remote Library Manager console is in Keystrokes local mode, press the **Ctrl+C** shortcut key.

Sending the Ctrl+Esc command lets you display the task list on the Library Manager. After you display the task list, you can select a task from the list.

Changing the Session State from Remote Library Manager Console

The session state is the current state of the session between the remote Library Manager console and the Library Manager workstations. Both workstation users can change the session. While the remote Library Manager console is changing the session state, the Library Manager cannot alter that session. If both users try to change the state at the same time, the Library Manager takes precedence.

A status indicator of the session is displayed in the title bar of the session window or, when the session interface is minimized, under the remote Library Manager console icon.

Figure 186 shows the remote Library Manager console window in the Library Manager's display during an active session. The remote Library Manager console is in Keystrokes remote mode.

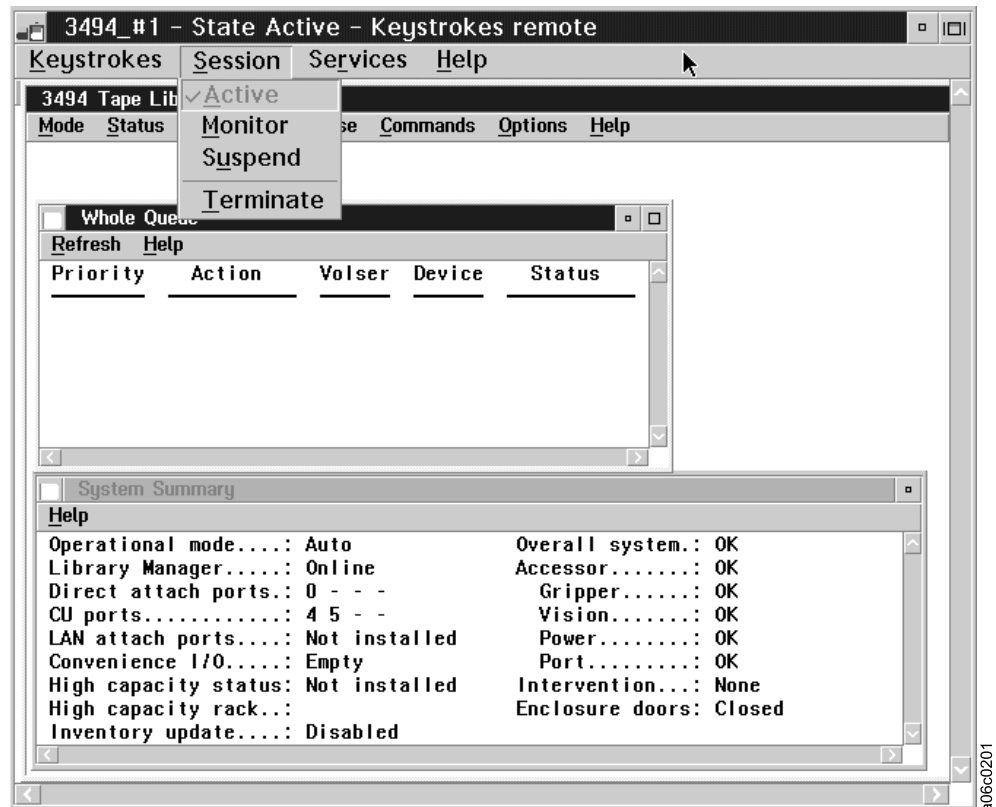


Figure 186. Remote Library Manager Console Session Window with Session Menu

The link record name (3494_#1), the current session State (Active), and the Keystrokes mode (remote) are displayed on the title bar of the remote Library Manager console window. Table 13 on page 310 describes the session states.

To change the session state, perform the following steps:

1. In the Session menu select the action to change the session state.
2. Press one of the following shortcut keys associated with the action to change the session if the remote Library Manager console is in Keystrokes local mode:

<u>A</u>ctive	Ctrl+A
<u>M</u>onitor	Ctrl+M
<u>S</u>uspend	Ctrl+S
<u>T</u>erminate	Ctrl+T

Table 13. Session States

Session State	Description
Active	A DCAF session is established. The controlling workstation (remote Library Manager console) controls the keyboard and monitors the display of the target workstation (Library Manager). The Library Manager keyboard is locked; the keystrokes and pointing device commands entered on the Library Manager are not processed. The Library Manager user can regain control by pressing the hot key combination to change the session state.
Busy	A DCAF session is established. The Library Manager user pressed the hot key combination and regained control. The remote Library Manager console user must wait until the Library Manager user puts the DCAF session in another state.
Initiating	The remote Library Manager console is starting a DCAF session with the Library Manager.
Monitor	A DCAF session is established. The remote Library Manager console monitors (watches) the activity of the Library Manager. The remote Library Manager console user sees the Library Manager display, but the Library Manager user is in control of the keyboard and pointing device input. The Library Manager user can press the hot key combination to change the session state.
Suspend	The DCAF session in progress is suspended (stopped temporarily). The remote Library Manager console does not monitor the Library Manager and does not have control of the keyboard and pointing device. Either console user can resume the session.
Terminate	The DCAF session is ending.

Using the Pointing Device during a Session

Figure 187 on page 311 shows the Library Manager's display during an active session. The remote Library Manager console user selected the operational status from the Library Manager with the pointing device. The remote Library Manager console is in Keystrokes remote mode.

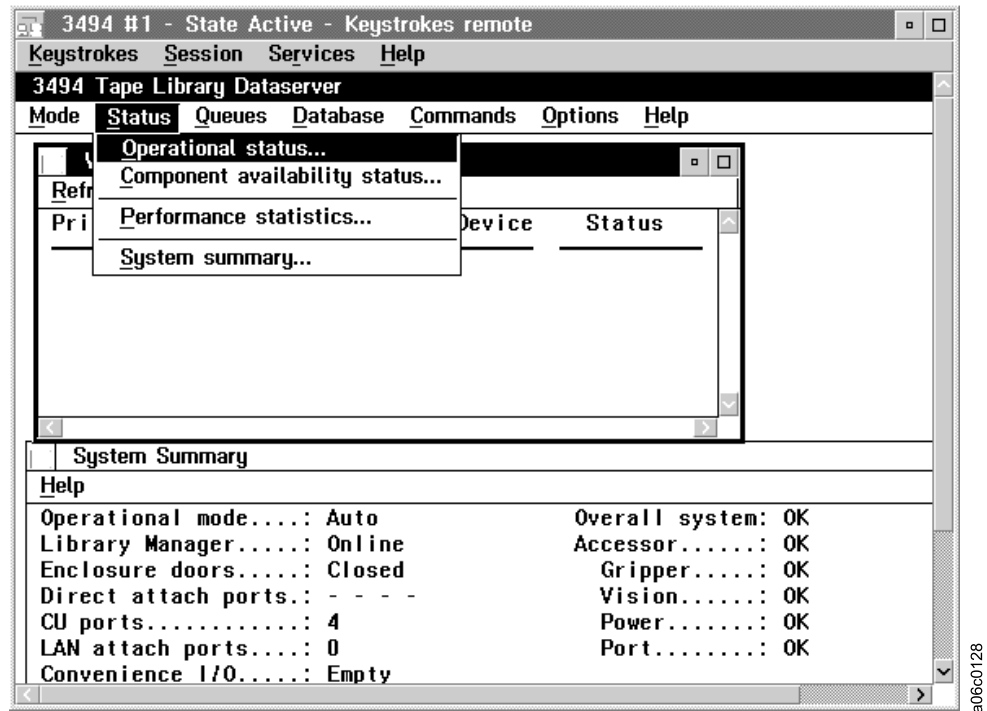


Figure 187. Remote Library Manager Console Session Window

During an active session, the pointing device is useful for selecting options from the remote Library Manager console menu bar or for performing operations on the Library Manager display. The Keystrokes mode (local or remote) is for the remote Library Manager console keyboard only and has no effect on the pointing device.

The remote Library Manager console pointing device determines the position of the pointing device of the Library Manager. The remote Library Manager console pointing device can move the Library Manager pointing device if the following conditions are true:

- The remote Library Manager console session window is the active window where the remote Library Manager console user is giving pointing device commands.
- The remote Library Manager console pointing device position is within the remote Library Manager console session window.

Note: The pointing device displayed on the remote Library Manager console may not be the same as on the Library Manager because of differences in the display drivers.

Excessive movement of the pointing device during the active state in the remote Library Manager console window can cause the operation to run slowly because the pointing device movement sends information across the network.

Note: If you perform an operation that is not allowed on the remote Library Manager console, the Library Manager console beeps once.

When the remote Library Manager console is in the active state, the Library Manager pointing device is disabled. During the Monitor, Busy, or Suspend states, the pointing devices for the remote Library Manager console and the Library Manager function independently.

Moving among Multiple Sessions

Moving among multiple remote Library Manager console sessions follows the general conventions for moving around the windows.

The remote Library Manager console main window displays each Library Manager session. The current sessions are listed by the appropriate link record name. To change to a different session, perform the following steps:

1. Select the new session from the remote Library Manager console main window.
2. Go to the task list and switch to the new session.

You can minimize or maximize the remote Library Manager console session windows and arrange them on the remote Library Manager console. To return to the remote Library Manager console main window, go to the task list and switch to the Distributed Console Access Facility (remote Library Manager console main window).

Transferring Files

You can use the file-transfer utility to transfer files from the Library Manager to the remote Library Manager console. Transferring files to the Library Manager is not allowed. Only the remote Library Manager console can initiate a file transfer. The remote Library Manager console can be in the Monitor state or the Active state.

To transfer files from the Library Manager, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Start file transfer** option from the Services menu on the remote Library Manager console. The File Transfer Utility window opens.
2. Type the *path* and the *file name* of the source file. If the path is not specified, the drive and directory where the DCAF is installed are used.
3. Type the *path* and the *file name* of the destination file. If the file name is not specified, the same name as the source file is used.
4. Select the Overwrite check box if you want to replace a destination file that already exists.
5. Select the **Receive** push button for the remote Library Manager console to receive the file from the Library Manager.

A window opens that shows what percent of the file has transferred. To interrupt the file transfer, select the **Stop** push button.

Library Manager Operations with Remote Library Manager Console

You can change the session state and the password from the Library Manager.

Changing the Session State of the Library Manager

After a session is established between the remote Library Manager console and the Library Manager, the remote Library Manager console controls the Library Manager keyboard and monitors the Library Manager display. The keyboard and pointing device on the Library Manager are locked.

To regain control at the Library Manager, the session state must be changed. To change the session state perform one of the following:

- The remote Library Manager console operator can change the session state as follows:

- Terminate the session. All remote operations stop until a new session is established.
- Suspend the session. Control returns to the Library Manager.
- Monitor the session. The remote Library Manager console can monitor the display on the Library Manager, but the keyboard on the Library Manager is active.
- The Library Manager operator can change the session state by using the hot key combination at the Library Manager keyboard as follows:
 1. Press **Alt+T** on the Library Manager console. The DCAF Target \ Busy window (Figure 190 on page 314) opens and shows that the target is busy.
 2. Click once with the pointing device in the minimize box in the upper right corner of the target window. The Library Manager keyboard is now operational.

Attention: Do not close this window. If you **CLOSE** this window instead of **MINIMIZING** it, remote console access to the Library Manager is disabled until the Library Manager is rebooted.

- If you want to return control to the remote Library Manager console or want to allow the remote Library Manager console to monitor operations, change the session state as follows:
 - The remote Library Manager console operator can stop and restart the connection at the remote Library Manager console.
 - The Library Manager operator can restart the session as follows:
 1. Press **Ctrl+Esc** to display the Window List.
 2. On the Window List (Figure 188), select the **DCAF Target \ Busy** option with the pointing device.

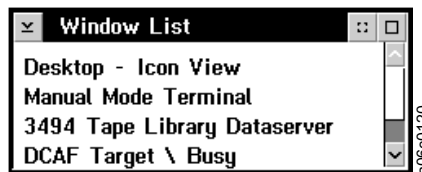


Figure 188. Window List

3. In the DCAF Target \ Busy window (Figure 189 on page 314), select the Session window, then select the Active or Monitor option.

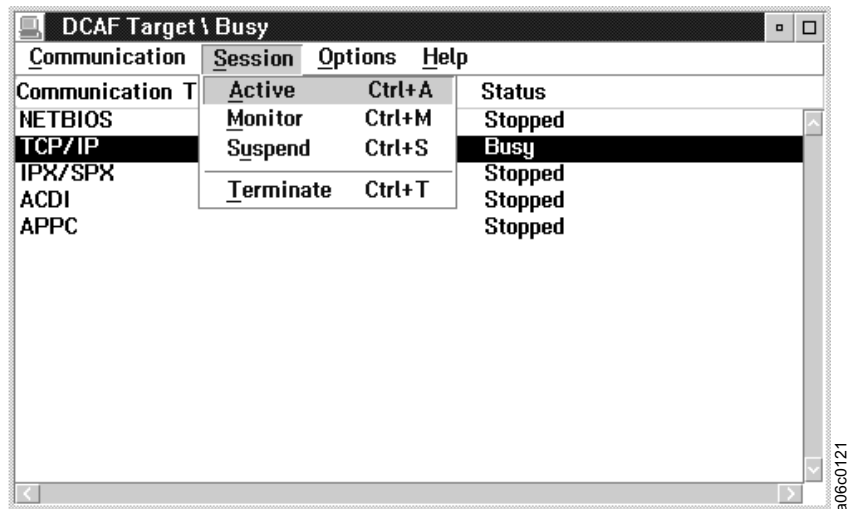


Figure 189. Active Session

Changing the Password from the Library Manager

You can change the remote Library Manager console logon password *only* from the Library Manager during a session. To change the password, perform the following steps:

1. If you have an active session, take control at the Library Manager by pressing **Alt+T**. The DCAF Target \ Busy window (Figure 190) opens.

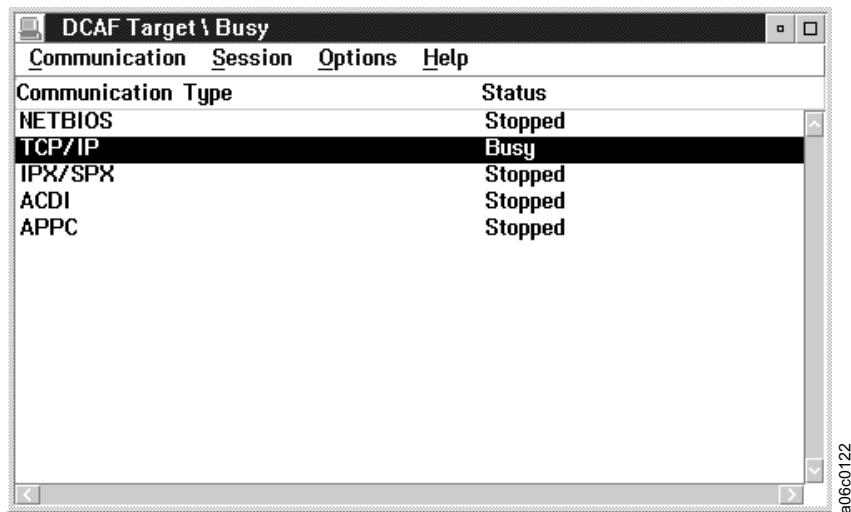


Figure 190. Changing Sessions

2. On the Options menu, select the **Password...** option in the DCAF Target \ Busy window (see Figure 191 on page 315).

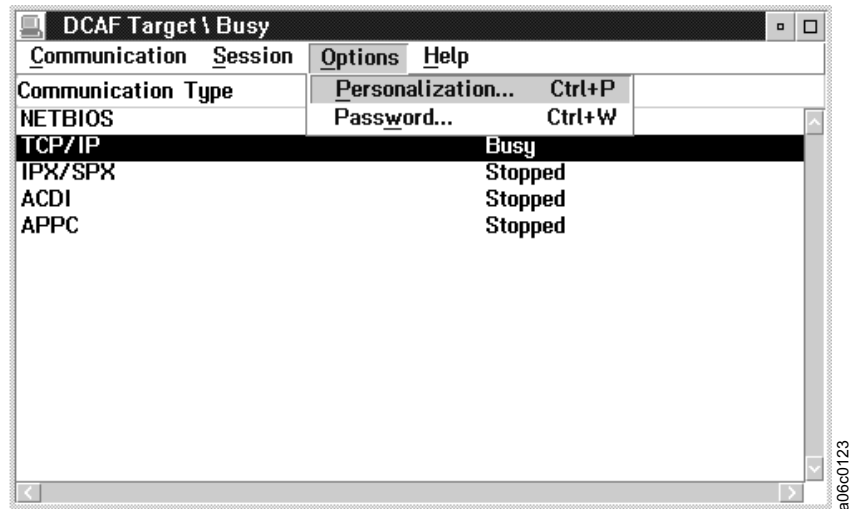


Figure 191. Options Menu

3. In the DCAF Password window (Figure 192), select the **Enable password** check box.
4. Type the current password in the **Current password:** field. The default password is *lmpsword*.

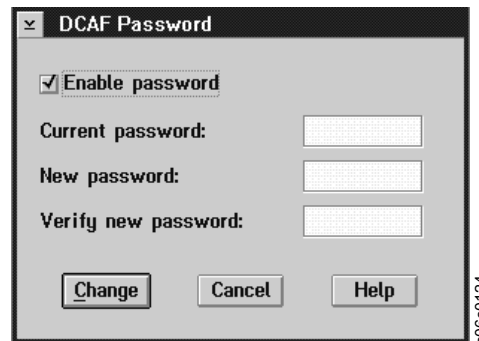


Figure 192. DCAF Password

5. Type the new password in the **New password:** field. The following are the password guidelines:
 - One to eight characters
 - Uppercase or lowercase letters A–Z
 - Digits 0–9
 - Embedded blanks (blanks after the last character are ignored)
6. Type the new password again in the **Verify new password:** field.
7. Select the **Change** push button. A message confirming the password change is displayed.

Note: Give the password to the remote Library Manager console operator.

Remote Library Manager Console Problem Analysis

Table 14 shows the fault symptoms and describes possible solutions to problems with the remote Library Manager console functions.

Table 14. Fault Symptoms

Symptom	Description and Possible Solution
The Library Manager keyboard is locked.	When a session is active, the Library Manager keyboard is locked. In this case, press the Alt+T hot key combination to regain control at the Library Manager.
EQN0516 or EQN0524 error	Ensure that the communications manager is started. If the session state takes too long because of network traffic, you may receive this error on the remote Library Manager console. Close the warning window for this error and retry the connection.
The pointing device button commands to the Library Manager are ignored.	As you move a window with the pointing device from the remote Library Manager console, if you drag a window (of the Library Manager) so high that its top goes out of the visible region on the remote (controlling) console, you are moving the pointing device out of the DCAF session. Therefore, the pointing device button actions are not sent to the Library Manager until you move the pointing device back into the active session window at the Library Manager. When you move back into the active session, the window on the Library Manager seems to move with the pointing device and not drop, even though you have released the pointing device button. Click the pointing device button again to drop the window where you want the window to drop.
The Library Manager console beeps.	If you perform an operation that is not allowed on the remote Library Manager console, the Library Manager console beeps once.

Chapter 8. Problem Determination Procedures

This chapter describes how to determine when a problem has occurred in the 3494 and the actions necessary to resolve the problem.

See Table 15 for quick reference to particular conditions.

Quick Reference to Problem Determination Procedures

Table 15. Quick Reference to Problem Determination Procedures

Conditions	Reference
Library Manager failures in a DFSMS/MVS (z/OS) environment (includes HA1 Frames switchovers)	"Library Manager Failure in DFSMS/MVS (z/OS)" on page 319
Library Manager failures in an MVS/BTLS environment (includes HA1 Frames switchovers)	"Library Manager Failure in MVS/BTLS" on page 323
Reported by a host console message	"DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape Messages" on page 326
Intervention required on Library Manager System Summary or SNMP OPINT trap message	"Intervention-Required Conditions and Actions" on page 343
Disruption of services or physical damage to a site with a VTS	"VTS Recovery Actions" on page 371
Export/Import List Volume status codes in the status file	Appendix B, "VTS Export and Import Advanced Function" on page 375

When a problem occurs in the 3494 or associated tape subsystems, completion of one or more 3494 operations may not be possible. This topic provides information on how to identify problems, what is their significance to continuing operations in the 3494, and what actions to take for recovery.

Several symptoms indicate that a problem occurred with the 3494 or associated tape subsystems. These symptoms are in the following general categories:

- One or more jobs that require volumes in the 3494 are not progressing or completing as expected. The following are possible causes:
 - The workload demand on the 3494 exceeds its capability. For example, the number of requests to mount volumes on drives in a 3494 received in a period exceeds the number the 3494 can process during that period. The result is that the requests stay in the Library Manager queue for a longer period before being performed. Although this is not a problem with the 3494, if this is occurring on a regular basis, workload balancing must be addressed.
 - The failure of a component in the 3494 is causing degraded performance. Library operations are performed but are slower to complete because of the failure. For example, when one of the two grippers fails, all operations continue with the other gripper but take longer to complete than when both grippers are functional. Service is required to correct the problem.
 - The 3494 or attached tape subsystems detected a failure or exception condition that is preventing one or more 3494 operations from completing.

The 3494 reports the condition to the host for operator or service representative handling. See “Failure and Exception Condition Reporting” for the conditions and required actions.

- Console messages concerning the 3494 are being generated. The following are possible conditions:
 - A failure or exception condition occurs while the 3494 is performing one or more requested operations. The 3494 reports the condition to the host, which generates a host console message to inform you that a problem exists with the 3494. See “Failure and Exception Condition Reporting” for the conditions and required actions.
 - The Library Manager console provides information about many of the failure and exception conditions reported to the host. Although the host console messages are the primary source for problem determination, the information at the Library Manager is useful during operator and service representative problem resolution. See “Information Provided at the Library Manager Console” on page 337 for the information and required actions.
- A service representative has requested time on the 3494 to correct a problem. In addition to possible host console messages, 3494 or associated tape subsystems failures that cause exception conditions are logged in the error recording data set on the host. MVS, OS/390, and z/OS hosts, for example, log errors in file SYS1.LOGREC. A service representative reviews the data sets as part of normal diagnosis. Also, when errors that the 3494 recovers internally exceed a threshold, the condition is also logged for action by the service representative.

The primary indication that a problem has occurred is a host console message. The following topic describes what actions to take based on specific console messages.

Failure and Exception Condition Reporting

The library reports failures or exception conditions that it detects to the attached hosts for operator action. Most failures or exception conditions are also logged at the host for later use by a service representative. Failures or exception conditions fall into one of the following categories:

- A failure or exception condition is detected in a request from a host to perform a library function.

The requested function is rejected, and the reason is reported back to the host immediately.

- Some library function requests, such as mounting a cartridge, are queued within the Library Manager for subsequent execution. A failure or exception condition can be detected during the execution of a queued library function request.

The host that requested the 3494 function is notified that a failure or exception condition was detected during the execution of the request. The notification also includes the reason for the failure or exception condition.

- A failure or exception condition is detected that is independent of any specific requested 3494 function.

All hosts attached to the 3494 are notified of the failure or exception condition.

When a failure or exception condition is reported to the host, the result is dependent on the host's operating system. For an MVS, OS/390, or z/OS host, the reported condition results in a console message. “DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape Messages” on page 326 describes the console message that the MVS, OS/390, or z/OS operating system under the DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape

environment generates as a result of a 3494-reported failure or exception condition. See the following documentation for the messages provided and their format for other operating systems and environments:

- MVS Basic Tape Library Support (BTLS) - User's Guide and Reference
- VM/ESA or z/VM
- OS/400®
- AIX

For several of the conditions, one of the actions that can be specified is to select the Operator Intervention menu. See "Operator Intervention" on page 251 for the actions to take for each intervention condition.

Library Manager Failure Recovery Procedures

Notes:

1. This procedure is designed for the recovery of DFSMS/MVS, z/OS, or MVS/BTLS host sessions. If you are using any other host platform, contact your software provider before continuing with this procedure.
2. These procedures apply to both single Library Manager and HA1 Frames (dual Library Manager) configurations. In a dual Library Manager configuration, these procedures apply to the activation of the standby Library Manager when the active Library Manager fails.
3. Host actions may include varying the 3494 online after a short delay for the conditions that restart the Library Manager. Host tape operations or short jobs may have to be resubmitted, and operator actions from the Library Manager console may require restart.

When a failure occurs in the Library Manager from either a CHECK-1 or a processor exception, or when the Library Manager experiences certain hardware failures, do the following procedures to recover host operations. These recovery procedures allow recovery from many different scenarios. You must follow these steps in the exact sequence to achieve a complete recovery.

Throughout the recovery procedures, you are directed to do certain actions at either the Library Manager or at the host operating console. It may be helpful to have two people do the various tasks involved in this procedure due to locations of the 3494.

For recovery procedures of DFSMS/MVS (z/OS), see "Library Manager Failure in DFSMS/MVS (z/OS)". For recovery procedures of MVS/BTLS, see "Library Manager Failure in MVS/BTLS" on page 323.

Library Manager Failure in DFSMS/MVS (z/OS)

The following failure conditions cause you to initiate this procedure:

- Library Manager CHECK-1 condition
- Library Manager hardware failure
- Library Manager processor exception software error

When the active Library Manager fails in a dual Library Manager environment, it may or may not display a message. The standby Library Manager displays a message stating that a switchover is being made, which takes approximately ten minutes to complete.

Note: Some Library Manager recovery operations may take longer than expected to complete. Allow sufficient time for the Library Manager to complete its switchover recovery procedures. Seek assistance **before** interrupting the Library Manager recovery operation.

Library Manager Displays (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)

A Library Manager failure causes the Library Manager console to display certain messages. If the failure has not affected the display and the display is powered on, the Library Manager may display one or more of the following messages:

Single Library Manager Configuration: In a single Library Manager configuration, the following conditions may occur:

- ‘Severe execution error’ window
- System hang with nonresponsive Library Manager keyboard or pointing device

Note: If this occurs, press **Alt+T** to ensure that the keyboard and display are not being controlled from the remote console.

- Mode changes that show *Pending* for an excessive length of time
- Error recovery in progress

Dual Library Manager Configuration: In a dual Library Manager configuration, the following conditions may occur:

- ‘Switching to active Library Manager’ window displayed
- ‘Severe execution error’ window
- System hang with nonresponsive Library Manager keyboard or pointing device

Note: If this occurs, press **Alt+T** to ensure that the keyboard and display are not being controlled from the remote console.

- Mode changes that show *Pending* for an excessive length of time
- Error recovery in progress

To restart a Library Manager manually, go to “Library Manager Recovery Starts (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)” on page 321.

Host Messages (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)

When the Library Manager fails, the host operator may or may not see one or more of the following messages displayed on the host console:

- Library Manager CHECK-1 condition
- Library Manager equipment check
- Library path check
- Library Manager offline
- Library Manager switchover in progress

The Library Manager operator and the host operator should communicate actively with each other to reduce the amount of down time and ensure the accuracy of this procedure.

Start Library Manager and Host Recovery Procedure (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)

Follow each step of the following procedure without deviation.

Library Manager Recovery Starts (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)

Perform one of the following procedures, depending on the Library Manager configuration of your 3494.

Single Library Manager Configuration: For a single Library Manager configuration, perform the following:

- Contact host operations and report what has occurred at the Library Manager:
 - If a CHECK-1 or a processor exception occurred, the Library Manager attempts to restart itself automatically.

Note: If there is no change on the System Status window and messages after 30 minutes, do a manual restart. **Do not power off the Library Manager.** Press the **Ctrl+Alt+Del** key sequence to restart the Library Manager.

You may need to repeat this procedure. If there is no response after the second attempt to recover the Library Manager, call your next level of support.

- If the failure is anything other than a CHECK-1, restart the Library Manager manually by pressing the **Ctrl+Alt+Del** key sequence.
- While waiting for the Library Manager to initialize and enter the Auto mode, Online state, go to “Library Manager Recovers (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)”.

Note: This action takes approximately 20 minutes.

Dual Library Manager Configuration: For a dual Library Manager configuration, no Library Manager corrective action is needed. The standby Library Manager switches control from the active Library Manager automatically.

If the active Library Manager is not responding and the standby Library Manager does not indicate that it is switching to active after five minutes (see Figure 193 on page 322), perform the previous steps for a single Library Manager on the one that failed.

While waiting for the Library Manager to initialize and go to the Auto mode, Online state, go to “Library Manager Recovers (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)”.

Library Manager Recovers (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)

Perform one of the following procedures, depending on the Library Manager configuration of your 3494.

Single Library Manager Configuration: For a single Library Manager configuration, perform the following steps:

1. Wait for the Library Manager to be re-initialized and enter the Auto mode, Online state. This may take up to 20 minutes.
2. If the failure occurred while inserting cartridges into the high-capacity I/O facility, do not remove the cartridges. Leave the cartridges in place, and the operation restarts automatically. Cartridges inserted in the convenience I/O station that remain in the station must be removed from the station, then reinserted after the Library Manager re-initializes.

3. If the Library Manager reflects the Auto mode, Online state, it has recovered. Call your service representative for a recoverable Library Manager error. Continue with "DFSMS Host Action".
or
4. If the Library Manager does not display the Auto mode, Online state **and** more than 30 minutes have elapsed since the re-initialization started, call your service representative for an unrecoverable Library Manager error.
5. When the repair action is completed and the library is available to be varied online, continue with "DFSMS Host Action".

Dual Library Manager Configuration: For a dual Library Manager configuration, perform the following steps:

1. Wait until the switchover completes and the standby Library Manager has become the active Library Manager. The switchover takes approximately ten minutes (see Figure 193).

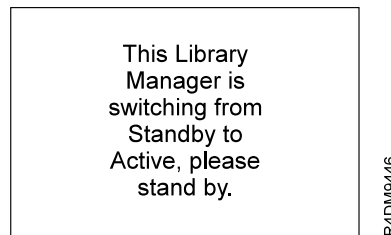


Figure 193. Library Manager Switching Window

2. Call your service representative to repair the failed Library Manager. The failed Library Manager may recover from the failure and become available as the standby Library Manager after the database is synchronized.
3. If the failure occurred while inserting cartridges into the high-capacity I/O facility, do not remove the cartridges. Leave the cartridges in place, and the operation restarts automatically. Cartridges inserted in the convenience I/O station that remain in the station must be removed from the station, then reinserted after the Library Manager re-initializes.
4. Notify the host operator that the switchover is complete.
5. Continue with "DFSMS Host Action".

DFSMS Host Action

If the Library Manager has been varied offline because of the failure, when the Library Manager is in the Auto mode, Online state, perform the following actions at the host:

1. Return DFSMS host control of the 3494 to online status by issuing the following command:
VARY SMS, LIB(libname¹), ONLINE
2. Confirm that the appropriate drives are online and available by issuing the following command:
LIBRARY DISPD RV, libname¹
For any drive that is not online, issue the following command:
VARY xxx, ONLINE

1. Where libname is the name of the 3494.

3. If the system environment includes JES-3, the library tape drives must be in normal status. Use of the JES-3 VARY commands for the GLOBAL and all LOCAL processors may be appropriate.
4. If the system environment includes LEGENT Multiple Image Manager (MIM), the 3494 tape drives must be in normal status. Use the MIM vary commands on each applicable host.
5. If the system environment includes a different product, such as Tivoli® Storage Manager or EPIC, use the appropriate commands to ensure normal 3494 and tape drive status.
6. You may retry any pending jobs waiting for a response to an outstanding **WTOR (CBR4196D)** message by responding to the host request with an R (**Retry**).
7. If the CHECK-1 occurred while doing cartridge ejects, verify that the last three volsers placed in either the high-capacity I/O facility or the convenience I/O station are still present in the DFSMS database. If the volsers are present in the DFSMS database, the volsers must be inserted through an input station, then the DFSMS command to eject the volsers needs to be reissued.

This completes the DFSMS recovery procedure. The 3494 subsystem should now be ready for submission of tape jobs.

Note: Any tape job that abended needs to be resubmitted.

Library Manager Failure in MVS/BTLS

The following failure conditions cause you to initiate this procedure:

- Library Manager CHECK-1 condition
- Library Manager hardware failure
- Library Manager processor exception software error

When the active Library Manager fails in a dual Library Manager system, it may or may not display a message. The standby Library Manager displays a message stating that a switchover is being made, which can take up to ten minutes to complete.

Note: Some Library Manager recovery operations may take longer than expected to complete. Allow sufficient time for the Library Manager to complete its switchover procedures. Seek assistance **before** interrupting the Library Manager recovery operation.

Host Messages (MVS/BTLS)

When the Library Manager fails, **BTLS Error Code=70 Library Manager Equipment Check** may be displayed on the host console for single Library Managers or dual Library Managers that cannot switch over. For dual Library Managers that can switch over, **BTLS Error Code=74 Library Informational Data** may be displayed on the host console.

Library Manager Displays (MVS/BTLS)

A Library Manager failure causes the Library Manager console to display certain messages. If the failure has not affected the display and the display is powered-on, the Library Manager may display one or more of the following messages:

Single Library Manager Configuration: In a single Library Manager configuration, the following conditions may occur:

- ‘Severe execution error’ window
- System hang with nonresponsive Library Manager keyboard or pointing device

Note: If this occurs, press **Alt+T** to ensure that the keyboard and display are not being controlled from the remote console.

- Mode changes that show *Pending* for an excessive length of time
- Error recovery in progress

Dual Library Manager Configuration: In a dual Library Manager configuration, the following conditions may occur:

- ‘Switching to active Library Manager’ window displayed
- ‘Severe execution error’ window
- System hang with nonresponsive Library Manager keyboard or pointing device

Note: If this occurs, press **Alt+T** to ensure that the keyboard and display are not being controlled from the remote console.

To restart a Library Manager manually, go to “Library Manager Recovery Starts (MVS/BTLS)”.

Start Library Manager and Host Recovery Procedure (MVS/BTLS)

Follow each step of the following procedure without deviation.

Library Manager Recovery Starts (MVS/BTLS)

Perform one of the following procedures, depending on the Library Manager configuration of your 3494.

Single Library Manager Configuration: For a single Library Manager configuration, perform the following steps:

1. Contact host operations and report what has occurred at the Library Manager.
2. If a BTLS Error Code=70 Library Manager Equipment Check occurred, the Library Manager attempts to restart itself automatically.

The Library Manager should start initial program load (IPL) in about five minutes and may take up to 20 minutes to complete and become active. If, after five minutes, there is no change in the System Status messages, or an “Error recovery in progress” message is not displayed, do a manual restart. **Do not power off the Library Manager.** Press the **Ctrl+Alt+Del** key sequence to restart the Library Manager.

This procedure may need to be repeated. If the Library Manager fails to start an IPL within five minutes after the second attempt to recover, call your next level of support.

3. If the failure did not cause the Library Manager to restart automatically, press the **Ctrl+Alt+Del** key sequence to restart the Library Manager.

While waiting up to 20 minutes for the Library Manager to initialize and enter the Auto mode, Online state, go to “Library Manager Recovers (MVS/BTLS)” on page 325.

Dual Library Manager Configuration: For a dual Library Manager configuration, no Library Manager corrective action is needed. The standby Library Manager

switches control from the active Library Manager automatically, which takes approximately ten minutes to complete (see Figure 194).

If the active Library Manager is not responding and the standby Library Manager does not indicate that it is switching to active after five minutes (see Figure 194), perform the previous steps for a single Library Manager on the one that failed.

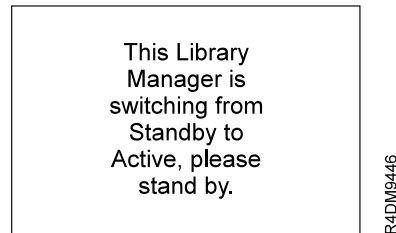


Figure 194. Library Manager Switching Window

While waiting for the Library Manager to initialize and go to the Auto mode, Online state, go to “Library Manager Recovers (MVS/BTLS)”.

Library Manager Recovers (MVS/BTLS)

Perform one of the following procedures, depending on the Library Manager configuration of your 3494.

Single Library Manager Configuration: For a single Library Manager configuration, perform the following steps:

1. Wait for the Library Manager to be re-initialized and enter the Auto mode, Online state. This may take up to 20 minutes.
2. If the failure occurred while inserting cartridges into the high-capacity I/O facility, do not remove the cartridges. Leave the cartridges in place, and the operation restarts automatically. Cartridges inserted in the convenience I/O station that remain in the station must be removed from the station, then reinserted after the Library Manager re-initializes.
3. If the Library Manager displays the Auto mode, Online state, it has recovered. Call your service representative for a recoverable Library Manager error. Continue with “BTLS Host Action” on page 326.
4. If the Library Manager does not display the Auto mode, Online state **and** more than 30 minutes have elapsed since the re-initialization began, call your service representative for an unrecoverable Library Manager error.
5. When the repair action is completed and the 3494 is available to be varied online, continue with “BTLS Host Action” on page 326.

Dual Library Manager Configuration: For a dual Library Manager configuration, perform the following steps:

1. Wait until the switchover completes and the standby Library Manager has become the active Library Manager. The switchover takes approximately ten minutes to complete. The standby Library Manager is the active Library Manager when its System Status displays the Auto mode, Online state.
2. Call your service representative to repair the failed Library Manager. The failed Library Manager may recover from the failure and become available as the standby Library Manager after the database is synchronized.
3. If the failure occurred while inserting cartridges into the high-capacity I/O facility, do not remove the cartridges. Leave the cartridges in place, and the

operation restarts automatically. Cartridges inserted in the convenience I/O station that remain in the station must be removed from the station, then reinserted after the Library Manager re-initializes.

4. Continue with “BTLS Host Action”.

BTLS Host Action

When the Library Manager is in the Auto mode, Online state, perform the following BTLS host actions:

1. Display the unit status by issuing the following command for each tape drive in the 3494:
`D U,,, xxx2`
2. Re-drive the mount for each tape drive showing **MTP** (mount pending) by issuing either of the following commands:
 - From TSO terminals, issue the TSO library mount command.
`LIBRARY MOUNT UNIT(unit)[VOLSER(volser)]`
or
 - Submit JCL to perform a mount. See the *Basic Tape Library Support User's Guide and Reference* for commands.
3. Submit tape jobs.
4. Resubmit any tape jobs that abended.

This completes the MVS/BTLS recovery procedure.

DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape Messages

When a failure or exception condition is reported to a host system operating under the DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape environment, the following messages are generated. For each message, a brief description about the cause of the condition is described along with appropriate recovery actions.

Also see *z/OS System Messages, Volume 2* for additional CBRxxxx messages generated as a result of error or exception conditions detected with the DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape environment software.

In the messages, *library-name* is the name defined by the installation for a particular library.

DFSMS Library Failure Messages or Exception Conditions

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3711I Unexpected error code <i>error code</i> and modifier <i>modifier</i> from library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>An error has been detected during processing in library <i>library-name</i>. The 3494 returned a unit check with error code and modifier <i>error code and modifier</i>, which is an unexpected or inappropriate response to the 3494 request.</p> <p>It is likely that the microcode in the 3494 and the software are not at the correct level.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

2. Where xxx is the device address.

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3712I Unexpected completion code, CC=cc, from library library-name.</p> <p>An error has been detected during processing in library <i>library-name</i>. An unexpected or inappropriate completion code <i>cc</i> has been received from the 3494.</p> <p>It is likely that the microcode in the 3494 and the software are not at the correct level.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>CBR3721I Library library-name in manual mode.</p> <p>Library <i>library-name</i> is in Manual mode and cannot complete or accept 3494 audit requests. Any pending audit requests queued within the 3494 when it was placed in Manual mode are failed resulting in this message. Any subsequent audit requests issued to the 3494 also fail and result in this message.</p>	<p>When the library has returned to Auto mode, resubmit the audit requests.</p>
<p>CBR3722I Library library-name equipment check.</p> <p>The 3494 or one of the associated tape subsystems has detected a 3494 hardware failure. The failing 3494 component must be repaired before 3494 requests can be completed successfully.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>CBR3724I Volume volser does not exist in library library-name.</p> <p>Volume <i>volser</i> does not reside in 3494 <i>library-name</i>. It is possible that another host system has ejected the volume from the 3494.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the ISMF mountable tape volume list function to examine the current state of the volume under DFSMS. 2. Determine where the volume is and reenter it into the library's input station.
<p>CBR3725I Library library-name command reject for volume volser. Library error code=error-code.</p> <p>Library <i>library-name</i> has rejected a request for a 3494 operation with volume <i>volser</i>. The error code indicates the reason for the rejection but is included for diagnostic purposes only.</p> <p>It is likely that the microcode in the 3494 and the software are not at the correct level.</p>	<p>Notify your system administrator.</p>

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3726I Function incompatible error code <i>error-code</i> from library <i>library-name</i> for volume <i>volser</i>.</p> <p>The library cannot process a request for a 3494 operation with volume <i>volser</i> because the request is incompatible with the configuration or set of installed features of the 3494.</p> <p>If <i>error-code</i>=6, an attempt was made to eject a logical volume from a VTS.</p> <p>If <i>error-code</i>=7 or 8, a command for an Export or Import operation was issued to a VTS partition that is not capable of Export and Import operations.</p> <p>If <i>error-code</i>=D, an attempt was made to either eject or audit a logical volume in a PtP VTS, and the subsystem is in the Service Preparation mode.</p> <p>If <i>error-code</i>=E, one of the following occurred:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An attempt was made to eject a logical volume in a PtP VTS, and the subsystem already has 1,000 eject operations in progress. • An attempt was made to audit a logical volume in a PtP VTS, and the subsystem already has 1,000 audit operations in progress. <p>If <i>error-code</i>=F, a command that specified a parameter value that the subsystem does not support was issued to a PtP VTS.</p> <p>If <i>error-code</i>=10, a category mount request or a set volume category request was issued to a PtP VTS, and the subsystem was in read-only mode.</p> <p>It is also possible that the microcode in the 3494 and the software are not at the correct level.</p>	<p>Notify your system administrator.</p>
<p>CBR3727I Control Unit and Library Manager incompatible in library <i>library-name</i>, error code <i>error-code</i>.</p> <p>During processing of a 3494 request in library <i>library-name</i>, it was determined that the tape control unit and the Library Manager are at incompatible software levels. Error code <i>error-code</i> indicates the nature of the incompatibility.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If another tape subsystem is in the 3494, vary the drives associated with the failed subsystem offline and resubmit the request or job. 2. Call your service representative.

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3728I Volume <i>volser</i> in use in library <i>library-name</i>. {Already mounted Mount pending Eject in progress Eject pending Export in progress}.</p> <p>The 3494 cannot process a request for a 3494 operation with volume <i>volser</i> because the volume is already in use in the 3494. One of the following situations is present:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The volume is already mounted on another drive. • A mount request for the volume is pending. • The volume is being ejected from the 3494 currently. • An eject request is pending. • The volume is being exported. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine why the volume is already in use. 2. Resubmit the 3494 request when the volume is no longer in use.
<p>CBR3729I Library Manager for library <i>library-name</i> offline.</p> <p>A 3494 request was issued to library <i>library-name</i>, but the Library Manager is offline. Possible causes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Library Manager is powered-off. • The Library Manager is still in the process of initialization. • The Library Manager state is set to Offline. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check that the Library Manager is powered-on and the Operator menu is active. 2. Check the Library manager field of the System Summary window. It should indicate Online. 3. If it does not indicate Online, use the Mode window and place the library in the Online state. If the 3494 does not go to the Online state, call your service representative. 4. Vary the 3494 online at the host console. 5. Resubmit the request or job.
<p>CBR3750I Message from library <i>library-name</i>: <i>message</i>.</p> <p>The operator at library <i>library-name</i> has sent message <i>message</i> to all connected hosts.</p> <p>Messages can be sent automatically from a VTS subsystem that is performing Export or Import operations to post operation progress.</p> <p>If enabled at the 3494 (see Figure 154 on page 252), text messages also surface for operator interventions that occur at the 3494. See Table 10 on page 262 for the complete text associated with each numbered intervention message.</p>	<p>Handle the operator intervention as required.</p>
<p>CBR3751E Device <i>device-number</i> in library <i>library-name</i> is unavailable.</p> <p>Device <i>device-number</i> in library <i>library-name</i> is no longer available. Either the state of the device has been changed through the Library Manager console, or the 3494 detected a device failure.</p> <p>The device is varied offline to prevent it from being allocated.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the device was made unavailable through the Library Manager console, make it available again through the Library Manager console. 2. If the device was made unavailable due to a failure that the library detected, an intervention-required condition is set for the device. Call your service representative.
<p>CBR3752I Device <i>device-number</i> in library <i>library-name</i> is now available.</p> <p>Device <i>device-number</i> in library <i>library-name</i> that was unavailable previously is now available. The device was made available through the Library Manager console.</p>	<p>Vary the device online from the host system console to make it available for allocation.</p>

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3753E All convenience output stations in library <i>library-name</i> are full.</p> <p>Ejected cartridges occupy all the storage cells in the convenience output station in library <i>library-name</i>. No more cartridges can be ejected to a convenience output station until some of the already-ejected cartridges have been removed. The 3494 continues to accept and queue eject requests.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until the convenience output station is no longer full.</p>	<p>Remove one or more cartridges from the convenience output station. There is also an intervention-required condition set for this condition. It is cleared automatically when the convenience output station is no longer full.</p>
<p>CBR3754E High capacity output station in library <i>library-name</i> is full.</p> <p>Ejected cartridges occupy all the storage cells in the high-capacity output facility in library <i>library-name</i>. No more cartridges can be ejected to the high-capacity output facility until some of the already-ejected cartridges have been removed. The 3494 continues to accept and queue eject requests.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until the high-capacity output facility is no longer full.</p>	<p>Remove one or more cartridges from the high-capacity output facility. There is also an intervention-required condition set for this condition. It is cleared automatically when the high-capacity output facility is no longer full.</p>
<p>CBR3755E {Input Output} door open in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>One of the following conditions has been detected in library <i>library-name</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The station door has been open for more than five minutes. • An eject operation cannot be completed because the door is open. <p>This message is retained on the console until the open door has been closed.</p>	<p>Go to the 3494 and close the station door. There is also an intervention-required condition set for this condition. It is cleared automatically when the station door is closed.</p>

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3757E Library <i>library-name</i> in {Pause/Manual mode} operational state.</p> <p>Library <i>library-name</i> is not running in Auto (normal) mode. The operational state (mode) is one of the following:</p> <p>Pause mode All mechanical motion in the 3494 has stopped. Pause mode is entered automatically when a failure in the 3494 prevents further automated operation or when entered by a command from the Library Manager operator console. The Library Manager continues to accept orders from the host but queues them for execution after Pause mode changes to Auto or Manual mode.</p> <p>Manual mode All mechanical motion within the 3494 has stopped. Manual mode is entered by a command from the Library Manager operator console. The Library Manager continues to accept orders from the host and instructs you to do the functions manually that are normally done automatically, such as volume fetch and mounting.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until the 3494 has returned to the automated operational state.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The 3494 may no longer be in Auto mode because of an operational requirement, such as high-capacity I/O or service. 2. If no operation or service was planned for the 3494 that would have caused the change in mode, go to the library and determine why it is no longer in Auto mode. 3. If there are intervention-required conditions at the library, clear them, then return the 3494 to Auto mode. 4. If a repair action is required, call your service representative.
<p>CBR3758E Library <i>library-name</i> operation degraded.</p> <p>One or more components of library <i>library-name</i> have failed or otherwise become unavailable for use. The 3494 is continuing to function but performance may be degraded. If the CBR3760E Library <i>library-name</i> vision system not operational message accompanies this message, audit and eject requests cannot be performed, and volumes cannot be added to the 3494.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until all 3494 facilities have become fully operational.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Call your service representative. 2. There also may be one or more intervention-required conditions at the 3494 to clear.
<p>CBR3759E Library <i>library-name</i> safety enclosure interlock open.</p> <p>One of the enclosure doors to the library <i>library-name</i> is open. The 3494 is in Pause mode.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until the safety interlocks are closed.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If you are doing an operation that involves entering the enclosure, no action is necessary. 2. If someone could be entering the enclosure without authorization, contact your site security. Intervention at the 3494 is required to return the 3494 to Auto mode.

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3760E Library <i>library-name</i> vision system not operational.</p> <p>Key components of the vision system of library <i>library-name</i> have failed. The 3494 cannot read the external labels on cartridges. Processing of audit or eject requests cannot be performed. Also, volumes cannot be added to the 3494 because their external labels cannot be read. Other requests continue to be accepted and performed.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until the vision system is operational again.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Call your service representative to repair the 3494 vision system. 2. Resubmit audit or eject requests when the vision system is operational.
<p>CBR3761E Library <i>library-name</i> Library Manager offline.</p> <p>Library <i>library-name</i> started the process of going offline as the result of an operator at the Library Manager requesting the library to move to the Offline state. All requests that the Library Manager has accepted already are completed normally. No other requests are accepted.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine why the Library Manager was placed in the Offline state. 2. If a repair action is required, call your service representative.
<p>CBR3762E Library <i>library-name</i> intervention required.</p> <p>One or more conditions in library <i>library-name</i> requires operator intervention to resolve. Function requests continue to be accepted and executed, if possible. If CBR3757E Library <i>library-name</i> in Pause mode operational state accompanies this message, the intervention condition caused automated operations to be stopped.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until all intervention-required conditions have been cleared.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Go to the 3494 and follow the instructions for the intervention-required condition specified on the Library Manager operator console. See "Intervention-Required Conditions and Actions" on page 343 for the intervention-required conditions. 2. After all conditions are resolved, return the 3494 to Auto mode, if required.
<p>CBR3763E Library <i>library-name</i> Library Manager CHECK-1 condition.</p> <p>The Library Manager detected a severe failure condition in library <i>library-name</i>. All requests that the Library Manager accepted are lost.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Go to the library and determine if the Library Manager is trying to recover. If it is, the Library Manager console is displaying an initialization message. If it is not, it is displaying an execution or fatal error message. 2. If the Library Manager recovers, resubmit all outstanding library requests or jobs. 3. If it does not recover, call your service representative.
<p>CBR3764E Library <i>library-name</i> all storage cells full.</p> <p>All storage cells in library <i>library-name</i> are occupied by, or reserved for, cartridges that are already in the 3494. No more cartridges can be added to the 3494. Cartridges in the input station of the 3494 cannot be added to the 3494.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until the 3494 has available storage cells.</p>	<p>Cartridges must be ejected before any can be added to the library. There is also an intervention-required condition set for this condition. It is cleared automatically when the 3494 is no longer full.</p>

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3765E No cleaner volumes available in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>The Library Manager in library <i>library-name</i> must perform a clean operation on one of the drives in the library, but no compatible cleaner volumes are available in the 3494.</p> <p>This message is retained on the console until the 3494 has at least one appropriate cleaner volume.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the Operator intervention... option in the Commands window on the Library Manager console. 2. Find the intervention-required condition that identifies the type of cleaner cartridge that the 3494 requires. 3. Place one or more compatible cleaner volumes, with bar code labels that match the cleaner masks, into the convenience input station.
<p>CBR3766E Dual write disabled in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>The Library Manager in library <i>library-name</i> is not updating the secondary database for the Library Manager inventory. This can be the result of a hardware failure. Operations continue with the primary database.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>CBR3769I Misplaced volume <i>volser</i> found in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>Library <i>library-name</i> found volume <i>volser</i> that had been reported as misplaced previously. The Library Manager updated the inventory to reflect the new location of the volume.</p>	<p>Resubmit the 3494 request or job that failed because the volume was misplaced.</p>
<p>CBR3770I Volume <i>volser</i> misplaced in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>During the execution of a 3494 operation with volume <i>volser</i> in library <i>library-name</i>, the volume cannot be found at the location recorded in the Library Manager inventory.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Go to the 3494 and find the volume record in the database. (Select the Search database for volumes... option in the Database window.) 2. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 3. Enter the 3494 and find the home cell the volume should have been in and search for it in the surrounding cells. If the database shows the volume in a device, check that device. If you find the volume, leave the 3494 and place the volume in the convenience input station. 4. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 5. Resubmit the 3494 request or job after the input station is inventoried.
<p>CBR3771I Duplicate volume <i>volser</i> ejected from library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>A volume was found in a 3494 cell whose <i>volser</i> <i>volser</i> is a duplicate of one already in library <i>library-name</i>. The location recorded in the Library Manager inventory for this <i>volser</i> already contains a volume with the same <i>volser</i>; this volume was ejected from the 3494 to a convenience output station.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the ejected volume from the output station. 2. Determine why the volume has a duplicate label. 3. Clear the item from the Intervention Required window. See Table 23 on page 353 for details.
<p>CBR3772I Duplicate volume <i>volser</i> left in input station in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>An attempt was made to enter volume <i>volser</i> into library <i>library-name</i>. The <i>volser</i> is already recorded in the Library Manager inventory, and the location assigned in the inventory contains a volume with the <i>volser</i>. The entered volume remains in the input station.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the volume from the input station. 2. Determine why the volume has a duplicate label. 3. Clear the item from the Intervention Required window. See Table 23 on page 353 for details.

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3773I Cartridge with unreadable or invalid external label left in input station in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>An attempt was made to enter a cartridge into library <i>library-name</i>. The external label on the cartridge is missing, unreadable, or contains an invalid character. The cartridge remains in the input station.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the input station and correct the problem with the external label, then reenter the cartridge into the 3494. 2. Clear the item from the Intervention Required window. See Table 23 on page 353 for details.
<p>CBR3774I Unexpected volume <i>volser</i> ejected from library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>Volume <i>volser</i> is in an unexpected location in library <i>library-name</i>. Either no entry exists for the <i>volser</i> in the Library Manager inventory, or the cartridge external label is missing or unreadable. The cartridge was ejected from the library to a convenience output station.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the ejected cartridge from the output station. 2. Determine if the label is missing or damaged and replace it if necessary. 3. Determine the 3494 that the volume belongs in using the interactive storage management facility (ISMF) tape volume list application and place the volume in the convenience input station of that 3494. 4. Clear the item from the Intervention Required window. See Table 23 on page 353 for details.
<p>CBR3776I Volume <i>volser</i> inaccessible in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>During the execution of a 3494 operation, library <i>library-name</i> has indicated that volume <i>volser</i> is inaccessible. The volume cannot be retrieved using normal 3494 automated function; manual intervention is needed.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Go to the 3494 and if an intervention-required indication is displayed, determine whether it is for the inaccessible volume by viewing the intervention conditions. If it is the inaccessible volume, follow the instructions for the inaccessible condition. 2. If the intervention-required indication is not displayed or the inaccessible volume is not one of the conditions listed, find the volume record in the database. (Select the Search database for volumes... option in the Database window.) 3. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 4. Enter the 3494 and find the home cell the volume should have been in and search for it in the surrounding cells. If the database shows the volume in a device, check that device. If the volume is stuck in the device, call your service representative to remove the volume. If the volume is found, and after leaving the 3494, place it in the convenience input station. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Resubmit the 3494 request or job after the input station is inventoried.
<p>CBR3777I Volume <i>volser</i> now accessible in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>Volume <i>volser</i> that was reported as inaccessible previously is retrieved and is accessible now for automated operations in library <i>library-name</i>.</p>	<p>Resubmit the 3494 request or job that failed because the volume was inaccessible.</p>
<p>CBR3778I Cleaner volume ejected from library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>A cleaner volume exceeded its maximum usage count and was ejected from library <i>library-name</i>.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience output station. 2. Place a new cleaner cartridge of the same type, with a bar code label that matches one of the cleaner masks, in the convenience input station.

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3779I Damaged volume volser ejected from library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>Damaged volume <i>volser</i> has been ejected from library <i>library-name</i>. The cartridge has been damaged physically, such that it cannot be loaded on a tape device. Either the leader block is missing, or the tape medium has become detached from the leader block.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the output station and repair or replace it. 2. Clear the item from the Intervention Required window. See Table 24 on page 358 for details.
<p>CBR3781I No {MEDIA1 MEDIA2 MEDIA3 MEDIA4} scratch volumes available in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>A library operation requires a scratch volume of the indicated media type, and there are none available in the 3494.</p>	<p>Either add volumes of the appropriate media type to the 3494 or perform a scratch cycle through your tape management system to convert volumes to scratch in the 3494.</p>
<p>CBR3782I Volume <i>volser</i> in library <i>library-name</i> external label missing or unreadable.</p> <p>The external cartridge label for volume <i>volser</i> in library <i>library-name</i> is missing, or the library vision system cannot read it correctly. The 3494 cannot perform volume verification. Mount, demount, and eject requests are completed without verification.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Issue a 3494 request to eject the volume from the 3494 and apply a new cartridge external label, if it has not already been ejected. 2. Place the cartridge in the convenience input station. 3. Clear the item from the Intervention Required window. See “Operator Intervention” on page 251 for details.
<p>CBR3783E Library Manager switchover in library <i>library-name</i> in progress.</p> <p>In HA1 Frames configuration, this indicates that the standby Library Manager is in the process of switching over to active. The switchover may be the result of a Library Manager-detected unrecoverable error or an operator request initiated through the Library Manager.</p>	<p>See “Library Manager Failure in DFSMS/MVS (z/OS)” on page 319 for recovery procedures. CBR3784I indicates when the switchover is complete.</p>
<p>CBR3784I The Library Manager switchover in library <i>library-name</i> is now complete.</p> <p>In HA1 Frames, this indicates that a failure on the active Library Manager has resulted in a switchover to the standby Library Manager. This message indicates that the switchover is complete.</p>	<p>Any outstanding mount requests (CBR4196D) can be responded to and any new requests to the 3494 can be submitted. See “Start Library Manager and Host Recovery Procedure (DFSMS/MVS or z/OS)” on page 321 to recover from inserts or ejects that may have been in progress at the time of the failure.</p>
<p>CBR3785E Copy operations disabled in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>Copying of data between the VTSs in PtP VTS <i>library-name</i> can no longer be performed. Possible causes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One of the VTSs has become unavailable. • All ESCON links to one of the VTSs have become unavailable. 	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>CBR3786E VTS operations degraded in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>PtP VTS <i>library-name</i> does not have all of its elements available, either because of failure or service representative action.</p>	<p>Unless your service representative has notified you that the PtP VTS will become degraded, call your service representative.</p>

Table 16. DFSMS Messages Based on Library Failure or Exception Conditions (continued)

Resulting Console Message	Action
<p>CBR3787E Immediate mode copy operations deferred in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>PtP VTS <i>library-name</i> is configured in the Immediate Copy mode, and one or more copies could not be completed before presenting ending status for a rewind/unload command. Possible causes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Copy operations have become disabled. • A copy operation was taking more than the time allowed by the Virtual Tape Controller (40 minutes). The copy will complete independently of the presentation of ending status for the rewind/unload command. This message will be deleted when the copy completes. 	<p>If CBR3785E is also presented, call your service representative. If not, then it is likely that the workload on the subsystem is high, and copies will be completed automatically.</p>
<p>CBR3788E Service preparation occurring in library <i>library-name</i>.</p> <p>One of the VTSs in PtP VTS <i>library-name</i> is either being prepared for service or is being serviced. Operations of the PtP VTS will be degraded.</p>	<p>No action is required. When the service representative has completed service on the VTS, normal operations will resume, and this message will be deleted.</p>
<p>CBR3789E VTS library <i>library-name</i> is out of empty stacked volumes.</p> <p>Library <i>library-name</i> has no scratch stacked volumes. When this occurs and the library is not a distributed library (meaning that it is not part of a PtP VTS), mount operations can no longer be performed until additional scratch stacked volumes are available. If the 3494 is one of the distributed libraries of a PtP VTS, most mounts will continue being performed using the resources of the other distributed 3494. Mounts that fail result in a CBR4196D message and should be retried to use the resources of the other distributed library.</p>	<p>If 3494 is not a distributed library, add additional physical volumes to the 3494.</p> <p>If 3494 is a distributed library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add additional physical volumes to the library. • Reply retry to any CBR4196D messages.
<p>CBR3790E VTS library <i>library-name</i> has insufficient resources to continue mount processing.</p> <p>Library <i>library-name</i> does not have the resources to continue processing mounts. A possible cause is that the VTS has determined that it does not have at least two available physical devices. When this occurs and the library is not a distributed library (meaning that it is not part of a PtP VTS), mount operations can no longer be performed until the missing resources are available. If the 3494 is one of the distributed libraries of a PtP VTS, most mounts will continue being performed using the resources of the other distributed library. Mounts that are failed will result in a CBR4196D message and should be retried to use the resources of the other distributed library.</p>	<p>If library is not a distributed library, call your service representative.</p> <p>If library is a distributed library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reply retry to any CBR4196D messages. • Call your service representative.

Information Provided at the Library Manager Console

The Library Manager console provides information about many of the failure and exception conditions reported to the host. It also provides overall status about the operation of the library. This section shows several windows you can use for problem determination. See “Using the Library Manager” on page 97 for details about the windows. The windows are described in the order you should follow when determining the source of the problem.

Operator Note:: The primary aids for problem determination should be the messages posted on the host console. Use the information at the Library Manager console only as additional information to aid in finding the fault.

Problem Determination Using System Summary

The System Summary window (see Figure 47 on page 107) provides an overall view of the status of the library. If the System Summary window is not displayed on the console, select the Status window, then select the **System summary...** option. Table 17 summarizes the key fields and what action to take.

Table 17. Problem Determination Using System Summary Window

Field Name	Action
Cannot Display System Summary If the System Summary window cannot be displayed, a failure has occurred in the Library Manager.	Call your service representative.
Operational mode Auto should be indicated, showing normal operation. Pause shows that the 3494 has stopped performing automated operations.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Determine why the mode is not Auto.2. Check the Enclosure doors, Overall system, and Intervention fields.3. Ensure that the front doors are closed.4. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.
Library Manager Online should be indicated, showing normal operation. Offline shows that the Library Manager is not communicating with any of the associated 3490E or 3590 subsystems in the 3494.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Determine why the Library Manager is offline.2. Place the Library Manager in the Online state.
Enclosure doors Closed should be indicated, showing normal operation. Open indicates that one or more doors are open and that automated operations are paused.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Ensure that the front doors are closed.2. Return the 3494 to Auto mode.3. If you cannot set the 3494 to Auto mode, call your service representative.
Direct attach ports A hexadecimal number, 0–3 and 8–B, should be displayed for each installed and initialized port. If a dash is displayed, that port is not initialized.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Ensure that the host is powered on and operating.2. Ensure that the any device driver program on the host is initialized.3. Call your service representative.

Table 17. Problem Determination Using System Summary Window (continued)

Field Name	Action
CU ports A hexadecimal number, 0–F (depending on the port configuration), should be displayed for each 3490E or 3590 control unit port. If a dash (–) is displayed, that port is not initialized. No communication between the Library Manager and the 3490E or 3590 control unit occurs. If the port to a 3490E or 3590 subsystem is not initialized, automated operations for the drives in that subsystem cannot be performed.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure that all 3490E or 3590 subsystems in the library are powered on. Perform the power-on procedure for the 3490E or 3590 subsystems. 2. Check the Error indicator on the 3490E or 3590 control unit setup panel. If it is lit, that control unit has a serious fault; call your service representative to repair the control unit. 3. Call your service representative.
LAN Attach Ports A decimal count of the number of LAN-attached hosts that are initialized currently with the 3494. If no hosts are initialized with the 3494, this shows as a dash. For example, if there are three hosts initialized with the 3494, this number is 3. If one host goes down, this number changes to 2 when the 3494 tries to communicate with that host.	<p>The number in this field is not, by itself, an indication of failure. If there seems to be a problem communicating with a host, select Status on the Operator window action bar, then select the LAN Status... option to view the status of all LAN-attached hosts. Select the host in question from the list of hosts and note the last two columns of the display. If the host is initialized currently, the column labeled Init contains a 1.</p> <p>If a host was initialized and something happened to cause the host to seem to go down (to the 3494), the column labeled Init is a 0, because the library is not initialized currently with that host. The column labeled Prev Init is a 1, because that host was initialized at one time with the 3494. This field is accurate only since the last time the Library Manager was started.</p>
Convenience I/O Empty or Volumes present should be indicated. Unknown indicates that the system has not been taught or the convenience I/O station has been made unavailable.	Call your service representative to teach the system or make the convenience I/O station available.
Convenience I/O Mode Insert or Import should be indicated. Unknown implies that an error has occurred while attempting to determine the mode.	Call your service representative to teach the system or make the convenience I/O station available.
High capacity status Failed indicates that the high-capacity operation has failed to complete.	Call your service representative.
Inventory update Failed indicates that the Inventory Update operation has failed to complete.	Call your service representative.
Overall system OK should be indicated. Degraded indicates that a component in the 3494 has failed, but the 3494 is continuing to operate. Failed indicates that a component has failed, and operations cannot continue.	If Failed is indicated, call your service representative. If Degraded persists, also call your service representative.

Table 17. Problem Determination Using System Summary Window (continued)

Field Name	Action
<p>Accessor</p> <p>OK should be indicated. Failed indicates that the accessor (or both accessors if HA1 Frames are installed) has failed or has been made unavailable, and operations cannot be completed. Degraded indicates that one accessor in HA1 Frames configuration has failed or been made unavailable.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Attempt to return the 3494 to Auto mode. 2. If the problem persists, call your service representative.
<p>Gripper</p> <p>OK should be indicated. Failed indicates that the gripper (or both grippers if HA1 Frames are installed) has failed or has been made unavailable, and operations cannot be completed. Degraded indicates that at least one gripper in an HA1 Frames configuration has failed or been made unavailable.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Vision</p> <p>OK should be indicated. Failed indicates that the vision system (or both vision systems if HA1 Frames are installed) has failed or has been made unavailable and operations cannot be completed. Degraded indicates that one vision system in an HA1 Frames configuration has failed or been made unavailable.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Power</p> <p>OK should be indicated. Power is off indicates that power to the cartridge accessor (or both accessors if an HA1 Frames is installed) was removed and must be restored before automated operations can resume. Degraded indicates that the power to one of the accessors in an HA1 Frames configuration was removed. Unknown indicates that the Library Manager cannot determine the state of the power.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If Unknown is indicated, power off the tape library, then power it on. 2. Ensure that all of the safety interlocks are closed. 3. Place the library back in Auto mode.
<p>Port</p> <p>OK should be indicated. Not initialized indicates that communication with the accessor controller has not been established. Automated operations cannot be performed without communication between the Library Manager and the accessor controller. Degraded indicates that communication with one of the accessors in an HA1 Frames configuration has not been established.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Attempt to return 3494 to Auto mode. 2. If the port field does not change to OK, call your service representative.
<p>Intervention</p> <p>None should be indicated. Required indicates that you must resolve one or more conditions. Depending on the condition, some or all automated operations may be suspended.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the Operator intervention... option in the Commands window. See "Intervention-Required Conditions and Actions" on page 343 for resolving these conditions. 2. After all the conditions are resolved, return the library to Auto mode, if required.

Problem Determination Using Component Availability Status

The Component Availability Status window (see Figure 69 on page 125) provides the availability status of each component in the 3494. If a component is available, it can be used to perform 3494 operations. If a component is unavailable, it cannot be used to perform 3494 operations. To show the window, select the **Component availability status...** option in the Status window.

The three major groupings of components in this window are the convenience I/O station, the accessor and its associated components, and the 3490E or 3590 tape subsystems. All components should indicate **1**, which indicates that the component is available. If any component indicates **0** (not available) or an asterisk (*) (degraded), call your service representative so that it can be repaired and made available.

Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes

Use the Search Database for Volumes window (see Figure 87 on page 152) to determine if the 3494 contains volumes that some action must be taken for. To show the window, select the **Search database for volumes...** option in the Database window. You can also use this window to find volumes reported in a host console message.

For each volume in the library, flags in the database indicate status or an exception condition. Figure 195 shows a summary of the volume status.

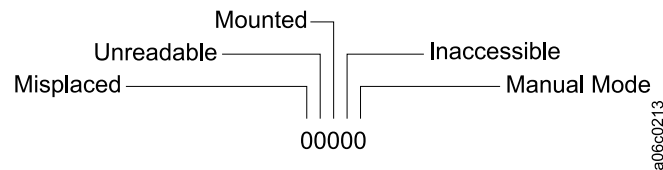


Figure 195. Status Flags

Table 18 on page 341 lists the problem scenarios that the Search Database for Volumes window can be helpful in resolving.

Table 18. Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes Window

Problem Scenario	Action
<p>Specific Inaccessible Volume</p> <p>A host console message indicates that an operation failed because the volume is inaccessible.</p> <p>An Export or Import operation produced a Status File record with status code 16 (Stacked Volume Access Failure).</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the volser in the Volser: field, then select the Search push button. The database record for the volume is shown. The Inaccessible flag should be set (the fourth position of the Flags field set to 1). 2. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 3. Enter the 3494 and find the volume using the cell positions indicated in the database record. Check both the cell and home positions. If the cell position indicated is a device, check that device. 4. If the volume is stuck in a device, call your service representative. 5. If you can remove the volume, place it in the convenience I/O station. 6. Check the volumes on either side of the cell to ensure that they are seated fully in their cells. If a volume is not seated, the gripper cannot get the volume to the left of the unseated volume. 7. Return the 3494 to Auto mode. 8. Resubmit the 3494 request or job after the inventory update is complete.
<p>Specific Misplaced Volume</p> <p>A host console message indicates that an operation failed because the volume is misplaced.</p> <p>An Export or Import operation produced a Status File record with status code 16 (Stacked Volume Access Failure).</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the volser in the Volser: field, then select the Search push button. The database record for the cartridge is shown. The misplaced flag should be set (the first position of the flags field set to 1). If the Manual mode flag (fifth position of the Flag field) is also set, determine if the volume was taken out of the 3494. 2. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 3. Open the front doors on the 3494 and find the location where the volume was last known to be (indicated in the database record for the cell and home location). 4. Look for the volser in the surrounding cells. If the cell location indicated is a device, check that device. 5. If the volume is stuck in a device, call your service representative. 6. If you find the volume, place it in the convenience I/O station. 7. Return the 3494 to Auto mode. 8. Resubmit the 3494 request or job after the inventory update is complete.
<p>Locating other Misplaced Volumes</p> <p>Search the database to determine if the 3494 contains any other misplaced volumes.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Leave the Volser: field blank, select the Yes radio button for the Misplaced Volser Flag, then select the Search push button. The database records, if any, for the misplaced cartridges are shown. 2. Perform the "Specific Misplaced Volume" procedure (see Table 18).

Table 18. Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes Window (continued)

Problem Scenario	Action
Locating other Inaccessible Volumes Search the database to determine if the 3494 contains any other inaccessible volumes.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Leave the Volser: field blank, select the Yes radio button for the Inaccessible Volser Flag, then select the Search push button. The database records, if any, for the inaccessible cartridges are shown. 2. Perform the "Specific Inaccessible Volume" procedure (see Table 18 on page 341).
Locating Misplaced Volumes in other Libraries If an operation on one library failed because the volume was misplaced and you cannot find the volume in that library, check the inventories of the other 3494s to see if it was put in another library by mistake.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At each library in the installation, enter the volser of the misplaced volume in the Volser: field, then select the Search push button. 2. If a database record is found for the volser, eject it from that 3494 and place it in the convenience I/O station of the 3494 with the original error.

Problem Determination Using Whole Queue

When trying to determine why a particular library operation is not completing as expected, you can use the Whole Queue window (see Figure 84 on page 149) to determine what, if anything, needs to be done. This is useful particularly in the absence of any host console messages. Select the **Whole queue...** option in the Queues window. Each 3494 operation in the queue has status that is one of the following:

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| Queued | The operation has not yet started. Other operations are in the queue that have a higher priority or were placed in the queue first. If you do not want to wait for the operation to progress through the queue, select the Promote a command in the queue option in the Commands window and promote the operation. |
| In-Progress | The operation is being performed. No operator action is needed. |
| Blocked | The operation is waiting for another operation to complete before it can be started. When the blocking operation completes, the status of the operation changes to in-progress. No operator action is needed. |

Intervention-Required Conditions and Actions

When the Library Manager determines that an error or exception condition that requires your assistance to correct has occurred within the 3494, it performs the following actions:

1. Adds the detected condition to the list of outstanding operator intervention-required conditions that the Library Manager maintains.
2. If not previously in the Intervention-Required state, places the library in that state and notifies all attached hosts of the state change. The System Summary window is updated to indicate intervention is required.

The notification that the 3494 is in the Intervention-Required state generates the following console message for 3494s managed under DFSMS/MVS

System-Managed Tape environment: **CBR3762E Library** *library-name* **intervention required.**

The message stays on the console as long as the 3494 is in the Intervention-Required state.

3. If “Send Interventions to Host Consoles” is enabled in the Operator Intervention window (under the Commands window), a broadcast message of the operator intervention text is sent to all attached hosts.

For libraries managed under the DFSMS/MVS System-Managed Tape environment, this results in the following message being displayed at the host console: **CBR3750I Message from Library** *library-name: message*.

The *message* provided with the **CBR3750I Message from Library** contains an identifier number and the intervention text. A blank character separates the intervention text from the identifier number (in the form OPxxxx, where xxxx is the intervention number). “Intervention Conditions of 3494 Tape Drives” on page 345 through “Intervention Conditions of a VTS” on page 361 show **Resolution Actions** for the identifier number and the complete intervention text found in a *message*. The intervention text is truncated at 63 characters in early levels of the product.

For other operating systems, consult the associated supporting software publications to determine operator notification methods.

To determine the cause of an intervention-required condition and the steps required for its resolution, select the **Operator intervention...** option in the Commands window on the Library Manager console. Each condition is listed separately and also indicates the date and time that the condition occurred.

Notes:

1. Items starting with an asterisk (*) are cleared automatically when you clear the condition causing the intervention.
2. You can view operator interventions from the Specialist (see “Specialist Features and Functions” on page 291).

The operator intervention conditions are described in the following set of tables. Similar conditions are grouped together in each table to make it easier to find a specific condition. Table 19 on page 344 provides a summary of the grouped conditions:

Quick Reference to Intervention-Required Conditions

Table 19. Quick Reference to Intervention-Required Conditions

Condition Type	Table Location
Conditions relating to tape drives in the 3494	Table 20 on page 345
Conditions relating to other 3494 components	Table 21 on page 346
Conditions relating to I/O stations or facilities	Table 22 on page 350
Conditions relating to external cartridge labels	Table 23 on page 353
Conditions relating to data cartridges	Table 24 on page 358
Conditions relating to cleaner cartridges	Table 25 on page 360
Conditions relating to a VTS in the 3494	Table 26 on page 361

Intervention Conditions of 3494 Tape Drives

Table 20. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Tape Drives in the 3494

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message <i>OP0017</i></p> <p>Load / unload failure on device xxx. Empty the feed slot.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>Tape device xxx has failed to load or unload a tape cartridge. The automatic recovery process was not able to unload the cartridge from the device and put it away. The device or cartridge may be defective.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the enclosure. 3. If the cartridge is accessible, remove it. 4. If the cartridge is in a CST- or ECCST-type device (Model C1A or C2A), make the device not ready by pressing the Ready button, press the Unload button to unload the cartridge, remove the cartridge, then make the device ready by pressing the Ready button. 5. If the cartridge is in a CST- or ECCST-type device (Model F1A), press the Load/Unload button to unload the cartridge, then remove the cartridge. 6. If the cartridge is in an HPCT- or EHPCT-type device, select the Unload option in the Options window, press Enter, then remove the cartridge. 7. If the cartridge is damaged, repair it (for example, reattach the leader block). If it cannot be repaired, it should be reinserted, and an eject should be issued from the host. 8. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station. 9. Close the enclosure. 10. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 11. A service call may be needed if the error persists.
<p>Message <i>OP0031</i></p> <p>Device xxx is not ready.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a previous operator intervention or service action at a 3490E-type tape device, device xxx was left in the Not Ready state.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the enclosure. 3. If the cartridge is in a CST- or ECCST-type device (Model C1A or C2A), make the device not ready by pressing the Ready button, press the Unload button to unload the cartridge, remove the cartridge, then make the device ready by pressing the Ready button. If the drive does not become ready, call your service representative. 4. If the cartridge is in a CST- or ECCST-type device (Model F1A), press the Load/Unload button to unload the cartridge, then remove the cartridge. 5. If the cartridge is in an HPCT- or EHPCT-type device, select the Unload option in the Options window, press Enter, then remove the cartridge. If a check code is displayed on the message display, record the code and report it to your service representative. 6. Place the cartridge in the error recovery cell. The error recovery cell is cell 1 A 1 (cell 1 A 3 if dual grippers are installed in the library). 7. Close the enclosure. 8. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.

Table 20. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Tape Drives in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0035</p> <p>A recoverable error occurred on device xxx. A service call may be needed if the error persists.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>Tape device xxx recovered from a failure to load or unload a tape cartridge.</p>	<p>A service call may be needed if the error persists.</p>
<p>Message OP0047</p> <p>Device xxx has failed. A service call is required.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>A load or unload failure was detected on tape device xxx, and the automatic recovery process was not able to complete the operation successfully. The device is no longer available for use and requires service.</p>	<p>Although the intervention message can be cleared from the list of actions, the device failure remains. Further attempts to use the device display the Intervention-Required message again.</p>

Intervention Conditions of Other 3494 Components

Table 21. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Other 3494 Components

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0001</p> <p>Gripper failure on gripper x, accessor y.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>Gripper x, Accessor y has failed repeatedly to release a cartridge. Service is required.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the indicated gripper. 4. Place the cartridge in the error recovery cell. The error recovery cell is cell 1 A 1 (cell 1 A 3 if dual grippers are installed in the library). 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 7. Call your service representative.
<p>Message OP0004</p> <p>* The library is full.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>An attempt was made to insert cartridges into the 3494. There are no available cells in the 3494 other than the convenience I/O station or the high-capacity I/O facility.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cartridges must be ejected from the 3494 before more cartridges can be inserted into the library system. 2. This condition cannot be cleared by selecting it from the list of actions. Instead, the 3494 clears this condition automatically when space becomes available in the 3494. 3. If the Insert operation that filled the 3494 ended with cartridges still in the I/O station, the cartridges must be removed.

Table 21. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Other 3494 Components (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0025</p> <p>A cartridge could not be released from gripper x, accessor y.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The cartridge in gripper x, accessor y remained in the gripper after an attempt was made to put it in a cell or device. This may be because of a damaged cartridge, alignment of the 3494, or a failing gripper. The gripper remains available for use after the cartridge is removed.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 system in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the indicated gripper. 4. Place the cartridge in the error recovery cell. The error recovery cell is cell 1 A 1 (cell 1 A 3 if dual grippers are installed in the 3494). 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.
<p>Message OP0026</p> <p>A cartridge has been dropped.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>A cartridge has been dropped.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the enclosure. 2. Pick up the cartridge from the enclosure floor. 3. Put the recovered cartridge into the error recovery cell. The error recovery cell is cell 1 A 1 (cell 1 A 3 if dual grippers are installed in the 3494). 4. Close the enclosure. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.
<p>Message OP0028</p> <p>An emergency stop has occurred.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>If an enclosure door is opened while the 3494 is in Auto mode, an emergency stop is performed.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine what caused the stop. The usual cause is an open enclosure door; check Enclosure doors in the System Summary window to determine if one or more doors are open. 2. Close the enclosure door. 3. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.
<p>Message OP0042</p> <p>The system has failed. A service call is required.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>A major failure of the systems in the 3494 has occurred.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0043</p> <p>* The accessor or gripper configuration has changed. The 3494 must be retaught.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The second gripper has either been installed or removed from the library, but the 3494 has not been retaught. Damage to the 3494 can result if the 3494 is not retaught.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Call your service representative. 2. The library system must be put in Service mode and retaught to show the current gripper configuration. 3. This condition cannot be cleared by selecting it from the list of actions. Instead, the 3494 clears this condition automatically when it is retaught.
<p>Message OP0062</p> <p>Power failure on accessor x. A service call is required.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The failing component could be the accessor's 24 V dc or 36 V dc power supply. See the transaction log for the exact cause of the power failure.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 21. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Other 3494 Components (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0063</p> <p>Accessor x has failed. A service call is required.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>An accessor has failed.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0064</p> <p>Dual Write has failed. A service call is required.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>A secondary copy of the Library Manager database has failed when being written.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0065</p> <p>An error occurred for cartridge xxxxxx during insert from CIO slot nn to cell yyyy.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>A failure occurred when moving a cartridge from the convenience I/O station.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Locate the cartridge and reinsert into the 3494. The cartridge may be in the destination rack, the gripper, or on the enclosure floor. 2. If the cartridge is unlabeled, insert it using the Insert Unlabeled Cartridges facility. 3. Contact your system administrator.
<p>Message OP0067</p> <p>Eject failed for volser xxxxxx. This operation was initiated by the Library Manager.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>Eject of a volume by the Library Manager has failed.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0068</p> <p>A Library Manager switch has completed. This switch was initiated by the operator.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>None.</p>	<p>None.</p>
<p>Message OP0069</p> <p>A Library Manager switch has completed. This switch was due to an error.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected an error from which recovery is not possible.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0070</p> <p>A hard drive has failed. Call service.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected a PC hard drive error.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 21. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Other 3494 Components (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p><i>Message</i> OP0070</p> <p>LM-x hard drive failure. Call service. Library is operational but degraded. yyyyyyy hard drive failed.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected an error on the PC's primary or mirror hard drive.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0071</p> <p>Mirroring disabled. Call service. Library is operational but degraded.</p> <p>Or</p> <p>LM-x mirroring disabled. Call service. Library is operational but degraded.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected a hard drive mirroring error.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0072 OP0073</p> <p>Barrier door x is not fully retracted. Call service.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected a barrier door error condition.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Call your service representative. 2. Attempt to retract the barrier door fully.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0074</p> <p>Control unit on port xx requires a higher level of Library Manager.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected that the port hardware has been upgraded, but the Library Manager has not been upgraded.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0075</p> <p>Database discrepancies have been found. Call service. Library is still operational.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected database discrepancies.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Call your service representative. 2. Open a service window and execute READMEDB.CMD to correct the database discrepancies.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0080</p> <p>Error writing to dual write log (on Library Manager A or B).</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The Library Manager detected an error while writing to the dual write log.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 21. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Other 3494 Components (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0081</p> <p>An emergency stop has occurred, or accessor A or B has failed. A service call is required.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The Library Manager detected an open door, or an accessor has failed.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Intervention Conditions of I/O Stations or Facilities

Table 22. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to I/O Stations or Facilities

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0003</p> <p>* The convenience I/O station is full.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>All of the cells of the convenience I/O station are full, and at least one additional cartridge is queued to be ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove all cartridges from the convenience I/O station. 2. This condition cannot be cleared by selecting it from the list of actions. Instead, the library system clears this condition automatically when space becomes available in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0010</p> <p>* The high-capacity output rack is full.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>All of the cells of the high-capacity facility are full, and at least one additional cartridge is queued to be ejected to the high-capacity facility.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove all cartridges from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. This condition cannot be cleared by selecting it from the list of actions. Instead, the 3494 clears this condition automatically when it finds empty cells during the Inventory Update operation.
<p>Message OP0018</p> <p>An unexpected volser (xxxxxx) was left in the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>An unexpected volume means that the volser could not be found in the database.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Determine where the cartridge belongs and take corrective action.
<p>Message OP0019</p> <p>An unexpected volser (xxxxxx) was left in the high-capacity output rack cell yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>An unexpected volume means that the volser could not be found in the database.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the enclosure. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity output rack 4. Determine where the cartridge belongs and take corrective action. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.

Table 22. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to I/O Stations or Facilities (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p><i>Message</i> OP0020 OP0021</p> <p>* The convenience I/O station door is open.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The convenience I/O station door has been left in the open position for greater than five minutes, or there is an eject operation queued for the convenience I/O station and the door is open. This can also occur if an Eject operation is being blocked by the completion of an Insert operation.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Close the convenience I/O station door. 2. This condition cannot be cleared by selecting it from the list of actions. Instead, the 3494 clears this condition automatically when the convenience I/O station door is closed. 3. Check for an intervention that may be keeping an Insert operation from completing (such as the library full or a duplicate volser left in the I/O station) and clear the condition.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0024</p> <p>The convenience I/O station should be empty but is not, visually check the station.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>When the convenience I/O station Insert operation completed, the cartridge-present sensor indicated that cartridges were still present when none should have been. A cartridge without a label in the station or debris obscuring the cartridge-present sensor can cause this condition.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove any cartridges from the convenience I/O station and inspect their labels. 2. Remove any debris that may be obscuring the cartridge-present sensor. 3. Check Convenience I/O in the System Summary window to verify that the status is Empty.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0044</p> <p>* The top two I/O station cells are inaccessible. Move cartridges to cell 3.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>In a 3494 that is configured with dual grippers, Gripper 1 has failed, and cartridges were placed in the top two cells of the I/O station. The top two cells of the convenience I/O station are no longer usable until Gripper 1 is repaired.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the convenience I/O station. 2. Remove the cartridges from the top two cells of the I/O station. 3. Replace the cartridges in the I/O station using cell 3 or below. 4. Close the convenience I/O station. 5. This condition cannot be cleared by selecting it from the list of actions. Instead, the 3494 clears this condition automatically when the cartridges are removed from the top two convenience I/O station cells and the I/O station is closed.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0046</p> <p>Volser (xxxxxx) cannot be removed from the high-capacity station cell: yyyy.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The cartridge accessor tried several times to remove cartridge xxxxxx from the high-capacity facility but failed. This could be caused by a problem with the cartridge, the cell, the gripper, or the alignment of the 3494. The problem cartridge is in high-capacity facility cell yyyy.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility cell. 4. Inspect the cartridge and cell for damage. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 7. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.

Table 22. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to I/O Stations or Facilities (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0054</p> <p>Volser (xxxxxx) cannot be removed from convenience I/O station.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The cartridge accessor tried several times to remove cartridge xxxxxx from the convenience I/O station but failed. This could be caused by a problem with the cartridge, the I/O station, the gripper, or the alignment of the 3494.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Inspect the cartridge and cell for damage. 3. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0056</p> <p>A volser (xxxxxx) with an unknown media type has been left in the convenience input station.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The media-type label is damaged.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install the correct seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22 for the procedure. 3. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0057</p> <p>A volser (xxxxxx) with an unknown media type has been left in the high-capacity input station.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The media-type label is damaged.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the enclosure. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity input rack. 4. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install the correct seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22 for the procedure. 5. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station. 6. Close the enclosure door. 7. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.
<p>Message OP0058</p> <p>An invalid volser (xxxxxx) has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>Invalid volsers contain leading or imbedded blanks or invalid characters. Valid characters are upper case A–Z and numerics 0–9.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Determine why the cartridge is invalid and take corrective action.
<p>Message OP0060</p> <p>During an Inventory Update operation, volser xxxxxx was ejected to the convenience I/O station because there were no free cells.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>There were no free cells.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Contact your system administrator.

Table 22. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to I/O Stations or Facilities (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0061</p> <p>During an Inventory Update operation, volser xxxxxx was ejected to the high capacity station because there were no free cells.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>There were no free cells.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity output rack. 2. Contact your system administrator.

Intervention Conditions of External Cartridge Labels

Table 23. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to External Cartridge Labels

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0005</p> <p>A duplicate volser (xxxxxx) was ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, a cartridge was found whose external volume serial number, xxxxxx, is the same as that of another cartridge in the library. The cartridge was placed in the convenience I/O station. The 3494 does not support more than one cartridge with the same volume serial number.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Determine why the cartridge is a duplicate and take corrective action.
<p>Message OP0006</p> <p>A duplicate volser (xxxxxx) was left in the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Insert operation, a cartridge was found whose external volume serial number, xxxxxx, is the same as that of another cartridge in the 3494. The library does not support more than one cartridge with the same volume serial number.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Determine why the cartridge is a duplicate and take corrective action.
<p>Message OP0007</p> <p>An unreadable volser was left in the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Insert operation, the vision system was not able to read the external volume serial number label on the cartridge. The label may not have been installed correctly, is damaged, or is not one of the supported label types.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Replace the unreadable label with a readable label. 3. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.

Table 23. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to External Cartridge Labels (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message <i>OP0009</i></p> <p>An unexpected volser (xxxxxx) was found and ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a 3494 operation other than Inventory or Inventory Update, a cartridge was found whose external volume serial number, xxxxxx, indicates a volser that is not in the Library Manager's database. It is likely that the cartridge was added to the 3494 when one of the doors was open, and an Inventory operation was not performed or Inventory Update has been disabled.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Determine where the cartridge belongs and take corrective action.
<p>Message <i>OP0011</i></p> <p>A duplicate volser (xxxxxx) was left in high-capacity input rack cell yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Insert operation, a cartridge whose external volume serial number, xxxxxx, is the same as that of another cartridge in the 3494 was found in high-capacity facility cell yyyy. The 3494 does not support more than one cartridge with the same volume serial number.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Determine why the cartridge is a duplicate and take corrective action. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.
<p>Message <i>OP0012</i></p> <p>An unreadable volser was left in high-capacity input rack cell yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Insert operation for the high-capacity facility, the vision system was not able to read the external volume serial number label on the cartridge. The problem cartridge is in cell yyyy. The label may not have been installed correctly, is damaged, or is not one of the supported label types.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Replace the unreadable label with a readable label. 7. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message <i>OP0013</i></p> <p>An invalid volser (xxxxxx) was left in high-capacity input rack cell yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Insert operation for the high-capacity facility, the vision system read the external volume serial number label on the cartridge, and it contained one or more invalid characters. The label must not contain leading or imbedded blanks or characters other than upper case A–Z and numerics 0–9. The problem cartridge is in cell yyyy.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Determine why the cartridge is invalid and take corrective action. Invalid volsers contain leading or imbedded blanks or invalid characters. Valid characters are upper case A–Z and numerics 0–9.

Table 23. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to External Cartridge Labels (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0014</p> <p>An invalid volser (xxxxxx) was left in the convenience I/O station.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>During an Insert operation, the vision system read the external volume serial number label on the cartridge, and it contained one or more invalid characters. The label must not contain leading or imbedded blanks or characters other than upper case A–Z and numerics 0–9.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Determine why the cartridge is invalid and take corrective action. Invalid volsers contain leading or imbedded blanks or invalid characters. Valid characters are upper case A–Z and numerics 0–9.
<p>Message OP0015</p> <p>A duplicate volser (xxxxxx) was ejected to high-capacity output rack cell yyyy.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, a cartridge was found whose external volume serial number, xxxxxx, is the same as that of another cartridge in the 3494. The convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable. The cartridge was placed in high-capacity facility cell yyyy. The 3494 does not support more than one cartridge with the same volume serial number.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Determine why the cartridge is a duplicate and take corrective action. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode.
<p>Message OP0016</p> <p>An unexpected volser (xxxxxx) was ejected to high-capacity output rack cell yyyy.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>During a 3494 operation other than Inventory or Inventory Update, a cartridge was found whose external volume serial number, xxxxxx, indicates a volser that is not in the Library Manager's database. The convenience I/O station is not installed, is full, or is not available. It is likely that the cartridge was added to the 3494 when one of the doors was open, and an Inventory operation was not performed or Inventory Update has been disabled. The problem cartridge was placed in cell yyyy.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Determine where the cartridge belongs and take corrective action.
<p>Message OP0039</p> <p>A duplicate Volser has been found at cell yyyy.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, a cartridge was found whose external volume serial number, xxxxxx, is the same as that of another cartridge in the 3494. The cartridge was left in the cell where it was found. The 3494 does not support more than one cartridge with the same volume serial number. A convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable, and a high-capacity output station has not been defined.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the rack cell position yyyy. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Determine why the cartridge is a duplicate and take corrective action. 7. Reinsert the cartridge into the 3494 through available facilities.

Table 23. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to External Cartridge Labels (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0040</p> <p>The cartridge label located at cell yyyy is unreadable.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, the vision system was not able to read the external volume serial number label on the cartridge in cell yyyy. The label may not have been installed correctly, is damaged, or is not one of the supported label types. A convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable, and a high-capacity output station has not been defined.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the rack cell position yyyy. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Determine why the cartridge label is unreadable and take corrective action. 7. Reinsert the cartridge into the 3494 through available facilities.
<p>Message OP0041</p> <p>The cartridge label located at cell yyyy is invalid.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, the vision system read the external volume serial number label on the cartridge, and it contained one or more invalid characters. The label must not contain leading or imbedded blanks or characters other than upper case A–Z and numerics 0–9. The problem cartridge is in cell yyyy. A convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable, and a high-capacity output station has not been defined.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the rack cell position yyyy. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Determine why the cartridge label is invalid and take corrective action. 7. Reinsert the cartridge into the 3494 through available facilities.
<p>Message OP0048</p> <p>A cartridge containing invalid media has been left in device xxx feed slot. Remove the cartridge.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a Mount operation, tape device xxx determined that the cartridge is not of a compatible media type but was not able to unload the cartridge. It is likely that the cartridge has a missing or damaged media-type label, or the media-type label is incorrect for the cartridge's media type.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. If the cartridge is accessible, remove it. 4. If the cartridge is in a 3490E device, make the device not ready by pressing the Ready switch, press the Unload switch to unload the cartridge, remove the cartridge, then make the device ready by pressing the Ready switch. If the cartridge is in a 3590 device, select the Unload option in the Options window, press Enter, then remove the cartridge. If you cannot remove the cartridge, call your service representative. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 7. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install the correct seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22 for the procedure. 8. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.

Table 23. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to External Cartridge Labels (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0049</p> <p>An invalid media volser (xxxxxx) has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, the media-type label of a cartridge has a media-type character that the 3494 does not support. Supported media-type characters are 1, E, J, and K.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install the correct seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22. 3. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0050</p> <p>An invalid media volser (xxxxxx) has been ejected to the high-capacity output station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, the media-type label of a cartridge has a media-type character that the 3494 does not support. Supported media-type characters are 1, E, J, and K. Also, the convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install the correct seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22. 7. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0052</p> <p>A volser (xxxxxx) with an unknown media type has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, the vision system could not determine the media type of a cartridge, the volser did not fit into an established media-type range, and a default media type was not defined for the 3494.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. If no seventh character is present, either add one or modify the volser ranges to include this volser. See "Volser Ranges for Media Types" on page 186 on how to modify the volser ranges. 3. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install a readable seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22. 4. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0053</p> <p>A volser (xxxxxx) with an unknown media type has been ejected to high-capacity output facility cell: yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, the vision system could not determine the media type of a cartridge, the volser did not fit into an established media-type range, and a default media type was not defined for the library. Also, the convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable. The cartridge is in high-capacity facility cell yyyy.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. If no seventh character is present, either add one or modify the volser ranges to include this volser. See "Volser Ranges for Media Types" on page 186 on how to modify the volser ranges. 7. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install a readable seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22. 8. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.

Table 23. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to External Cartridge Labels (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0059</p> <p>The cartridge label located at cell yyyy has an unknown media type.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an Inventory or Inventory Update operation, the media-type label of a cartridge has a media-type character that the library does not support. Supported media-type characters are 1, E, J, and K. A convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable, and a high-capacity output station has not been defined.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the library system in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the rack cell position yyyy. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the library system in Auto mode. 6. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install the correct seventh character representing the media type. See "Cartridge System Tape Labels" on page 22. 7. Reinsert the cartridge into the 3494 through available facilities.

Intervention Conditions of Data Cartridges

Table 24. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Data Cartridges

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0022</p> <p>Volser (xxxxxx) could not be put away. It was ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a Demount operation, the cartridge accessor was not able to place the cartridge into its home cell, and there are no other available storage cells in the 3494. The cartridge may be damaged or something is blocking its home cell. If something is blocking its home cell, it is likely to be a cartridge without an external volume serial number label.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Place the library system in Pause mode. 3. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 4. Inspect the cartridge's home cell for damage or blockage. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 7. Inspect the cartridge for damage. 8. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0023</p> <p>Volser (xxxxxx) could not be put away. It was ejected to high-capacity output rack cell: yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a Demount operation, the cartridge accessor was not able to place the cartridge into its home cell, and there are no other available storage cells in the 3494. Also, the convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable. The cartridge may be damaged or something is blocking its home cell. If something is blocking its home cell, it is likely to be a cartridge without an external volume serial number label. The problem cartridge is in high-capacity facility cell yyyy.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the library system in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Inspect the cartridge's home cell for damage or blockage. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 7. Inspect the cartridge for damage. 8. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.

Table 24. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Data Cartridges (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0029</p> <p>Damaged volser (xxxxxx) ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a Cartridge Load operation on a tape device, the device determined that the cartridge does not have a leader block or that the tape media has a break in it. The cartridge accessor was able to remove the cartridge from the device.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Inspect the cartridge for damage. If the leader block is detached from the tape, replace the leader block. See the tape drive Operator Guide for the procedure. 3. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0030</p> <p>Damaged volser (xxxxxx) ejected to high-capacity output facility cell: yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a Cartridge Load operation on a tape device, the device determined that the cartridge does not have a leader block or that the tape media has a break in it. The cartridge accessor was able to remove the cartridge from the device. In addition, the convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable. The problem cartridge is in high-capacity facility cell yyyy.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 6. Inspect the cartridge for damage. If the leader block is detached from the tape, replace the leader block. See the tape drive Operator Guide for the procedure. 7. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0045</p> <p>Volser (xxxxxx) cannot be removed from cell: yyyy.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The accessor was not able to remove the cartridge from its home cell. The cartridge or its home cell may be damaged or something is blocking its home cell. The library could be out of alignment, or the gripper is failing. The problem cartridge is in cell yyyy.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the indicated cell. 4. Inspect the cell for damage. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 7. Inspect the cartridge for damage. 8. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0076 OP0077 OP0078 OP0079</p> <p>Volser xxxxxx cannot be found. Check home cell: yyyy and accessor A or B, gripper 1 or 2.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The accessor was not able to locate a tape cartridge during error recovery.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the indicated home cell or the gripper of the accessor. 2. If found, place the tape cartridge in the error recovery cell.

Intervention Conditions of Cleaner Cartridges

Table 25. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Cleaner Cartridges

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message <i>OP0008</i></p> <p>* The library is out of CST/ECCST cleaner cartridges.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>A Clean operation for a 3490E-type tape device needs to be performed, but there are no available compatible cleaner cartridges in the 3494. Either no cleaner cartridges have been added to the 3494, or they have all been used and have been ejected.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place 3490E-type cleaner cartridges in the convenience I/O station. 2. Selecting this condition from the list of actions cannot clear it. Instead, the library system clears this condition automatically when you insert cleaner cartridges of the appropriate type.
<p>Message <i>OP0034</i></p> <p>A mislabeled cleaner cartridge has been left in device xxx feed slot. Remove the cartridge.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a Clean operation, tape device xxx determined that the cleaner cartridge is not compatible with the device but was not able to unload the cartridge. It is likely that the cartridge has a missing or damaged media-type label, or the media-type label is incorrect for the cartridge's media type.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the 3494 in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. If the cartridge is accessible, remove it. 4. If the cartridge is in a 3490E device, make the device not ready by pressing the Ready switch, press the Unload switch to unload the cartridge, remove the cartridge, then make the device ready by pressing the Ready switch. If the cartridge is in a 3590 device, select the Unload option in the Options window, press Enter, then remove the cartridge. If you cannot remove the cartridge, call your service representative. 5. Close the enclosure door. 6. Place the 3494 in Auto mode. 7. Inspect the cartridge's seventh character. Install the correct seventh character representing the media type. See the tape drive Operator Guide for the procedure. 8. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message <i>OP0036</i></p> <p>A mislabeled cleaner cartridge has been ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>An attempt was made to a clean a tape device, but the cartridge was determined to be a data cartridge, not a cleaner cartridge. One of the following conditions caused the problem:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The cartridge was labeled mistakenly with an external volser that falls within the range of volsers designated for cleaner volumes in the 3494. • The ranges set in the library conflict with ranges already in use for data cartridges. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Determine if the volser on the cartridge is included in the ranges of volsers defined for cleaner cartridges by selecting the Cleaner Masks option in the Commands window on the Library Manager console. 3. Either correct the cleaner masks or relabel the cartridge.

Table 25. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to Cleaner Cartridges (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message <i>OP0037</i></p> <p>A mislabeled cleaner cartridge has been ejected to the high-capacity output station.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>An attempt was made to clean a tape device, but the cartridge was determined to be a data cartridge, not a cleaner cartridge. The convenience I/O station is either not installed, is full, or is unavailable. The cartridge is in the high-capacity output station. One of the following conditions caused the problem:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The cartridge was labeled mistakenly with an external volser that falls within the range of volsers designated for cleaner volumes in the 3494. • The ranges set in the 3494 conflict with ranges already in use for data cartridges. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the library system in Pause mode. 2. Open the appropriate enclosure door. 3. Remove the cartridge from the high-capacity facility. 4. Close the enclosure door. 5. Place the library system in Auto mode. 6. Determine if the volser on the cartridge is included in the ranges of volsers defined for cleaner cartridges by selecting the Cleaner Masks option in the Commands window on the Library Manager console. 7. Either correct the cleaner masks or relabel the cartridge.
<p>Message <i>OP0051</i></p> <p>* The library is out of HPCT cleaner cartridges.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>A Clean operation for a 3590-type tape device needs to be performed, but there are no available compatible cleaner cartridges in the library. Either no cleaner cartridges have been added to the 3494, or they have all been used and have been ejected.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place 3590-type cleaner cartridges in the convenience I/O station. 2. Selecting this condition from the list of actions cannot clear it. Instead, the 3494 clears this condition automatically when you insert cleaner cartridges of the appropriate type.

Intervention Conditions of a VTS

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message <i>OP0055</i></p> <p>Free storage threshold has been crossed for VTS z.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The available free space in VTS z has crossed the threshold set through the Set VTS Management Policies window on the Library Manager.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Insert more 3590 cartridges into the library. Ensure that their volsers are within the range of stacked volumes defined for the VTS reporting the condition. 2. The VTS Active Data window for the VTS is updated to reflect any newly added stacked volumes on the hour.
<p>Message <i>OP0066</i></p> <p>* VTS Import: Unassigned volumes have been inserted into the library.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The library is in Import mode, and physical volumes have been inserted into the library using the convenience I/O station. These physical volumes have been placed in the "Unassigned" category. They should be moved to the "Import" category or normal "Insert" category.</p>	<p>To move the physical volumes to the proper category, select the Manage Unassigned Volumes option under System management in the Commands window.</p>

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0100</p> <p>A Read-Only status stacked volume xxxxxx has been ejected. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a previous operation with the stacked volume, the VTS controller encountered an unrecoverable error, indicating that the media of the volume may be damaged. During that operation, data was not recovered fully, resulting in the job ending. The stacked volume was placed in Read-Only status to limit use to recall of other logical volumes only.</p> <p>A field conversion of 3590 Model B1A to E1A will have caused partially filled stacked volumes to be placed in Read-Only status also.</p> <p>On an hourly basis, the VTS controller determines whether there are any stacked volumes in Read-Only status and starts a process that moves the valid logical volumes to other stacked volumes, then ejects the stacked volume from the 3494. See message OP0107 <i>Logical volume xxxxxx was not fully recovered from damaged stacked volume yyyyyy. (VTS z)</i> on page 364 for logical volumes not recovered and not moved to other stacked volumes.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. Notify your system administrator. 3. If the cartridge is still within a warranty period and damaged logical volumes are no longer needed, return it to your supplier. 4. If damaged logical volumes must be recovered, call your service representative. 5. When ejected, those partially filled stacked volumes that were in Read-Only status as a result of a recent 3590 Model B1A to E1A conversion may be inserted into the library for VTS scratch stacked volume usage. Consult your service representative for a list of these stacked volumes.
<p>Message OP0101</p> <p>* A VTS is out of empty stacked volumes. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>There are two ways to determine this condition:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Once an hour the VTS checks if there are empty stacked volumes. During that check, VTS z did not have any empty stacked volumes. • An operation that requires an empty stacked volume needs to be performed, and VTS z does not have an empty stacked volume. The operations that need empty stacked volumes are copying data from the tape volume cache or reclamation of unusable space on stacked volumes. 	<p>Insert one or more 3590 cartridges that have volume serial numbers within the range of stacked volumes defined for VTS z.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the VTS is out of empty stacked volumes, logical mount requests are queued but not performed. Queued logical mounts are performed when a stacked volume has been inserted. 2. This condition cannot be closed by selecting it from the list of actions. Instead, the 3494 clears this condition automatically when stacked volumes are added for the VTS.

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0102</p> <p>A stacked volume has a label error. Internal: xxxxxx, External: yyyyyy</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During validation that the correct stacked volume was mounted, the volume serial number read from the media did not match what was expected. The volume is ejected to the convenience I/O station.</p> <p>This is likely caused by human intervention in the library that involved moving physical cartridges between storage cells and, when the 3494 was returned to Auto mode, Inventory Update was disabled. Without performing Inventory Update, the 3494 has no way of updating its database to know where cartridges have been moved.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridge from the convenience I/O station. 2. If human intervention in the library is the cause, perform an Inventory Update operation. 3. If human intervention is not the cause, check the external label of the cartridge for damage and relabel if necessary. 4. Place the cartridge in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0103</p> <p>A permanent, nonrecoverable Tape Volume Cache error has occurred. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the initialization of the VTS z, unrecoverable errors were detected with the tape volume cache. The VTS is unusable. Service is required.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0104</p> <p>An orphaned logical volume (xxxxxx) has been found. Call service.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a check of the VTS database, a reference to logical volume xxxxxx was found, but there is no record of its physical location. This could be the result of a hardware or internal software problem. Any data associated with the logical volume is lost.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Notify your system administrator. 2. If this intervention occurs multiple times, call your service representative.
<p>Message OP0105</p> <p>A VTS has a CHECK-1 (xxxx) failure. (VTS z).</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>An error was detected in VTS z that cannot be recovered. The error could be a result of hardware or internal software problems. The VTS controller restarts itself automatically. Any host jobs using virtual volumes and devices are abended, and any data that has not been written to the tape volume cache is lost.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Record the error code and call your service representative. 2. The VTS restarts itself. 3. Restart all active host jobs.

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0107</p> <p>Logical volume xxxxxx was not fully recovered from damaged stacked volume yyyyyy. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the attempted movement of logical volume xxxxxx from a damaged stacked volume that is in read-only status, a permanent read error was encountered. The error was not recoverable. The data associated with the logical volume was not recovered and was not moved to another stacked volume.</p>	<p>Notify your system administrator.</p>
<p>Message OP0108</p> <p>The Tape Volume Cache is degraded (xxxx). (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>A disk drive in one of the tape volume cache storage capacity features of VTS z has failed. Operations with the VTS continue, but performance degradation may be experienced. Service is required.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Record the error code, xxxx. 2. Call your service representative.
<p>Message OP0109</p> <p>Database restore from volume xxxxxx failed, attempting restore from next most recent. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the disaster recovery process, VTS z could not recover the database from stacked volume xxxxxx successfully. Error recovery was unsuccessful. The media may have been damaged during the disaster.</p>	<p>Notify your system administrator.</p>
<p>Message OP0110</p> <p>Insert of logical volume xxxxxx failed during disaster recovery. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the disaster recovery process, logical volume xxxxxx could not be added to the Library Manager inventory. The cause may be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The volser is already in the inventory. • The library is already at the logical volume limit. • The volser conflicts with a physical volume's volser that is already in the 3494. 	<p>Notify your system administrator.</p>

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0111</p> <p>Damaged volume xxxxxx ejected during disaster recovery. Could not be read on 2 drives. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the disaster recovery process, VTS z could not read the recovery information on stacked volume xxxxxx. Error recovery was unsuccessful. The media may have been damaged during the disaster. The cartridge is placed in the convenience I/O station.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the cartridges from the I/O station. 2. If possible, repair the cartridge and place in the convenience I/O station.
<p>Message OP0112</p> <p>Device xxx has been made unavailable by a VTS. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During an operation with device xxx, the VTS controller determined that the device is not operating correctly and requires service. It is likely that the device has excessive read or write errors.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0113</p> <p>A VTS does not have enough available physical drives to continue operation. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>Physical drives associated with VTS z have become unavailable either due to a drive failure or service representative action. A VTS requires a minimum of two available physical drives for operation.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0114</p> <p>A VTS attempted unsuccessfully to eject a stacked volume (xxxxxx) during disaster recovery. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During processing of a physical volume during disaster recovery, the VTS determined that the physical volume was damaged and attempted to place the volume in the I/O station, but the attempt failed. The likely reason is that the cartridge has physical damage as a result of the disaster, and it interferes with the cell in the I/O station.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0115</p> <p>A VTS attempted unsuccessfully to eject a damaged stacked volume (xxxxxx). (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the last usage of a physical volume, the VTS subsystem determined that the volume was damaged physically. As part of a recovery process, an attempt was made to eject the physical volume that failed. The likely reason is that the cartridge has physical damage as a result of the disaster, and it interferes with the cell in the I/O station.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0116</p> <p>VTS physical device xxx is cabled incorrectly. It has been made unavailable. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the installation of drive xxx, the interface cables between the drive and the Library Manager were installed incorrectly.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0117</p> <p>A VTS cannot communicate with device xxx. It has been made unavailable. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>Drive xxx has either been powered off or has a failure that does not allow it to respond to requests from the VTS.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Message OP0118</p> <p>Mount of logical volume xxxxxx failed because physical volume yyyyyy is not in the library. (rc=rtrr) (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>To satisfy a logical volume mount request, the logical volume must be recalled from a physical volume. At the time the logical volume mount request was processed, the physical volume required could not be found in the Library Manager inventory.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Call your service representative. 2. Locate the physical volume and insert it into the 3494.
<p>Message OP0120</p> <p>Mount of logical volume xxxxxx failed because physical volume yyyyyy is misplaced. (rc=rtrr) (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>To satisfy a logical volume mount request, the logical volume must be recalled from a physical volume. The mount of the physical volume failed because it was not found in the physical storage cell indicated in the Library Manager inventory.</p>	<p>See the “Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes” on page 340 and follow the instructions in the “Specific Misplaced Volume” scenario using the physical volume volser for your search.</p>

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message OP0121</p> <p>Mount of logical volume xxxxxx failed because physical volume yyyyyy is inaccessible. (rc=rrrr) (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>To satisfy a logical volume mount request, the logical volume must be recalled from a physical volume. The mount of the physical volume failed because it is not accessible by the robotics of the library. The two most likely reasons for the volume to be inaccessible are that the volume is loaded in a drive that has failed or is in a gripper that has failed.</p>	<p>See the “Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes” on page 340 and follow the instructions in the “Specific Inaccessible Volume” scenario using the physical volume volser for your search.</p>
<p>Message OP0122</p> <p>Mount of logical volume xxxxxx located on physical volume yyyyyy failed. (rc=rrrr) (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>To satisfy a logical volume mount request, the logical volume must be recalled from a physical volume. The mount of the physical volume could not be completed, and the VTS could not determine the exact reason for the failure.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Notify your system administrator. 2. For dual Library Manager systems containing a VTS, this intervention may be the result of a Library Manager switchover. When a Library Manager switchover occurs, queued or in-progress logical mounts are not completed. This results in the VTS asking the Library Manager to post this intervention. If this is the case, clear the intervention and re-drive the mount from the host.
<p>Message OP0123</p> <p>Stacked volume xxxxxx is in Read-Only status with a reason code of yyyyy. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During a previous read or write operation with the volume (recall of a logical volume, copying of a virtual volume, or routine reclamation of a stacked volume), the VTS detected a permanent media error, or an excessive number of temporary media errors have occurred. The volume is placed in read-only status to prevent further writing of data. Data already on the volume remains accessible.</p>	<p>This Intervention-Required notification is given for the first volume to be placed in read-only status within a 24-hour period. You should call your service representative only after you have notified your system administrator as described in messages <i>Logical volume xxxxxx was not fully recovered from damaged stacked volume yyyyyy. (VTS z)</i> and <i>A Read-Only status stacked volume xxxxxx has been ejected to the convenience I/O station. (VTS z)</i>, and it is necessary to recover a damaged logical volume or to obtain the list of stacked volumes that may be inserted into the library for use as VTS scratch stacked volumes.</p>
<p>Message OP0124</p> <p>Stacked volume xxxxxx is unavailable with a reason code of yyyyy. (VTS z)</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>During the reclamation process, a stacked volume was made unavailable. The volume is placed subsequently in read-only status.</p>	<p>This message should be considered informational because the subsequent processing of read-only status volumes may result in transparent recovery. You should call your service representative only when recovery of a logical volume is necessary after having received the message <i>Logical volume xxxxxx was not fully recovered from damaged stacked volume yyyyyy. (VTS z)</i>.</p>

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p><i>Message</i> OP0125</p> <p>VTS controller degraded. Error code yyyyy. Call service. (VTS z)</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>A VTS redundant component has failed. Operation of the VTS is continuing.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0126</p> <p>VTS requested that device xxx be made unavailable but a mount/demount is in progress. (VTS z)</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The VTS determined that device xxx should be made unavailable; however, the Library Manager found that a mount or demount was in process and could not mark the device as unavailable.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0127</p> <p>Invalid mixture of VTS physical drive types. (VTS z)</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>There can be only one physical drive type in the VTS. There may be 3590 Model B1A and E1A drives; this is not correct.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0128</p> <p>* A VTS does not have enough physical drives to continue operation. (VTS z)</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>Physical drives have been made unavailable, and there are no longer enough drives to continue operation.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0130</p> <p>Stacked volume xxxxxx failed scratch mount. Label cannot be read. Tape needs to be re-initialized. (VTS z)</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>Tape may need to be re-initialized.</p>	<p>Call your service representative to re-initialize the tape. To re-initialize the tape yourself:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eject the stacked volume. 2. Insert the volume into a native 3590 library with a compatible device type (typically a 3590 Model Exx tape drive). 3. Use a host utility (such as IEBGENER) to write a new internal tape label. 4. Eject the volume and reinsert it into the VTS.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0131</p> <p>Stacked volume xxxxxx ejected due to incompatible media type. (VTS z)</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The media type is incompatible.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p>Message <i>OP0132</i></p> <p>Stacked volume xxxxxx could not be ejected because the convenience I/O station is full, or the door is open.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The convenience I/O station is full, or the door is open.</p>	Empty the convenience I/O station if it is full, or close the door.
<p>Message <i>OP0134</i></p> <p>Write-protected stacked volume xxxxxx ejected.</p>	Contact your System Administrator.
<p>Message <i>OP0135</i></p> <p>A VTS unsuccessfully attempted to eject write-protected stacked volume xxxxxx.</p>	Contact your System Administrator.
<p>Message <i>OP0138</i></p> <p>The Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00) is out of y media volumes.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Contact your System Administrator. 2. This intervention will be cleared automatically when the Common Scratch Pool (Pool 00) has scratch stacked volumes of the correct media type. 3. The scratch volumes can be made available by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • insertion via the Convenience I/O or high capacity rack • moving some scratch volumes from another pool to the CSP • reclaim.
<p>Message <i>OP0139</i></p> <p>Storage pool xx is out of scratch volumes.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Contact your System Administrator. 2. This intervention will be cleared automatically when the indicated Storage Pool has scratch stacked volumes. 3. The scratch volumes can be made available by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • insertion via the Convenience I/O or high capacity rack • moving some scratch volumes from another pool to this pool • reclaim.
<p>Message <i>OP0140</i></p> <p>Volser xxxxxx could not be moved from Storage Pool yy to Storage Pool zz.</p>	Contact your System Administrator.
<p>Message <i>OP0141</i></p> <p>VTS x was unable to obtain construct information for volser xxxxxx.</p> <p>Probable Cause</p> <p>The VTS cannot obtain construct information due to a program error.</p>	Contact your System Administrator.
<p>Message <i>OP0136</i></p> <p>Stacked volume (xxxxxx) moved to category FF08 — Unreadable internal label.</p>	Contact your System Administrator.

Table 26. Intervention-Required Conditions Relating to a VTS in the 3494 (continued)

Intervention-Required Condition	Resolution Actions
<p><i>Message</i> OP0142</p> <p>Stacked volume xxxxxx exists in the VTS database but doesn't exist in the Library Manager database.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Contact your System Administrator. 2. Locate the physical volume and reinsert it into the library via the the Convenience I/O or the high capacity rack.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0143</p> <p>VTS x has completed processing the stacked volumes as part of the Disaster Recovery inventory.</p>	<p>Proceed with the next step in the disaster recovery which should be the inserting of logical volumes (Commands pulldown).</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0144</p> <p>Eject attempted on stacked volume xxxxxx that contains active data. Eject was failed.</p>	<p>Contact your System Administrator.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0145</p> <p>Unable to make stacked volume xxxxxx read-only.</p>	<p>Contact your System Administrator.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0146</p> <p>Unable to make stacked volume xxxxxx read-write.</p>	<p>Contact your System Administrator.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0147</p> <p>Stacked volume xxxxxx is in an invalid state.</p>	<p>Contact your System Administrator.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0148</p> <p>There are stacked volumes in the VTS database that can't be found in the library.</p>	<p>Contact your System Administrator.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0151</p> <p>The time on the VTS is incorrect.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The time on the VTS could not be adjusted automatically and will require a manual adjustment by the Service Representative.</p>	<p>Contact your Service Representative.</p>
<p><i>Message</i> OP0152</p> <p>VTS has ejected a volume successfully, but it has active data.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>The ejected stacked volume may contain logical volumes in the "private" category.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine if the ejected stacked volume contains logical volumes in the "private" category. 2. If so, then contact your Service Representative to report that a damaged stacked volume containing one or more logical volumes was ejected.
<p><i>Message</i> OP0300</p> <p>One or more logical volumes have corrupted tokens. Call service.</p> <p><i>Probable Cause</i></p> <p>Code error or token database corruption. During token processing in a PtP VTS, the tokens for at least one volume contained values that are incompatible, such that the data validity of the volume is compromised.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

VTs Recovery Actions

In the event that a VTS is not usable either due to interruption of utility or communication services to the site or through significant physical damage to the site or to the VTS itself, access to the data that the VTS manages is restored through automated processes designed into the product. The recovery process assumes that the only available elements for recovery are the stacked volumes themselves and further assumes that only a subset of them are undamaged after the event.

Although a service representative initiates the recovery process, there are some user-related actions that are necessary before the recovery can start. The following are user-related actions:

- If the 3494 and the VTS are still functional, ask the service representative to perform a Force Migrate operation through the Library Manager service panel. This ensures that all data has been moved from the tape volume cache to a stacked volume.
- Remove the undamaged 3590 stacked volumes from the 3494 that is no longer usable.
- Take the volumes to another 3494 location that has an empty VTS.
- Inform the service representative that the recovery process can start.

There are two key functions designed into the VTS system to support recovery:

- Automatic VTS database backup

The VTS controller maintains a database of information about the location and status of logical volumes on the stacked volumes it manages. When a stacked volume has been filled with logical volumes, a backup of the entire database is placed at the end of the filled stacked volume. The database contains a time and date stamp that identifies when the backup was performed.

- Automatic database recovery

When a restore of the database is required, the Library Manager, in conjunction with the VTS controller, performs the following steps when a service representative initiates them:

1. Each available stacked volume in the 3494 is mounted and the time and date stamp of the database backup is read. This step finds the most current database for the stacked volumes in the 3494.
2. The stacked volume with the most current database is again mounted, and the database in the VTS controller is restored.
3. The VTS then provides information to the Library Manager to rebuild its inventory records for each logical volume found in the database.

When the recovery process has completed, the operator varies the 3494 online at the recovery site host, and the Library Manager inventory of logical volumes is uploaded to the host to synchronize the host catalogs (DFSMS and applicable tape management systems).

At the completion of the recovery process, the VTS and the Library Manager contain database and inventory records and status information for the logical volumes as found in the most recent database backup on the undamaged stacked volumes. Depending on the following conditions, some data and logical volumes may not have been recovered:

- The stacked volumes containing the latest database backups were destroyed.

Any changes to the location or status of logical volumes since the last found database backup are lost. Some logical volume records may be lost. It is possible, however, that the database contains the location of the previous use of logical volumes and that data is accessible to the host.

- One or more stacked volumes found in the restored database were destroyed during the event.

Although the VTS database and the Library Manager inventory have a record of the logical volumes that resided on the missing stacked volumes, the data is lost.

- A virtual volume had not been closed at the time of the event.

The VTS database does not have a record of the virtual volume's location on a stacked volume, and the data is lost.

- Logical volumes were written to a stacked volume between the time the last database backup was made and the event.

The VTS database does not have a record of the new logical volume locations on the stacked volume, and the data is lost. It is possible, however, that the database contains the location of the previous use of the logical volume, and that data is accessible to the host.

Appendix A. Keyboard Template

The keyboard template shows the function keys on the Library Manager keyboard that you use during normal activity.

You can remove and copy the template, then fold the copy to create a triangular bar shape showing the keys on one face. You can then place the template in a convenient location for quick access to the correct key for a specific function.

Commonly used keys:									
Arrows	Move among the choices.	Home	Go to the first choice in a pull-down menu.	End	Go to the last choice in a pull-down menu.	Esc	Cancel the last help window.	PgUp	Scroll up one window.
								PgDn	Scroll down one window.
								Ctrl + PgUp	Display the text to the left of the window.
								Ctrl + PgDn	Display the text to the right of the window.
								Underlined letter	Select that choice on the action bar or pull-down menu.
								Shift + Esc or Alt + Space	Go to and from the pull-down menu.
Function keys:									
F1	Get the help window.	F2	Get extended help from within any help window.	F3	Perform shutdown.	Alt + F4	Close the help window.	Alt + F5	Restore the window.
								F6	
								Alt + F7	Move the window.
								Alt + F8	Size the window.
								F9	List keys from within any help window.
								Ctrl + F10	Activate main menu action bar.
								Shift + F10	Get help for help.
								F11	Go to help index from within any help window.
								F12	

A06C0009

Appendix B. VTS Export and Import Advanced Function

This appendix describes the VTS Export and Import procedures for the 3494.

Export and Import List Volumes Format

Lists of volumes for export or import are provided to a VTS on logical volumes called the Export List Volume or the Import List Volume, which are resident in the VTS. The following tables define the requirements of the format for the Export List Volume and Import List Volume. There are fields, records, or files of the two formats, which are similar; therefore, only one table for these similar areas is shown. For example, the Import List Volume tables mention an HDR1 table, which is in the Export List Volume section.

Sample JCL for preparing the Export List Volume and Import List Volume is available in the *Object Access Method Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Tape Libraries*.

The Export List Volume is an IBM Standard Labeled tape volume, which is selected from the logical volumes in the VTS. Three files are written to the volume. The first file contains logical volume - destination pair records and is called the Export List File. The second file has a minimum of one record and is reserved for future use. The third file is the Export Status File, which the host writes initially without any data records. Upon the completion of the Export operation, the VTS writes status file records for each of the logical volumes listed in the Export List File indicating the processing results.

The Import List Volume is an IBM Standard Labeled tape volume, which is selected from the logical volumes in the VTS. Two files are written to the volume. The first file contains records that specify the Exported Stacked Volumes and logical volume to import or to import all logical volumes. The second file is the Import Status file, which the host writes initially without any data records. Upon completion of the Import operation, the VTS writes status file records indicating the results for each of the logical volumes listed specifically and the logical volumes contained on an Exported Stacked Volume listed when all logical volumes were to be imported.

Export List Volume

Due to the size of a monolithic, detailed format description for the Export List Volume, the format is described in hierarchical form in the tables that follow. Start with Table 27 on page 376, then proceed as directed to the portions of interest.

All character fields within the volume are in EBCDIC. Field contents specified in quotes are EBCDIC characters. Compression must be turned off when the volume is written. No space is reserved in the records of the list and status files. Expansion for later versions can be accomplished by redefining the file identifier records and data records for the files. Such changes would be reflected in the Record Length entry in the HDR2 and EOF2 records.

Table 27. Export List Volume

Volume Contents	Description
Volume Label	See Table 28.
Export List File	See Table 29.
Reserved File	See Table 32 on page 377.
Export Status File	See Table 33 on page 378.
Tape Mark	

Table 28. VOL1

Bytes	Description	Use
0–2	Label Identifier	Contains “VOL”.
3	Label Number	Contains “1”.
4–9	Volume Serial Number	The six-character logical volume serial number of the Export List Volume or Import List Volume.
10	Reserved	Retained, not checked.
11–20	VTOC Pointer	Retained, not checked.
21–34	Reserved	Retained, not checked.
35–36	Tape Recording Technique	Retained, not checked.
37–40	Reserved	Retained, not checked.
41–50	Owner Name and Address Code	Retained, not checked.
51–79	Reserved	Retained, not checked.

Table 29. Export List File

Length	Name	Description
80	Data Set Header 1	See Table 36 on page 379.
80	Data Set Header 2	See Table 37 on page 380.
	Tape Mark	
80	Export List File Identifier	See Table 30 on page 377.
N*80	Export List File Records	See Table 31 on page 377.
	Tape Mark	
80	End of File 1	See Table 38 on page 380.
80	End of File 2	See Table 39 on page 381.
	Tape Mark	

Table 30. Export List File Identifier

Bytes	Name	Description
0–10	Title Text	“EXPORT LIST”
11	Delimiter	Blank character
12–13	Version	“01”
14	Blank	Blank character
15–30	User Field	This 16-byte field is not checked or used by the control unit.
31–79	Retained, not checked.	This field is not checked or used by the control unit.

The format of the Export List File record is designed to allow for ease of use. It is expected that you may input the needed information manually and the format needs to be tolerant of the location of the fields in the record. Each list file record contains up to two fields that are separated by a delimiter. The fields “volser” and “destination” must be displayed in that order, separated by a field delimiter. If the record is not equal to 80 bytes, the record is not processed and a Status File record is written with a status code of 24. The first 13 bytes or less of data from the record as read is provided in the Status File record. If only one field is found in the record, it is assumed that a blank destination is desired.

Table 31. Export List File Record

Name	Description
Volser	The volume serial number of a logical volume to be exported. The VTS uses six characters to identify the volser, starting with the first non-blank character and continuing until six non-blank characters have been found. Valid characters are A–Z and numerics 0–9. The search for six non-blank characters continues until a blank or delimiter comma character is found. Note: If the volser found is not six characters or contains non-valid characters, a Status File record is written with a status code of 1E and with the first 13 bytes of the list record.
Field Delimiter	Comma character required if a non-blank destination is specified.
Destination	The destination for the logical volume. The control unit uses up to 16 characters, starting with the first non-blank character after the field delimiter and continuing through byte 71, for the destination name. Embedded blanks are allowed in the destination name. Any characters in the record after the destination field are ignored. No validity checking is performed on the name found. A blank destination is also valid; however, all characters after the volser or delimiter comma and throughout byte 71 must be blank.
User Field	Bytes 72–79 of the 80-byte record are not used or checked by the VTS. This field may contain line numbers for volume lists.

Table 32. Reserved File

Length	Name	Description
80	Data Set Header 1	See Table 36 on page 379.
80	Data Set Header 2	See Table 37 on page 380.
	Tape Mark	

Table 32. Reserved File (continued)

Length	Name	Description
recl	Reserved File Identifier	recl>=1. This record must be present; however, neither its length nor contents are checked or used by the control unit. Note: The minimum record length written to tape is 18 bytes.
N*recl	Reserved File Records	N is a variable number of file records. N=0 is valid, recl>=1, records not checked or used by the control unit. Note: The minimum record length written to tape is 18 bytes.
	Tape Mark	
80	End of File 1	See Table 38 on page 380.
80	End of File 2	See Table 39 on page 381.
	Tape Mark	

Table 33. Export Status File

Length	Name	Description
80	Data Set Header 1	See Table 36 on page 379.
80	Data Set Header 2	See Table 37 on page 380.
	Tape Mark	
80	Export Status File Identifier	See Table 34.
N*80	Export Status File Records	N=0 is valid. N is a variable number of file records. See Table 35.
	Tape Mark	
80	End of File 1	See Table 38 on page 380.
80	End of File 2	See Table 39 on page 381.
	Tape Mark	

Table 34. Export Status File Identifier

Bytes	Name	Description
0–12	Title Text	“EXPORT STATUS”
13	Field Delimiter	Blank character
14–15	Version	“01”
16	Blank	Blank character
17–32	User Field	This 16-byte field is not checked or used by the control unit.
33–79	Retained, not checked.	This field is not checked or used by the control unit.

Table 35. Export and Import Status File Record

Bytes	Name	Description
For status codes other than 01, 1E, 24, or 25, the bytes 0–12 are defined as follows:		
0–5	Logical Volser	For Export operations, this field contains the volume serial number of the logical volume specified in the Export List File. For Import operations, this field contains the volume serial number of the logical volume explicitly specified in the Import List File or, if only the Exported Stacked Volume to import is specified, a logical volume on the Exported Stacked Volume. When there is a cause for no logical volumes to have been imported from the Exported Stacked Volume given in bytes 7–12, the status file record for the Exported Stacked Volume has blanks in this field.

Table 35. Export and Import Status File Record (continued)

Bytes	Name	Description
6	Field Delimiter	Comma character
7–12	Physical Volser	For a successful Export operation (status code=00), this field contains the volume serial number of the Exported Stacked Volume that the logical volume was copied on. If the Export operation was unsuccessful, this field contains all blanks. For Import operation status, this field contains the Exported Stacked Volume specified in the Import List File. This field is right-aligned and padded with blanks.
For status code 01, 1E, 24, or 25, the bytes 0–12 are defined as follows:		
0–12	List File Record data	When a status code of 01, 1E, or 24 is indicated, the Export or Import List File record could not be processed. The first 13 bytes of the list file record are provided here to aid in problem determination.
13	Field Delimiter	Comma character
14–15	Status Code	This field contains a two-character status code number. See “Status Codes in Status File” on page 384 for more information.
16	Field Delimiter	Comma character
17	Exception Indicator	If the Export or Import operation was successful, this field contains the blank character. If the Export or Import operation was unsuccessful, this field contains the asterisk character.
18–77	Destination/Status Text	For a successful Export operation (status code=00), this field contains up to a 16-character destination name as specified in the Export List File. If the destination was given as all blanks, this field contains 16 question mark characters (??...?). For a successful Import operation (status code=00), this field is all blanks. For an unsuccessful Export or Import operation (status code≠00), this field contains status text indicating the reason the Export or Import operation was not successful. This field is left-aligned and padded with blanks. See “Status Codes in Status File” on page 384 for more information.
78	Reserved	
79	Import Option	For Export operations, this byte is X'00'. For Import operations, this byte is the character “S” when the SCRATCH option was determined in the Import List and is the character “I” when the INITIALIZE option was determined in the Import List.

Table 36. HDR1

Bytes	Description	Use
0–2	Label Identifier	Contains “HDR”
3	Label Number	Contains “1”
4–20	Data Set Identifier	Retained, not checked.
21–26	Data Set Serial Number	Retained, not checked.
27–30	Volume Sequence Number	Retained, not checked.
31–34	Data Set Sequence Number	Retained, not checked.
35–38	Generation Number	Retained, not checked.
39–40	Version Number	Retained, not checked.
41–46	Creation Date	Retained, not checked.
47–52	Expiration Date	Retained, not checked.

Table 36. HDR1 (continued)

Bytes	Description	Use
53	Data Set Security	Retained, not checked.
54–59	Block Count	Must be “000000”
60–72	System Code	Retained, not checked.
73–79	Reserved	Retained, not checked.

Table 37. HDR2

Bytes	Description	Use
0–2	Label Identifier	Contains “HDR”
3	Label Number	Contains “2”
4	Record Format	Retained, not checked.
5–9	Block Length	Must be equal to the Record Length for the Export List File, Import List File, and Status File. Retained, not checked for the Reserved file.
10–14	Record Length	Must be 80 bytes for the Export List File, Import List File, and Status file. Retained, not checked for the Reserved file.
15	Tape Density	Retained, not checked.
16	Data Set Position	Retained, not checked.
17–33	Job/Job Step Identification	Retained, not checked.
34–35	Tape Recording Technique	Retained, not checked.
36	Control Character	Retained, not checked.
37	Reserved	Retained, not checked.
38	Block Attribute	Retained, not checked.
39–46	Reserved	Retained, not checked.
47	Checkpoint Data Set Identifier	Retained, not checked.
48–79	Reserved	Retained, not checked.

Table 38. EOF1

Bytes	Description	Use
0–2	Label Identifier	Contains “EOF”
3	Label Number	Contains “1”
4–20	Data Set Identifier	Retained, not checked.
21–26	Data Set Serial Number	Retained, not checked.
27–30	Volume Sequence Number	Retained, not checked.
31–34	Data Set Sequence Number	Retained, not checked.
35–38	Generation Number	Retained, not checked.
39–40	Version Number	Retained, not checked.
41–46	Creation Date	Retained, not checked.
47–52	Expiration Date	Retained, not checked.
53	Data Set Security	Retained, not checked.

Table 38. EOF1 (continued)

Bytes	Description	Use
54–59	Block Count	Six-character EBCDIC representation of the decimal number of blocks in the associated file, left-padded with zeros. Note: This field is updated by the VTS if it modifies the associated file.
60–72	System Code	Retained, not checked.
73–79	Reserved	Retained, not checked.

Table 39. EOF2

Bytes	Description	Use
0–2	Label Identifier	Contains “EOF”
3	Label Number	Contains “2”
4	Record Format	Retained, not checked.
5–9	Block Length	Must be equal to the Record Length for the Export List File, Import List File, and Status File. Retained, not checked for the Reserved file.
10–14	Record Length	Must be 80 bytes for the Export List File, Import List File, and Status file. Retained, not checked for the Reserved file.
15	Tape Density	Retained, not checked.
16	Data Set Position	Retained, not checked.
17–33	Job/Job Step Identification	Retained, not checked.
34–35	Tape Recording Technique	Retained, not checked.
36	Control Character	Retained, not checked.
37	Reserved	Retained, not checked.
38	Block Attribute	Retained, not checked.
39–46	Reserved	Retained, not checked.
47	Checkpoint Data Set Identifier	Retained, not checked.
48–79	Reserved	Retained, not checked.

Import List Volume

Just as with the Export List Volume, the Import List Volume format is described in hierarchical form in the tables that follow. Start with Table 40, then proceed as directed to the portions of interest. All character fields within the volume are in EBCDIC. Field contents specified in quotes are EBCDIC characters. Compression must be turned off when the volume is written.

Table 40. Import List Volume

Volume Contents	Description
Volume Label	See Table 28 on page 376.
Import List File	See Table 41 on page 382.
Import Status File	See Table 44 on page 383.
Tape Mark	

Table 41. Import List File

Length	Name	Description
80	Data Set Header 1	See Table 36 on page 379.
80	Data Set Header 2	See Table 37 on page 380.
	Tape Mark	
80	Import List File Identifier	See Table 42.
N*80	Import List File Records	See Table 43. N>0, N<=50K. N is a variable number of file records.
	Tape Mark	
80	End of File 1	See Table 38 on page 380.
80	End of File 2	See Table 39 on page 381.
	Tape Mark	

Table 42. Import List File Identifier

Length	Name	Description
0–10	Title Text	“IMPORT LIST”
11	Field Delimiter	Blank character
12–13	Version	“01”
14	Blank	Blank character
15–30	User Field	This 16-byte field is not checked or used by the control unit.
31–79	Retained, not checked.	This field is not checked or used by the control unit.

The format of the Import List File record is designed to allow for ease of use. It is expected that you may input the needed information manually, and the format must be tolerant of the location of the fields in the record. Each list file record contains up to three fields that are separated by delimiters. The fields “physical volser”, “logical volser”, and “Import Option” must be displayed in that order, separated by a field delimiter. If the record is not equal to 80 bytes, the record is not processed and a Status File record is written with a status code of 24. The first 13 bytes or less of data from the record as read is provided in the Status File record. If only one field is found in the record, it is assumed to be the “physical volser”. If the logical volser is not specified and an Import Option is specified, both delimiter characters are required.

Table 43. Import List File Record

Name	Description
Volser	The volume serial number of an Exported Stacked Volume to be imported. The VTS uses up to six characters to identify the volser, starting with the first non-blank character and continuing until a blank character is found or the field delimiter character is found. Valid characters are A–Z and numerics 0–9. Embedded blanks are not allowed. Note: If the volser specified is less than six characters, when used by the VTS, it is padded on the right to form a six-character field. If the volser is greater than six characters, the volume is not imported, and a Status File record is written with a status code of 01 and with the first 13 bytes of the list record.
Field Delimiter	Comma character required if a logical volser or Import Option is specified.

Table 43. Import List File Record (continued)

Name	Description
Logical Volser	<p>The volume serial number of a logical volume to be imported. The VTS uses six characters to identify the volser, starting with the first non-blank character after the delimiter comma and continuing until six contiguous non-blank characters are found. Valid characters are A–Z and numerics 0–9. The search for six contiguous non-blank characters continues until a blank or delimiter comma character is found. This field may be all blanks or not contain any characters between the field delimiters, in which case, all logical volumes on the specified Exported Stacked Volume are imported.</p> <p>Note: If the volser found is not six characters or contains non-valid characters, a Status File record is written with a status code of 1E and with the first 13 bytes of the list record.</p>
Field Delimiter	Comma character required if an Import Option other than blank is specified.
Import Option	<p>This field contains blanks or a keyword that defines how the logical volume is to be imported and starts with the first non-blank character found after the second Field Delimiter comma and continues through byte 71 of the record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the Field Delimiter comma is not present, only blanks are allowed. If the comma is present and only blanks are found, then the data contents of the logical volume or contents of all logical volumes (if only the physical volser was specified) are copied into the VTS subsystem and fragment file entries and library manager inventory records are created. • If the first non-blank characters found are “SCRATCH”, the data contents are not copied, and a fragment file and library manager inventory records are created. The “SCRATCH” option should be used when the data is known to have been expired and not accessed after the logical volume is imported. • If the first non-blank characters found are “INITIALIZE”, only library manager inventory records are created. The “INITIALIZE” option should be used when the logical volume is to be re-initialized and any prior data discarded. <p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Characters found in the Import Option field after the keywords of “SCRATCH” or “INITIALIZE” are ignored. 2. If other than all blanks (with or without the second Field Delimiter comma), “SCRATCH” or “INITIALIZE” with characters to be ignored are found before byte 72, the volume is not imported and a Status File record is written with a status code of 25 and with the first 13 bytes of the list record.
User Field	Bytes 72–79 of the 80-byte record are not used or checked by the VTS. This field may contain line numbers for volume lists.

Table 44. Import Status File

Length	Name	Description
80	Data Set Header 1	See Table 36 on page 379.
80	Data Set Header 2	See Table 37 on page 380.
	Tape Mark	
80	Import Status File Identifier	See Table 45 on page 384.
N*80	Import Status File Records	N=0 is valid. N is a variable number of file records. See Table 35 on page 378.
	Tape Mark	
80	End of File 1	See Table 38 on page 380.
80	End of File 2	See Table 39 on page 381.
	Tape Mark	

Table 45. Import Status File Identifier

Bytes	Name	Description
0–12	Title Text	"IMPORT STATUS"
13	Field Delimiter	Blank character
14–15	Version	"01"
16	Blank	Blank character
17–32	User Field	This 16-byte field is not checked or used by the control unit.
33–79	Retained, not checked.	This field is not checked or used by the control unit.

Status Codes in Status File

After the completion of an Export or Import operation, you can determine the completion status of each logical volume that was specified for the operation by examining the Status File records. The following table describes the status codes, the probable cause, and the recommended actions for you to take.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
Status Code 00 Status Text For Export operations, contains the destination name; for Import operations, contains all blanks. Probable Cause The volume was successfully exported or imported.	None needed.
Status Code 01 Status Text 'Invalid record format, record NNNNN' Probable Cause The volume could not be exported or imported because the format of the list file record was invalid.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Examine the first 13 bytes of the status record; they contain the input from the list file decimal record number NNNNN as read. 2. Correct the input record and retry the operation. Determine why the operation was canceled and retry it.
Status Code 02 Status Text 'Canceled - Host request' Probable Cause The volume could not be exported or imported because the host canceled the operation before processing the volume.	Determine why the operation was canceled and retry it.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
Status Code 03 Status Text ‘Canceled - Library request’ Probable Cause The volume could not be exported or imported because the operator canceled the operation through the Library Manager console before processing the volume.	Determine why the operation was canceled and retry it.
Status Code 05 Status Text Logical volume not in VTS Probable Cause The logical volume specified in the Export List is not resident in the VTS in which the Export operation was performed.	This can be a normal status if the list file contains records for more than one VTS or 3494. If this is not the case, determine why the logical volume is not in the VTS in which the operation was performed.
Status Code 06 Status Text Exported Stacked Volume not in the 3494 Probable Cause The Exported Stacked Volume specified in the Import List (either with a specific logical volume or for import of all logical volumes) is not in the 3494 in which the Import operation was performed.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Locate the Exported Stacked Volume needed and insert it into the 3494. 2. Retry the Import operation.
Status Code 07 Status Text Logical volume not found on Exported Stacked Volume Probable Cause The logical volume specified in the Import List is not resident on the Exported Stacked Volume specified.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the tape management system or the TCDB records to verify that the logical volume is on the Exported Stacked Volume specified. 2. Correct any errors and retry the Import operation.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
<p>Status Code 08</p> <p>Status Text Exported Stacked Volume not in Import category</p> <p>Probable Cause Processing for the Exported Stacked Volume not allowed. The Exported Stacked Volume specified in the Import List is in the library but is not assigned to the Import category.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the tape management system or TCDB to check that the specified volume is an Exported Stacked Volume. 2. If the volume is an Exported Stacked Volume and is in the Unassigned category, move the volume to the Import category. 3. If the Exported Stacked Volume is found in the Insert category, the volume must be moved to the Eject category and when ejected, it must be reinserted into the convenience I/O station and moved into the Import category. 4. Retry the Import operation. 5. If the volume is not found to be an Exported Stacked Volume, check the source for the Import List Volume contents.
<p>Status Code 09</p> <p>Status Text Logical volume in-use</p> <p>Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported because the volume specified in the Export List was mounted or queued to be mounted when the list was processed as part of the Export operation.</p>	<p>Retry the export of the volume when it is no longer being used.</p>
<p>Status Code 10</p> <p>Status Text Terminated by library error</p> <p>Probable Cause The volume could not be exported or imported because the Library Manager detected an unrecoverable (Check-1) error before processing the volume, which ended the operation.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>
<p>Status Code 11</p> <p>Status Text Terminated by VTS error XXXX</p> <p>Probable Cause The volume could not be exported or imported because the VTS detected an unrecoverable error before processing the volume, which ended the operation.</p>	<p>Call your service representative. Error XXXX indicates the functional area within the VTS that encountered the unrecoverable error.</p>

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
<p>Status Code 12</p> <p>Status Text Duplicate volume in list</p> <p>Probable Cause For Export operations, the Export List has more than one entry of a logical volume to be exported. The logical volume is not exported for the destinations provided. A Status File record with status code=12 is written for each of the logical volumes in the Export List that are the same. For Import operations, the Import List has more than one entry of an Exported Stacked Volser field values; such as, blanks, the Logical Volser, or blanks and a Logical Volser. Status File records for each Import List record are written with status code=12, and no import processing occur for any records that are the same or conflicting.</p>	<p>Determine why more than one Export or Import List File record specifies the same volume.</p>
<p>Status Code 13</p> <p>Status Text Duplicate volume in 3494</p> <p>Probable Cause The logical volume could not be imported because it already resides in the 3494 inventory. The 3494 inventory includes logical volumes in all VTS within the same physical library and all physical volumes in the 3494.</p>	<p>Determine why the specified volume is a duplicate in the 3494.</p>
<p>Status Code 14</p> <p>Status Text Duplicate volume in the enterprise</p> <p>Probable Cause The logical volume could not be imported because the attached hosts determined that it already resides in another 3494.</p>	<p>Determine why the specified volume is a duplicate in the enterprise.</p>
<p>Status Code 15</p> <p>Status Text Library full</p> <p>Probable Cause The logical volume could not be imported because the 3494 has reached the maximum number of logical volumes it can support.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Export or delete enough logical volumes from the library to provide room for the needed imported volumes. 2. Retry the Import operation.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
<p>Status Code 16</p> <p>Status Text Stacked Volume access failure</p> <p>Probable Cause For Export operations, the logical volume could not be exported because the VTS stacked volume containing the logical volume could not be accessed.</p> <p>For Import operations, a logical volume or all logical volumes on the Exported Stacked Volume specified in the Import List File could not be imported because the Exported Stacked Volume could not be accessed.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. See Figure 87 on page 152. For the volser indicated, if the Status Flags are Inaccessible or Misplaced, follow instructions in "Problem Determination Using Search Database for Volumes" on page 340. 2. If the volser Status Flags are other than Inaccessible or Misplaced, call your service representative.
<p>Status Code 17</p> <p>Status Text Logical Volume Copy failure</p> <p>Probable Cause During an Export operation, the logical volume could not be exported because a permanent error was encountered when copying the volume from the source stacked volume to the Exported Stacked Volume. During an Import operation, the logical volume could not be imported because a permanent error was encountered when copying the volume from the source Exported Stacked Volume to a stacked volume.</p>	<p>Suspected media failure, call your service representative.</p>
<p>Status Code 18</p> <p>Status Text No Data Associated with Logical Volume</p> <p>Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported because there is no data associated with the volume on a stacked volume in the VTS. The most likely reason is that the logical volume has never been used in the VTS before it was specified for export.</p>	<p>Check the logical volume's record in the tape management system to determine if the volume contains active data or not. If it does not, use the logical volume deletion function to remove the volume from the 3494. If it does show that the volume contains active data, call your service representative.</p>
<p>Status Code 19</p> <p>Status Text Logical Volume Copy/Fragment Failure</p> <p>Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported because it is currently resident in the tape volume cache and attempts to copy it to a stacked volume and create its fragment failed.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
Status Code 1A Status Text Logical Volume TVC State Unknown Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported because its state in the tape volume cache could not be determined.	Call your service representative.
Status Code 1B Status Text Logical Volume Processing Error XXXX Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported or imported because an internal VTS error XXXX was encountered. Internal or host timeout occurrences also result in Export or Import Status file records with this status code for all logical volumes that were not processed successfully.	Call your service representative. Error XXXX indicates the functional area within the VTS that detected the internal error.
Status Code 1C Status Text Fragment File Not Readable Probable Cause <p>For Export operations, the logical volume could not be exported because its fragment file in the tape volume cache could not be read.</p> <p>For Import operations, the logical volume could not be imported because its fragment information could not be read from the Exported Stacked Volume.</p>	Call your service representative.
Status Code 1D Status Text Unable to Write Fragment File Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported because its fragment file could not be written to the Exported Stacked Volume.	Call your service representative.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
Status Code 1E Status Text Invalid Logical Volume, record NNNNN Probable Cause The volser of the logical volume is not six characters or contains characters that are not valid.	1. Examine the first 13 bytes of the status record. They contain the input from the list file decimal record number NNNNN as read. 2. Correct the input record and retry the operation.
Status Code 1F Status Text Logical Volume Recall Failed Probable Cause The fragment file for a logical volume being exported did not contain the logical volume's tape label records so the VTS attempted to perform a recall of the logical volume. The recall failed so the logical volume was not exported.	1. Check intervention-required messages on the Library Manager console for the reason why the recall failed. 2. Correct the reason and retry the Export operation.
Status Code 20 Status Text Library Manager Error Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported because of a Library Manager-reported error during an Export operation.	Call your service representative.
Status Code 21 Status Text Terminated - out of scratch Probable Cause The logical volume could not be exported or imported because the operation was ended after waiting 60 minutes for a scratch stacked volume to be made available to the VTS.	1. Add physical volumes to the VTS. 2. Retry the operation.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
<p>Status Code 22</p> <p>Status Text Terminated - waiting for host response</p> <p>Probable Cause For Export operations, the Export operation for the logical volume was not initiated because the Export operation was ended due to host inactivity for 60 continuous minutes while previously processing volumes that were assigned to the Exported category.</p> <p>For Import operations, a logical volume or the logical volumes on an Exported Stacked Volume specified in the Import List File could not be imported because the Import operation was ended due to host inactivity for 60 continuous minutes while previously processing volumes that were assigned to the Insert category.</p> <p>It is likely there are no operational hosts attached to the VTS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine why the hosts attached to the VTS are not responding to the request to process volumes that are in the Exported or Insert category. 2. Retry the operation.
<p>Status Code 23</p> <p>Status Text Logical volume left in Insert category</p> <p>Probable Cause The Import operation was canceled from the Library Manager console. There is no host attached to the VTS that can process logical volumes assigned to the Insert category, or the Import operation was ended because the host had been inactive for 60 continuous minutes while processing volumes assigned to the Insert category.</p>	<p>None required.</p>
<p>Status Code 24</p> <p>Status Text List File Record Incorrect Length, record NNNNN</p> <p>Probable Cause The List File record is not 80 characters.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Examine the first 13 bytes of the status record. They contain the input from the list file decimal record number NNNNN as read. 2. Correct the input record and retry the operation.
<p>Status Code 25</p> <p>Status Text Import Option Invalid, record NNNNN</p> <p>Probable Cause The Import Option field of the record NNNNN was not all blanks, SCRATCH, or INITIALIZE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Examine the first 13 bytes of the status record. They contain the input from the list file decimal record number NNNNN as read. 2. Correct the input record and retry the operation.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
Status Code 26 Status Text Terminated, fewer than four drives available Probable Cause The volume could not be exported or imported because the operation was ended when fewer than four 3590 drives became available to the VTS.	Call your service representative.
Status Code 27 Status Text Volume is not a logical volume Probable Cause The Library Manager detected that the volume in the Export List is not a logical volume.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Examine the first 13 bytes of the status record. They contain the input from the list file. 2. Correct the input record and retry the operation.
Status Code 28 Status Text Exported Stacked Volume processing error Probable Cause For Import operations, the file on the Exported Stacked Volume containing the list of logical volumes stored on the Exported Stacked Volume could not be read without error.	Suspected media failure, call your service representative.
Status Code 29 Status Text Orphaned logical volume Probable Cause For Export operations, the VTS storage management code does not recognize the logical volume volser; therefore, the logical volume cannot be exported.	Call your service representative.
Status Code 30 Status Text Logical volume assigned to Insert category Probable Cause For Export operations, the logical volume is assigned currently to the Insert category. A host has not accepted volumes in the Insert category, and they cannot be exported.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check host systems attached to the VTS to ensure that they are processing volumes in the Insert category. 2. If this check indicates that at least one host is processing volumes in the Insert category, determine why the specific volume has not been processed.

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
<p>Status Code 31</p> <p>Status Text Exported Stacked Volume unload failure</p> <p>Probable Cause For Import operations, the Exported Stacked Volume volser found in the Physical Volume field of the Status File record was used for importing logical volumes and could not be demounted from the tape drive and may not have been returned to the Import category.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
<p>Status Code 32</p> <p>Status Text Invalid container volume</p> <p>Probable Cause For Export operations, a cancel that an operator issued from the Library Manager console or a termination because of host inactivity may have resulted in a 'container volume' being shown in the tape management system database for logical volumes that have not been exported from the VTS.</p>	<p>For each logical volume having this status code, the tape management system data base must be searched and corrected if a 'container volume' is shown.</p> <p>For DFSMSrmm™, the following steps may be taken:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Using the volser of the first volume in the Status File with status code X'32', perform an RMM LISTVOLUME and determine if a container volume is shown. If none is found, proceed with RMM LISTVOLUME for all volumes with status code X'32' until a container is identified. 2. If RMM LISTVOLUME has been performed for all logical volumes with status code X'32' and a container volume has not been found, then further action is not necessary. 3. For those logical volumes with status code X'32' that are found to have a container volume, it is necessary to change the container volume to blanks. 4. Using the volser identified as the container volume, search for volumes associated with the container volume and build RMM CHANGEVOLUME commands for each volume. Use the command: RMM SEARCHVOLUME VOLUME(*) OWNER(*) LIMIT(*) CONTAINER(container_volser) CLIST('RMM CV', ' CONTAINER(" ") FORCE') 5. Run the CLIST created in step 4 to perform the change to a blank container volume for all volumes found with the identified container volume. <p>Alternatively, each logical volume with status code X'32' that has a container volume may be changed to a blank container without building a CLIST. After using RMM LISTVOLUME to find logical volumes with a container volume, use the command: RMM CHANGEVOLUME volser CONTAINER(' ') FORCE</p> <p>Note: Tape management systems other than DFSMSrmm must facilitate a function to search and change the container volume field to blanks for logical volumes with a status code X'32' in the Status File upon completion of the Export operation.</p>
<p>Status Code 33</p> <p>Status Text Exported Stacked Volume format not supported, error XXXX</p> <p>Probable Cause Microcode level is incompatible with the Exported Stacked Volume.</p>	<p>Call your service representative.</p>

Table 46. Status Codes and Status Text (continued)

Operation Status	Resolution Actions
Status Code 34 Status Text Fast Ready Scratch Category Logical Volume Exported Probable Cause The logical volume that was exported was in a category with the Fast Ready attribute set ON. This is likely to be an error in the Export List.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine the validity of the Export List record for this logical volume. 2. If this was an erroneous Export operation, it is necessary to import the logical volume from the Exported Stacked Volume.
Status Code 35 Status Text Physical volume incompatible with tape drive Probable Cause The Physical Volser specified for the import of a logical volume or all logical volumes was written on a 3590 Model E1A and cannot be read on a 3590 Model B1A.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eject the Exported Stacked Volume from the Import category. 2. Import these volumes into a VTS that has 3590 Model E1A tape drives in the associated Model D1x.

Export and Import Messages from Library

During processing of an Export or Import operation, the VTS generates status messages that indicate the progress of the operation. The message is broadcast to all hosts attached to the VTS. On MVS, OS/390, or z/OS hosts, the message results in a console message being written in the following format:

```
CBR3750I MESSAGE FROM LIBRARY <library-name>: 70 EBCDIC character message
```

The 70-character message contains the status message, which is defined as follows:

Bytes 0–4 Unique Message Code. The unique message code is further defined as a single alphabetic character followed by four numeric characters. The alphabetic character indicates the element or function in the VTS or 3494 that generated the message. The numeric characters are a sequential number for a specific element or function. The element and function codes are defined as follows:

E	Export
I	Import

Byte 5 Blank character

Bytes 6–69 Status Message Text

Export Status Messages

Table 47. Export Status Messages

Message Code	Message Text
E0000	EXPORT OPERATION STARTED FOR EXPORT LIST VOLUME XXXXXX This message is generated when the VTS starts the Export operation.

Table 47. Export Status Messages (continued)

Message Code	Message Text
E0001	<p>EXPORT PROCESSING STARTED FOR DESTINATION XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS starts processing the logical volumes for a specific destination. The 'XX...X' field is replaced with the destination name from the Export List File. The destination name is left-aligned and padded with blanks if the destination name is less than 16 characters. If the destination name in the Export List File is all blanks, a destination name of 16 question mark characters ('???...?') is used.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0002	<p>EXPORTED LOGICAL VOLUMES ON YYYYYY READY FOR HOST PROCESSING</p> <p>This message is generated when all of the logical volumes on an Exported Stacked Volume YYYYYY have been placed in the Exported category and are ready for the host to process.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0003	<p>EXPORT PROCESSING COMPLETED FOR DESTINATION XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS has completed processing the logical volumes for a specific destination (including the host purging of the exported logical volume from the Library Manager inventory). The 'XX...X' field is replaced with the destination name from the Export List File. The destination name is left-aligned and padded with blanks if the destination name is less than 16 characters. If the destination name in the Export List File is all blanks, a destination name of 16 question mark characters ('???...?') is used.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0004	<p>STACKED VOLUME YYYYYY FOR DEST XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX IN EXPORT-HOLD</p> <p>This message is generated when the 3494 has placed Exported Stacked Volume 'YYYYYY' in the Export-Hold category. The 'XXX...X' field is replaced with the destination name from the Export List File. The destination name is left-aligned and padded with blanks if the destination name is less than 16 characters. If the destination name in the Export List File is all blanks, a destination name of 16 question mark characters ('???...?') is used.</p> <p>Action: You may now use the Library Manager console window, Manage Export-Hold Volumes, to move the Exported Stacked Volume to the Eject category or to the Import category. The Library Manager ejects volumes in the Eject category to the convenience I/O station.</p>
E0005	<p>ALL EXPORT PROCESSING COMPLETED FOR EXPORT LIST VOLUME XXXXXX</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS completes an Export operation.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0006	Reserved
E0007	Reserved
E0008	Reserved
E0009	Reserved
E0010	<p>EXPORT PROCESSING WAITING FOR HOST RESPONSE</p> <p>This message is generated every ten minutes when there is no host activity to complete the processing of the logical volumes in the Exported category.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>

Table 47. Export Status Messages (continued)

Message Code	Message Text
E0011	<p>EXPORT PROCESSING TERMINATED WAITING FOR HOST RESPONSE</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS has ended the Export operation because host processing of the logical volumes in the Exported category has been inactive for 60 continuous minutes.</p> <p>Action: Perform analysis of the Status File on the Export List Volume and reissue the Export operation.</p>
E0012	<p>FRAGMENTS FOR STACKED VOLUME XXXXXX NOT DELETED</p> <p>There has been a VTS failure to delete successfully all of the fragments for logical volumes that were otherwise exported successfully.</p> <p>Action: Call your service representative.</p>
E0013	<p>EXPORT PROCESSING SUSPENDED, WAITING FOR SCRATCH VOLUME</p> <p>This message is generated every five minutes when the VTS needs a scratch stacked volume to continue Export operation, and there are none available.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0014	<p>EXPORT PROCESSING RESUMED, SCRATCH VOLUME MADE AVAILABLE</p> <p>This message is generated when, after the Export operation was suspended because no scratch stacked volumes were available, scratch stacked volumes are again available, and the Export operation can continue.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0015	<p>EXPORT PROCESSING TERMINATED, WAITING FOR SCRATCH VOLUME</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS has ended the Export operation because scratch stacked volumes were not made available to the VTS within 60 minutes of the VTS readiness to copy logical volumes to an Exported Stacked Volume.</p> <p>Action: You should make more VTS stacked volumes available, perform analysis of the Status File on the Export List Volume, and reissue the Export operation.</p>
E0016	<p>COPYING LOGICAL EXPORT VOLUMES FROM CACHE TO STACKED VOLUMES</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS starts, and every ten minutes during, the process of copying or fragmenting logical volumes that are still in the tape volume cache and must be on a stacked volume before proceeding to copy them to an Exported Stacked Volume.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0017	<p>COMPLETED COPY OF LOGICAL EXPORT VOLUMES TO STACKED VOLUMES</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS has completed the copy of logical volumes to VTS stacked volumes, allowing the continuing process of copying to the Exported Stacked Volumes.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0018	<p>EXPORT TERMINATED, EXCESSIVE TIME FOR COPY TO STACKED VOLUMES</p> <p>The Export operation has been ended because the logical volumes could not be copied to VTS stacked volumes or fragmented within ten hours from the start of the Export operation.</p> <p>Action: Perform analysis of the Status File on the Export List Volume and reissue the Export operation.</p>
E0019	Reserved
E0020	Reserved

Table 47. Export Status Messages (continued)

Message Code	Message Text
E0021	Reserved
E0022	<p>EXPORT RECOVERY STARTED</p> <p>A VTS error or a power-off condition for which recovery is being attempted has interrupted the Export operation.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
E0023	<p>EXPORT RECOVERY COMPLETED</p> <p>The recovery attempt for interruption of an Export operation has been completed.</p> <p>Action: Perform analysis of the Status File on the Export List Volume and reissue the Export operation, if necessary.</p>

Import Status Messages

Table 48. Import Status Messages

Message Code	Message Text
I0000	<p>IMPORT OPERATION STARTED FOR IMPORT LIST VOLUME XXXXXX</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS starts the Import operation.</p>
I0001	<p>IMPORT PROCESSING STARTED FOR EXPORTED STACKED VOLUME YYYYYY</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS has started processing Exported Stacked Volume YYYYYY.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0002	<p>IMPORTED LOGICAL VOLUMES FROM YYYYYY READY FOR HOST PROCESSING</p> <p>This message is generated when all of the logical volumes on an Exported Stacked Volume YYYYYY have been placed in the Insert category and are ready for the host to process.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0003	<p>PROCESSING ON VOLUME YYYYYY HAS COMPLETED</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS completes Import processing of the Exported Stacked Volume whose volser is YYYYYY.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0004	<p>ALL IMPORT PROCESSING COMPLETED FOR IMPORT LIST VOLUME XXXXXX</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS completes an Import operation.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0005	<p>PROCESSING ON VOLUME YYYYYY TERMINATED, INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT</p> <p>This message is generated when an Exported Stacked Volume that is specified for import of a logical volume or all logical volumes was recorded on a 3590 Model E1A and the VTS has 3590 Model B1A tape drives attached.</p> <p>Action: Upon completion of the Import operation, eject the Exported Stacked Volume from the Import category.</p>
I0006	Reserved
I0007	Reserved

Table 48. Import Status Messages (continued)

Message Code	Message Text
I0008	Reserved
I0009	<p>IMPORT PROCESSING WAITING FOR HOST RESPONSE</p> <p>This message is generated every ten minutes when there is no host activity to complete the processing of the logical volumes placed in the Insert category during an Import operation.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0010	<p>IMPORT PROCESSING TERMINATED WAITING FOR HOST RESPONSE</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS has ended the Import operation because host processing of the logical volumes in the Insert category has been inactive for 60 continuous minutes.</p> <p>Action: Perform analysis of the Status List file on the Export List Volume and reissue the Import operation.</p>
I0011	Reserved
I0012	<p>IMPORT PROCESSING SUSPENDED, WAITING FOR SCRATCH VOLUME</p> <p>This message is generated every five minutes when the VTS needs a scratch stacked volume to continue Import processing, and there are none available.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0013	<p>IMPORT PROCESSING RESUMED, SCRATCH VOLUME MADE AVAILABLE</p> <p>This message is generated when, after the Import operation was suspended because no scratch stacked volumes were available, scratch stacked volumes are again available, and the Import operation can continue.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0014	<p>IMPORT PROCESSING TERMINATED, WAITING FOR SCRATCH VOLUME</p> <p>This message is generated when the VTS has ended the Import operation because scratch stacked volumes were not made available to the VTS within 60 minutes of the VTS need for a scratch volume to copy imported logical volumes on.</p> <p>Action: Make more VTS stacked volumes available, perform analysis of the Status File on the Export List Volume, and reissue the Import operation.</p>
I0015	<p>IMPORT RECOVERY STARTED</p> <p>A VTS error or a power-off condition for which recovery is being attempted has interrupted the Import operation.</p> <p>Action: None, status only.</p>
I0016	<p>IMPORT RECOVERY COMPLETED</p> <p>The recovery attempt for interruption of an Import operation has been completed.</p> <p>Action: Perform analysis of the Status File on the Export List Volume and reissue the Import operation, if necessary.</p>

Export/Import List Volumes Failure-Reason Text

If the VTS subsystem was unable to process the Export or Import List Volume, the host generates message CBR3858I. The reason the list volume could not be processed is included as a text string. The following table defines the failure-reasons returned, the probable cause, and the recommended actions for you to take.

In Table 49, the symbols <VOLSER>, <File>, <Record>, and <Field> are replaced in the message text as appropriate to describe the location of the error found:

- <VOLSER>, the logical volser that was provided in the Export or Import operation.
- <File>, Export List File, Import List File, Reserved File, or Status File.
- <Record>, within a <File>, HDR1, HDR2, EOF1, EOF2, Identifier, or Record.
- <Field>, within a <Record> Label Identifier, Block Count, Record Length, Block Length, Title Text, or Version.

Table 49. Export-Import List Volumes Failure Reason Text

Failure-Reason Text — Probable Cause	Recommended Action
Volume <VOLSER> has not been written The Export or Import operation specified an Export or Import List Volume that has not been created (written).	You should check for the correct identity of the Export or Import List Volume and, if necessary, execute the JCL that prepares a logical volume as the Export or Import List Volume.
Volume <VOLSER> could not be opened VTS failure.	Call your service representative.
Volume <VOLSER> could not be rewound VTS failure.	Call your service representative.
Volume <VOLSER> could not be closed VTS failure.	Call your service representative.
Volume <VOLSER> unable to locate Export List Records No records were found in the Export List File on the volser specified.	Check the source data used for preparation of the Export List Volume or Import List Volume.
Volume <VOLSER> unable to locate Import List Records No records were found in the Import List File on the volser specified.	Check the source data used for preparation of the Export List Volume or Import List Volume.
Volume Label, read error Volume Label record could not be read successfully.	Call your service representative.
Volume Label, compacted Volume Label record was compacted data.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
Volume Label, error converting Label Identifier The EBCDIC field did not convert to ASCII correctly.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
Volume Label, incorrect Label Identifier The characters 'VOL1' were not found in the Label Identifier and Label Number fields of the Volume Label.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.

Table 49. Export-Import List Volumes Failure Reason Text (continued)

Failure-Reason Text — Probable Cause	Recommended Action
Volume Label, error converting volser The EBCDIC field did not convert to ASCII correctly.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
Volume Label, volser mismatch The volser found in the Volume Label does not match the volser specified in the Export or Import operation.	Call your service representative.
Volume Label, found tape mark instead Tape Mark was found that is not in the correct format sequence.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
Volume Label, unexpected End of Tape The End of Tape was reached unexpectedly when attempting to read the Volume Label.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
Volume Label, record is not 80 bytes The Volume Label record is not 80 bytes.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <record>, read error When attempting to read the indicated record from the tape volume cache, a read error occurred.	Call your service representative.
<File> <Record>, found tape mark instead A tape mark was read instead of the File and Record indicated.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <Record>, unexpected End of Tape The End of Tape was reached on the tape volume unexpectedly.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <Record>, compacted The Record in the file indicated was compacted.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <Record>, error converting <Field> The EBCDIC Field in the file and record indicated did not convert to ASCII correctly.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <Record>, incorrect <Field> The Field indicated in the file and record indicated did not have the correct contents.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <Record>, invalid Record Length The Record Length field of the HDR2 or EOF2 record in the file indicated is not equal to 80 characters.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <Record>, Block and Record Length mismatch The Block Length and Record Length fields of HDR2 or EOF2 are not equal in the file and record indicated.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File> <Record>, record is not 80 bytes The length of the HDR1, HDR2, EOF1 or EOF2 record is not equal to 80 bytes in the file and record indicated.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.

Table 49. Export-Import List Volumes Failure Reason Text (continued)

Failure-Reason Text — Probable Cause	Recommended Action
<File>, missing a tape mark For the file indicated, a tape mark was not found as expected in the format.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.
<File>, internal processing error MMMM VTS error. MMMM is a decimal number that indicates the internal functional area encountering the error.	Call your service representative.
<File>, more than max allowed records For the Export List File or Import List File as indicated, there are more than 50 000 records.	Check the source data used for preparation of the Export or Import List Volume.
<File>, number of records=0 For the Export List File or Import List File as indicated, the number of records was found to be zero.	Check the source data used for preparation of the Export or Import List Volume.
Reserved File, Identifier not found The Identifier record for the Reserved File was not found.	Check the JCL that prepared the Export or Import List Volume.

Category Recovery

Errors may be made when placing cartridges in the convenience I/O station and moving them into other categories from the Unassigned Category when the Advanced Function feature is installed on at least one VTS in a 3494. The error scenarios and recovery actions are described in Table 50.

Table 50. Category Recovery Error Scenarios

Error Scenario	Recovery Actions
<p>Error Scenario An Exported Stacked Volume with logical volumes that have not been imported has been assigned to the Insert category. The volume serial number falls within a range defined for VTS stacked volumes.</p> <p>Resultant Library Action The library/VTS subsystem adds the volume as a scratch stacked volume. Note: Data on a volume are overwritten when the volume is selected for use by the VTS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eject the volume through the Library Manager console using the Eject a Stacked Volume function. 2. If the Exported Stacked Volume is needed for an Import operation, reinsert the volume into the convenience I/O station. Use the Manage Unassigned Volumes window to assign the volume to the Import category.
<p>Error Scenario An Exported Stacked Volume with logical volumes that have not been imported has been assigned to the Insert category. The volume serial number does not fall within a range defined for VTS stacked volumes.</p> <p>Resultant Library Action The library assigns the volume to the Insert category for 3590 native use and notifies all attached hosts. Note: Data on a volume is overwritten when the volume is selected for use by a host.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eject the volumes from the library through host console command, ISMF or tape management system command. 2. If the Exported Stacked Volume is needed for an Import operation, reinsert the volume into the convenience I/O station. Use the Manage Insert Volumes window to assign the volume to the Import category.
<p>Error Scenario An Exported Stacked Volume has been assigned to the Import category and has not been required for the Import operation.</p> <p>Resultant Library Action The volume remains in the Import category.</p>	Use the Manage VTS Import Volumes window to eject the volume.
<p>Error Scenario An HPCT volume (not an Exported Stacked Volume) that is needed as a scratch stacked volume or native 3590 volume has been assigned to the Import category.</p> <p>Resultant Library Action The volume remains in the Import category until you take action.</p>	Use the Manage VTS Import Volumes window to move the volume to the Insert category defined by volser ranges, or eject the volume if it is not desired in the 3494.

Reuse of Exported Stacked Volumes

When all of the logical volumes on an Exported Stacked Volume have been imported into a VTS, the Exported Stacked Volume can be reused for any 3590 application. No cleanup or special processing is required; however, the Exported Stacked Volumes remain in the Import category until you take action. It is up to you to determine when all of the logical volumes on an Exported Stacked Volume have been imported or are no longer needed and that the physical volume can be reused as a stacked volume in a VTS or for native use on a 3590 subsystem. This would be determined normally by using the tape management system to check that there are no logical volumes contained on a physical volume used previously as an Exported Stacked Volume. For example, the **RMM SEARCHVOLUME** command can be used to make this determination as follows:

```
RMM SV CONTAINER(xxxxxx)
```

where **xxxxxx** is the volser of the Exported Stacked Volume in question.

If no volumes are returned, all of the logical volumes on the Exported Stacked Volume have been imported, and the volume may be reused.

Reuse of the physical volumes is accomplished with operator action by using a Library Manager console **Manage Import Volumes** window to move the Exported Stacked Volumes out of the Import category (see Figure 110 on page 198). When they are moved out of the Import category, one of the following happens:

- The volumes are moved into the Insert category if they are to be used as scratch stacked volumes in a VTS within the current physical library. The volser of the physical volumes must fall in the range assigned for stacked volumes in the library partition into which the volumes are to go. If they are not in a range assigned for stacked volumes, the volumes are entered into the 3494 for native 3590 usage as the default.
- The volumes are moved into the Insert category if they are to be used as native 3590 cartridges. The volsers of the physical volumes must fall in the range assigned for native 3590 use. If they are not in a range assigned for 3590 native use, the volumes are entered into the 3494 for native 3590 usage as the default.
- Otherwise, the volumes are ejected for other use or later disposition. Exported Stacked Volumes may be placed in the convenience I/O station at any time. They are moved into the 3494 in the Unassigned category. You may then use the Manage Unassigned Volumes window to change the category to Import or Insert or to eject the volume.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services that are offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries/regions. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any of IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states/regions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on

generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurement may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements, or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility, or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking	OS/390
AIX	OS/400
AIX/ESA	POWERserver
Application System/400	pSeries
APPN	RISC System/6000
AS/400	RS/6000
DFSMShsm	SP
DFSMSrmm	System/390
DFSMS/MVS	S/390
@server	Tivoli
ESCON	TotalStorage
FICON	VM/ESA
IBM	VSE/ESA
IBMLink	VTAM
iSeries	zSeries
Magstar	z/OS
MVS	z/VM
MVS/ESA	
OS/2	

Java and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries/regions, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, Windows 2000, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries/regions, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

IBM Agreement for Licensed Internal Code

You accept the terms of this Agreement by your initial use of a machine that contains IBM Licensed Internal Code (called “Code”).

These terms apply to Code used by certain machines IBM or your reseller specifies (called “Specific Machines”). International Business Machines Corporation or one of its subsidiaries (“IBM”) owns copyrights in Code or has the right to license Code. IBM or a third party owns all copies of Code, including all copies made from them.

If you are the rightful possessor of a Specific Machine, IBM grants you a license to use the Code (or any replacement IBM provides) on, or in conjunction with, only the Specific Machine for which the Code is provided. IBM licenses the Code to only one rightful possessor at a time.

Under each license, IBM authorizes you to do only the following:

1. Execute the Code to enable the Specific Machine to function according to its Official Published Specifications (called “Specifications”);
2. Make a backup or archival copy of the Code (unless IBM makes one available for your use), provided you reproduce the copyright notice and any other legend of ownership on the copy. You may use the copy only to replace the original, when necessary; and
3. Execute and display the Code as necessary to maintain the Specific Machine.

You agree to acquire any replacement for, or additional copy of, Code directly from IBM in accordance with IBM’s standard policies and practices. You also agree to use that Code under these terms.

You may transfer possession of the Code to another party only with the transfer of the Specific Machine. If you do so, you must 1) destroy all your copies of the Code that were not provided by IBM, 2) either give the other party all your IBM-provided copies of the Code or destroy them, and 3) notify the other party of these terms. IBM licenses the other party when it accepts these terms. These terms apply to all Code you acquire from any source.

Your license terminates when you no longer rightfully possess the Specific Machine.

Actions You May Not Take

You agree to use the Code only as authorized above. You may not do, for example, any of the following:

1. Otherwise copy, display, transfer, adapt, modify, or distribute the Code (electronically or otherwise), except as IBM may authorize in the Specific Machine’s Specifications or in writing to you;
2. Reverse assemble, reverse compile, or otherwise translate the Code unless expressly permitted by applicable law without the possibility of contractual waiver;
3. Sublicense or assign the license for the Code; or
4. Lease the Code or any copy of it.

Communications Statements

The following communications statements apply to operation of the 3494 in the United States and other countries/regions.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Class A Statement

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

IBM is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Industry Canada Class A Emission Compliance Statement

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Avis de conformité à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

European Union (EU) Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EU Council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. IBM cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a non-recommended modification of the product, including the fitting of non-IBM option cards.

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for Class A Information Technology Equipment according to European Standard EN 55022. The limits for Class A equipment were derived for commercial and industrial environments to provide reasonable protection against interference with licensed communication equipment.

Attention: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Germany Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive

Zulassungsbescheinigung laut dem Deutschen Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) vom 30. August 1995 (bzw. der EMC EG Richtlinie 89/336)

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt, in Übereinstimmung mit dem Deutschen EMVG das EG-Konformitätszeichen - CE - zu führen.

Verantwortlich für die Konformitätserklärung nach Paragraph 5 des EMVG ist die IBM Deutschland Informationssysteme GmbH, 70548 Stuttgart.

Informationen in Hinsicht EMVG Paragraph 3 Abs. (2) 2: Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 50082-1 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

EN 55022 Klasse A Geräte müssen mit folgendem Warnhinweis versehen werden: "Warnung: dies ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A. Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funkstörungen verursachen; in diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Maßnahmen durchzuführen und dafür aufzukommen."

EN 50082-1 Hinweis: "Wird dieses Gerät in einer industriellen Umgebung betrieben (wie in EN 50082-2 festgelegt), dann kann es dabei eventuell gestört werden. In solch einem Fall ist der Abstand bzw. die Abschirmung zu der industriellen Störquelle zu vergrößern."

Anmerkung: Um die Einhaltung des EMVG sicherzustellen, sind die Geräte wie in den IBM Handbüchern angegeben zu installieren und zu betreiben.

Japan VCCI Class A ITE Electronic Emission Statement

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

vcci

Taiwan Class A Electronic Emission Statement

警告使用者：
這是甲類的資訊產品，在
居住的環境中使用時，可
能會造成射頻干擾，在這
種情況下，使用者會被要
求採取某些適當的對策。

taieci

Glossary

This glossary defines the special terms, abbreviations, and acronyms used in this publication. If you do not find the term you are looking for, see the index or the *IBM Dictionary of Computing*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994.

Numerics

3490E. The term used to mean a 3490E tape subsystem.

3494. (1) The term used to mean a collection of tape cartridges. Within the 3494, it describes the set of cartridges contained within the enclosure. (2) An automated tape library (for example, the 3494) that consists of cartridge storage frames, tape subsystems, and controlling hardware and software. The 3494 performs host-directed tape cartridge mounts and demounts without operator intervention.

3590. The term used to mean a 3590 tape subsystem.

A

ACL. See *automatic cartridge loader*.

action bar. In the Library Manager application, the area at the top of the primary window that contains keywords that give users access to actions available in that window. After users select a choice in the action bar, a window extension opens.

active accessor. The accessor being used currently to move cartridges within the 3494.

active Library Manager. The Library Manager controlling 3494 operation currently.

active window. In the Library Manager, the window that is in use currently and that receives keyboard or mouse input.

advanced program-to-program communication. A protocol that allows systems or tape drives to be attached to the token-ring network so that they can communicate and process the same programs.

APPC. See *advanced program-to-program communication*.

automatic cartridge loader. A device that allows multiple cartridges to be loaded and unloaded from a tape drive without operator intervention.

auto mode. An operating mode in which the attached host systems directs the operation of the 3494 without

operator interaction. The library is in Auto mode when accessor motion is allowed or enabled.

availability. For a storage subsystem, the degree to which a data set can be accessed when requested by a user.

available. The term used to indicate that a component is available for use by the Library Manager. Components in the 3494 (such as cartridge accessor, grippers, I/O facilities, and tape drives) are either available or unavailable for use. Compare with *online*. Contrast with *unavailable*.

B

backstore. The physical tape devices used to store VTS data.

bar code. A code representing characters by sets of parallel bars of varying thickness and separation.

bar code label. The label attached to the end of tape cartridges, containing a code representing characters by sets of parallel bars of varying thickness and separation.

bar code reader. See *vision system*.

barrier door. Used by service personnel to separate the service bay from the main aisle of the 3494. This allows concurrent service to the accessor and the associated hardware. This feature is available only in the HA1 Frames.

borrow. When a storage pool is out of scratch stacked volumes, scratch volumes will be borrowed from the Common Scratch Pool.

C

cache. A high speed buffer storage that contains frequently accessed instructions and data; it is used to reduce access time. See *tape volume cache*.

cartridge. The term used to mean the IBM Cartridge System Tape, the IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, the IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape, or the IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape.

cartridge accessor. The physical mechanisms within the 3494 that identify, retrieve, and move tape cartridges. It consists of a gripper, vision system, picker, and accessor mechanism.

cartridge automation. The process in which the 3494 performs actions for inserting, ejecting, mounting, demounting, loading, and unloading of tape cartridges automatically.

cartridge system tape. The base tape cartridge media that is used with 3480 and 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystems.

category. A grouping of volumes with a common attribute, such as volumes to eject, volumes newly added to the 3494, and volumes to clean tape drives.

caution notice. A special note in text that calls attention to a situation that is potentially hazardous to people because of some existing situation. See also *danger notice*.

cell. See *storage cell*.

check box. On the Library Manager display, a control that consists of a displayed square box and selectable text. It acts as a switch.

click. With the Library Manager, the act of pressing a button on a pointing device while holding the pointing device pointer on the selected text. See also *double-click*.

client area. The area in the center of a window that contains the main information of the window.

code. The term used to mean the internal programs that comprise the Library Manager application.

command. A control signal that initiates an action or the start of a sequence of actions.

component. A part of a functional unit. For example, the gripper mechanism is a component of the cartridge accessor.

composite library. In a PtP VTS, the single virtual library presented in the virtual view to the host.

construct. A storage group, storage class, management class, or data class name and associated actions. Used by the host to control volumes.

control program. The program in the host system that schedules and supervises the execution of application programs.

convenience input. The term used when loading small numbers of tape cartridges into the 3494 using the convenience I/O station. See *convenience I/O station*.

convenience I/O station. An optional feature of the 3494 used to load or unload small numbers of cartridges into or out of the 3494. The station supports only one type of operation at a time, either input or output.

convenience output. The term used when unloading small numbers of tape cartridges from the 3494 using the convenience I/O station. See *convenience I/O station*.

CST. See *cartridge system tape*.

D

DAA. See *dual active accessors*.

danger notice. A special note in text that calls attention to a situation that is potentially lethal or extremely hazardous to people. See also *caution notice*.

database. A collection of data that can be accessed by a data processing system for a specific purpose.

DCAF. See *distributed console access facility*.

degraded. A mode of 3494 operation in which some element of the 3494 has failed. Some performance degradation may be experienced.

demount. A host command to unload a cartridge from a tape drive.

device. A generic term used to mean an item of other equipment attached to the 3494, such as tape drives, optical storage, and so on.

direct attach port . Ports that provide a control path for 3494 functions between an open systems host and the Library Manager.

diskette. A thin, flexible magnetic disk and a protective jacket, in which the disk is permanently enclosed. Contrast with *hard disk*.

distributed console access facility. A feature that allows the operator to control or monitor 3494 operations from a remote location.

distributed library. In a PtP VTS, one of the physical libraries. Note that each distributed library is actually a partition in separate 3494s.

double-click. With the Library Manager, the act of pressing a pointing device button twice within a time limit while holding the pointing device pointer on the selected item. See also *click*.

dual active accessors. The Dual Active Accessors feature consists of two cartridge accessors and microcode that enables them to be active at the same time. In normal operation, both accessors are active when this feature is installed.

dual Library Manager. The dual Library Manager consists of two Library Managers. In normal operation, one Library Manager is the active Library Manager, and the other Library Manager is the standby Library Manager.

dump. To record data, at a particular instant, for the purpose of safeguarding or analyzing.

E

ECCST. See *enhanced capacity cartridge system tape*.

EHPCT. See *extended high performance cartridge tape*.

eject. The operation of moving a cartridge to an output station in the 3494. Contrast with *insert*.

emergency power off. A switch that removes all power from the equipment in the 3494 but does not affect power to lighting circuits.

enable. To provide the means or opportunity. The modification of system, control unit, or device action through the change of a software module or a hardware switch (circuit jumper) position.

enclosure interlock. The mechanism that locks the 3494 door.

enhanced capacity cartridge system tape. Cartridge system tape with increased capacity that can be used only with 3490E enhanced capability models. Visually identified by a two-tone cartridge case.

Enterprise. An automated tape library consisting of mechanical components, cartridge storage frames, IBM tape subsystems, and controlling hardware and software. The tape library performs tape cartridge mounts and demounts without operator intervention.

Enterprise Systems Connection. A set of IBM products and services that provide a dynamically connected environment within an enterprise.

EPO. See *emergency power off*.

ESCON. See *Enterprise Systems Connection*.

Ethernet. A local area network (LAN) that allows multiple stations to access a data transmission without prior coordination.

export. The VTS Export operation allows logical volumes to be moved from a VTS to another VTS. The destination VTS can be in the same 3494 or in a different 3494.

exported stacked volume. A physical volume managed by a VTS that contains logical volumes that can be removed from the VTS.

extended high performance cartridge tape. Cartridge system tape with increased capacity that can be used only with 3590 tape subsystems. Visually identified by a green leader block and two green inserts with identification notches on the edge of the cartridge case.

F

Fiber Connectivity (FICON). A high-speed input/output (I/O) interface for mainframe computer connections to storage devices.

FICON. See *Fiber Connectivity*.

file-protected. Pertaining to a tape volume that data can only be read from. Data cannot be written on or erased from the tape.

fixed cell mode. The mode where the home cell for a tape volume will not move, it will remain static.

floating cell mode. The mode where the home cell for a tape volume will move, it will not remain fixed.

frame. (1) A housing for device elements. (2) The hardware support structure, covers, and all parts mounted therein that are packaged as one entity for shipping.

G

grripper. A part attached to the picker mechanism of the cartridge accessor, which loads, unloads, and moves cartridges between storage cells, tape drives, and the convenience I/O station.

H

hard disk. A rigid, non-removable disk residing in the Library Manager.

high availability unit. A second Library Manager, a second accessor, and service bay frames, which improve 3494 availability.

high-capacity I/O facility. The part of the 3494 used to load and unload large numbers of cartridges from the 3494.

high-capacity output facility. The part of the 3494 used to unload large numbers of cartridges from the 3494.

high performance cartridge tape. Cartridge system tape with increased capacity that can be used only with 3590 tape subsystems. Visually identified by a blue leader block and two blue inserts with identification notches on the edge of the cartridge case.

home cell. A fixed location that is assigned to a cartridge when it is first inserted into the 3494.

home position. A position the cartridge accessor goes to when entering Pause mode. Home position is located at the far left side of the control unit frame.

host system. A data processing system that is used to prepare programs and the operating environments for use on another computer or controller.

HPCT. See *high performance cartridge tape*.

I

icon. A pictorial representation of an object or a selection choice. Icons can represent objects that users want to work on or actions that users want to perform. See *system menu icon*.

IDRC. See *improved data recording capability*.

import. The VTS Import operation allows logical volumes to be moved to a VTS from another VTS. The source VTS can be in the same 3494 or in a different 3494.

improved data recording capability. A data recording mode that, if installed and enabled on the 3490E Magnetic Tape Subsystem, can increase the effective cartridge data capacity and the effective data rate if started.

initial program load. The initialization procedure that causes an operating system to start operation.

insert. The operation of adding cartridges to the 3494. Contrast with *eject*.

internet protocol. A form of LAN communications protocol.

inventory. The operation of identifying the location of each tape cartridge contained in the 3494.

I/O. Input or output or both.

IP. See *internet protocol*.

IPL. See *initial program load*.

K

Keep. When a stacked physical volume is borrowed from the Common Scratch Pool (CSP) and it is not to be returned to the CSP when it is reclaimed.

L

LAN. See *local area network*.

LED. See *light emitting diode*.

Library Manager. The controller for the 3494. It manages the location of tape cartridges, monitors performance, issues commands to the hardware, displays status, and performs other functions. It communicates with host systems through the tape control unit in each library or, in AS/400 and iSeries,

directly through the RS-232 interface. The Library Manager also provides operator and service panel functions.

light emitting diode. (1) A semiconductor chip that emits visible or infrared light when activated. (2) A light that signals a change in status or the presence of a certain predefined condition.

load. (1) The process, performed by an operator or by the cartridge accessor, of placing a cartridge into a location within the 3494 for later use or retrieval. (2) The term used when describing the action of the tape transport when it removes the leader block from a cartridge and threads the media through the internal tape path.

local area network. A computer network located on a user's premises within a limited geographical area. Communication within a LAN is not subject to external regulations; however, communication across a LAN boundary may be subject to regulation.

logical library. A logical library represents a set of tape volumes and tape drives that are a subset of all tape volumes and drives in a 3494. Each logical library within a 3494 has a unique library sequence number identifying the logical library.

logical volume. A logical volume is a data volume that is stored on a stacked volume. A logical volume is not directly accessible by a host program. The volume serial number of the logical volume is not externally visible to a human or device.

M

magazine. A container residing in a storage frame. Each container consists of storage cells for holding tape cartridges.

manual mode. A mode of operation, where the operator, under the direction of the Library Manager, locates and moves tape cartridges to and from storage cells and tape units manually. This mode allows data to be retrieved when normal 3494 operations are interrupted by unexpected conditions.

menu. A panel containing a list of functions available for selection.

migrate. Move virtual volume data from the VTS cache to a physical stacked tape.

mount. A host command to load a cartridge into a tape unit.

mount from input station. A function available through the Commands window on the Library Manager. It allows transient cartridges outside the library to be mounted on devices within the 3494. It is

used to support stand alone programs that do not require the support of a full operating system.

N

no borrow. When a storage pool is out of scratch stacked volumes, no volumes will be borrowed from the Common Scratch Pool.

non-user interface VTS. The VTS in a PtP VTS configuration that was not selected as the user interface VTS. The non-user interface VTS is the secondary VTS in the configuration. User applications do not recognize the non-user interface VTS.

O

offline. Pertaining to the operation of a unit when not under the direct control of a host system. Compare with *unavailable*. Contrast with *online*.

OK. With the Library Manager, a standard button that causes the application to accept any changed information and closes the window.

online. Pertaining to the operation of a unit when under the direct control of a host system. Compare with *available*. Contrast with *offline*.

P

panel. (1) A control area on a device that allows user interaction with the device. (2) The information that is displayed on a screen.

park. An operation the cartridge accessor performs when entering Pause mode. The cartridge accessor moves to the home position, and the picker lowers. See also *home position*.

pause mode. An operating mode in which all host requests that require movement of cartridges are queued until the 3494 is returned to Auto mode. The cartridge accessor is parked, and the library doors may be opened.

PtP VTS. A VTS configuration in which copies of data in newly created or updated tape volumes are created or updated automatically in each of two interconnected VTSs. This dual-volume copy functionality improves data availability and data recovery, while being transparent to user applications and host processor resources.

picker. The picker provides a mounting platform for the gripper and the bar code reader.

primary window. The window on the Library Manager display in which the main dialog between users and the Library Manager occurs.

push button. On the Library Manager display, a shaded rectangle, containing text and used in windows to initiate actions. Selecting a push button causes an action to take place immediately.

R

rack. See *wall*.

radio button. On the Library Manager display, a control that consists of a circle and text. Radio buttons are combined in groups to show users a fixed set of choices that are mutually exclusive. Clicking on a radio button causes that choice to be selected and all others in its group to be deselected.

recall. Move data from a stacked physical tape to the VTS cache.

reclaim. Move active data onto fewer physical tapes and allow extra tapes to be reused.

reconcile. The process of determining what is active data and what is inactive data.

reduced instruction set computer. A computer that uses a small, simplified set of frequently used instructions for rapid execution.

remote Library Manager console. The Remote Library Manager Console feature permits control or monitoring of the Library Manager from a location that is remote from the 3494.

return. When a stacked physical volume is borrowed from the Common Scratch Pool (CSP) and it is to be returned to the CSP when it is reclaimed.

RISC. See *reduced instruction set computer*.

S

screen. The viewing area of a workstation's display.

secondary window. A window on the Library Manager display that is movable and sizeable and is always associated with a primary window.

selection list. On the Library Manager display, a control that contains choices from which users can select one choice.

service bays. Frames attached to either end of the library to allow for storage and containment of the hot standby library controller and cartridge accessor.

setup. The preparation of a computing system to perform a job or job step.

shortcut key. A combination of keys that a user can press to perform an action that is available from a

menu. For example, the Ctrl+C combination causes the Library Manager to display the task list.

Specialist. The name of the Web interface used on several IBM storage products that allows monitoring of the system using a Web browser.

stacked volume. A physical volume that is managed exclusively by a VTS and contains one or more logical volumes. It is not a user-accessible volume.

standby accessor. The accessor not being used currently to move cartridges when the HA1 Frames are installed.

standby Library Manager. The standby Library Manager can take control of all operations in the 3494. Its hardware consists of a controller, a display, a pointing device, and a keyboard. This feature is available only in the HA1 Frames configuration.

storage. (1) A device in which recorded information can be entered, retained, and processed, and from which recorded information can be retrieved. (2) The action of placing data into a storage device. (3) A facility in which data can be retained.

storage cell. A location in the 3494 where a cartridge can be loaded or unloaded. This includes the storage cells in a storage frame and the convenience I/O station.

system menu. On the Library Manager display, the menu in the upper left corner of a window, which allows users to restore, close, move, size, minimize, and maximize the window. The system menu is referenced by the system menu icon.

system menu icon. The term for the symbol located in the upper left corner of some windows that is used to control the presence and appearance of those windows. See *system menu*.

T

tape drive. A device that is used for moving magnetic tape. It includes the mechanisms for writing and reading data to and from tape. See also *tape unit* and *transport*.

tape management software. A program that controls the scratch status of tape volumes.

tape unit. A device that contains tape drives and their associated power supplies and electronics.

tape volume cache. The tape volume cache is a major component of a VTS and is a combination of RAID storage devices, RAM buffering, and internal licensed code that stores and manages virtual volumes.

TCP. See *transmission control protocol*.

teach. The process that allows the Library Manager, using the cartridge accessor, to *learn* the exact physical locations of each major unit within the 3494.

title bar. The area at the top of each window that contains the window title and system menu icon. When appropriate, it also contains the minimize, maximize, and restore icons.

token-ring network. A local area network (LAN) that uses ring topology, where tokens are passed from node to node. A node that is ready to send can capture a token and insert data for transmission.

transient cartridges. Cartridges that reside in a user's library that are not stored within the confines of the automated tape library and are not recorded as part of the automated library's inventory.

transient mount. See *mount from input station*.

transmission control protocol. A communications protocol used in the Internet and in any network that follows the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standards for internetwork protocol. TCP provides a reliable host-to-host protocol between hosts in packet-switched communications networks and in interconnected systems of such networks. It uses the Internet Protocol (IP) as the underlying protocol.

transport. The mechanism inside a tape drive that moves tape media. It is comprised of loading, threading and guiding mechanisms and motors.

U

UEPO. See *unit emergency power off*.

unavailable. A term used to mean that a component in the 3494 (for example, the cartridge accessor) is not available for use by the Library Manager. Compare with *offline*. Contrast with *available*.

unit. (1) An entity that can accomplish a specific purpose, for example, a 3490E tape drive. (2) An individual piece of the 3494 that can be added to or deleted from a 3494 configuration, for example, 3490E control unit, 3490E tape unit, storage frame, or convenience I/O station.

unit emergency power off. The control unit switch that, when operated in an emergency, causes all subsystem frames to be disconnected from the ac power source.

unit power off. A switch that removes all power from a specific unit of the 3494.

unload. To remove cartridges from a device in the 3494.

UPO. See *unit power off*.

user interface VTS. During the library installation Teach operation, the service representative selects one of the VTSs in a Peer-to-Peer VTS configuration to be the user interface VTS. This is the VTS that the user has designated to perform library console operations, such as logical volume volser creation.

V

virtual tape drive. A virtual tape drive is a representation of the functionality of a 3490E class tape drive as viewed by the host control program. The data from and to the drive is directed to the tape volume cache, and all drive related commands are emulated through the internal licensed code in the VTS controller.

virtual tape server. A VTS is comprised of a VTS controller, 3590 tape devices, and the 3494. Together, they manage the utilization of the cartridge storage capacity and performance capabilities of the 3590 tape technology transparently to host software and applications.

virtual telecommunications access method. IBM software that controls communication and the flow of data in an SNA network by providing the SNA application programming interfaces and SNA networking functions. An SNA network includes subarea networking, Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking® (APPN®), and High-Performance Routing (HPR). Starting with Release 5 of the OS/390 operating system, the VTAM for MVS/ESA function was included in Communications Server for OS/390; this function is called Communications Server for OS/390 - SNA Services.

virtual volume. A user-accessible volume that exists in the tape volume cache of a VTS. When a virtual volume is copied from the tape volume cache to a stacked volume, it becomes a logical volume. When a logical volume is recalled from a stacked volume to the tape volume cache, it becomes a virtual volume.

vision system. A Class II laser bar code reader that is mounted on the cartridge accessor picker. It is used to read the bar code labels on the tape cartridges.

volser. Volume serial identifier. The physical label on the cartridge. Also, the same or different identifier encoded on the magnetic tape.

volume. See *cartridge*.

VTAM. See *virtual telecommunications access method*.

VTS. See *virtual tape server*.

W

wall. Walls located inside the 3494 house the cartridge storage cells. The walls on the front doors of the 3494

are labeled with even numbers, and the walls on the rear of the 3494 are labeled with odd numbers.

window. On the Library Manager display, a selectable area in which users provide information that is required by an application so it can continue a user's request.

Index

Numerics

10-cartridge convenience I/O station 4, 19, 38, 86
 availability 125
 I/O status LED locations 38
 inserting cartridges 21, 86
 location 35
 mode 19, 86, 142
 operation tab 38
 state 142
 status LEDs
 I/O locked 38
 input mode 38
 output mode 38
 unload required 38
30-cartridge convenience I/O station 4, 19, 38, 86
 availability 125
 I/O status LED locations 38
 inserting cartridges 21, 86
 location 35
 mode 19, 86, 142
 operation tab 38
 state 142
 status LEDs
 I/O locked 38
 input mode 38
 output mode 38
 unload required 38
3490E tape subsystem 43, 44
 3490E Model CxA
 controls and indicators 43
 operator panel 43
 3490E Model F1A
 controls and indicators 44
 operator panel 44
 3490E operation 45
 emulation of 3490 tape drives 45
3494
 advanced operating procedures 93
 basic operating procedures 83
 check-1 condition state 319
 controls and indicators 35
 dataserver shutdown window 118
 frame descriptions 2
 functional components 4
 informational states 73
 integration of 3494 53
 introduction 2
 keyboard template 373
 operational characteristics 45
 operational modes and states 73
 problem determination
 procedures 317
 remote library manager console
 feature 301
 specialist 274
 description 32
 disabling 276
 enabling 276
 features and functions 291

3494 (*continued*)
 specialist (*continued*)
 using 277
 VTS import and export advanced
 function 375
3590 tape subsystems 42
 3590 Model A60 controller
 3590 adjacent frame support 34
 3590 operation 42, 45
 3590 operator panel 42
 controls 42

A

access, service 254
 disable 254
 enable 254
accessor
 disable dual active 116
 dual active accessor status window -
 disabling 117
 dual active accessor status window -
 enabling 116
 enable dual active 116
 mounts per hour
 selection 119, 131
 window 131
 switch active to standby 115
 switchover confirmation window 115
 switchover in progress 76
accessors, dual active
 disable 116
 enable 116
 status 76
 window - disabling 117
 window - enabling 116
action bar
 description 100
action list
 using 283
actions to avoid 71
active accessor
 disable dual active 116
 enable dual active 116
 switch active to standby 115
active library manager
 configuring for SNMP trap
 destinations 256
 in HA1 Frames 31
 switch to standby 109, 114
add LAN host to 3494 237
 window (APPC selected) 238
 window (APPC/VTAM selected) 240
 window (TCP/IP selected) 242
adding an SNMP trap destination
 (OS/2 2.11) 257
 (OS/2 4.0) 258
adjacent frame support 34
administrator, system
 change password 253
 involvement in operations 57
administrator, system (*continued*)
 password window 114, 118, 253
advanced operating procedures
 library manager function keys 106
 making library manager
 selections 100
 selecting with the keyboard 100
 selecting with the pointing
 device 101
 using the help window 103
 help action bar 105
 help search 105
 using the library manager 97
 using the operator menu 107
 mode window 108, 280
 status window 119
AS/400
 adding to 3494 configuration 238
 APPC LAN protocol 238
 Display LAN Information
 (DSPLANMLD) command 237, 246,
 248, 249
 Display LAN Media Library
 Information command 237, 246,
 248, 249
 DSPLANMLB command 237, 246,
 248, 249
 DSPLANMLD command 237, 246,
 248, 249
 host transaction program name 238
 LAN protocol 237
 LAN transaction program 238
 local remote power switch 36
 media library device driver
 (MLDD) 83
 power control of 3494 56
 QMLD/QMLDSTRCC transaction
 program name 238
 remote power mode 56
 transaction program name 238
attachment
 SCSI host 55
audit operations 67
 during inventory update 57
auto mode
 changing to 84
 description 73
 selection 109
 transition from
 to manual mode 79
 to pause mode (forced) 80
 to pause mode (no error) 78
auxiliary frame
 frame controls 41
 front view 14
 functional components 15
 operator panel 41
 power controls 41
 rear view 15
AX0
 accessing Web information 295

B

- B10 VTS
 - frame controls 40
 - front view 12
 - functional components 13
 - operator panel 40
 - power controls 40
 - rear view 13
- B16 VTS
 - controls 39
 - front view 10
 - functional components 10, 11
 - rear view 11
- B18 VTS
 - controls 40
 - front view 12
 - functional components 13
 - operator panel 40
 - power controls 40
 - rear view 13
- B20 VTS
 - controls 40
 - front view 12
 - functional components 13
 - operator panel 40
 - power controls 40
 - rear view 13
- basic operating procedures 83
 - changing from local to remote power 84
 - changing from remote to local power 85
 - changing to auto mode 84
 - changing to pause mode 84
 - inserting cartridges 85
 - using convenience I/O station 86
 - using empty cartridge cells 85
 - using high-capacity I/O facility 89
 - powering off the 3494 84
 - powering on the 3494 83
 - removing ejected cartridges 90
 - from convenience I/O station 91
 - from high-capacity I/O facility 91
 - from high-capacity output facility 90
 - from single-cell output facility 90

C

- call home 273
 - support 34
 - window 274
- cancel VTS export/import window 201
- capacity
 - cartridge storage 28
- cartridge
 - 3494 28
 - cell location 26
 - convenience I/O station 19
 - demounting 284
 - ejecting 286
 - file protection 21, 22
 - high-capacity I/O facility 18, 19
 - high-capacity output facility 18, 19

- cartridge (*continued*)
 - input and output facilities
 - convenience I/O station feature 19
 - high-capacity I/O 18
 - high-capacity output 18
 - single-cell output 18
 - input facility 18
 - inserting 21, 85, 284
 - using convenience I/O station 86
 - using empty cartridge cells 85
 - using high-capacity I/O facility 89
 - window 285, 286
 - installation, initial 69
 - cleaner volumes 69
 - customer volumes 69
 - service volume 69
 - labels
 - how to apply 24
 - media-type 20, 22, 25
 - volser 21, 22
 - mounting 283
 - using action list 283
 - using drive message display 283
 - output facilities 18
 - high-capacity 18
 - single-cell 18
 - placement guidelines 70
 - removal from gripper 299
 - removing ejected 90
 - requirements 21
 - reserved storage cells 27
 - single-cell output facility 18
 - storage capacity 28
 - storage cells 26
 - labeling 26, 27
 - locations 18, 19
 - names 26
 - reserved 27
 - system tape 1, 19
 - description 19
 - requirements 21
 - transient 69, 232
 - types 19
 - identifying 20, 21
 - media-type label 20
- category
 - attributes 191
 - mount from 66
 - volume 58
- cell location 26
- change LAN host information 245
 - (APPC/VTAM) window 247
 - (APPC) window 245
 - (TCP/IP) window 249
- changing
 - keystrokes mode 308
- modes
 - auto 109
 - manual 110
 - pause 109, 110
- session state 309, 312
- SNMP trap destinations (OS/2 2.11) 257
 - window 257
- system administrator password 253

- changing (*continued*)
 - window 253
- characteristics 45
 - cartridge placement 70
 - command priorities in the queue 64
 - error detection and reporting 57
 - host operation control 70
 - informational transitions 82
 - initial cartridge installation 69
 - initial volume inventory upload 70
 - inventory update 57
 - local and remote power control 56
 - logical volser validity checking 64
 - logical volume states 63
 - mode transitions 77, 80
 - auto mode to manual mode 79
 - auto mode to pause mode (forced) 80
 - auto mode to pause mode (no error) 78
 - initialization state to auto, pause, or manual mode 80
 - manual mode to auto mode 80
 - manual mode to pause mode 79
 - pause mode to auto mode 78
 - pause mode to manual mode 79
- modes 32, 73
- operations 66
- operator involvement 56
- physical volser validity checking 63
- physical volume states 62
- priority levels 65
- stand-alone operations 68
- state transitions 80, 82
 - initialization complete state to online or offline state 82
 - library manager initialization state to initialization complete state 81
 - offline state to online state 81
 - offline state to shutdown pending state 82
 - online state to offline state 81
 - shutdown pending state to shutdown state 81
 - shutdown state to library manager initialization state 81
- states 32, 75
 - accessor switchover in progress 76
 - dual active accessor status 76
 - initialization complete 75
 - library manager initialization 75
 - library manager switchover in progress 76
 - offline 75
 - online 75
 - shutdown pending 75
- status selection 119, 121
- system administrator involvement 57
- validity checking
 - logical 64
 - physical 63
- volume categories 58
- VTS 45
- check boxes
 - description 99

- clean schedule window 180
 - controls 180
 - options 180
- cleaner
 - cartridge
 - eject 181
 - installation, initial 69
 - replacement at end-of-life 179
 - masks 182
 - from specialist 291
 - window 182
 - volume masks 223
- cleaning 178
 - cartridge replacement 179
 - options 178
 - schedule 180
- command
 - priorities 64
 - priority levels 65
 - promote in the queue selection 65, 185
- commands
 - from 3494 specialist 291
 - window 173
 - using 173
- component availability status
 - from specialist 291
 - selection 119, 124
 - using in problem determination 340
 - window 125
- configuring
 - SNMP trap destinations (OS/2 4.0) 256, 258
 - window 258
- console, remote library manager 301
 - changing session state 309, 312
 - configuring 302
 - controlling a library 306
 - distributed console access facility 301
 - feature 56, 57
 - hot keys 306, 308
 - Alt+Esc 308
 - Alt+Tab 308
 - Ctrl+Esc 308
 - installing 302
 - keystrokes
 - local mode 307
 - remote mode 306
 - library manager operations
 - changing password 314
 - changing session state 309, 312
 - main window 305
 - moving among sessions 312
 - problem analysis 316
 - transferring files 312
 - using keystrokes 306
 - using pointing device 310
 - window
 - with keystrokes menu 307
 - with sessions menu 309
- controls
 - 3490E tape subsystem 43, 44
 - 3590 tape subsystem 42
 - description 35
 - host control 70
 - library manager 39, 97
 - operator panel 36, 40, 41

- controls (*continued*)
 - power
 - LEDs 36
 - local remote switch 36
 - unit emergency switch 36
 - unit power switch 36
- convenience I/O station 4, 19, 38, 86
 - availability 125
 - I/O status LED locations 38
 - inserting cartridges 21, 86
 - location 35
 - mode 19, 86, 142
 - operation tab 38
 - state 142
 - status LEDs
 - I/O locked 38
 - input mode 38
 - output mode 38
 - unload required 38
- CX0
 - frame controls 41
 - front view 14
 - functional components 15
 - operator panel 41
 - power controls 41
 - rear view 15

D

- D1x Frame
 - front view 8
 - functional components 8, 9
 - rear view 9
- data fragments 50
- database
 - library manager
 - content 30
 - information available to a host 31
 - window 151
- database statistics, rebuild
 - complete window 172
 - initiated window 172
- database volumes, list
 - options 163
 - window 162
- DCAF 301
 - controlling main window 303
 - directory window 303
 - icon view window 302
 - session state 310
 - changing 309, 312
 - window list 313
 - starting 302
 - target password window 304
- define fast ready categories
 - from specialist 292
 - window 192
- delete expired logical volume data 51
- delete LAN host from 3494 243
 - window 243
- delete logical volumes 51, 174, 189
 - controls 189
 - window 190
- deleting a SNMP trap destination
 - (OS/2 2.11) 257
 - (OS/2 4.0) 258
- demount operations 67

- demount operations (*continued*)
 - during inventory update 231
- demounting cartridges 284
- DFSMS messages 326
- disable dual active accessors 116
- disable inventory update 57, 228
 - window 229
- display
 - drive message 283
 - search results selection 156, 162
- distributed console access facility 301
 - controlling main window 303
 - directory window 303
 - icon view window 302
 - session state 310
 - changing 309, 312
 - window list 313
 - starting 302
 - target password window 304
- dual accessor zones
 - window 148
- dual active accessors
 - disable 116
 - enable 116
 - status 76
 - window - disabling 117
 - window - enabling 116
- dual write status 333

E

- eject a stacked volume 174, 190
 - window 191
- eject operations 67
 - during inventory update 57
- ejected cartridges, removing 90, 286
- enable dual active accessors 116
- enable inventory update 229
 - window 229
- enhanced capacity cartridge system
 - tape 1, 19
 - identifying 20, 21
- Enterprise 3494
 - advanced operating procedures 93
 - basic operating procedures 83
 - check-1 condition state 319
 - controls and indicators 35
 - dataserver shutdown window 118
 - frame descriptions 2
 - functional components 4
 - informational states 73
 - integration of 3494 53
 - introduction 2
 - keyboard template 373
 - operational characteristics 45
 - operational modes and states 73
 - problem determination
 - procedures 317
 - remote library manager console
 - feature 301
 - specialist 274
 - description 32
 - disabling 276
 - enabling 276
 - features and functions 291
 - using 277

- Enterprise 3494 (*continued*)
 - VTs import and export advanced function 375
- error detection and reporting 57
- expired logical volume data deletion 51
- export
 - category recovery 403
 - list volume 375
 - failure-reason text 400
 - messages from 3494 395
 - operations 46, 68
 - status messages 395
- exported stacked volumes reuse of 404
- extended high performance cartridge tape 1, 19
- identifying 20, 21

F

- facilities
 - cartridge input and output 18
 - convenience I/O station 19
 - high-capacity I/O 18
 - high-capacity output 18
 - single-cell output 18
- failure and exception condition reporting 318
- fast ready 51
- fast response for nonspecific mount requests 51
- fast-ready category check window 112
- file protection
 - cartridge 22
- find a logical volume's home window 168
- fixed home-cell mode 75
- floating home-cell mode 75
- frames
 - auxiliary 2
 - D1x Frame 2
 - HA1 Frames 2
 - L1x Frame 2
 - Tape Storage Frame 2
 - VTs 2
- free storage threshold 195
- function keys
 - library manager 106
- functional components 4
 - B10 VTS
 - front view 12
 - rear view 13
 - B16 VTS
 - front view 10
 - rear view 11
 - B18 VTS
 - front view 12
 - rear view 13
 - B20 VTS
 - front view 12
 - rear view 13
 - HA1 Frames
 - left service bay 16
 - right service bay 17

- functional components (*continued*)
 - IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Drive Expansion Frame (D10, D12, D14 Frame) or (Model D10, D12, D14)
 - front view 8
 - rear view 9
 - IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Storage Frame (S10 Frame) or (Model S10)
 - front view 7
 - L1x
 - front view 5
 - rear view 6
 - Model CX0 auxiliary frame
 - front view 14
 - rear view 15

H

- HA1 Frames 31
- HA1 service bays 31
 - additional operational modes 74
 - functional components 16, 17
 - left-front view 17
 - right-front view 16
 - standby library manager 31
- help
 - action bar 105
 - search 105
 - window, using 103
- high performance cartridge tape 1, 19
 - identifying 20, 21
- high-capacity I/O facility 18
- high-capacity output facility 18
 - location 18, 19
- home-cell locations, locating 289
 - locate cartridge home window 290
- home-cell mode
 - fixed 75
 - floating 75
 - locating and identifying locations 289
 - locate cartridge home window 290
- horizontal scroll bar
 - description 99
- host
 - message window 183
 - operation control 70
 - SCSI
 - attachment 55
- hot keys
 - in keystrokes local mode 307
 - in keystrokes remote mode 306
 - using 308
 - Alt+Esc 308
 - Alt+Tab 308
 - Ctrl+Esc 308

I

- I/O station, convenience 4, 19, 38, 86
 - availability 125
 - I/O status LED locations 38
 - inserting cartridges 21, 86

- I/O station, convenience (*continued*)
 - location 35
 - mode 19, 86, 142
 - operation tab 38
 - state 142
 - status LEDs
 - I/O locked 38
 - input mode 38
 - output mode 38
 - unload required 38

- IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Drive Expansion Frame (D10, D12, D14 Frame) or (Model D10, D12, D14)
 - front view 8
 - functional components 8, 9
 - rear view 9
- IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Storage Frame (S10 Frame) or (Model S10)
 - front view 7
 - functional components 7
- identifying home-cell locations 289
 - locate cartridge home window 290
- identifying tape cartridges 20, 22
- import
 - category recovery 403
 - list volume 381
 - failure-reason text 400
 - messages from 3494 395
 - operations 46, 68
 - status messages 398
- indicators
 - convenience I/O station 38
 - description 35
 - motion controls 37
 - operator panel 36, 40, 41
 - power status 36
 - status 37, 40, 41
 - tape subsystem 42, 43, 44
- inhibit reclaim schedule 193
- initial
 - cartridge installation 69
 - volume inventory upload 70
- initial mode/state selection window 111
- initialization state
 - transition to auto, pause, or manual mode 80
- insert logical volumes
 - controls 214
 - window 215
- inserting cartridges
 - in auto mode 85
 - in manual mode 284
 - window 285
- initial installation
 - cleaner volumes 69
 - customer volumes 69
 - logical volumes 69
 - service volumes 69
 - stacked volumes 70, 286
 - unlabeled 235
 - window 236
- using convenience I/O station 86
- using empty cartridge cells 85
- using high-capacity I/O facility 89
- integration
 - VTs subsystem 53
 - logical library partitioning 53

- integration (*continued*)
 - VTs subsystem (*continued*)
 - logical volume inventory 53
 - operator interface 53
- interface
 - operator 54
- intervention required
 - cleaner cartridges 360
 - conditions and actions 343
 - data cartridges 358
 - external cartridge labels 353
 - I/O stations or facilities 350
 - library tape drives 345
 - library VTS 361
 - other library components 346
 - quick reference table 344
- intervention, operator 251
- window 252
- introduction 1
- inventory
 - cleaner masks
 - window 224
 - logical volume 54
 - new storage 219
 - save logical volumes and physical
 - volume information 221
 - window 222
 - status 225
 - window 225
 - update 57
 - disable 58, 228
 - enable 58, 229
 - perform (full) 229
 - perform (partial) 230
 - status 229
 - upload 70
 - volser ranges 223
 - window 223

K

- keyboard
 - selecting with 100
 - template
 - diagram 373, 381
 - using 300
- keystrokes
 - menu 307
 - mode
 - changing 308
 - local 307
 - remote 306
 - shortcut keys 307, 308

L

- L1x
 - cartridge storage cells 19
 - convenience I/O station status
 - LEDs 38
 - front view 5
 - functional components 4, 6
 - LEDs, power status 36, 37, 38
 - motion control switches 37
 - operator panel 36
- L1x (*continued*)
 - power
 - controls 36
 - status LEDs 36
 - rear view 6
 - status LEDs 36, 37, 38
- L1x Frame
 - cartridge storage cells 19
 - convenience I/O station status
 - LEDs 38
 - front view 5
 - functional components 4, 6
 - LEDs, power status 36, 37, 38
 - motion control switches 37
 - operator panel 36
 - power
 - controls 36
 - status LEDs 36
 - rear view 6
 - status LEDs 36, 37, 38
- labeling
 - cartridge
 - media type 20, 22, 25
 - volser 21, 22, 24
 - how to apply 24
 - media-type 25
 - volser 24
- LAN host status
 - window 147
- LAN options 237
 - add LAN host to 3494 237
 - window (APPC selected) 238
 - window (APPC/VTAM selected) 240
 - window (TCP/IP selected) 242
 - change LAN host information 245
 - window (APPC/VTAM) 247
 - window (APPC) 245
 - window (TCP/IP) 249
 - delete LAN host from library 243
 - window 243, 244
 - library LAN information 250
 - window 250
 - update LAN host information 244
- LEDs 36
 - convenience I/O station 38
 - I/O locked 38
 - input mode 38
 - output mode 38
 - unload required 38
- L1x Frame 36
 - auto mode 37
 - intervention required 37
 - pause mode 37
 - power off pending 36
 - rack power ready 36
 - system power ready 36
- library manager 29
 - changing session state 309, 312
 - window list 313
 - component availability status
 - window 340
 - console information 337
 - database
 - content 30
 - information available to a host 31
 - display location 39

- library manager (*continued*)
 - failure
 - DFSMS/MVS environment 319
 - MVS/BTLS environment 323
 - function keys 106
 - HA1 Frames 31
 - high availability 31
 - information provided at console 337
 - initialization 75
 - initialization complete 75
 - keyboard location 39
 - lockup selection 117
 - making selections
 - description 100
 - keyboard 100
 - pointing device 101
 - messages, action based 337, 341
 - operator
 - menu, using 107
 - panel controls 97
 - password-protection 29
 - general operator 29
 - service representative 29
 - system administrator 29
 - recovery procedures 319
 - search database for volumes
 - window 340
 - shortcut keys 307, 308
 - shutdown 117
 - switch active to standby 114
 - switching window 115, 322, 325
 - switchover in progress 76
 - system summary window, using 337
 - user interface 29
 - using 97
 - action bar 100
 - check boxes 99
 - horizontal scroll bar 99
 - menu 100
 - non-sizeable-window border 99
 - push buttons 99
 - radio buttons 100
 - sizeable-window border 99
 - system menu icon 97
 - title bar 98
 - vertical scroll bar 99
 - window or message box 99
 - window-sizing icons 98
 - whole queue window, using 342
- library switchover confirmation
 - window 115
- list database volumes
 - options 163
 - window 162
- list volume format 375
- local area network 6, 57
- local power control 56
- location, cartridge cell 26
- lockup library manager 117
- logical library partitioning 53
- logical volume data
 - deletion of expired 51
- logical volumes
 - deletion 51
 - inventory 54
 - states 63
 - validity checking 64

logical volumes (*continued*)
 window 69

M

manage
 export-hold volumes 200
 import volumes 198
 insert volumes 199
 unassigned volumes 196
manual mode
 dismounting cartridges 284
 description 73
 ejecting cartridges 286
 ending 290
 error processing 288
 window 289
 home-cell locations, locating and
 identifying 289
 window 290
 mounting cartridges 283
 operating in 282
 pending 281
 window 281
 review list 287
 window 288
 selection 110
 starting 280
 terminal 284
 window 282, 285, 286
 transition from
 to auto mode 80
 to pause mode 79
 using 279
mark accessor active window 117
media
 3494 28
 cell location 26
 convenience I/O station 19
 dismounting 284
 ejecting 286
 file protection 21, 22
 high-capacity I/O facility 18, 19
 high-capacity output facility 18, 19
 input and output facilities
 convenience I/O station
 feature 19
 high-capacity I/O 18
 high-capacity output 18
 single-cell output 18
 input facility 18
 inserting 21, 85, 284
 using convenience I/O station 86
 using empty cartridge cells 85
 using high-capacity I/O
 facility 89
 window 285, 286
 installation, initial 69
 cleaner volumes 69
 customer volumes 69
 service volume 69
 labels
 how to apply 24
 media-type 20, 22, 25
 volser 21, 22
 mounting 283
 using action list 283

media (*continued*)
 mounting (*continued*)
 using drive message display 283
 output facilities 18
 high-capacity 18
 single-cell 18
 placement guidelines 70
 removal from gripper 299
 removing ejected 90
 requirements 21
 reserved storage cells 27
 single-cell output facility 18
 storage capacity 28
 storage cells 26
 labeling 26, 27
 locations 18, 19
 names 26
 reserved 27
 system tape 1, 19
 description 19
 requirements 21
 transient 69, 232
 types 19
 identifying 20, 21
 media-type label 20
menu
 description 100
messages, host console 326
mode
 auto 73, 109
 changing 37, 108, 280
 description 73
 home-cell
 fixed 75
 floating 75
 manual 73, 110
 pending window 281
 pause 73, 109, 110
 relationship between operational
 modes and states 77
 transitions 77
 auto mode to manual mode 79
 auto mode to pause mode
 (forced) 80
 auto mode to pause mode (no
 error) 78
 initialization state to auto, pause,
 or manual mode 80
 manual mode to auto mode 80
 manual mode to pause mode 79
 pause mode to auto mode 78
 pause mode to manual mode 79
 window 108, 280
 accessor 115
 auto 109
 lookup library manager 117
 manual 110
 offline 112
 online 110
 pause 109, 110
 service menu 114
 shutdown 117
 switch active library to
 standby 114
mode/state change request
 window 113, 281

mount
 cartridges 283
 using action list 283
 using drive message display 283
 from input station 69, 232
 operations 66
 during inventory update 231
mount queue
 window 150
MVS/BTLS environment, library manager
 failure 323

N

non-sizeable-window border
 description 99

O

offline
 selection 112
 state 75
offline request window 113
online
 selection 110
 state 75
operating procedures
 advanced 93
 basic 83
 manual mode 282
operating procedures, basic 83
 changing from local to remote
 power 84
 changing from remote to local
 power 85
 changing to auto mode 84
 changing to pause mode 84
 inserting cartridges 85
 using convenience I/O station 86
 using empty cartridge cells 85
 using high-capacity I/O
 facility 89
 powering off the 3494 84
 powering on the 3494 83
 removing ejected cartridges 90
 from convenience I/O station 91
 from high-capacity I/O facility 91
 from high-capacity output
 facility 90
 from single-cell output facility 90
operational characteristics 45
 cartridge placement 70
 command priorities in the queue 64
 error detection and reporting 57
 host operation control 70
 informational transitions 82
 initial cartridge installation 69
 initial volume inventory upload 70
 inventory update 57
 local and remote power control 56
 logical volser validity checking 64
 logical volume states 63
 mode transitions 77, 80
 auto mode to manual mode 79
 auto mode to pause mode
 (forced) 80

- operational characteristics *(continued)*
 - mode transitions *(continued)*
 - auto mode to pause mode (no error) 78
 - initialization state to auto, pause, or manual mode 80
 - manual mode to auto mode 80
 - manual mode to pause mode 79
 - pause mode to auto mode 78
 - pause mode to manual mode 79
 - modes 32, 73
 - operations 66
 - operator involvement 56
 - physical volser validity checking 63
 - physical volume states 62
 - priority levels 65
 - stand-alone operations 68
 - state transitions 80, 82
 - initialization complete state to online or offline state 82
 - library manager initialization state to initialization complete state 81
 - offline state to online state 81
 - offline state to shutdown pending state 82
 - online state to offline state 81
 - shutdown pending state to shutdown state 81
 - shutdown state to library manager initialization state 81
- states 32, 75
 - accessor switchover in progress 76
 - dual active accessor status 76
 - initialization complete 75
 - library manager initialization 75
 - library manager switchover in progress 76
 - offline 75
 - online 75
 - shutdown pending 75
- status selection 119, 121
- system administrator involvement 57
- validity checking
 - logical 64
 - physical 63
- volume categories 58
- VTS 45

- operational status 122, 123, 124
- from specialist 291
- window 121
- operations 66
- host control 70
- host-initiated 66
 - audit 67
 - demount 67
 - eject 67
 - export 68
 - import 46, 68
 - mount 66
- operator involvement 56
- stand-alone 68
- system administrator involvement 57
- operator
- actions 251
- interface 54

- operator *(continued)*
 - intervention 251
 - from specialist 291
 - window 252
 - involvement 56
 - menu
 - action bar 100
 - check boxes 99
 - controls 97
 - horizontal scroll bar 99
 - menu 100
 - mode window 108, 280
 - non-sizeable-window border 99
 - options 107
 - push buttons 99
 - radio buttons 100
 - sizeable-window border 99
 - system menu icon 97
 - system summary window 107, 141
 - title bar 98
 - using 107
 - vertical scroll bar 99
 - window or message box 99
 - window-sizing icons 98
 - panel 36, 40, 41
 - procedures 83, 93
 - window 252
- options
 - window 279
- output facility
 - high-capacity 18
 - single-cell 18
- overview
 - VTS export and import 46

P

- partitioning, logical library 53
- password
 - change system administrator 253
 - window 253
 - DCAF 314
 - window 315
 - general operator 29
 - protection 29
 - service representative 29
 - system administrator 29
 - window 253
- pause mode
 - changing to 84
 - description 73
 - selection 109, 110
 - transition from
 - to auto mode 78
 - to manual mode 79
- peer-to-peer VTS
 - accessing Web information 55, 56
 - description 55
 - specialist features and functions 55, 295
 - access to additional information 298
 - current copy workload 298
 - current drive activity 297
 - home page 295
 - library configuration 296

- peer-to-peer VTS *(continued)*
 - specialist features and functions *(continued)*
 - library status 296
 - logical volume status 297
 - logical volume status results 297
 - system configuration 296
 - system status 295
 - virtual tape controller
 - configuration 296
 - virtual tape controller status 295
 - VTS configuration 296
 - VTS status 295
 - perform inventory update
 - (full) 229
 - window 229
 - (partial) 230
 - window 231
 - performance statistics
 - from 3494 specialist 291
 - selection 119, 129
 - window 130
 - physical volumes
 - states 62
 - validity checking 63
 - placement, cartridge 70
 - pointing device
 - selecting with
 - track pointer keyboard 102
 - trackball 101
 - using in remote library manager console session 310
 - power 36
 - controls
 - auxiliary frame 41
 - L1x Frame 36
 - VTS 40
 - local 36, 56
 - local to remote, changing from 84
 - remote 36, 56
 - remote to local, changing from 85
 - unit emergency power 36, 40, 41, 83, 84
 - unit power switch 36, 83, 84
 - powering off 84
 - powering on 83
 - priority levels 65
 - problem analysis
 - remote library manager console 316
 - problem determination
 - procedures, quick reference table 317
 - using component availability status window 340
 - using search database for volumes window 340
 - using system summary window 337
 - using whole queue window 342
 - procedures, basic operating 83
 - changing from local to remote power 84
 - changing from remote to local power 85
 - changing to auto mode 84
 - changing to pause mode 84
 - inserting cartridges 85
 - using convenience I/O station 86
 - using empty cartridge cells 85

- procedures, basic operating (*continued*)
 - inserting cartridges (*continued*)
 - using high-capacity I/O facility 89
 - powering off the 3494 84
 - powering on the 3494 83
 - removing ejected cartridges 90
 - from convenience I/O station 91
 - from high-capacity I/O facility 91
 - from high-capacity output facility 90
 - from single-cell output facility 90
- push buttons
 - description 99

Q

- queue
 - command priorities in 64
- queues
 - information 150
 - options 149
 - window 149

R

- radio buttons
 - description 100
- re-inventory complete system
 - selection 219
- rebuild database statistics
 - complete window 172
 - initiated window 172
- reclaim threshold percentage 194
- recovery procedures
 - DFSMS/MVS environment 321
 - dual library manager 319
 - MVS/BTLS environment 324
 - single library manager 319
 - VTS 371
- remote library manager console 301
 - changing session state 309, 312
 - configuring 302
 - controlling a library 306
 - distributed console access facility 301
 - feature 56, 57
 - hot keys 306, 308
 - Alt+Esc 308
 - Alt+Tab 308
 - Ctrl+Esc 308
 - installing 302
 - keystrokes
 - local mode 307
 - remote mode 306
 - library manager operations
 - changing password 314
 - changing session state 309, 312
 - main window 305
 - moving among sessions 312
 - problem analysis 316
 - transferring files 312
 - using keystrokes 306
 - using pointing device 310
 - window
 - with keystrokes menu 307
 - with sessions menu 309
- remote power control 56
- removing ejected cartridges 90
- reserved storage cells 27

S

- save logical volumes 220
 - window 221
- scratch stacked volumes 53
- SCSI
 - host attachment 55
- search database for volumes
 - displaying search results 156, 162
 - search criteria 152, 157
 - search results 155, 161
 - window 152
- selecting
 - with the keyboard 100
 - with the pointing device 101
 - track pointer keyboard 102
 - trackball 101
- service
 - selection 114
 - window 227
- service access 254
 - disable 254
 - enable 254
- service bay, left
 - functional components 16
 - right-front view 16
- service bay, right
 - functional components 17
 - left-front view 17
- service mode notice 114
- set the volser range 223
- shortcut keys 307, 308
- shutdown
 - pending 75
 - selection 117
 - window 118
- simple network management protocol
 - adding a trap destination
 - (OS/2 2.11) 257
 - (OS/2 4.0) 258
 - changing trap destinations (OS/2 2.11)
 - window 257
 - CHCK1 traps 272
 - configuring trap destinations 256
 - deleting a trap destination
 - (OS/2 2.11) 257
 - (OS/2 4.0) 258
 - description 254
 - library manager features 255
 - monitoring library manager
 - events 255
 - OPINT traps 261
 - options 254
 - programming tools 261
 - receiving SNMPD traps 259
 - select trap types 256
 - window 256
 - sending TESTM messages 259
 - starting 258
 - stopping 259
 - TESTM traps 273
 - trouble shooting problems 259
 - UNSOL traps 268
- single-cell output facility 18
 - location 18, 19
- sizeable-window border
 - description 99
- SNMP
 - adding a trap destination
 - (OS/2 2.11) 257
 - (OS/2 4.0) 258
 - changing trap destinations (OS/2 2.11)
 - window 257
 - CHCK1 traps 272
 - configuring trap destinations 256
 - deleting a trap destination
 - (OS/2 2.11) 257
 - (OS/2 4.0) 258
 - description 254
 - library manager features 255
 - monitoring library manager
 - events 255
 - OPINT traps 261
 - options 254
 - programming tools 261
 - receiving SNMPD traps 259
 - select trap types 256
 - window 256
 - sending TESTM messages 259
 - starting 258
 - stopping 259
 - TESTM traps 273
 - trouble shooting problems 259
 - UNSOL traps 268
- specialist 274
 - 3494
 - description 32
 - disabling 276
 - enabling 276
 - features and functions 291
 - using 277
 - description 32
 - disabling 276
 - enabling 276
 - features and functions 291
 - connection 293
 - help text 294
 - page layout 291
 - system requirements 294
 - peer-to-peer VTS
 - accessing Web information 55, 56
 - description 55
 - features and functions 295
 - using 277
- stacked volume map
 - window 170
- stacked volumes 70
 - scratch 53
- stand-alone device 231
 - operations 68
 - reset 234
 - window 234
 - setup 231
 - window 232
 - status 235
 - window 235
- standby library manager
 - activation procedures 319
 - configuring for SNMP trap destinations 256

- standby library manager *(continued)*
 - description 17
 - in HA1 Frames 31
 - status 122, 143
- state transitions
 - operational
 - initialization complete state to
 - online or offline state 82
 - library manager initialization state
 - to initialization complete
 - state 81
 - offline state to online state 81
 - offline state to shutdown pending
 - state 82
 - online state to offline state 81
 - shutdown pending state to
 - shutdown state 81
 - shutdown state to library manager
 - initialization state 81
- states
 - check-1 condition 319
 - volume 62
- status codes
 - export/import 384
- status LEDs 36
 - convenience I/O station 38
 - I/O locked 38
 - input mode 38
 - output mode 38
 - unload required 38
- L1x Frame 36
 - auto mode 37
 - intervention required 37
 - pause mode 37
 - power off pending 36
 - rack power ready 36
 - system power ready 36
- status window 119
 - accessor mounts per hour 119, 131
 - component availability status 75, 119, 124
 - operational status 76, 119, 121
 - performance statistics 77, 119, 129
 - VTS active data 119, 132
 - VTS active data distribution 120, 139
 - VTS data flow 119, 134
 - VTS logical mounts per hour 120, 138
 - VTS mount hit data 120, 135
 - VTS physical device mount
 - history 120, 137
 - VTS status 119, 127
- storage
 - cartridge capacity 28
 - cartridge cells 26
 - reserved cartridge cells 27
- switch active accessor to standby
 - selection 115
 - window 116
- switch active library manager to
 - standby 114
- system administrator
 - change password 253
 - involvement in operations 57
 - password window 114, 118, 253
- system menu 97

- system menu *(continued)*
 - icon
 - description 97
- system summary window
 - from specialist 291
 - selecting from 107
 - using 141
 - using in problem determination 337

T

- tape cartridge
 - 3494 28
 - cell location 26
 - convenience I/O station 19
 - demounting 284
 - ejecting 286
 - file protection 21, 22
 - high-capacity I/O facility 18, 19
 - high-capacity output facility 18, 19
 - input and output facilities
 - convenience I/O station
 - feature 19
 - high-capacity I/O 18
 - high-capacity output 18
 - single-cell output 18
 - input facility 18
 - inserting 21, 85, 284
 - using convenience I/O station 86
 - using empty cartridge cells 85
 - using high-capacity I/O
 - facility 89
 - window 285, 286
 - installation, initial 69
 - cleaner volumes 69
 - customer volumes 69
 - service volume 69
 - labels
 - how to apply 24
 - media-type 20, 22, 25
 - volser 21, 22
 - mounting 283
 - using action list 283
 - using drive message display 283
 - output facilities 18
 - high-capacity 18
 - single-cell 18
 - placement guidelines 70
 - removal from gripper 299
 - removing ejected 90
 - requirements 21
 - reserved storage cells 27
 - single-cell output facility 18
 - storage capacity 28
 - storage cells 26
 - labeling 26, 27
 - locations 18, 19
 - names 26
 - reserved 27
 - system tape 1, 19
 - description 19
 - requirements 21
 - transient 69, 232
 - types 19
 - identifying 20, 21
 - media-type label 20
- Tape Storage Frame
 - front view 7
 - functional components 7
- tape subsystems 42, 43, 44
 - 3490E Model CxA
 - controls and indicators 43
 - operator panel 43
 - 3490E Model F1A
 - controls and indicators 44
 - operator panel 44
 - 3490E operation 45
 - 3590 Model A60 controller
 - 3590 adjacent frame support 34
 - 3590 operation 42, 45
 - 3590 operator panel 42
 - controls 42
 - emulation of 3490 tape drives 45
- tape volume cache
 - description 46
 - storage management 46
 - VTS 46
- title bar
 - description 98
- transient cartridges 69, 232
- transitions
 - informational 82
 - operational mode 77, 80
 - auto mode to manual mode 79
 - auto mode to pause mode
 - (forced) 80
 - auto mode to pause mode (no
 - error) 78
 - initialization state to auto, pause,
 - or manual mode 80
 - manual mode to auto mode 80
 - manual mode to pause mode 79
 - pause mode to auto mode 78
 - pause mode to manual mode 79
 - operational state 80, 82
 - initialization complete state to
 - online or offline state 82
 - library manager initialization state
 - to initialization complete
 - state 81
 - offline state to online state 81
 - offline state to shutdown pending
 - state 82
 - online state to offline state 81
 - shutdown pending state to
 - shutdown state 81
 - shutdown state to library manager
 - initialization state 81

U

- unknown volume locations
 - reviewing 287
 - list widow 288
- unlabeled tape
 - cartridges 22, 235
 - window 236
- facility 23
- update LAN host information 244
- window 244
- upload, initial volume inventory 70

V

- validity checking
 - logical volser 64
 - physical volser 63
- vertical scroll bar
 - description 99
- virtual tape controller, Model AX0
 - accessing Web information 295
- volser
 - ranges
 - controls 187
 - selection 173
 - window 186, 188, 291, 292
 - validity checking 63, 64
- volume
 - categories 58
 - cleaner masks 182, 223
 - initial inventory upload 70
 - reviewing unknown locations 287
 - states 62, 63
- VTs
 - active data
 - from 3494 specialist 292
 - selection 119, 132
 - window 132
 - active data distribution
 - from specialist 140, 292
 - selection 120, 139
 - window 139
 - category attributes 174, 191
 - data flow
 - from specialist 292
 - selection 119, 134
 - window 134
 - deletion of logical volumes 51
 - emulation of 3490 tape drives 45
 - export
 - operations 46
 - overview 46
 - fast response 51
 - import
 - operations 46
 - overview 46
 - import/export advanced
 - function 375
 - integration with 3494 53
 - logical mounts per hour
 - from specialist 292
 - selection 120, 138
 - window 138
 - logical volumes 51
 - maintaining data fragments 50
 - management policies 174
 - from specialist 292
 - window 193
 - mount hit data
 - from specialist 292
 - selection 120, 135
 - window 136
 - nonspecific mount requests 51
 - online/offline
 - window 228
 - operational characteristics 45
 - peer-to-peer
 - accessing Web information 55, 56
 - description 55
 - specialist 55

VTs (continued)

- physical device mount history
 - selection 120, 137
 - window 137, 292
- recovery procedures 371
- scratch stacked volumes 53
- tape volume cache 46
 - storage management 46

VTs status

- from specialist 292
- selection 119, 127
- window 127

VTs, Model B10

- frame controls 40
- front view 12
- functional components 13
- operator panel 40
- power controls 40
- rear view 13

VTs, Model B16

- controls 39
- front view 10
- functional components 10, 11
- rear view 11

VTs, Model B18

- controls 40
- front view 12
- functional components 13
- operator panel 40
- power controls 40
- rear view 13

VTs, Model B20

- controls 40
- front view 12
- functional components 13
- operator panel 40
- power controls 40
- rear view 13

W

Web server (specialist), 3494 274

- description 32
- disabling 276
- enabling 276
- features and functions
 - connection 293
 - help text 294
 - page layout 291
 - system requirements 294
- using 277

whole queue window, using 340

window

- 3494 LAN information 250
- add LAN host to 3494 (APPC selected) 238
- add LAN host to 3494 (APPC/VTAM selected) 240
- add LAN host to library (TCP/IP selected) 242
- call home 274
- cancel VTs export/import 201
- change LAN host information (APPC/VTAM) 247
- change LAN host information (APPC) 245

window (continued)

- change LAN host information (TCP/IP) 249
- change SNMP trap destinations (OS/2 2.11) 257
- clean schedule 180
- cleaner masks 182
- commands 173
- database 151
- DCAF - controlling main 303
- DCAF - directory 303
- DCAF - icon view 302
- DCAF - target password 304
- DCAF password 315
- DCAF target \ busy
 - active session 314
 - changing sessions 314
 - options menu 315
- define fast ready categories 192
- delete LAN host from 3494 243
- delete logical volumes 190
- disable inventory update 229
- display VTs export/import volumes 220
- dual accessor zones 148
- eject a cleaner cartridge 181
- eject a stacked volume 191
- enable inventory update 229
- find a logical volume's home 168
- help 103
- host message 183
- insert logical volumes 215
- insert unlabeled cartridges 236
- inventory - cleaner masks 224
- inventory - save logical volumes and physical volume information 222
- inventory - volser ranges 223
- inventory status 225
- inventory update status 230
- LAN host status 147
- list database volumes 162
- locate cartridge home 290
- manage import volumes 198
- manage insert volumes 199, 200
- manage unassigned volumes 197
- manual mode error processing 289
- manual mode insert cartridges 285, 286
- manual mode review list 288
- manual mode terminal 282
- manual pending 281
- menu selections 107
- mode 108, 280
 - accessor 115
 - auto 109
 - lockup library manager 117
 - manual 110
 - offline 112
 - online 110
 - pause 109, 110
 - service menu 114
 - shutdown 117
 - switch active 3494 to standby 114
- mode/state change request 113, 281
- mount queue 150
- operator intervention 252
- options 279

- window (*continued*)
 - perform inventory update (full) 229
 - perform inventory update (partial) 231
 - promote command 185
 - queues 149
 - rebuild database statistics 171
 - remote library manager console
 - main 305
 - with keystrokes menu 307
 - with session menu 309
 - reset stand-alone device 234
 - search database for volumes 152
 - select SNMP trap types 256
 - service 227
 - setup stand-alone device 232
 - SNMP configuration (OS/2 4.0) 258
 - stacked volume map 170
 - stand-alone device status 235
 - status 119
 - accessor mounts per hour 131
 - component availability status 125
 - operational status 121, 122, 123, 124
 - performance statistics 130
 - VTs active data 132
 - VTs active data distribution 139, 140
 - VTs data flow 134
 - VTs logical mounts per hour 138
 - VTs mount hit data 136
 - VTs physical device mount history 137
 - VTs status 127
 - system administrator password 253
 - system summary 107, 141
 - TESTM SNMP trap message 259
 - update LAN host information 244
 - volser ranges 188
 - VTs management policies 193
 - VTs online/offline 228
 - window list 313
- window or message box
 - description 99
- window-sizing icons
 - description 98
- write, dual 333

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

IBM TotalStorage
Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494)
Operator Guide

Publication No. GA32-0449-01

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Overall satisfaction	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Accurate	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Complete	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to find	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to understand	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Well organized	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Applicable to your tasks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? ☐ Yes ☐ No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.



Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



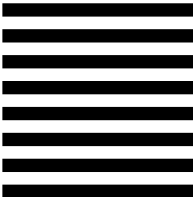
NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

IBM
Department GZW
9032 S Rita Road
Tucson AZ 85775-4706



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold
Along Line



Part Number: 19P5901

Printed in U.S.A.

GA32-0449-01



(1P) P/N: 19P5901



Spine information:



IBM TotalStorage
Enterprise Automated Tape Library
(3494) 3494 Operator Guide